



CS-3035/4035/5035

Includes: AD-63
DF-78
J-1402
PF-70
RA-1
PF-75

SERVICE MANUAL

Published in Apr '05
2FG70943
Revision 3

CAUTION

Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer. Dispose of used batteries according to the manufacturer's instructions.

CAUTION

Double-pole/neutral fusing.

Version history

Version	Date	Replaced pages	Remarks
1	October 19, 2004	2-2-2	–
3.0	April 22, 2005	Contents, 1-1-1, 1-1-2, 1-1-3, 1-1-4, 1-3-3, 1-3-4, 1-3-5, 1-3-6, 1-3-7, 1-3-7-1, 1-3-8, Chapter 1-4 (overall revised), 1-6-29, 1-6-30, 1-6-37, 1-6-41, 1-6-42, 2-4-15	


This page is intentionally left blank.


Safety precautions


This booklet provides safety warnings and precautions for our service personnel to ensure the safety of their customers, their machines as well as themselves during maintenance activities. Service personnel are advised to read this booklet carefully to familiarize themselves with the warnings and precautions described here before engaging in maintenance activities.

Safety warnings and precautions


Various symbols are used to protect our service personnel and customers from physical danger and to prevent damage to their property. These symbols are described below:

 **DANGER:** High risk of serious bodily injury or death may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with warning messages using this symbol.

 **WARNING:** Serious bodily injury or death may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with warning messages using this symbol.

 **CAUTION:** Bodily injury or damage to property may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with warning messages using this symbol.

Symbols

The triangle () symbol indicates a warning including danger and caution. The specific point of attention is shown inside the symbol.



General warning.



Warning of risk of electric shock.



Warning of high temperature.

 indicates a prohibited action. The specific prohibition is shown inside the symbol.



General prohibited action.



Disassembly prohibited.

 indicates that action is required. The specific action required is shown inside the symbol.



General action required.



Remove the power plug from the wall outlet.



Always ground the copier.

1. Installation Precautions

WARNING

- Do not use a power supply with a voltage other than that specified. Avoid multiple connections to one outlet: they may cause fire or electric shock. When using an extension cable, always check that it is adequate for the rated current.
- Connect the ground wire to a suitable grounding point. Not grounding the copier may cause fire or electric shock. Connecting the earth wire to an object not approved for the purpose may cause explosion or electric shock. Never connect the ground cable to any of the following: gas pipes, lightning rods, ground cables for telephone lines and water pipes or faucets not approved by the proper authorities.













CAUTION:

- Do not place the copier on an infirm or angled surface: the copier may tip over, causing injury.
- Do not install the copier in a humid or dusty place. This may cause fire or electric shock.
- Do not install the copier near a radiator, heater, other heat source or near flammable material. This may cause fire.
- Allow sufficient space around the copier to allow the ventilation grills to keep the machine as cool as possible. Insufficient ventilation may cause heat buildup and poor copying performance.
- Always handle the machine by the correct locations when moving it.
- Always use anti-toppling and locking devices on copiers so equipped. Failure to do this may cause the copier to move unexpectedly or topple, leading to injury.
- Avoid inhaling toner or developer excessively. Protect the eyes. If toner or developer is accidentally ingested, drink a lot of water to dilute it in the stomach and obtain medical attention immediately. If it gets into the eyes, rinse immediately with copious amounts of water and obtain medical attention.
- Advise customers that they must always follow the safety warnings and precautions in the copier's instruction handbook.








2. Precautions for Maintenance

WARNING

- Always remove the power plug from the wall outlet before starting machine disassembly. 
- Always follow the procedures for maintenance described in the service manual and other related brochures. 
- Under no circumstances attempt to bypass or disable safety features including safety mechanisms and protective circuits. 
- Always use parts having the correct specifications. 
- Always use the thermostat or thermal fuse specified in the service manual or other related brochure when replacing them. Using a piece of wire, for example, could lead to fire or other serious accident. 
- When the service manual or other serious brochure specifies a distance or gap for installation of a part, always use the correct scale and measure carefully. 
- Always check that the copier is correctly connected to an outlet with a ground connection. 
- Check that the power cable covering is free of damage. Check that the power plug is dust-free. If it is dirty, clean it to remove the risk of fire or electric shock. 
- Never attempt to disassemble the optical unit in machines using lasers. Leaking laser light may damage eyesight. 
- Handle the charger sections with care. They are charged to high potentials and may cause electric shock if handled improperly. 

CAUTION

- Wear safe clothing. If wearing loose clothing or accessories such as ties, make sure they are safely secured so they will not be caught in rotating sections. 
- Use utmost caution when working on a powered machine. Keep away from chains and belts. 
- Handle the fixing section with care to avoid burns as it can be extremely hot. 
- Check that the fixing unit thermistor, heat and press rollers are clean. Dirt on them can cause abnormally high temperatures. 
- Do not remove the ozone filter, if any, from the copier except for routine replacement. 

• Do not pull on the AC power cord or connector wires on high-voltage components when removing them; always hold the plug itself.



• Do not route the power cable where it may be stood on or trapped. If necessary, protect it with a cable cover or other appropriate item.



• Treat the ends of the wire carefully when installing a new charger wire to avoid electric leaks.



• Remove toner completely from electronic components.



• Run wire harnesses carefully so that wires will not be trapped or damaged.



• After maintenance, always check that all the parts, screws, connectors and wires that were removed, have been refitted correctly. Special attention should be paid to any forgotten connector, trapped wire and missing screws.



• Check that all the caution labels that should be present on the machine according to the instruction handbook are clean and not peeling. Replace with new ones if necessary.



• Handle greases and solvents with care by following the instructions below:
· Use only a small amount of solvent at a time, being careful not to spill. Wipe spills off completely.
· Ventilate the room well while using grease or solvents.
· Allow applied solvents to evaporate completely before refitting the covers or turning the main switch on.
· Always wash hands afterwards.



• Never dispose of toner or toner bottles in fire. Toner may cause sparks when exposed directly to fire in a furnace, etc.



• Should smoke be seen coming from the copier, remove the power plug from the wall outlet immediately.



3. Miscellaneous

WARNING

• Never attempt to heat the drum or expose it to any organic solvents such as alcohol, other than the specified refiner; it may generate toxic gas.



CONTENTS

1-1 Specifications

1-1-1 Specifications	1-1-1
1-1-2 Parts names and their functions.....	1-1-3
(1) Copier	1-1-3
(2) Operation panel	1-1-4
1-1-3 Machine cross section.....	1-1-5
1-1-4 Drive system	1-1-6
(1) Drive system 1 (drive motor and eject motor drive trains).....	1-1-6
(2) Drive system 2 (paper feed motor drive train).....	1-1-7
(3) Drive system 3 (duplex section)	1-1-8

1-2 Handling Precautions

1-2-1 Drum	1-2-1
1-2-2 Toner	1-2-1
1-2-3 Installation environment	1-2-1

1-3 Installation

1-3-1 Unpacking and installation	1-3-1
(1) Installation procedure	1-3-1
1-3-2 Setting initial copy modes.....	1-3-8
1-3-3 Installing the key counter (option)	1-3-9
1-3-4 Installing the drawer heater (option).....	1-3-11
1-3-5 Installing the paper feeder (option)	1-3-13
1-3-6 Installing the large paper deck (option).....	1-3-17
1-3-7 Installing the booklet stitcher/switchback unit (option).....	1-3-22
1-3-8 Installing the sheet-through document processor (option).....	1-3-33
1-3-9 Installing the Printing System (option).....	1-3-34
1-3-10 Installing the Scanning System (option).....	1-3-36
1-3-11 Installing the built-in finisher (option).....	1-3-39
1-3-12 Installing the job separator (option).....	1-3-45
1-3-13 Installing the Facsimile System (option).....	1-3-48
1-3-14 Installing the hard disk (option)	1-3-56
1-3-15 Installing the 1000-sheet finisher (option).....	1-3-58
1-3-16 Installing the 3000-sheet finisher (option).....	1-3-63

1-4 Maintenance Mode

1-4-1 Copier management.....	1-4-1
(1) Using the copier management mode.....	1-4-1
(2) Setting department management items.....	1-4-2
(3) Copy default	1-4-3
(4) Machine default	1-4-6
(5) Bypass setting	1-4-7
(6) Original size registration	1-4-7
(7) User adjustment	1-4-8
(8) Checking the total counter and printing out the counter report.....	1-4-8
(9) Document management default setting.....	1-4-8
(10) Hard disk management	1-4-8
(11) Status report print out	1-4-8
(12) Language selection function.....	1-4-8
1-4-2 Maintenance mode.....	1-4-9
(1) Executing a maintenance item	1-4-9
(2) Maintenance mode item list.....	1-4-10
(3) Contents of maintenance mode items.....	1-4-14

1-5 Troubleshooting

1-5-1 Paper misfeed detection	1-5-1
(1) Paper misfeed indication	1-5-1
(2) Paper misfeed detection conditions	1-5-2
(3) Paper misfeeds	1-5-9
1-5-2 Self-diagnosis	1-5-20
(1) Self-diagnostic function	1-5-20
(2) Self-diagnostic codes	1-5-21
1-5-3 Image formation problems	1-5-37
(1) No image appears (entirely white).	1-5-38
(2) No image appears (entirely black).	1-5-39
(3) Image is too light.	1-5-40
(4) Background is visible.	1-5-40
(5) A white line appears longitudinally.	1-5-40
(6) A black line appears longitudinally.	1-5-41
(7) A black line appears laterally.	1-5-41
(8) One side of the copy image is darker than the other.	1-5-41
(9) Black dots appear on the image.	1-5-42
(10) Image is blurred.	1-5-42
(11) The leading edge of the image is consistently misaligned with the original.	1-5-42
(12) The leading edge of the image is sporadically misaligned with the original.	1-5-43
(13) Paper creases.	1-5-43
(14) Offset occurs.	1-5-43
(15) Image is partly missing.	1-5-44
(16) Fixing is poor.	1-5-44
(17) Image is out of focus.	1-5-44
(18) Image center does not align with the original center.	1-5-45
(19) Image is not square.	1-5-45
1-5-4 Electrical problems	1-5-46
(1) The machine does not operate when the power switch is turned on.	1-5-46
(2) The drive motor does not operate (C2000).	1-5-46
(3) The paper feed motor does not operate (C2500).	1-5-46
(4) The eject motor does not operate.	1-5-46
(5) The upper lift motor does not operate (C1010).	1-5-47
(6) The lower lift motor does not operate (C1020).	1-5-47
(7) The scanner motor does not operate.	1-5-47
(8) Cooling fan motor 1 does not operate.	1-5-47
(9) Cooling fan motor 2 does not operate.	1-5-47
(10) Cooling fan motor 3 does not operate.	1-5-47
(11) Cooling fan motor 4 does not operate.	1-5-47
(12) Cooling fan motor 5 does not operate.	1-5-48
(13) Cooling fan motor 6 does not operate.	1-5-48
(14) Cooling fan motor 7 does not operate.	1-5-48
(15) The upper paper feed clutch does not operate.	1-5-48
(16) The lower paper feed clutch does not operate.	1-5-48
(17) Feed clutch 1 does not operate.	1-5-48
(18) Feed clutch 2 does not operate.	1-5-48
(19) Feed clutch 3 does not operate.	1-5-49
(20) The bypass paper feed clutch does not operate.	1-5-49
(21) The bypass feed clutch does not operate.	1-5-49
(22) The registration clutch does not operate.	1-5-49
(23) The duplex feed clutch does not operate.	1-5-49
(24) The feedshift solenoid does not operate.	1-5-49
(25) The toner feed solenoid does not operate.	1-5-50
(26) The cleaning lamp does not turn on.	1-5-50
(27) The exposure lamp does not turn on.	1-5-50
(28) The exposure lamp does not turn off.	1-5-50
(29) The fixing heater does not turn on (C6000).	1-5-50

(30) The fixing heater does not turn off.	1-5-50
(31) Main charging is not performed.	1-5-50
(32) Transfer charging is not performed.	1-5-51
(33) No developing bias is output.	1-5-51
(34) The original size is not detected.	1-5-51
(35) The original size is not detected correctly.	1-5-51
(36) The touch panel keys do not work.	1-5-51
(37) The message requesting paper to be loaded is shown when paper is present in the upper drawer.	1-5-51
(38) The message requesting paper to be loaded is shown when paper is present in the lower drawer.	1-5-51
(39) The message requesting paper to be loaded is shown when paper is present on the bypass tray.	1-5-51
(40) The size of paper in the upper drawer is not displayed correctly.	1-5-52
(41) The size of paper in the lower drawer is not displayed correctly.	1-5-52
(42) The printing width of the paper on the bypass tray is not detected correctly.	1-5-52
(43) A paper jam in the paper feed, paper conveying or fixing section is indicated when the power switch is turned on.	1-5-53
(44) The message requesting covers to be closed is displayed when the front cover and conveying cover are closed.	1-5-53
(45) Others.	1-5-53
1-5-5 Mechanical problems	1-5-54
(1) No primary paper feed.	1-5-54
(2) No secondary paper feed.	1-5-54
(3) Skewed paper feed.	1-5-54
(4) The scanner does not travel.	1-5-54
(5) Multiple sheets of paper are fed at one time.	1-5-54
(6) Paper jams.	1-5-54
(7) Toner drops on the paper conveying path.	1-5-55
(8) Abnormal noise is heard.	1-5-55

1-6 Assembly and Disassembly

1-6-1 Precautions for assembly and disassembly	1-6-1
(1) Precautions	1-6-1
(2) Running a maintenance item	1-6-2
1-6-2 Paper feed section	1-6-3
(1) Detaching and refitting the forwarding, paper feed and separation pulleys	1-6-3
(2) Detaching and refitting the bypass separation, bypass paper feed and bypass forwarding pulleys	1-6-5
(3) Adjustment after roller and clutch replacement	1-6-10
(3-1) Adjusting the leading edge registration of image printing	1-6-10
(3-2) Adjusting the leading edge registration for memory image printing	1-6-11
(3-3) Adjusting the center line of image printing	1-6-12
(3-4) Adjusting the margins for printing	1-6-13
(3-5) Adjusting the amount of slack in the paper.	1-6-14
1-6-3 Optical section	1-6-15
(1) Detaching and refitting the exposure lamp	1-6-15
(2) Detaching and refitting the scanner wires	1-6-16
(2-1) Detaching the scanner wires	1-6-16
(2-2) Refitting the scanner wires	1-6-17
(3) Detaching and refitting the laser scanner unit	1-6-20
(4) Adjusting the skew of the laser scanner unit (reference)	1-6-22
(5) Detaching and refitting the ISU (reference)	1-6-23
(6) Adjusting the position of the ISU (reference)	1-6-25
(7) Adjusting the longitudinal squareness (reference)	1-6-26
(8) Adjusting magnification of the scanner in the main scanning direction	1-6-27
(9) Adjusting magnification of the scanner in the auxiliary scanning direction	1-6-28
(10) Adjusting the scanner leading edge registration	1-6-29
(11) Adjusting the scanner center line	1-6-30
(12) Adjusting the margins for scanning an original on the contact glass	1-6-31

1-6-4	Drum section	1-6-32
(1)	Detaching and refitting the drum unit.....	1-6-32
(2)	Detaching and refitting the main charger unit.....	1-6-32
(3)	Detaching and refitting the drum separation claw assemblies.....	1-6-33
1-6-5	Developing section	1-6-34
(1)	Detaching and refitting the developing unit	1-6-34
1-6-6	Transfer section	1-6-35
(1)	Detaching and refitting the transfer roller assembly.....	1-6-35
1-6-7	Fixing section	1-6-36
(1)	Detaching and refitting the fixing unit	1-6-36
(2)	Detaching and refitting the heat roller separation claws.....	1-6-36
(3)	Detaching and refitting the press roller.....	1-6-37
(4)	Detaching and refitting the fixing heater M and S.....	1-6-38
(5)	Detaching and refitting the heat roller.....	1-6-39
(6)	Detaching and refitting the fixing unit thermistor 1 and 2.....	1-6-40
(7)	Adjusting front position of the fixing unit (adjusting lateral squareness).....	1-6-41
1-6-8	Others	1-6-42
(1)	Detaching and refitting the ozone filters (only for 230 V specifications).....	1-6-42
 1-7 Requirements on PCB Replacement		
1-7-1	Upgrading the firmware on the main PCB.....	1-7-1
1-7-2	Adjustment-free variable resistors (VR).....	1-7-2
1-7-3	Remarks on main PCB replacement.....	1-7-2
1-7-4	Upgrading the the printer board firmware	1-7-3
 2-1 Mechanical construction		
2-1-1	Paper feed section	2-1-1
2-1-2	Main charging section	2-1-5
2-1-3	Optical section.....	2-1-7
(1)	Original scanning	2-1-8
(2)	Image printing	2-1-9
2-1-4	Developing section.....	2-1-12
(1)	Formation of magnetic brush.....	2-1-13
(2)	Computing the absolute humidity	2-1-14
(3)	Single component developing system.....	2-1-15
2-1-5	Transfer and separation sections.....	2-1-17
2-1-6	Cleaning and charge erasing sections.....	2-1-19
2-1-7	Fixing section	2-1-20
2-1-8	Eject and switchback sections.....	2-1-22
2-1-9	Duplex section.....	2-1-24
(1)	Paper conveying operation in duplex copying.....	2-1-25
 2-2 Electrical Parts Layout		
2-2-1	Electrical parts layout	2-2-1
(1)	PCBs	2-2-1
(2)	Switches and sensors.....	2-2-2
(3)	Motors.....	2-2-4
(4)	Other electrical components.....	2-2-5
 2-3 Operation of the PCBs		
2-3-1	Power source PCB	2-3-1
2-3-2	Main PCB	2-3-5
2-3-3	Operation unit PCB	2-3-17
2-3-4	Scanner drive PCB.....	2-3-22
2-3-5	CCD PCB	2-3-25

2-4 Appendixes

Timing chart No. 1	2-4-1
Timing chart No. 2	2-4-2
Timing chart No. 3	2-4-3
Timing chart No. 4	2-4-4
Timing chart No. 5	2-4-5
Timing chart No. 6	2-4-6
Timing chart No. 7	2-4-7
Timing chart No. 8	2-4-8
Timing chart No. 9	2-4-9
Timing chart No. 10	2-4-10
Timing chart No. 11	2-4-11
Chart of image adjustment procedures	2-4-12
Maintenance parts list.....	2-4-15
Periodic maintenance procedures.....	2-4-16
Optional devices supplied parts list.....	2-4-18
General wiring diagram	2-4-20

1-1-1 Specifications

Type	Desktop
Copying system	Indirect electrostatic system
Originals	Sheets and books
	Maximum size: A3/11" × 17"
Original feed system	Fixed
Copy paper	Drawer: Plain paper (64 – 105 g/m ²)
	Bypass table: Plain paper (45 – 200 g/m ²)
	Special paper: Transparencies, tracing paper, colored paper, letterhead and envelopes (when using the printer function only)
	Note: Use the bypass table for special paper.
Copying sizes	Maximum: A3/11" × 17"
	Minimum: A6R/5 ¹ / ₂ " × 8 ¹ / ₂ " (When the bypass table is used)
Magnification ratios	Manual mode: 25 – 400%, 1% increments
	Auto copy mode: fixed ratios
	Metric
	1:1 ± 1.0%, 1:4.00/1:2.00/1:1.41/1:1.22/1:1.15/1:0.86/1:0.81/1:0.70/1:0.50/1:0.25
	Inch
	1:1 ± 1.0%, 1:4.00/1:2.00/1:1.29/1:1.21/1:0.78/1:0.64/1:0.50/1:0.25
Copy speed	At 100% magnification in copy mode:
	30 cpm copier
	A3/11" × 17": 20 copies/min.
	B4/8 ¹ / ₂ " × 14": 20 copies/min.
	A4/11" × 8 ¹ / ₂ " : 30 copies/min.
	A4R/8 ¹ / ₂ " × 11": 22 copies/min.
	B5: 30 copies/min.
	B5R: 18 copies/min.
	40 cpm copier
	A3/11" × 17": 23 copies/min.
	B4/8 ¹ / ₂ " × 14": 23 copies/min.
	A4/11" × 8 ¹ / ₂ " : 40 copies/min.
	A4R/8 ¹ / ₂ " × 11": 27 copies/min.
	B5: 40 copies/min.
	B5R: 22 copies/min.
	50 cpm copier
	A3/11" × 17": 26 copies/min.
	B4/8 ¹ / ₂ " × 14": 26 copies/min.
	A4/11" × 8 ¹ / ₂ " : 50 copies/min.
	A4R/8 ¹ / ₂ " × 11": 31 copies/min.
	B5: 50 copies/min.
	B5R: 24 copies/min.
First copy time	From 3.9 s (A4/11" × 8 ¹ / ₂ ") <30 cpm copier>
	From 3.5 s (A4/11" × 8 ¹ / ₂ ") <40 cpm copier/50 cpm copier>
Warm-up time	25 s or less (room temperature 23°C/73.4°F, 50% RH)
	In preheat/energy saver mode: 12 s or less (room temperature 23°C/73.4°F, 50% RH) [priority to power save]
Paper feed system	Automatic feed
	Capacity:
	Drawers: 500 sheets
	Manual feed
	Capacity:
	Bypass: 200 sheets
Continuous copying	1 - 999 sheets
Photoconductor	a-Si (drum diameter 40 mm)
Charging system	Single positive corona charging (500 µA)
Exposure light source	Semiconductor laser
Exposure scanning system	Polygon mirror
Developing system	Dry, reverse developing (single component system)
	Developer: 1-component, magnetism toner
	Developing bias: +1.72 kV AC
	Developing shift bias: 160 V
	Toner replenishing: automatic from a toner container

2FD/2FF/2FG-3.0

Transfer system	Transfer roller (100 μ A)
Separation system	Separation electrode (60 or 10 μ A depending on the paper)
Fixing system	Heat roller Heat source: halogen heaters (120 V specifications: main 600 W, sub 500 W/220-240 V specifications: main 640 W, sub 534 W) Control temperature: 175°C/347°F (at normal ambient temperature, 50 cpm copier) 170°C/338°F (at normal ambient temperature, 40 cpm copier) 165°C/329°F (at normal ambient temperature, 30 cpm copier) Abnormally high temperature protection device: 170°C/338°F thermostat Fixing pressure: 107.8 N
Charge erasing system	Exposure by cleaning lamp
Cleaning system	Cleaning blade and roller
Scanning system	Flat bed scanning by CCD image sensor
Bit map memory	27 MB (standard)
Image storage memory	37 MB (standard)
Resolution	600 \times 600 dpi
Light source	Inert gas lamp
Dimensions	585 (W) \times 646 (D) \times 745 (H) mm 23" (W) \times 25 ² / ₅ " (D) \times 29 ¹ / ₃ " (H)
Weight	Approx. 82 kg/165 lbs
Floor requirements	1512 (W) \times 646 (D) mm 59 ¹ / ₂ " (W) \times 25 ² / ₅ " (D)
Functions	Auto paper selection mode, Image quality selection, Auto magnification selection mode, Zoom mode, Preset zoom mode, XY zoom mode, 2-sided copy modes, Page separation/Split copy modes, Margin mode, Centering/Image shift mode, Memo mode, Border erase modes, Combine/Merge Copy modes, Print page numbers mode, Form overlay mode, Booklet/Stitching mode, Book to Booklet mode, Sort/Finished mode, Auto rotation function, Cover mode, Transparency + backing sheet mode, Invert mode, Mirror image mode, Proof mode, Repeat copy mode*, Batch scanning mode, Eco print mode, Program function, Job build mode, Form registration*, Shared data box*, Synergy print boxes*, Copy management mode, Language selection function *Requires the optional hard disk
Power source	120 V AC, 60 Hz, 12 A Max. 220 – 240 V AC, 50/60 Hz, 6.5 A Max.
Power consumption	Max. 1450 W
Options	DP, paper feeder, large paper deck, job separator, 3000-sheet finisher, 1000-sheet finisher, booklet stitcher, built-in finisher, key counter, fax board, printer board, network printer board, network scanner board, hard disk

1-1-2 Parts names and their functions

(1) Copier

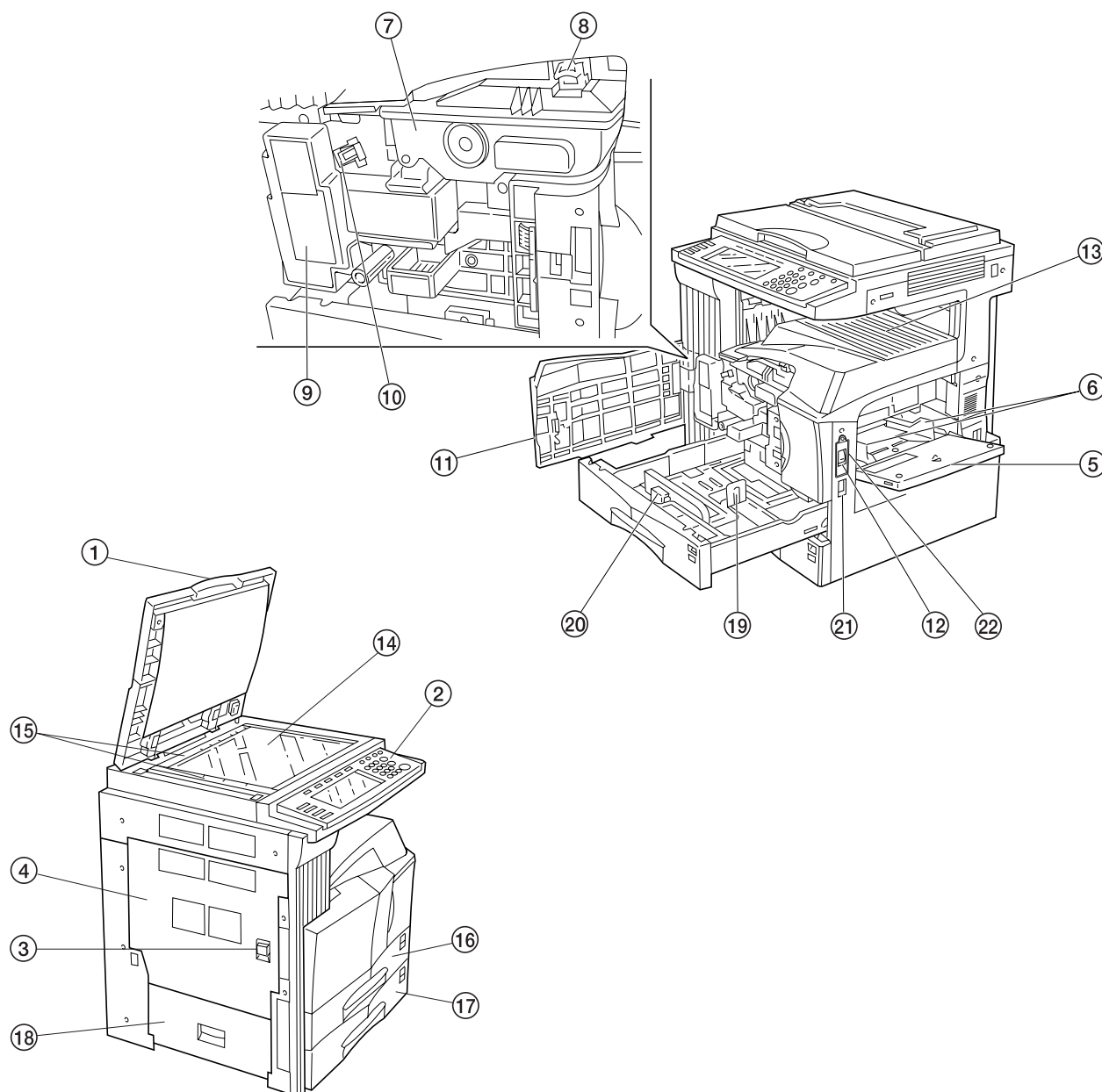


Figure 1-1-1

- | | |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| ① Original cover | ⑬ Copy store section |
| ② Operation panel | ⑭ Platen |
| ③ Conveying cover handle | ⑮ Original size scales |
| ④ Conveying cover | ⑯ Upper drawer |
| ⑤ Bypass tray | ⑰ Lower drawer |
| ⑥ Insert guides | ⑱ Length adjustment plate |
| ⑦ Toner container | ⑲ Width adjustment lever |
| ⑧ Toner container release lever | ⑳ Handles for transport |
| ⑨ Toner disposal tank | ㉑ Main power switch cover* |
| ⑩ Cleaning shaft | |
| ⑪ Front cover | |
| ⑫ Main power switch | |

*: Only for metric specifications.

(2) Operation panel

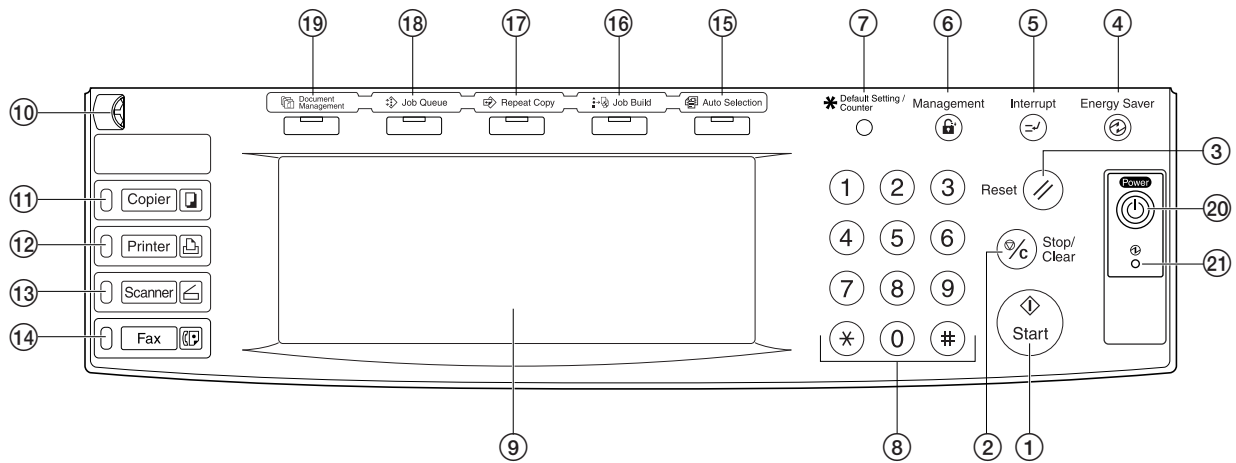


Figure 1-1-2

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| ① Start key (Indicator lamp) | ⑫ Printer key (Indicator lamp) |
| ② Stop/clear key | ⑬ Scanner key (Indicator lamp) |
| ③ Reset key | ⑭ Fax key (Indicator lamp) |
| ④ Energy Saver (preheat) key | ⑮ Auto Selection key (Indicator lamp) |
| ⑤ Interrupt key (Indicator lamp) | ⑯ Job Build key (Indicator lamp) |
| ⑥ Management key | ⑰ Repeat Copy key (Indicator lamp) |
| ⑦ Default Setting/Counter key | ⑱ Job Queue key (Indicator lamp) |
| ⑧ Numeric key | ⑲ Document Management key (Indicator lamp) |
| ⑨ Touch panel | ⑳ Power key (Indicator lamp)* |
| ⑩ Brightness adjustment control dial | ㉑ Main power Indicator lamp* |
| ⑪ Copier key (Indicator lamp) | |

*: Only for metric specifications.

1-1-3 Machine cross section

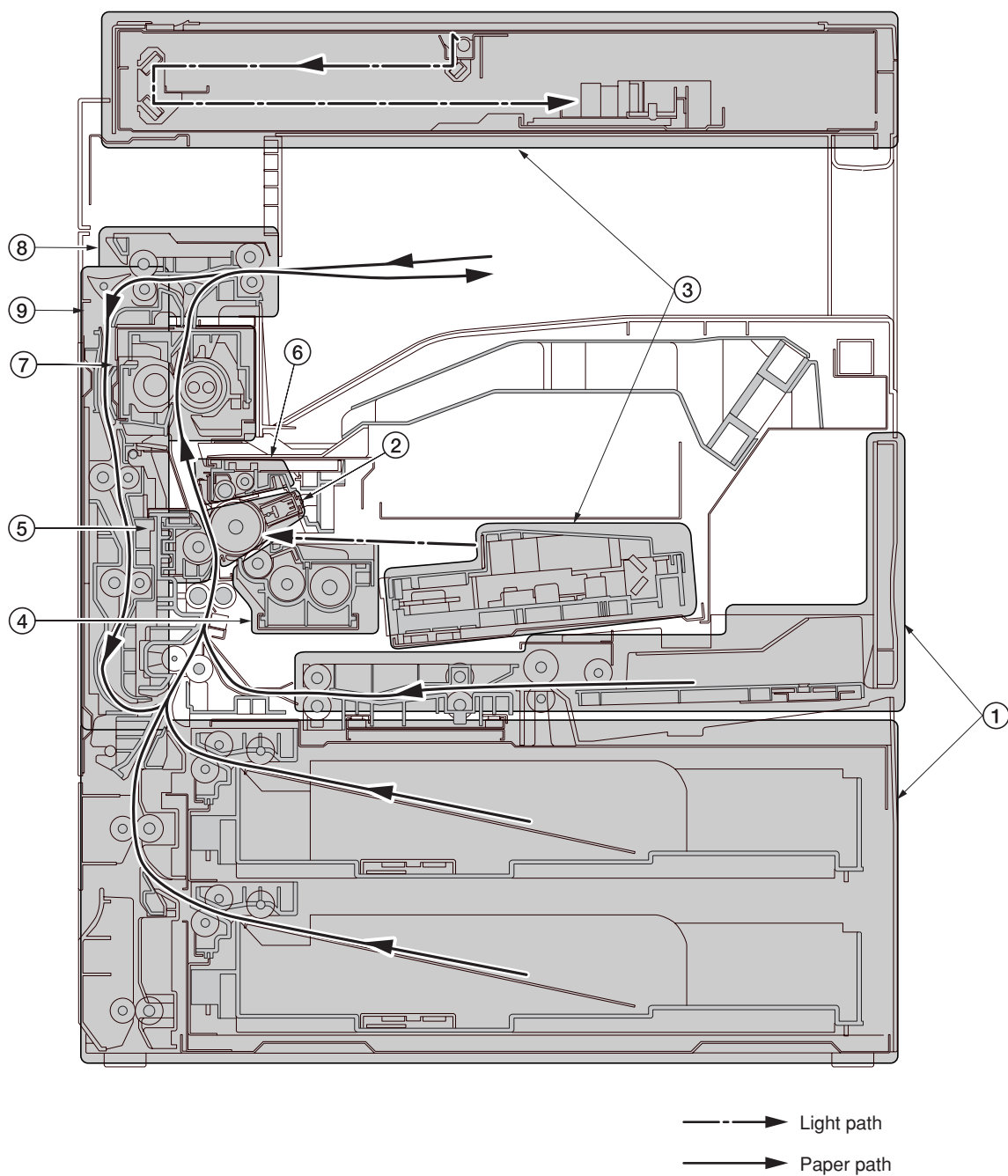
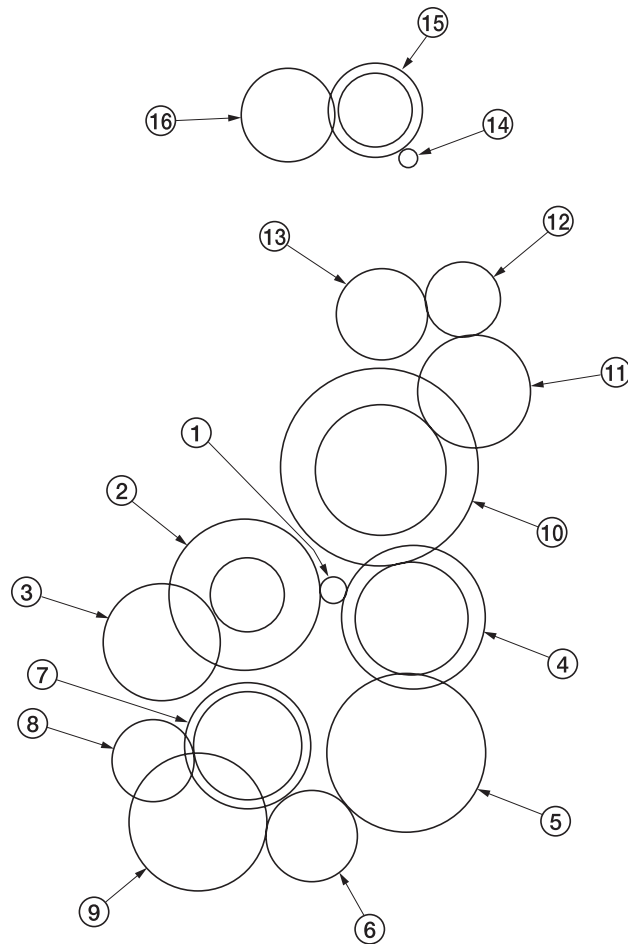


Figure 1-1-3 Machine cross section

- ① Paper feed section
- ② Main charging section
- ③ Optical section
- ④ Developing section
- ⑤ Transfer and separation section
- ⑥ Cleaning and charge erasing section
- ⑦ Fixing section
- ⑧ Eject and switchback section
- ⑨ Duplex section

1-1-4 Drive system

(1) Drive system 1 (drive motor and eject motor drive trains)

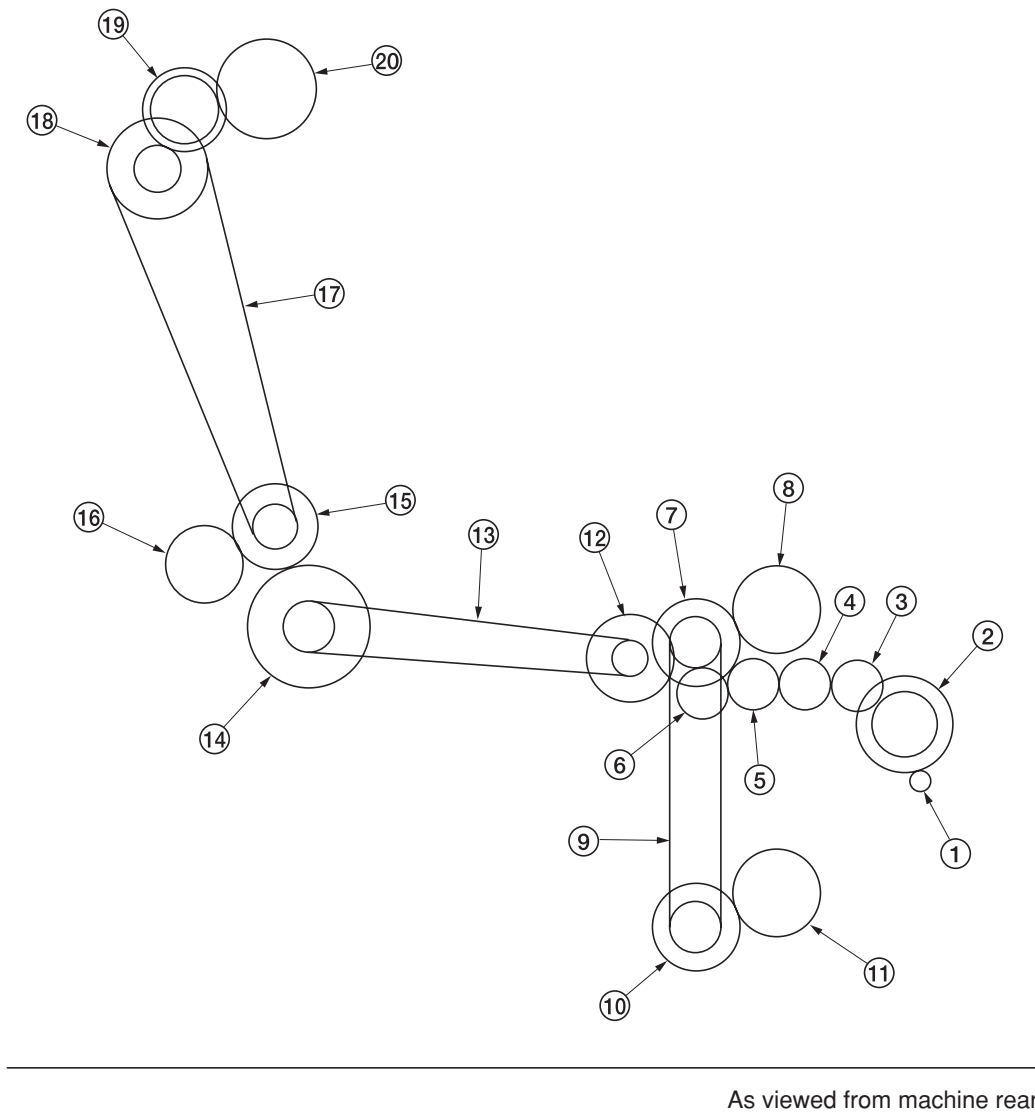


As viewed from machine rear

Figure 1-1-4

- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| ① Drive motor gear | ⑨ Registration clutch gear |
| ② Drum gear Z76H/Z30H | ⑩ Gear Z63H/Z45S |
| ③ Drum gear Z70H | ⑪ Gear Z37S |
| ④ Gear Z76H/Z35H | ⑫ Gear Z24S |
| ⑤ Gear Z50H | ⑬ Joint gear Z32S |
| ⑥ Gear Z36S/Z31H | ⑭ Eject motor gear |
| ⑦ Gear Z37H/28H | ⑮ Gear Z47S/Z28S |
| ⑧ Gear Z34H | ⑯ Eject gear Z30S |

(2) Drive system 2 (paper feed motor drive train)



As viewed from machine rear

Figure 1-1-5

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| ① Paper feed motor gear | ⑪ Lower paper feed clutch gear |
| ② Gear Z76H/Z35S | ⑫ Gear Z41S/P15 |
| ③ Feed gear Z25 | ⑬ Bypass drive belt |
| ④ Feed gear Z25 | ⑭ Gear Z60S/P20 |
| ⑤ Feed gear Z25 | ⑮ Gear Z41S/P18 |
| ⑥ Feed gear Z25 | ⑯ Gear Z40S/Z32S |
| ⑦ Gear Z41S/Z24S/P30 | ⑰ Container drive belt |
| ⑧ Upper paper feed clutch gear | ⑱ Gear Z24S/P40 |
| ⑨ Paper feed drive belt | ⑲ Gear Z40S/Z25S |
| ⑩ Gear Z41S/Z24S | ⑳ Container gear |

(3) Drive system 3 (duplex section)

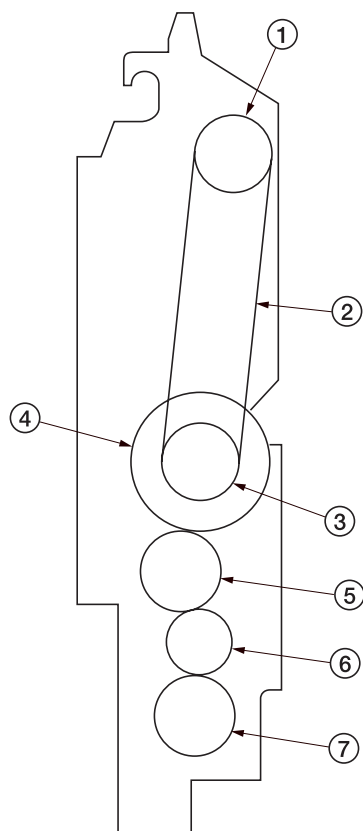


Figure 1-1-6

- ① Pulley T30
- ② Duplex belt
- ③ Pulley T30
- ④ Duplex feed clutch gear
- ⑤ Gear 25
- ⑥ Idle gear 20
- ⑦ Gear 25

1-2-1 Drum

Note the following when handling or storing the drum.

- When removing the drum unit, never expose the drum surface to strong direct light.
- Keep the drum at an ambient temperature between 0°C/32°F and 35°C/95°F and at a relative humidity not higher than 85% RH. Avoid abrupt changes in temperature and humidity.
- Avoid exposure to any substance which is harmful to or may affect the quality of the drum.
- Do not touch the drum surface with any object. Should it be touched by hands or stained with oil, clean it.

1-2-2 Toner

Store the toner in a cool, dark place. Avoid direct light and high humidity.

1-2-3 Installation environment

1. Temperature: 10 - 35°C/50 - 95°F
2. Humidity: 15 - 85%RH
3. Power supply: 120 V AC, 12 A
220 - 240 V AC, 5.7 A (Average)
4. Power source frequency: 50 Hz $\pm 0.3\%$ /60 Hz $\pm 0.3\%$
5. Installation location
 - Avoid direct sunlight or bright lighting. Ensure that the photoconductor will not be exposed to direct sunlight or other strong light when removing paper jams.
 - Avoid extremes of temperature and humidity, abrupt ambient temperature changes, and hot or cold air directed onto the machine.
 - Avoid dust and vibration.
 - Choose a surface capable of supporting the weight of the machine.
 - Place the machine on a level surface (maximum allowance inclination: 1°).
 - Avoid air-borne substances that may adversely affect the machine or degrade the photoconductor, such as mercury, acidic or alkaline vapors, inorganic gasses, NOx, SOx gases and chlorine-based organic solvents.
 - Select a room with good ventilation.
6. Allow sufficient access for proper operation and maintenance of the machine.
Machine front: 1000 mm/39³/₈" Machine rear: 300 mm/11¹³/₁₆"
Machine right: 300 mm/11¹³/₁₆" Machine left: 300 mm/11¹³/₁₆"

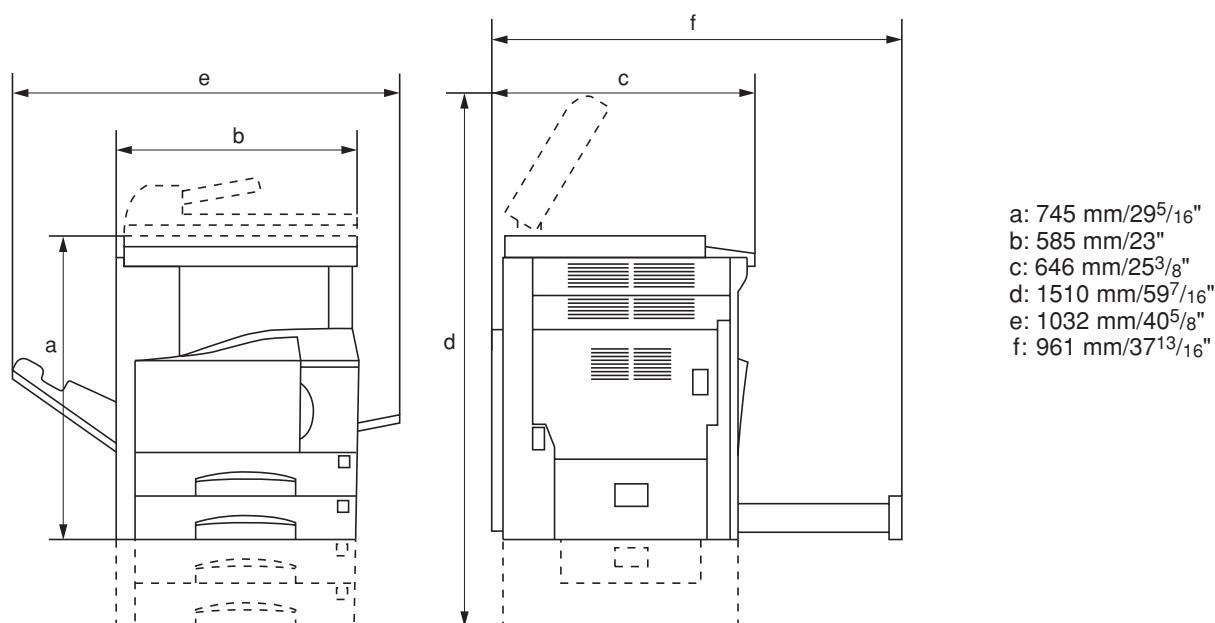
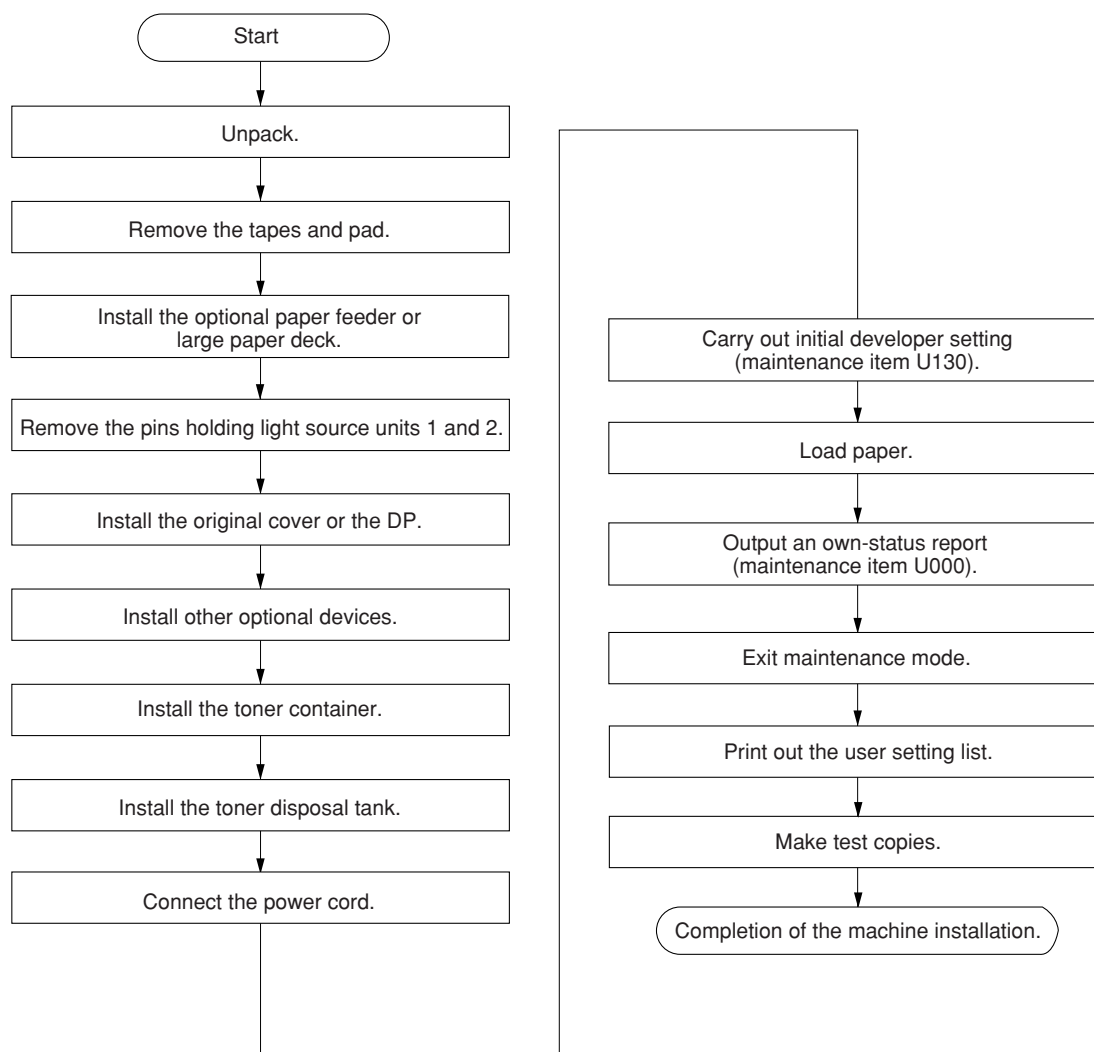


Figure 1-2-1 Installation dimensions

1-3-1 Unpacking and installation

(1) Installation procedure



Moving the machine

When moving the machine, pull out the four handles for transport on the right and left sides and hold them.

* For the left front handle for transport, open the door and push it into the machine before pulling out the handle.

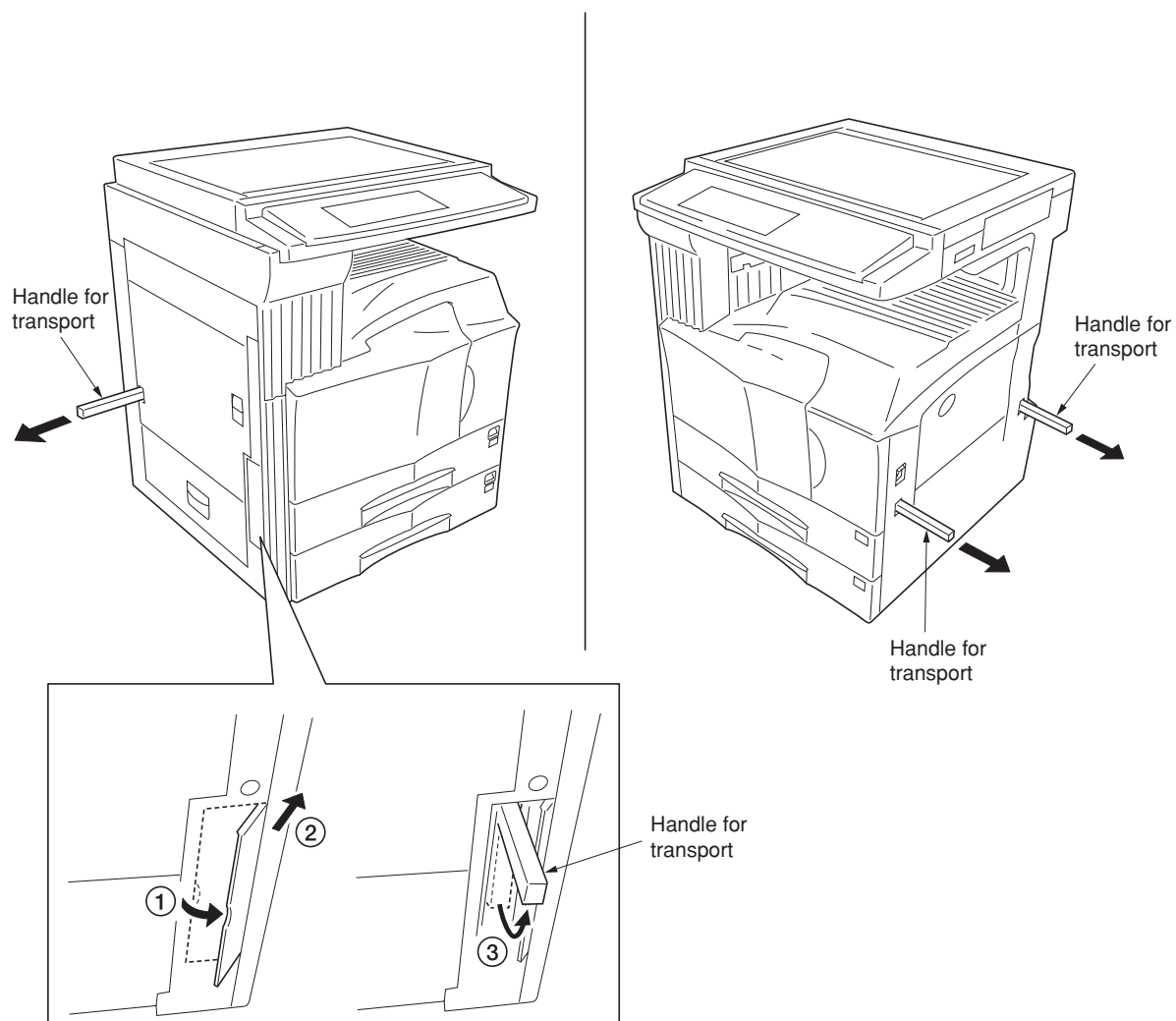


Figure 1-3-1

Unpack.

• 120 V specifications

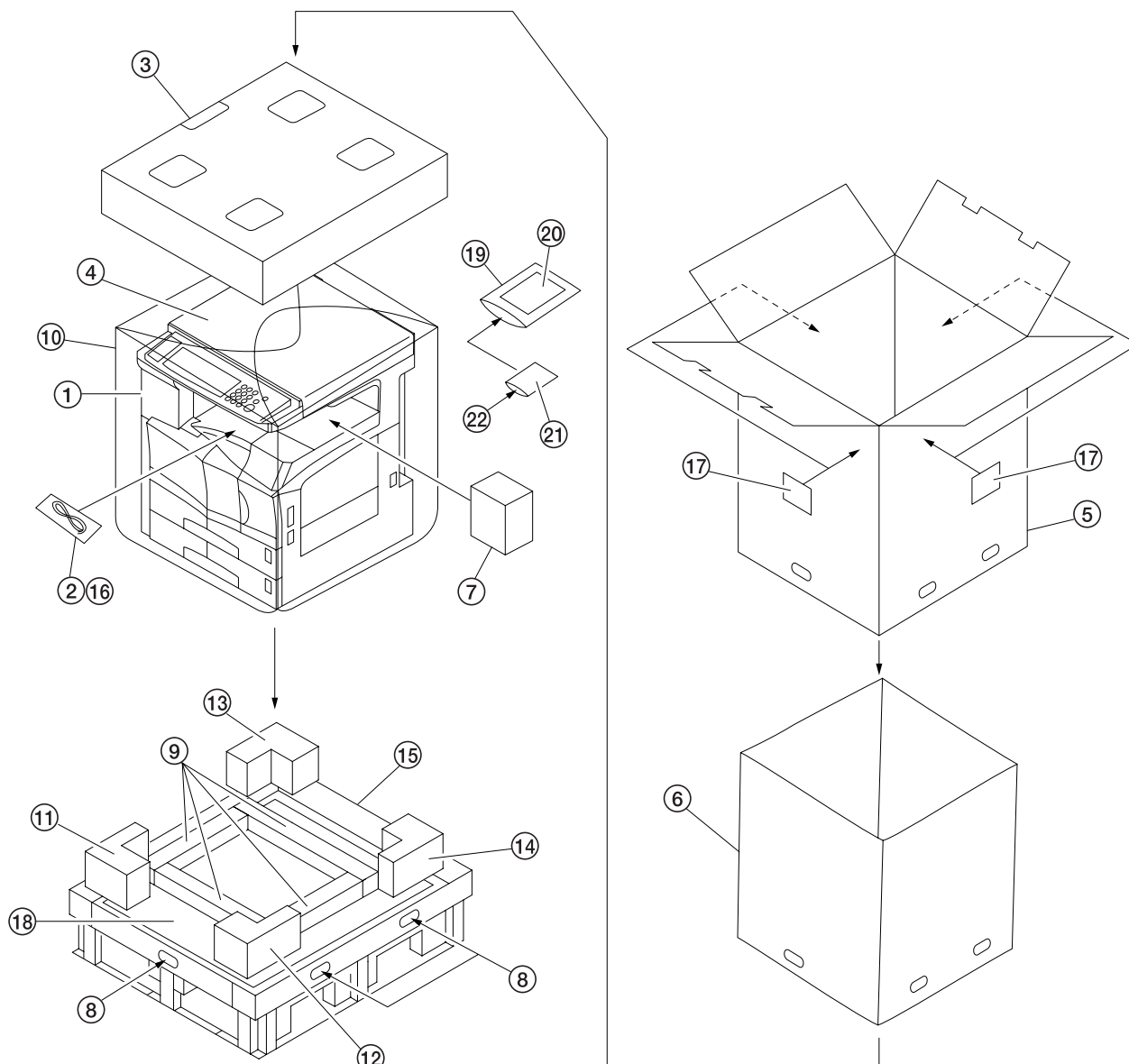


Figure 1-3-2a Unpacking

- | | |
|------------------|-------------------|
| ① Copier | ⑫ Front right pad |
| ② Power cord | ⑬ Rear left pad |
| ③ Upper pad | ⑭ Rear right pad |
| ④ Sheet | ⑮ Skid |
| ⑤ Outer case | ⑯ Plastic bag |
| ⑥ Inner frame | ⑰ Bar code labels |
| ⑦ Eject spacer | ⑱ Bottom spacer |
| ⑧ Hinge joints | ⑲ Plastic bag |
| ⑨ Bottom pad | ⑳ Operation guide |
| ⑩ Machine cover | ㉑ Plastic bag |
| ⑪ Front left pad | ㉒ M3 x 8 screws |

Caution: Place the machine on a level surface.

• 230 V specifications

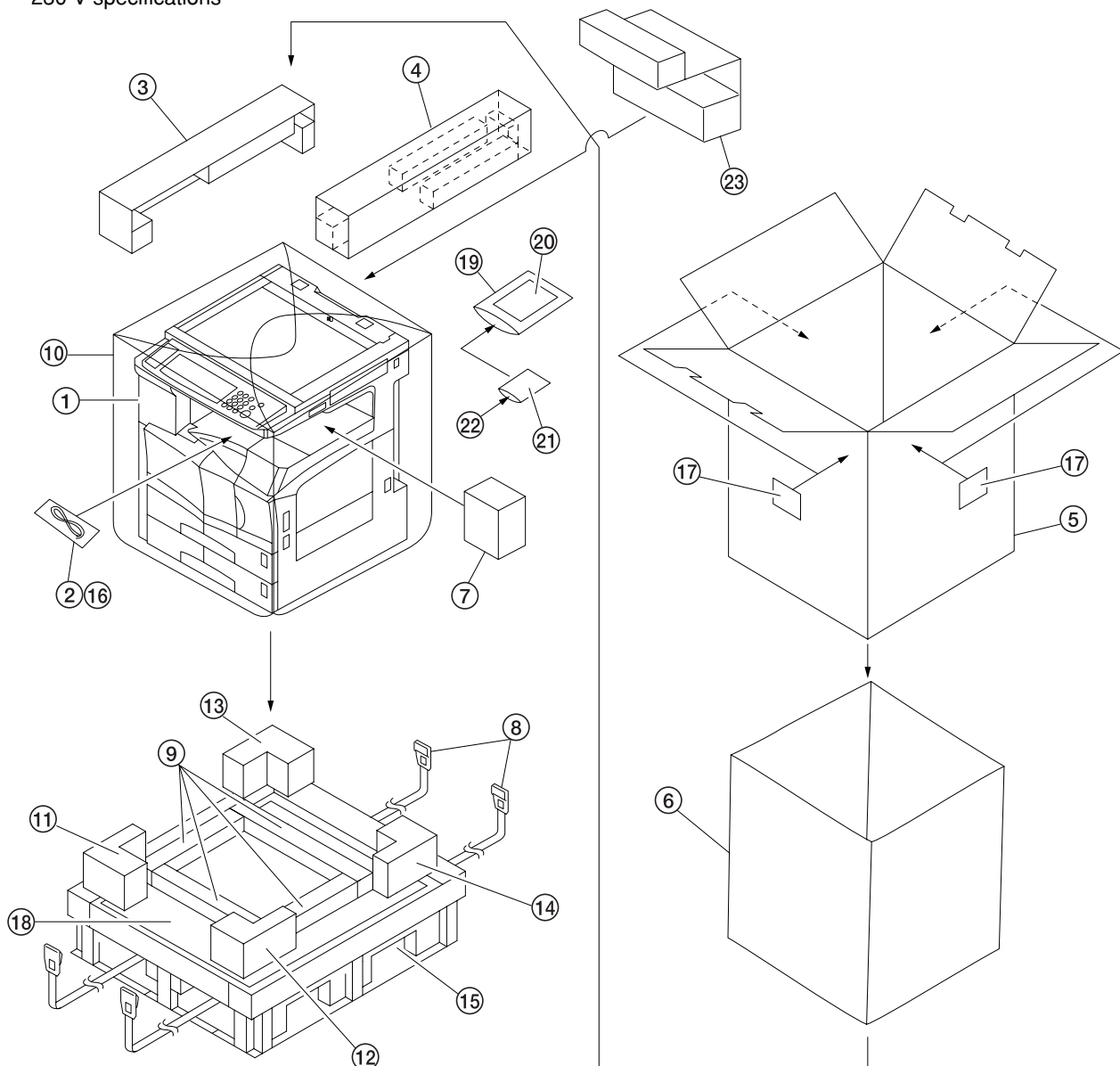


Figure 1-3-2b Unpacking

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| ① Copier | ⑬ Rear left pad |
| ② Power cord | ⑭ Rear right pad |
| ③ Upper left pad | ⑮ Skid |
| ④ Upper right pad | ⑯ Plastic bag |
| ⑤ Outer case | ⑰ Bar code labels |
| ⑥ Inner frame | ⑱ Bottom spacer |
| ⑦ Eject spacer | ⑲ Plastic bag |
| ⑧ Belts | ⑳ Operation guide |
| ⑨ Bottom pad | ㉑ Plastic bag |
| ⑩ Machine cover | ㉒ M3 x 8 screws |
| ⑪ Front left pad | ㉓ Spacer |
| ⑫ Front right pad | |

Caution: Place the machine on a level surface.

Remove the tapes and pad.

1. Remove the tapes holding the front cover, bypass tray, drawers and original detection switch.
2. Remove the tape and then remove the pad at the eject section.
3. Remove the tape holding the power cord.

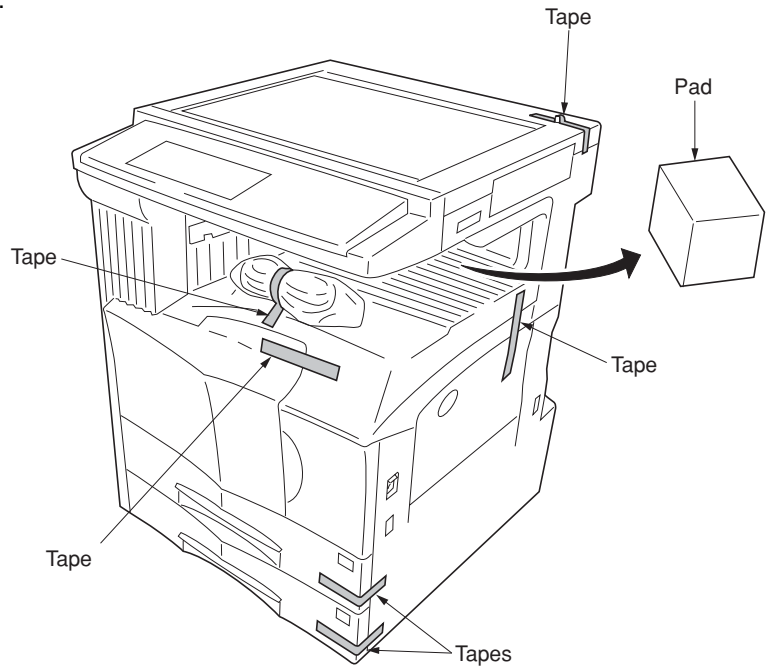


Figure 1-3-3

4. Remove the three tapes holding the pins for light source units 1 and 2.
5. Remove the tape holding the conveying cover.

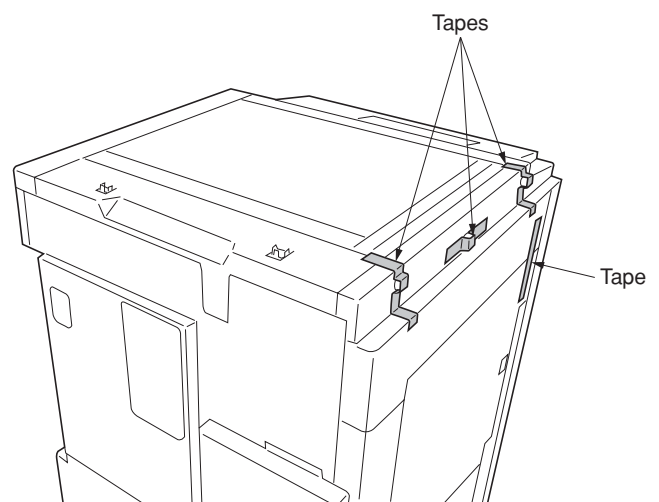


Figure 1-3-4

6. Pull upper and lower drawers out and remove the tape holding each of the drawer lift.
*If necessary, please fix the cassette cursor with the screws included in the machine box.

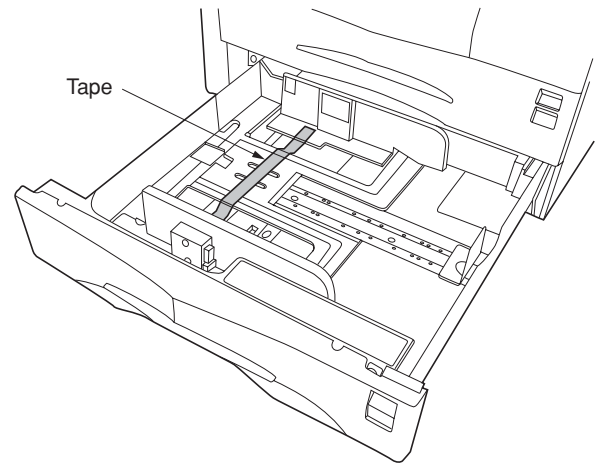


Figure 1-3-5

Install the optional paper feeder or large paper deck.

1. Install the optional paper feeder or large paper deck as necessary (see page 1-3-13 to 1-3-21).

Remove the pins holding light source units 1 and 2.

1. Remove the two pins for light source unit 1 and the pin for light source unit 2.

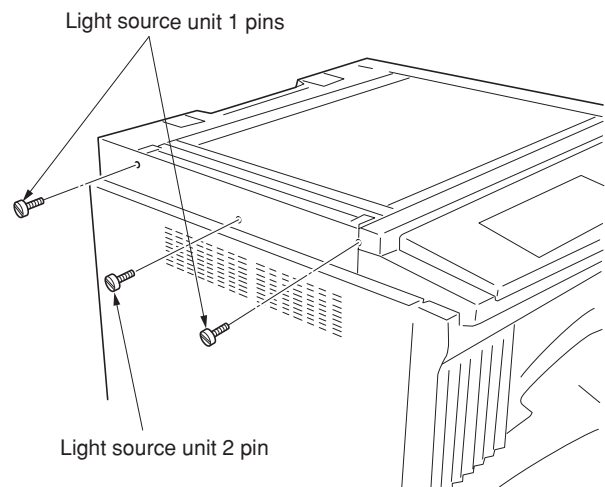


Figure 1-3-6

Install the original cover or the DP.

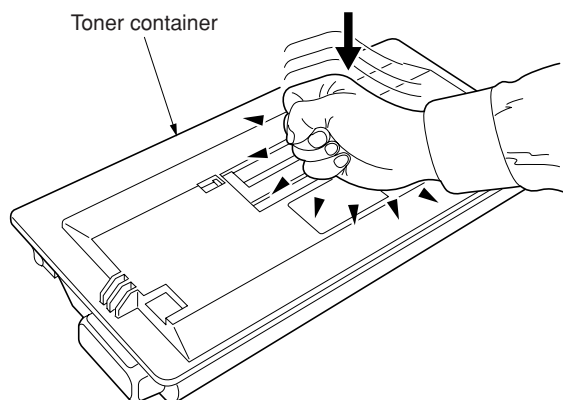
1. Install the original cover or DP (see page 1-3-33 when installing the DP).

Install other optional devices.

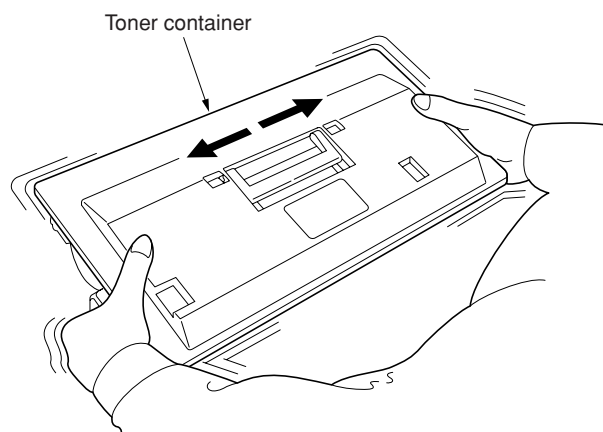
1. Install the optional devices (job separator, finisher, fax board, and/or printer board etc.) as necessary.

Install the toner container.

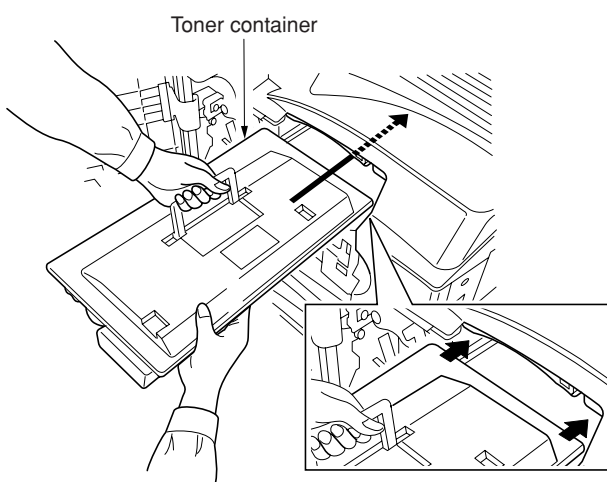
1. Open the front cover.
2. Tap the top of the toner container five to six times.

**Figure 1-3-7**

3. Shake the toner container approximately 10 times in the horizontal direction to stir toner.

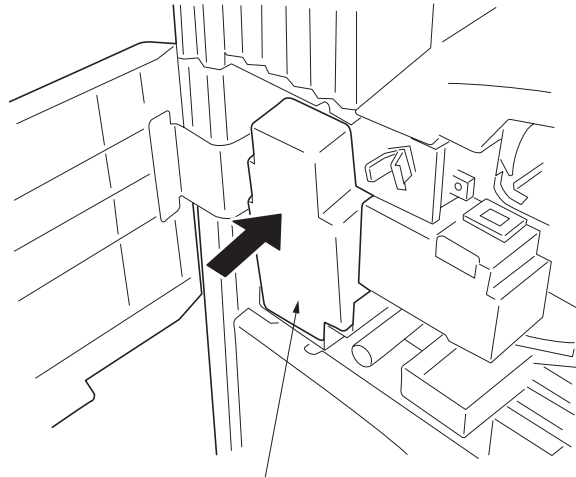
**Figure 1-3-8**

4. Gently push the toner container into the copier along the rails.
*Push the container all the way into the copier until it locks in place.

**Figure 1-3-9**

Install the toner disposal tank.

1. Install the toner disposal tank in the copier.
2. Close the front cover.



Toner disposal tank

Figure 1-3-10

Connect the power cord.

1. Connect the power cord to the connector on the copier.
2. Insert the power plug into the wall outlet.

Carry out initial developer setting (maintenance item U130).

1. Turn the main switch on and enter the maintenance mode by entering "10871087" using the numeric keys.
2. Enter "130" using the numeric keys and press the start key.
3. Press the start key to execute the maintenance item.
The drive stops within approximately 5 minutes.
4. Press the stop/clear key.

Load paper.

1. Load paper in the drawer.

Output an own-status report (maintenance item U000).

1. Enter "000" using the numeric keys and press the start key.
2. Select "MAINTENANCE" and press the start key to output a list of the current settings of the maintenance items.
3. Press the stop/clear key.

Exit maintenance mode

1. Enter "001" using the numeric keys and press the start key.
The machine exits the maintenance mode.

Print out the user setting list.

1. Press the * key to enter default setting and press the [Print form] key. The counter report will be output.

Make test copies.

1. Place an original and make test copies.

Completion of the machine installation.

This page is intentionally left blank.

1-3-2 Setting initial copy modes

Factory settings are as follows:

Maintenance item No.	Contents	Factory setting
U253	Switching between double and single counts	Double count
U254	Turning auto start function on/off	ON
U255	Setting auto clear time	90s
U258	Switching copy operation at toner empty detection	SINGLE MODE, 70
U260	Changing the copy count timing	After ejection
U264	Setting the display order of the date	Inch specifications: MONTH-DATE-YEAR Metric specifications: DATE-MONTH-YEAR
U277	Setting auto application change time	30s
U331	Switching the finisher eject section	OFF
U342	Setting the ejection restriction	ON
U343	Switching between duplex/simplex copy mode	OFF
U344	Setting preheat/energy saver mode	ENERGY STAR

1-3-3 Installing the key counter (option)

Key counter installation requires the following parts:

Key counter set (P/N 2A369703)

Contents of the set:

- Key counter cover (P/N 2A360010)
- Key counter retainer (P/N 66060030)
- Key counter cover retainer (P/N 66060022)
- Key counter mount (P/N 66060040)
- Key counter socket assembly (P/N 41529210)
- Four (4) M4 × 6 bronze TP-A screws (P/N B4304060)
- Two (2) M4 × 10 bronze TP-A screws (P/N B4304100)
- One (1) M4 × 20 bronze TP-A screw (P/N B4304200)
- One (1) M4 × 6 chrome TP-A screw (P/N B4104060)
- One (1) M3 × 8 bronze binding screw (P/N B1303080)
- One (1) M4 × 30 bronze binding screw (P/N B1304300)
- Two (2) M3 × 6 bronze flat-head screws (P/N B2303060)
- One (1) M3 bronze nut (P/N C2303000)

Procedure

1. Fit the key counter socket assembly to the key counter retainer using the two screws and nut.
2. Fit the key counter mount to the key counter cover using the two screws, and attach the key counter retainer to the mount using the two screws.

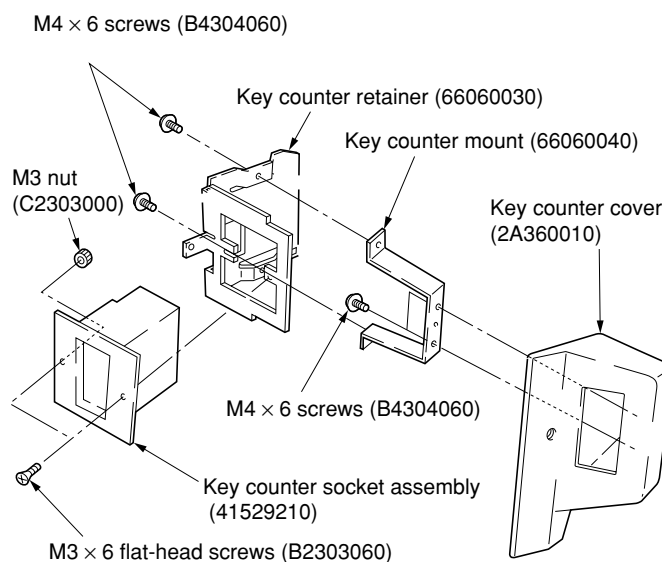


Figure 1-3-11

3. Remove the three screws holding the middle right cover and then the cover.
4. Cut out the aperture plate on the middle right cover using nippers.
5. Pass the connect inside the copier through the aperture and refit the middle right cover.

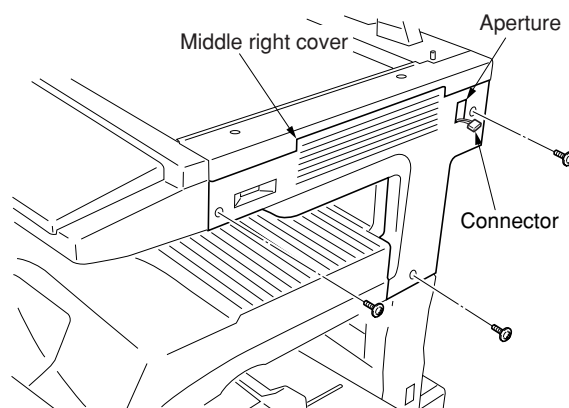


Figure 1-3-12

6. Pass the connector of the key counter through the aperture in the key counter retainer, and insert into the connector of the copier.
7. Seat the projection of the key counter cover retainer in the aperture in the middle right cover.
8. Fit the key counter cover with the key counter socket assembly inserted to the key counter cover retainer on the copier using the screw.
9. Insert the key counter into the key counter socket assembly.

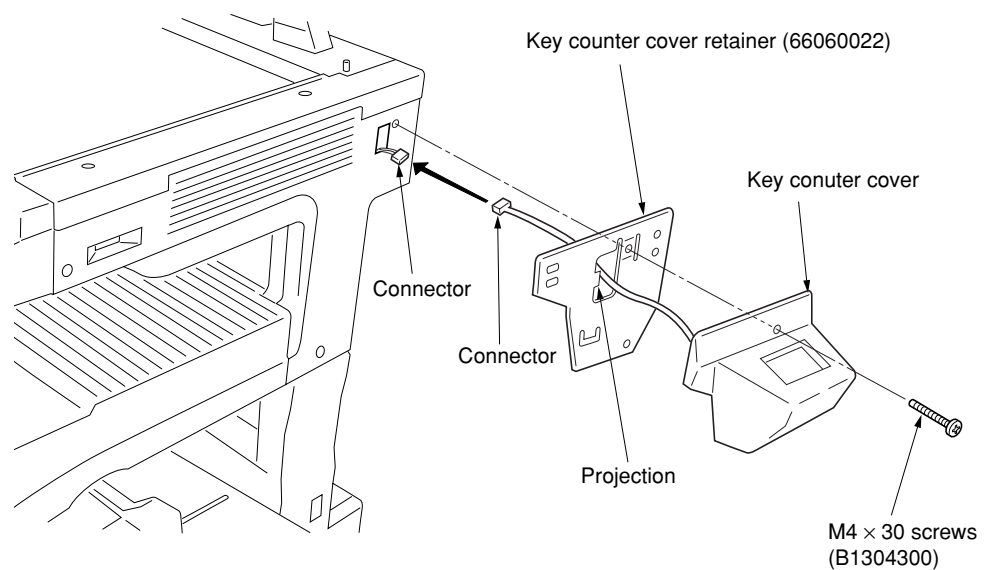


Figure 1-3-13

10. Turn the main switch on and enter the maintenance mode.
11. Run maintenance item U204 and select "KEY-COUNTER."
12. Exit the maintenance mode.
13. Check that the message requesting the key counter to be inserted is displayed on the touch panel when the key counter is pulled out.
14. Check that the counter counts up as copies are made.

1-3-4 Installing the drawer heater (option)

Drawer heater installation requires the following parts:

- Drawer heater (P/N 34860030): for 120 V specifications
- Drawer heater (P/N 33960020): for 220 - 240 V specifications
- Band (P/N M2107120)

Procedure

1. Remove thirteen screws and then the rear cover.

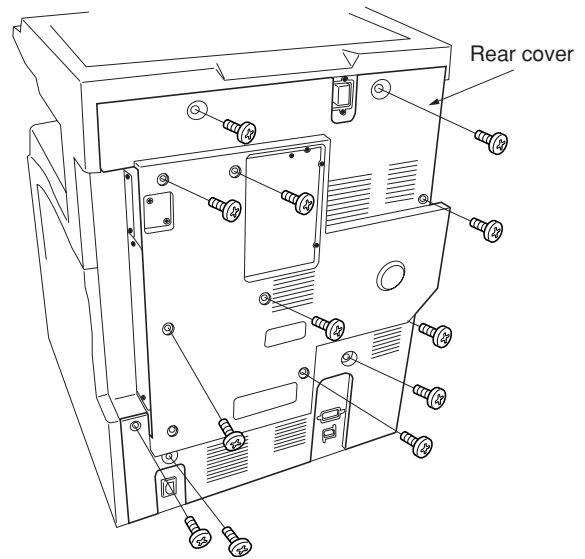


Figure 1-3-14

2. Pull the upper and lower drawers out.
3. Fit the drawer heater to the bottom of the machine and bind the wire of the drawer heater with the band.
4. Put the wire of the drawer heater out of the machine through the aperture of the rear frame.

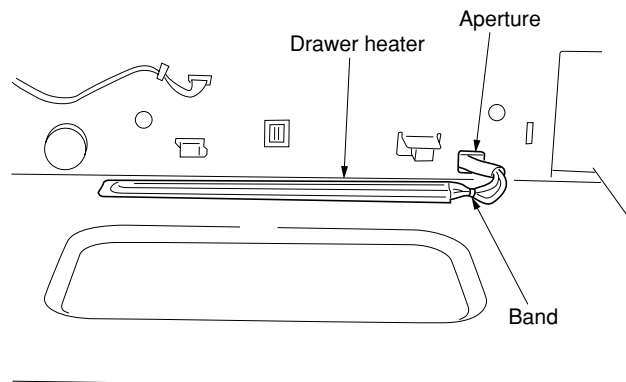


Figure 1-3-15

5. Remove the four screws and the two connectors and then remove the wires from the clamp. Remove the power source unit from the rear side of the machine.

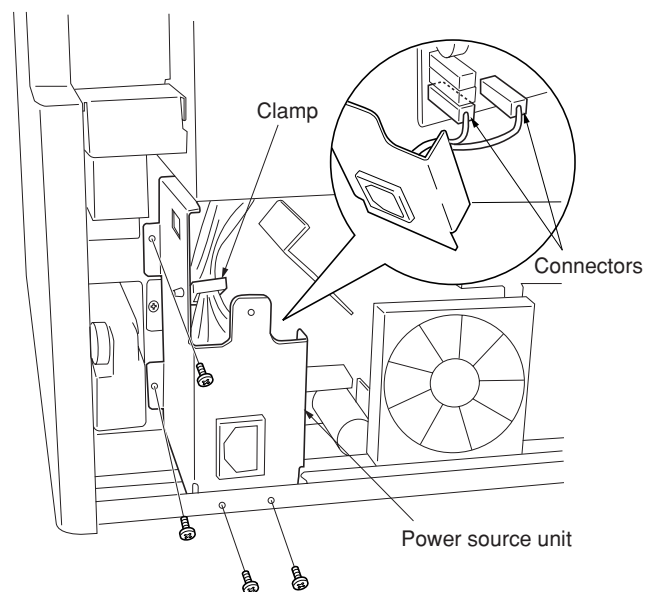


Figure 1-3-16

2FD/2FF/2FG

6. Remove the two screws and pull out the wire of the drawer heater that has been put out of the rear frame while raising the power source PCB unit.
7. Insert the connector of the drawer heater into the connector of the machine.
8. Refit all the removed parts.

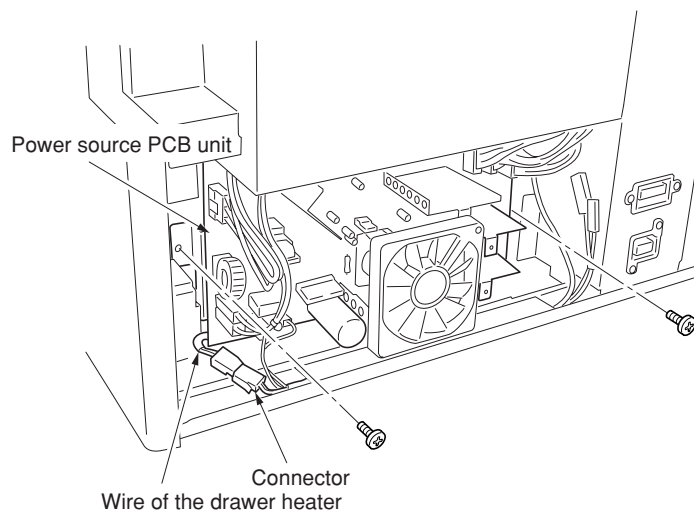


Figure 1-3-17

1-3-5 Installing the paper feeder (option)

Preparation

1. Remove the lower drawer from the copier.

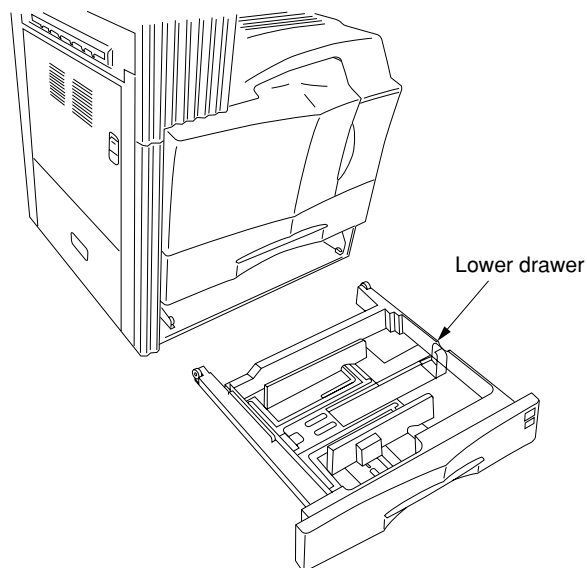


Figure 1-3-18

2. Place the copier on top of the paper feeder with the positioning pins at the front left and right of the paper feeder aligned with the holes in the base of the copier.

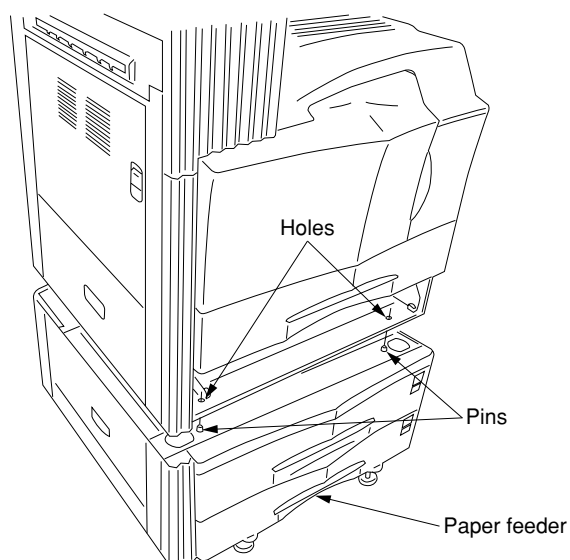


Figure 1-3-19

3. Secure the copier to the paper feeder using the two pins.
4. Refit the lower drawer to the copier.

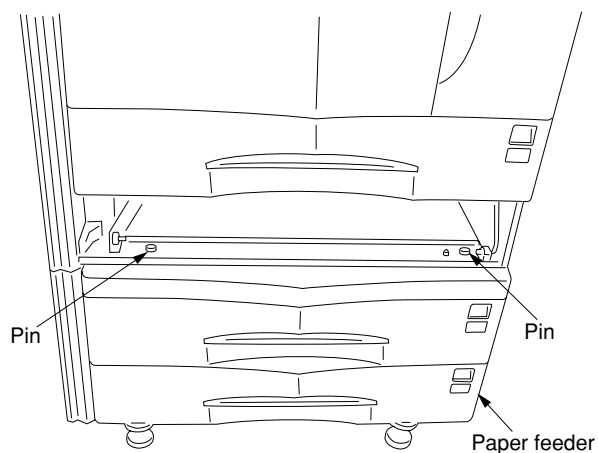


Figure 1-3-20

5. Remove the screw and then the cover from the rear of the paper feeder.
6. Remove the screw from the copier.

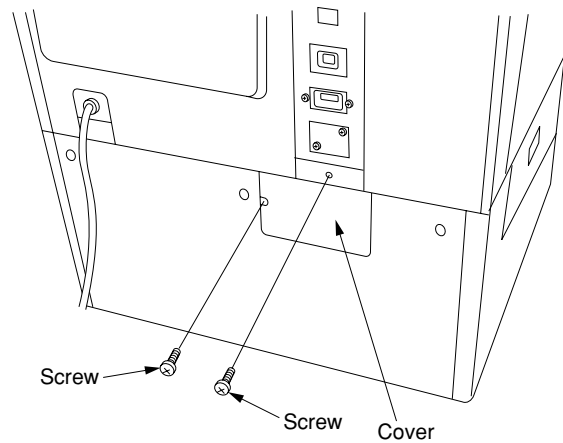


Figure 1-3-21

7. Insert the 12-P connector of the paper feed desk into the connector on the copier.

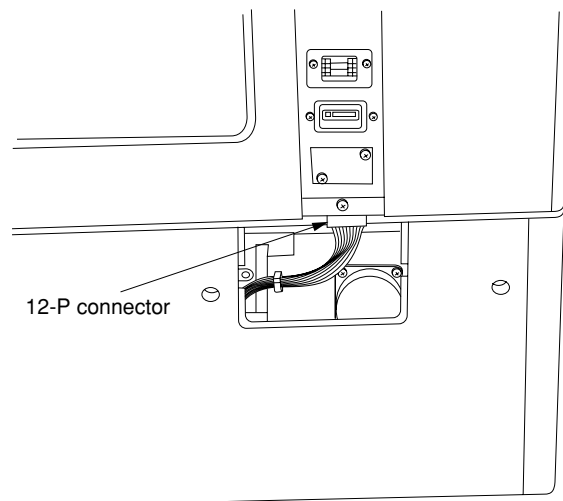


Figure 1-3-22

8. Route the harness through the clamp on the retainer.
Check that the harness and the motor do not contact.
9. Fit the retainer using the screw removed in step 6 and the two CVM4 × 06 cross-head chromate binding screws.
10. Refit the cover.

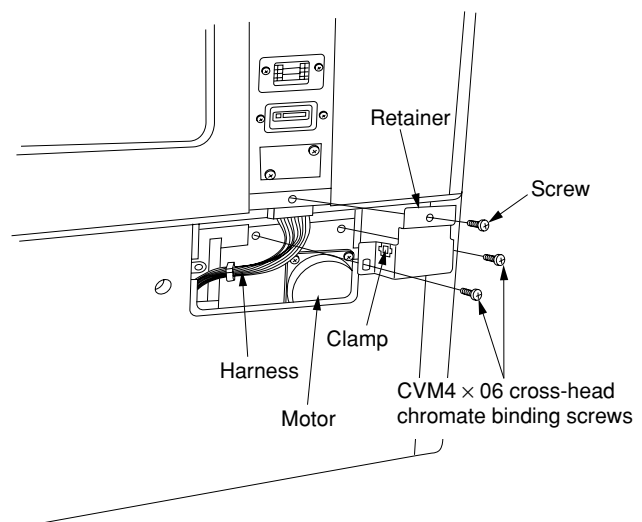


Figure 1-3-23

11. Turn the four leveling bolts until they reach the floor and adjust them to level the machine.

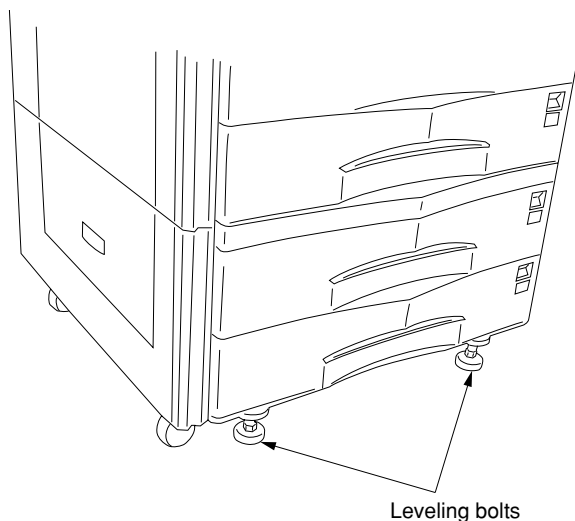


Figure 1-3-24

12. Fit the two stays to the left of the paper feeder (one toward the front and the other the rear) using the two M4 × 10 chrome TP screws such that they make contact with the floor.

Note: Do not fit the stays if the finisher is to be installed.

13. Connect the copier power plug to the wall outlet and turn the copier power switch on.
14. Load paper into the drawer and make a test copy to check the operation.

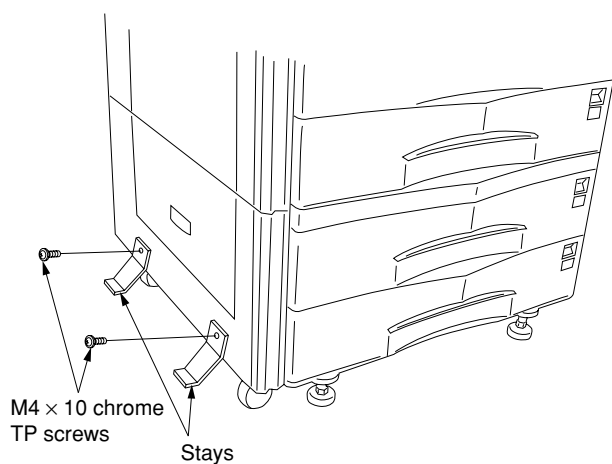


Figure 1-3-25

Adjusting the center line

1. Run maintenance item U993. Select "PG1" and output a test pattern.
2. Check if the center of the paper and that of the test pattern output are aligned. If not, perform the following adjustment.

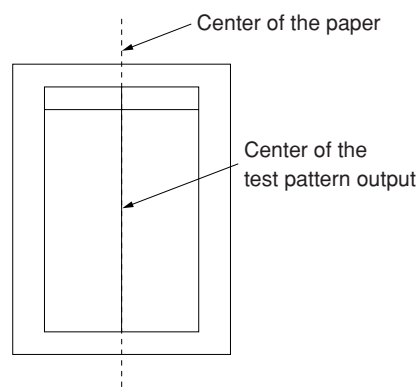


Figure 1-3-26

3. Open the drawer of the paper feeder and loosen the three screws securing the adjuster.

A and B: test pattern output examples

4. If the test pattern output example looks like A, move the adjuster in the direction of the white arrow (⇨) and retighten the three screws.
If the test pattern output example looks like B, move the adjuster in the direction of the black arrow (⇦) and retighten the three screws.
5. Output the test pattern again.
6. Repeat steps 3 to 5 until the centers of the paper and the test pattern are aligned.

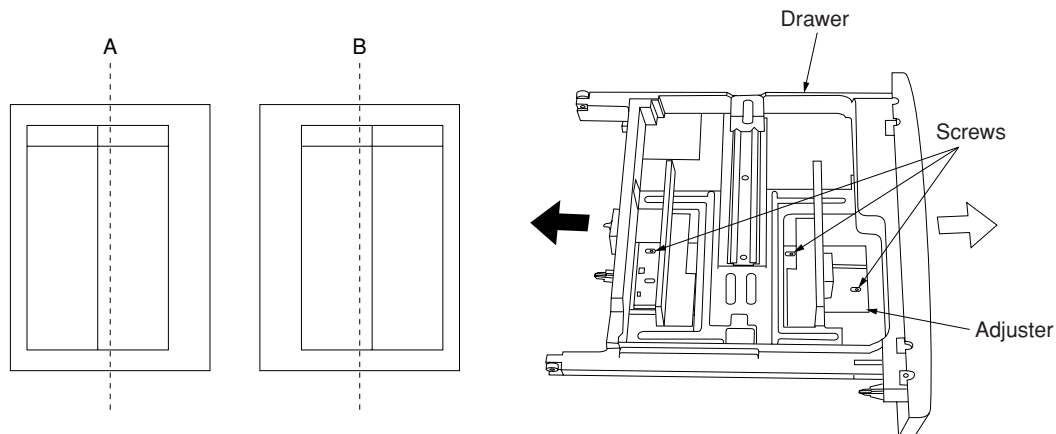


Figure 1-3-27

*If necessary, please fix the cassette cursor with the screws included in the machine box.

1-3-6 Installing the large paper deck (option)

Preparation

1. Remove the lower drawer from the copier.

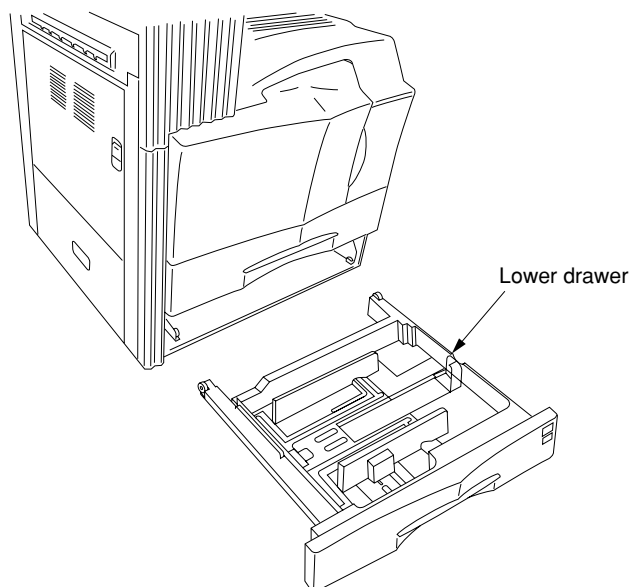


Figure 1-3-28

2. Place the copier on top of the large paper deck with the positioning pins at the front left and right of the large paper deck aligned with the holes in the base of the copier.

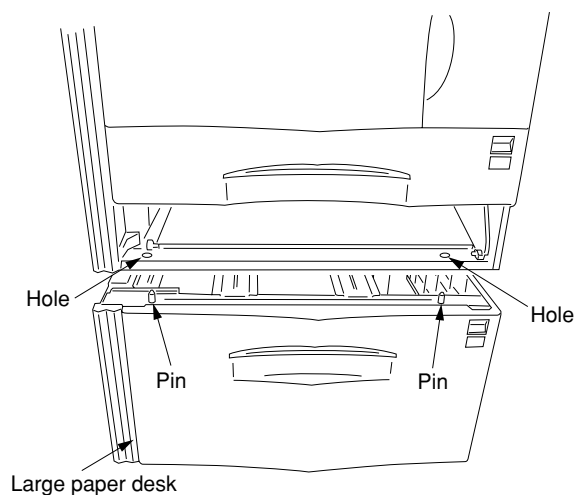


Figure 1-3-29

3. Secure the copier to the large paper deck using the two pins.
4. Refit the lower drawer to the copier.

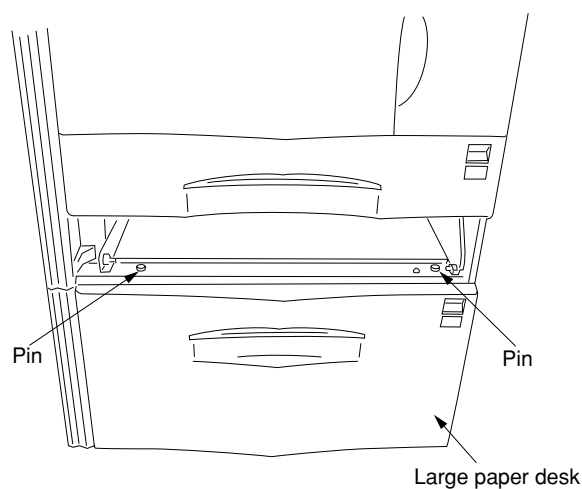


Figure 1-3-30

5. Remove the screw and then the cover from the rear of the large paper deck.
6. Remove the screw from the rear of the copier.

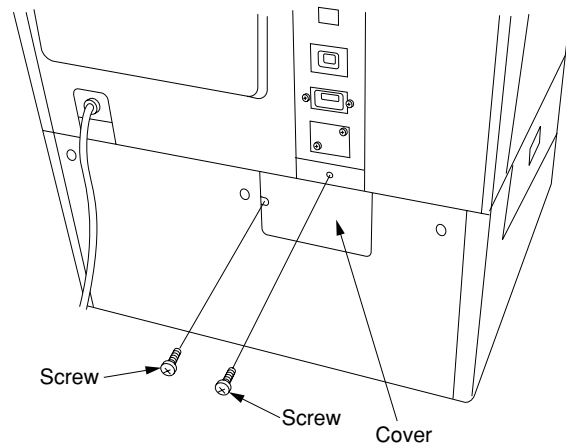


Figure 1-3-31

7. Insert the 12-pin connector of the large paper deck into the connector on the copier.

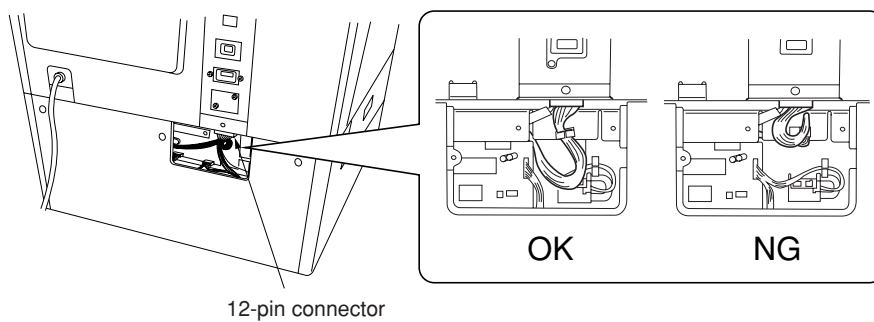


Figure 1-3-32

8. Fit the retainer using the screw removed in step 6 and the two CVM4 × 06 cross-head chromate binding screws.
9. Refit the cover using the screw (see step 5).

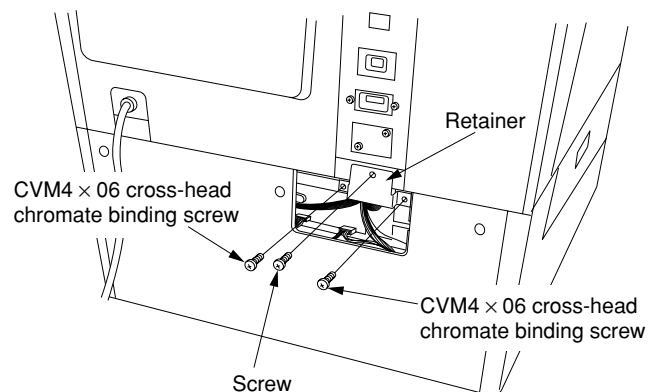


Figure 1-3-33

10. Turn the four leveling bolts until they reach the floor and adjust them to level the machine.

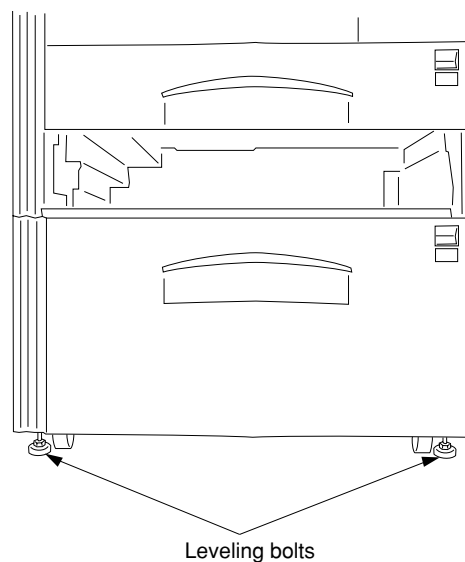


Figure 1-3-34

11. Fit the stay to the lower left of the large paper deck toward the rear using the two M4 × 16 chrome TP screws such that it makes contact with the floor.

Note: Do not fit the stay if the finisher is to be installed.

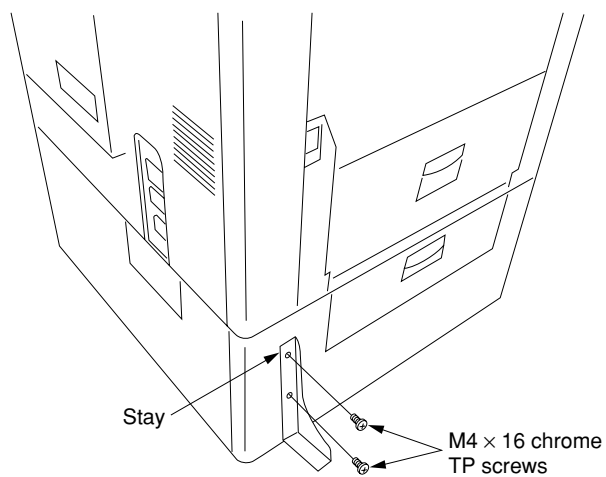


Figure 1-3-35

Setting the paper size

1. Open the large paper deck.
2. Move the sliders at the machine front and rear inward (two at each point).
3. Remove the screw from each of the front and rear lateral size adjusters.

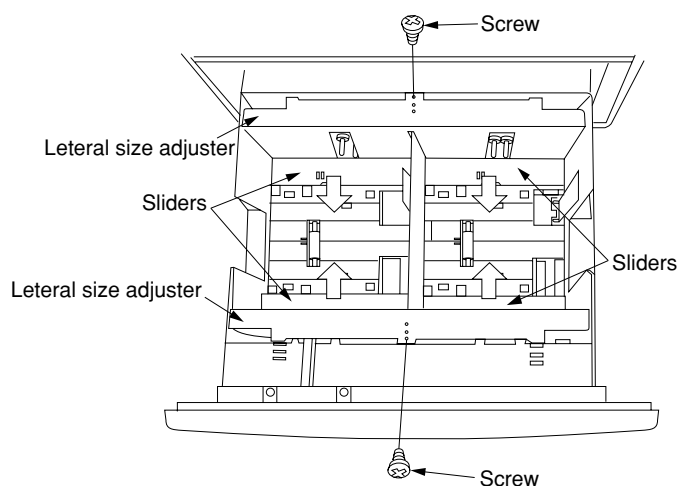


Figure 1-3-36

4. Insert the upper tabs and lower tabs of the front and rear lateral size adjusters into the upper slots and lower slots respectively such that the size indicators point to the size of paper to be used. Secure the lateral size adjusters using the screw for each.
5. Move the front and rear sliders (two at each point) outward until they make contact with the lateral size adjusters.

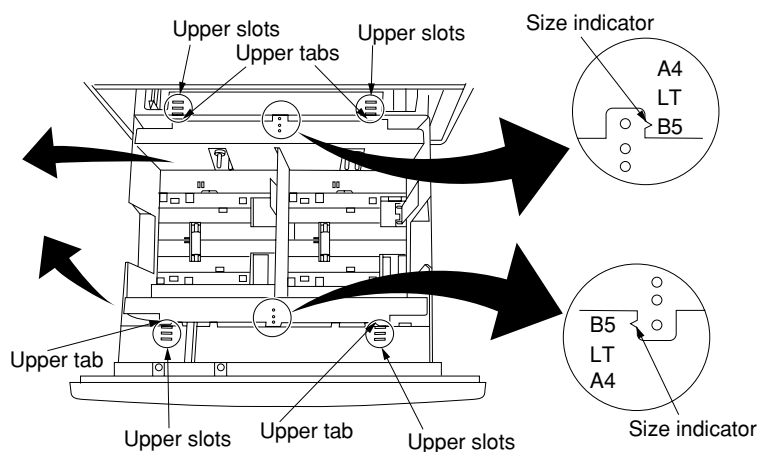
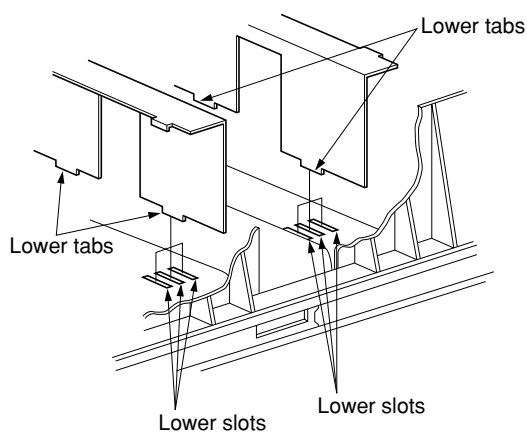


Figure 1-3-37

6. Remove the screw from each of the left and right longitudinal size adjusters.
7. Align the pin holes in the left and right longitudinal size adjusters with the A4 pins or B5 pins according to the size of paper to be used. Secure the adjusters using the screw for each.

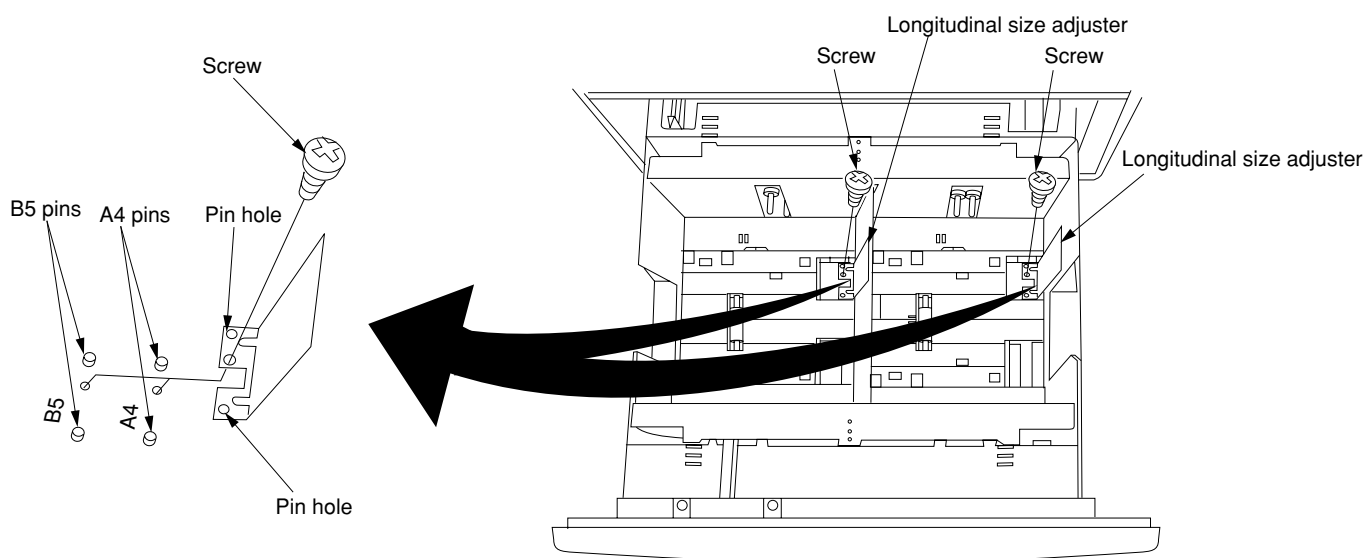


Figure 1-3-38

8. Connect the copier power plug to the wall outlet and turn the copier power switch on.
9. Run maintenance item U208 and set the paper size for the large paper deck (B5/A4/ Letter).
10. Load paper into the drawer and make a test copy to check the operation.

Adjusting the center line

1. Run maintenance item U993. Select "PG1" and output a test pattern.
2. Check if the center of the paper and that of the test pattern output are aligned. If not, perform the following adjustment.

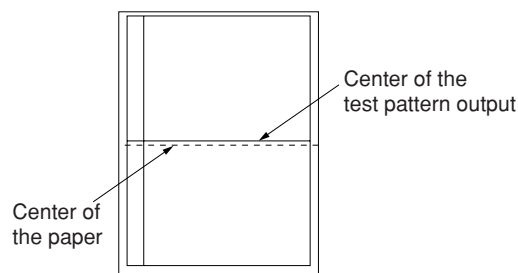


Figure 1-3-39

3. Pull out the cassette of the paper feeder and loosen the two screws securing the adjuster.

A and B: test pattern output examples

4. If the test pattern output looks like A, move the adjuster in the direction of the black arrow (←) and retighten the two screws. If the test pattern output looks like B, move the adjuster in the direction of the white arrow (→) and retighten the two screws.
5. Output a test pattern again.
6. Repeat steps 3 to 5 until the centers of the paper and the test pattern are aligned.

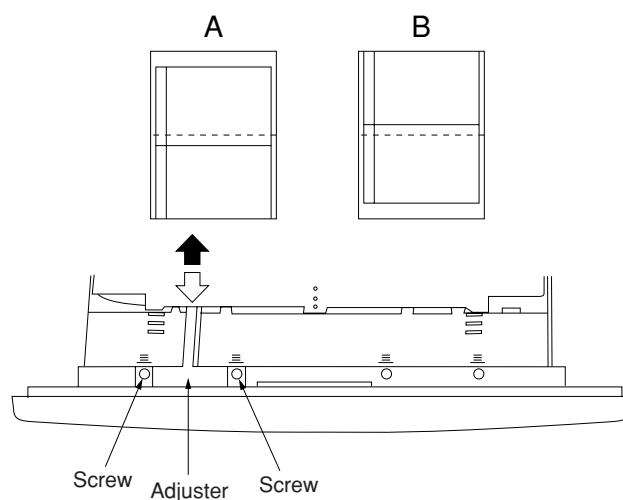


Figure 1-3-40

7. Loosen the five screws.
8. Adjust the position of the front cover so that the level indicating the position of the adjuster and the level, indicating the position of the front cover are the same. If the positions of the adjuster and front cover are not aligned, the paper cassette cannot be closed properly.
9. Retighten the five screws.

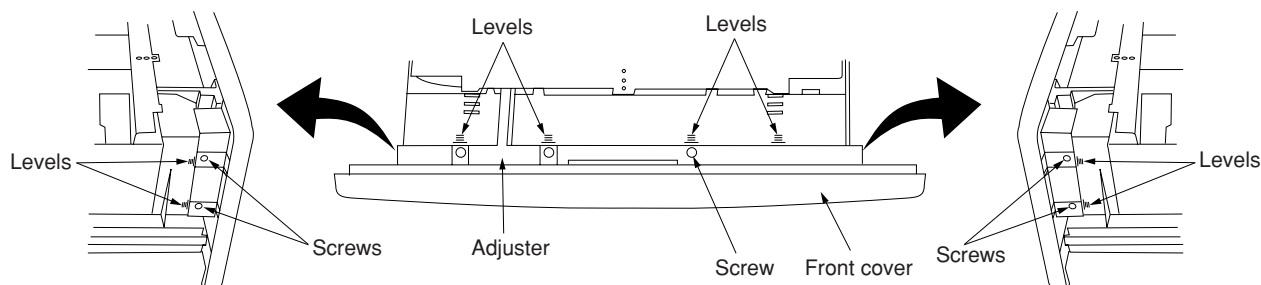


Figure 1-3-41

1-3-7 Installing the booklet stitcher/switchback unit (option)

Preparation

1. Open the conveying cover of the copier.
2. Remove the two screws securing the feedshift guide assembly and then the assembly.

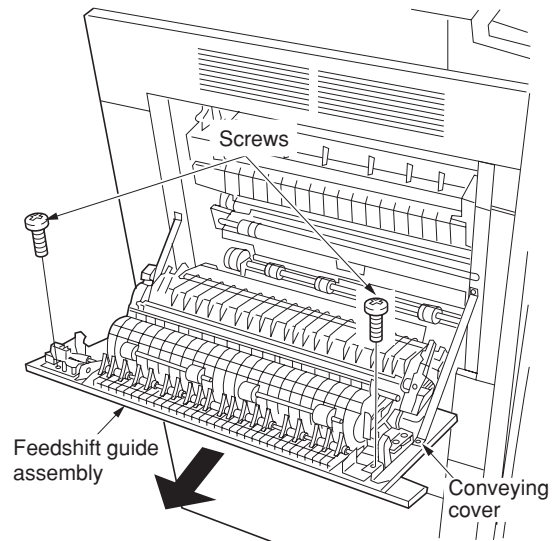


Figure 1-3-42

3. Fit the curl eliminator to the conveying cover such that the projections on the cover fit into the two ends of the curl eliminator.
4. Secure the curl eliminator using the two screws removed in step 2.

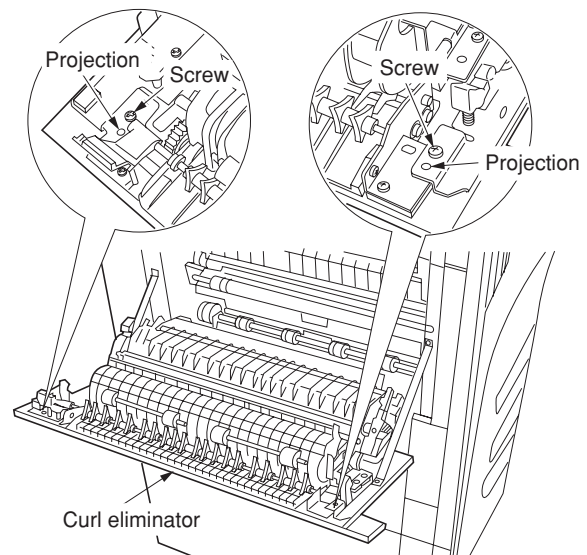


Figure 1-3-43

5. Close the conveying cover.
6. Fit the latch catch to the conveying cover using two M4 × 10 binding screws.

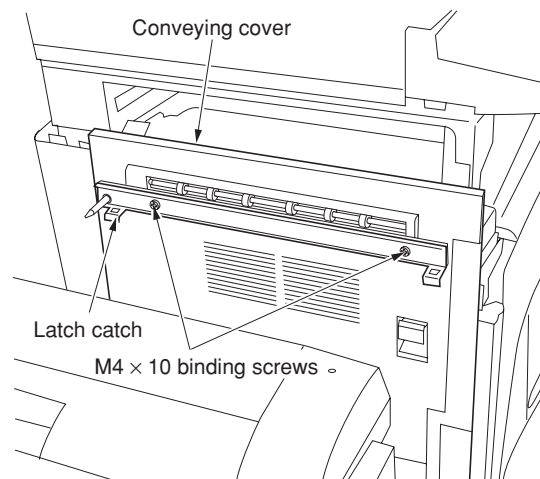


Figure 1-3-44

7. Remove 13 screws and take off the rear cover.

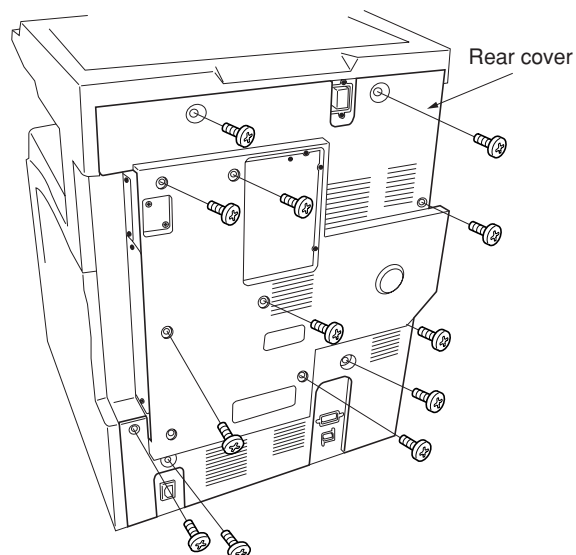


Figure 1-3-45

8. Remove 13 screws and take off the shield cover.

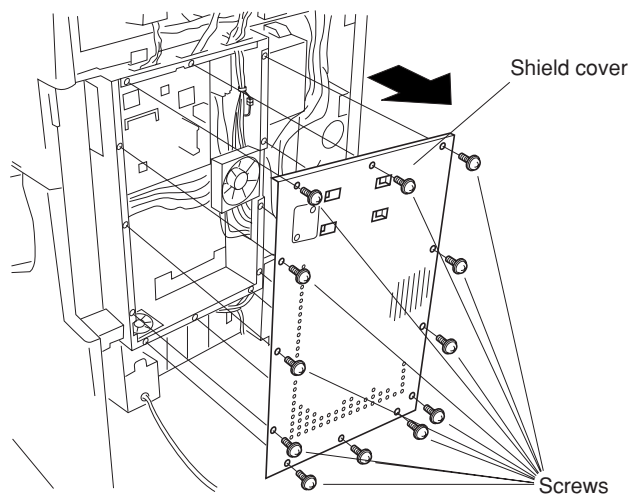


Figure 1-3-46

9. Insert the board supports into the three round holes of the IPC PCB.
Detach the 10-pin connector (four wires) from YC4 on the main PCB and connect it to J2 on the IPC PCB.

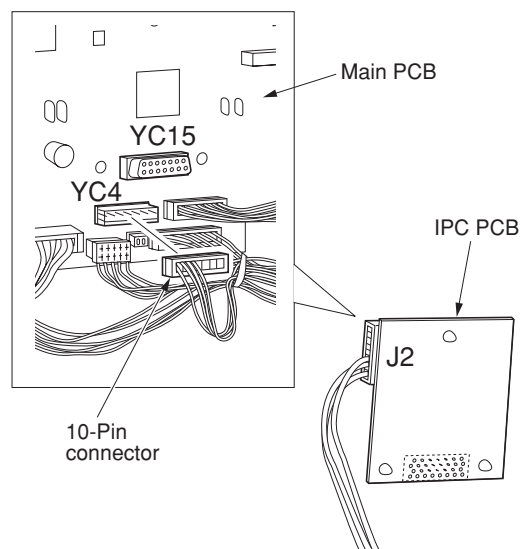


Figure 1-3-47

10. Connect J1 on the IPC PCB to YC15 on the main PCB.
11. Insert the board supports into the three round holes of the main PCB and secure the IPC PCB.
12. Refit the shield cover and rear cover.

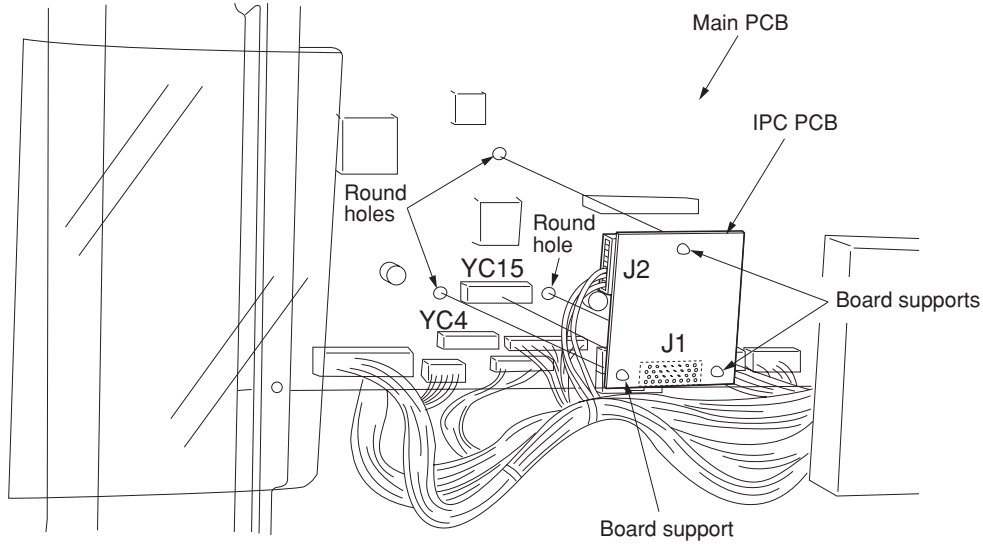


Figure 1-3-48

13. Align the rail retainer with the groove of the guide rail and attach the rail retainer to the guide rail. Make sure that the plate spring of the rail retainer fits into the groove and the edge of the guide rail fits between the pulleys on the reverse side of the rail retainer.

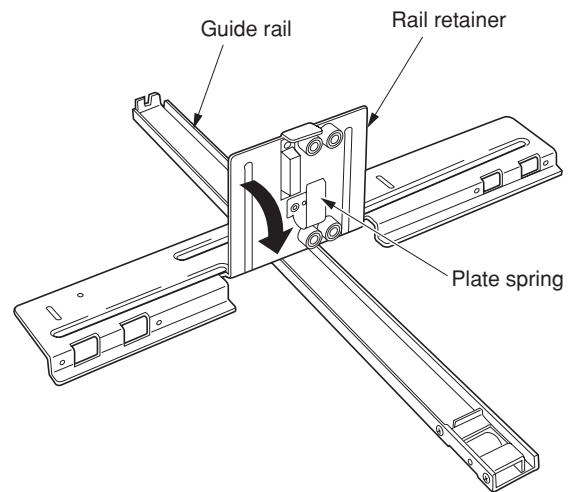


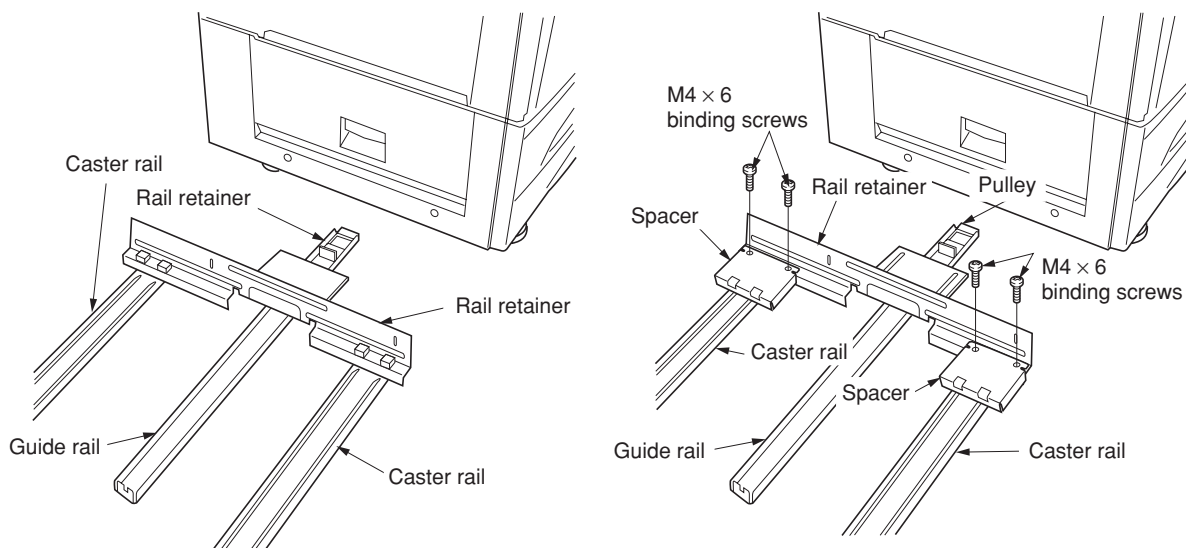
Figure 1-3-49

When the switchback unit is not to be installed

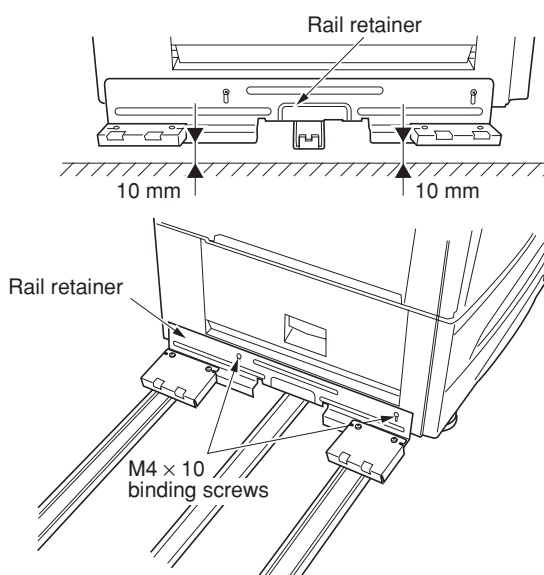
14. Orient the guide rail such that its pulley is positioned toward the copier, and then fit a caster rail to each side of the rail retainer.

When the switchback unit is to be installed

15. Attach a spacer to each end of the rail retainer using two M4 × 6 binding screws for each.
16. Orient the guide rail such that its pulley is positioned toward the copier, and then fit the caster rails to the spacer.

**Figure 1-3-50**

17. Secure the rail retainer to the copier using two M4 × 10 binding screws such that the front and rear gaps between the floor and rail retainer are approximately 10 mm.

**Figure 1-3-51**

18. Slightly lift the bottom of the finisher and insert the rail fixing plate into the finisher, and then join them by inserting two M4 × 6 binding screws loosely.

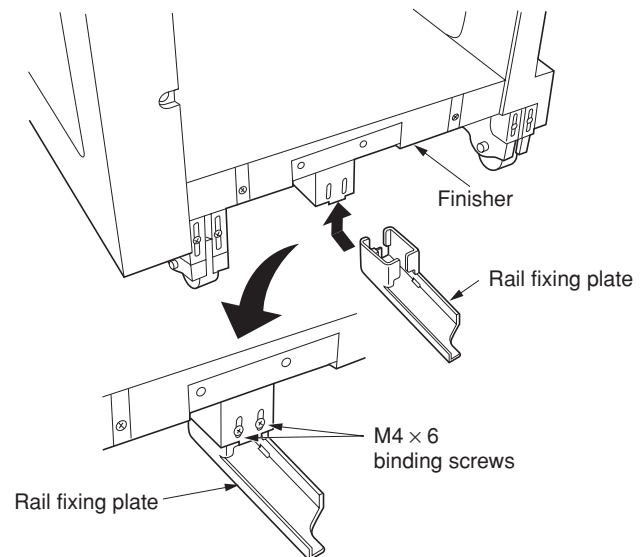


Figure 1-3-52

19. Insert the guide rail into the rail fixing plate and secure it using an M4 × 6 binding screw at the position where the screw hole in it and that in the rail fixing plate meet.

Note: When installing the switchback unit, use screw hole (a) in the guide rail; when not installing the switchback unit, use screw hole (b) in the guide rail.

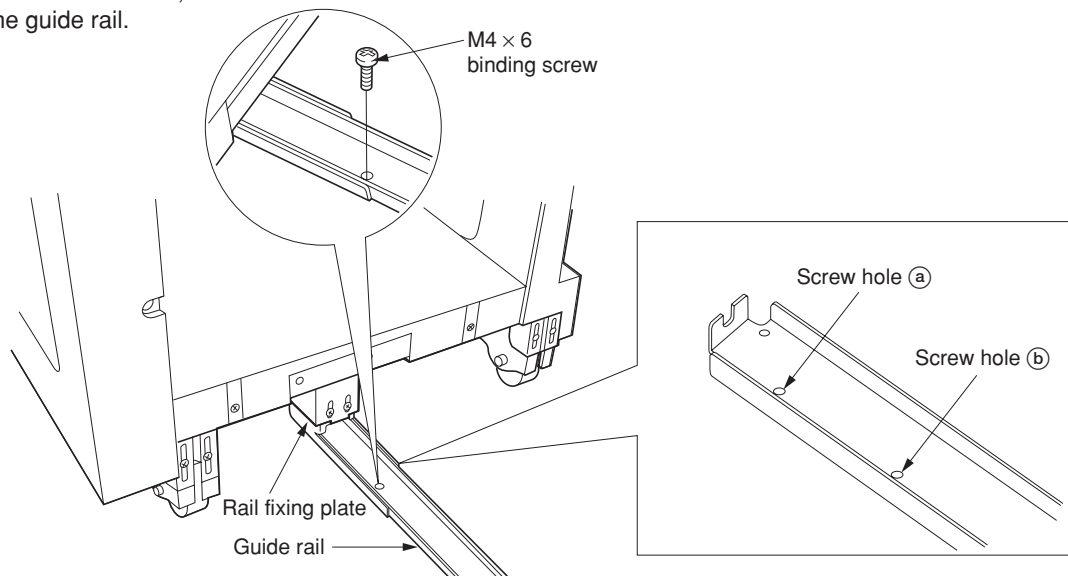


Figure 1-3-53

20. Adjust the position of the rail fixing plate so that the gap between the plate and the floor is approximately 8.0 mm, and then tighten the two loosely fitted M4 × 6 binding screws.

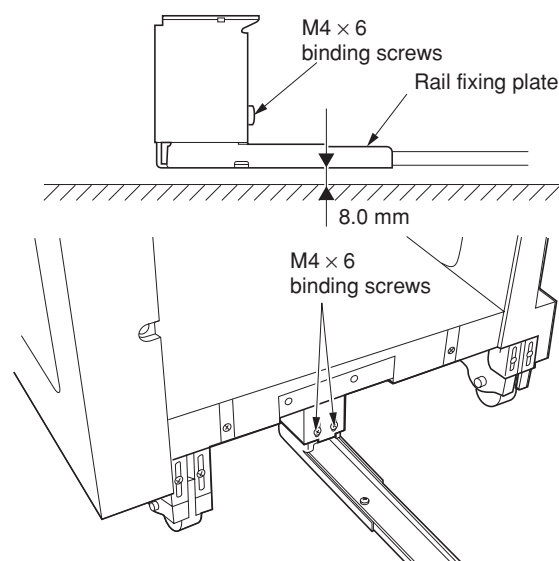


Figure 1-3-54

21. Fit the eject tray to the finisher by hooking the two claws and secure it using two M4 × 6 binding screws.

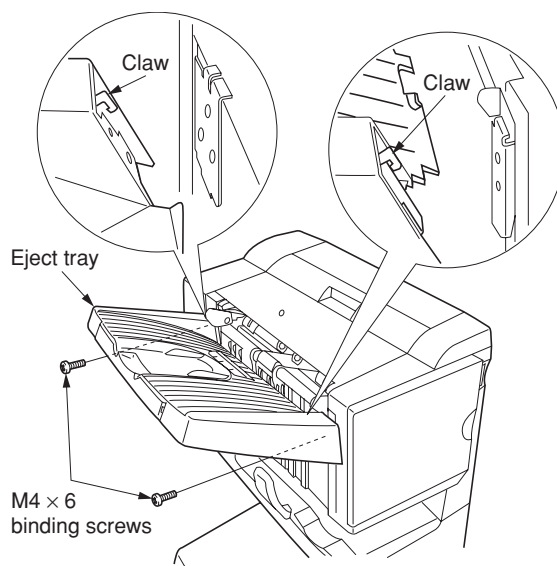


Figure 1-3-55

22. Open the front panel and insert the stapler unit into the finisher.

When inserting the stapler unit into the finisher, be sure to grasp the upper portion (shaft) of the stapler unit as shown in the illustration. If the plate in the middle portion (stay transport) is grasped, the unit may be deformed, resulting in paper jams.

23. Close the front panel.

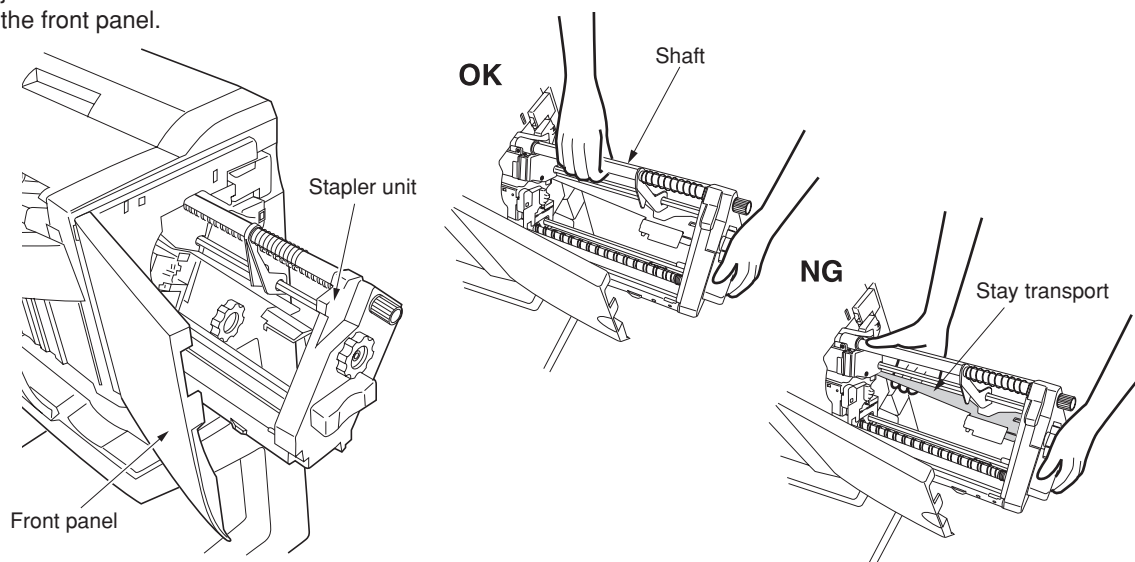


Figure 1-3-56

Installing the switchback unit

1. Remove the two support rubbers on the right of the finisher and loosely fit the two M3 × 8 binding screws in their places.
2. Remove the two screws.

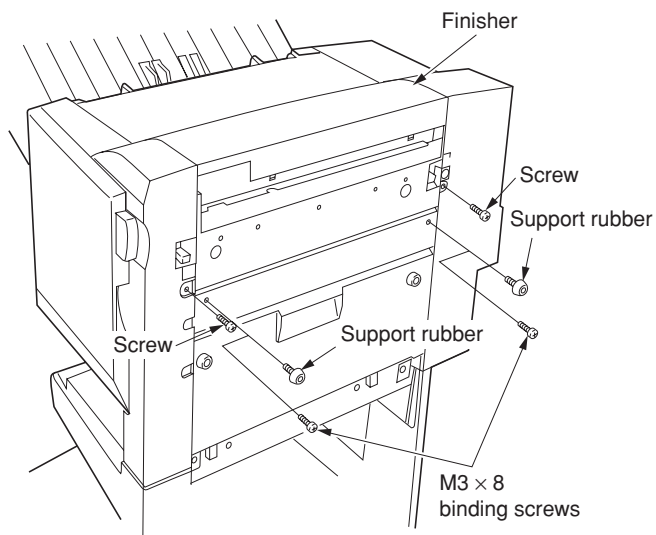


Figure 1-3-57

3. Release the hook of the switchback unit by lifting the release lever.

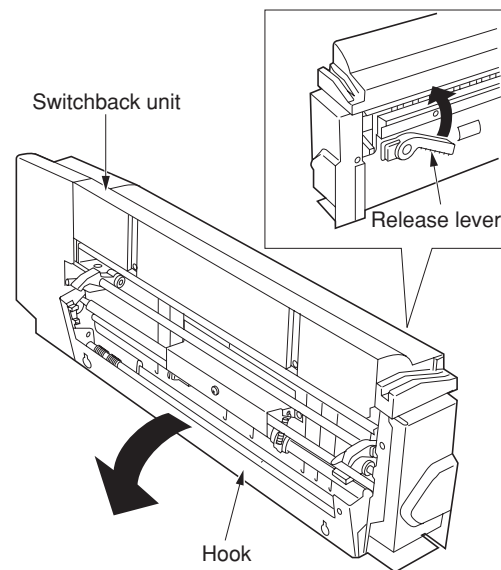


Figure 1-3-58

4. Fit the switchback unit to the finisher by hanging the hook of the switchback unit on the loosely fitted M3 × 8 binding screws.
5. Tighten the loosely fitted M3 × 8 binding screws.
6. Secure the switchback unit using two M4 × 12 TP screws.
7. Close the switchback unit.

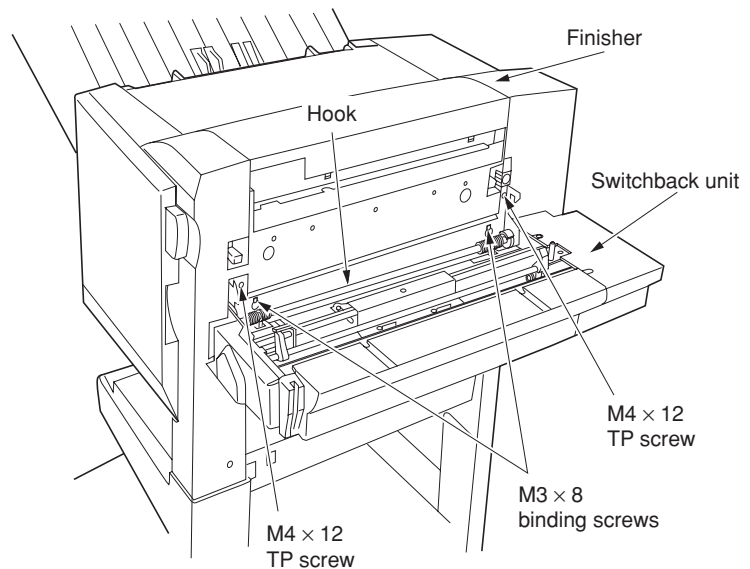


Figure 1-3-59

8. Remove the two screws from the cover of the finisher.

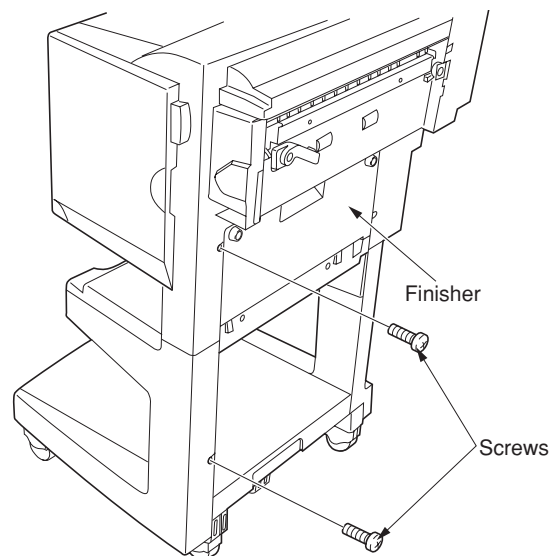


Figure 1-3-60

9. Insert the rib of the front cover into the groove in the top cover of the switchback unit, and then fit the front cover to the finisher.
10. Secure the front cover by fitting an M4 × 12 TP screw and M4 × 16 TP screw into the holes where screws were inserted (see step 8).

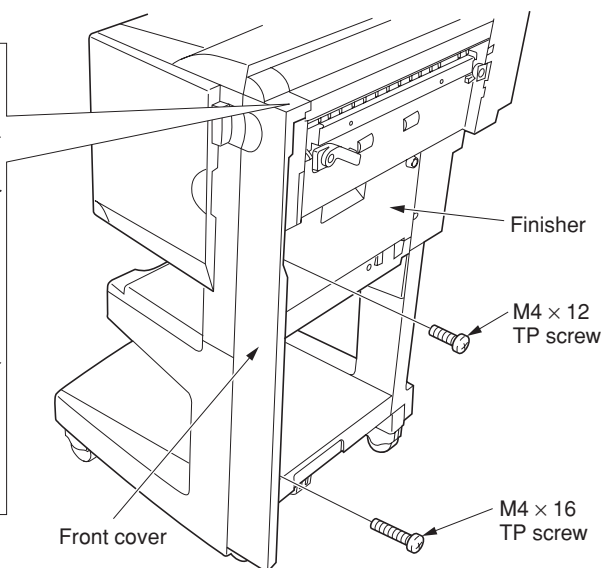
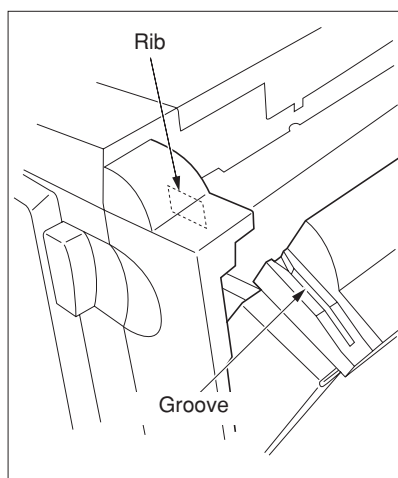


Figure 1-3-61

11. Fit the two support rubbers removed in step 1 to the switchback unit.
12. If the finisher and the copier do not engage securely, perform the following finisher height adjustment.

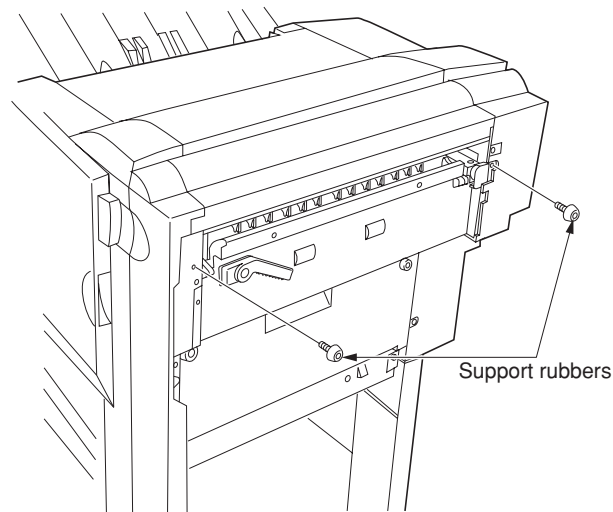


Figure 1-3-62

Adjusting the height of the finisher

1. Remove the two covers from the lower left part of the finisher by removing one screw each.
2. Remove the four caps from above the four casters of the finisher.

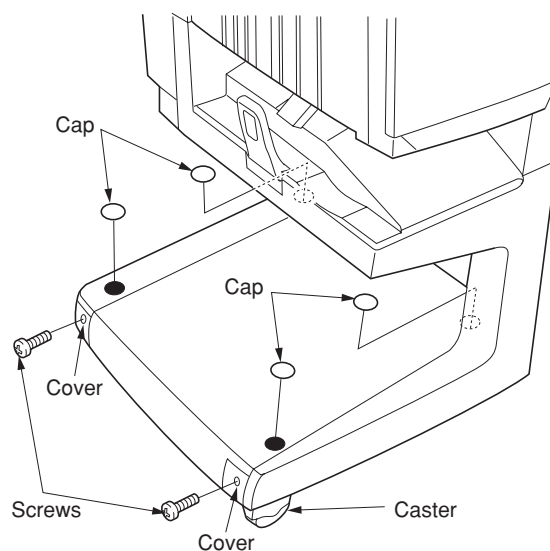


Figure 1-3-63

3. Loosen the two screws on each of the four casters.
4. Adjust the height of the rear right caster by turning its adjustment bolt using a cross-headed screwdriver so that the axis of the pin of the latch catch is aligned with the middle of the three markings on the right of the slot of the finisher or switchback unit when the finisher is joined to the copier (viewed from the machine front).

Note: Turning the adjustment bolts clockwise lowers the finisher, while turning them counterclockwise lifts the finisher.

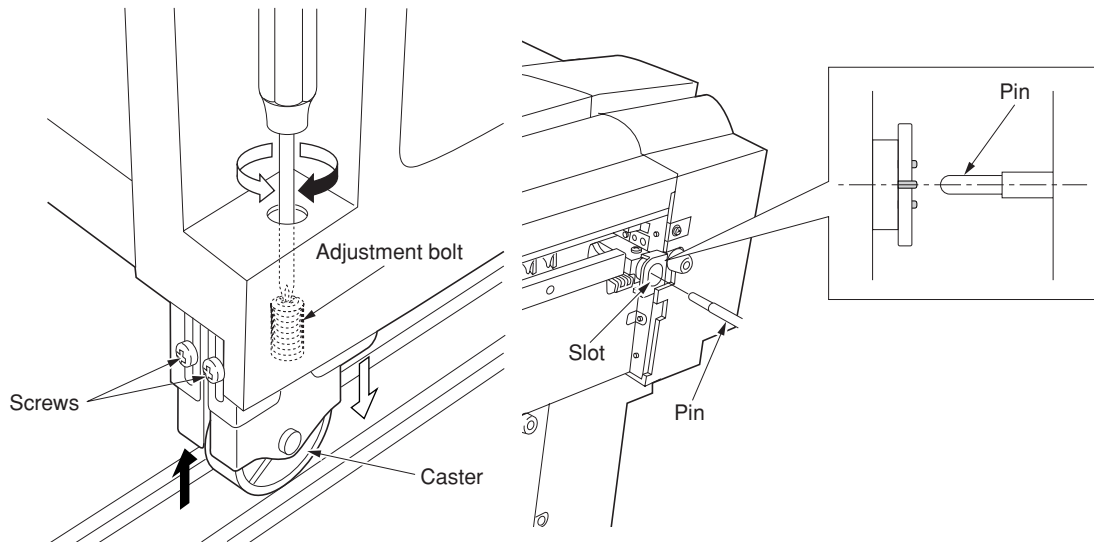


Figure 1-3-64

5. Adjust the height of the front right caster in the same manner as in step 4 so that the axis of the pin of the latch catch is aligned with the marking above the slot and the center of the two hooks on the finisher align with the center of the holes on the latch catch when the finisher is joined to the copier (viewed from above).

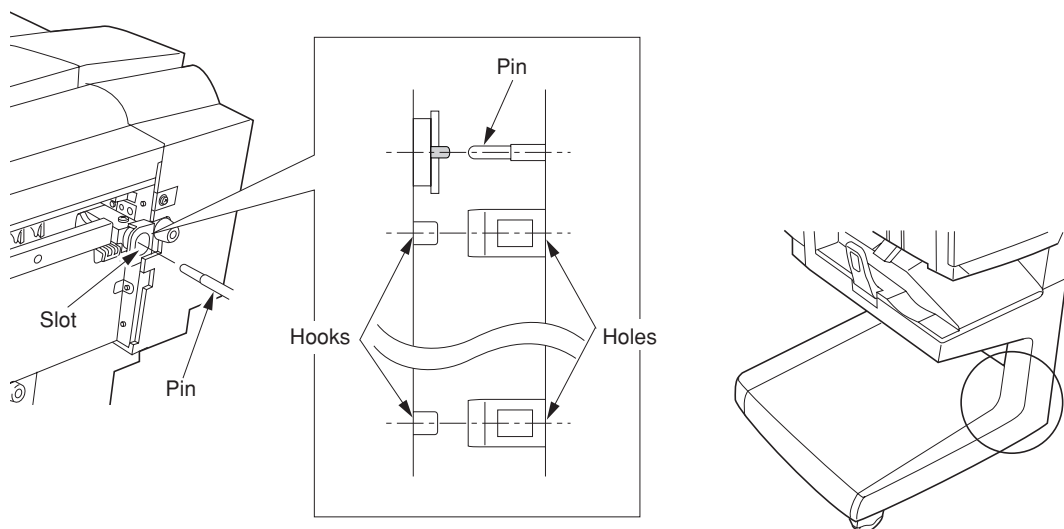


Figure 1-3-65

When the switchback unit is installed

6. Adjust the height of the front right caster in the same manner as in step 4 so that the hook of the latch catch is aligned with the projection of the switchback unit when the finisher is joined to the copier (viewed from front).

When the switchback unit is not installed

6. Adjust the height of the front right caster in the same manner as in step 4 so that the center of the hook of the latch catch is aligned with the marking of the finisher when the finisher is joined to the copier (viewed from front).

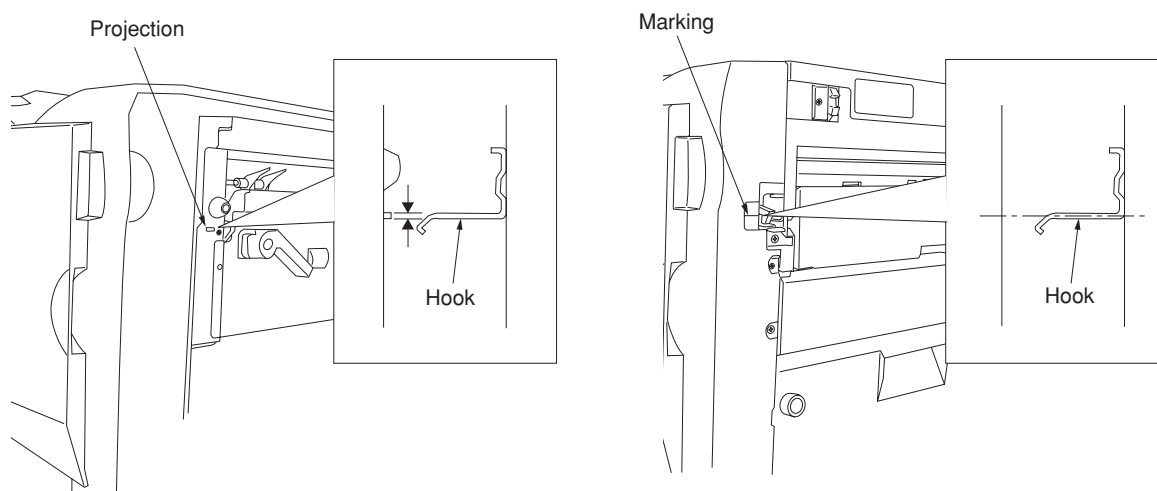


Figure 1-3-66

7. Adjust the height of the left two casters in the same manner as in step 4 so that the top and bottom gaps (A) between the finisher and the copier are the same when the finisher is detached from the copier.
8. Retighten the two screws on each of the four casters.
9. Refit the two covers and four caps.

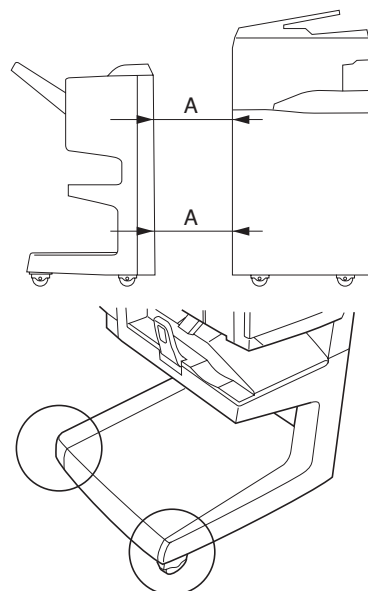


Figure 1-3-67

Connecting the signal cable

1. Connect the signal cable of the finisher to the copier. If the switchback unit has been installed, connect the signal cable of the switchback unit, as well.
2. Insert the copier power plug to the wall outlet and turn the power switch on.
3. Make test copies and check that the finisher and the switchback unit operate correctly.

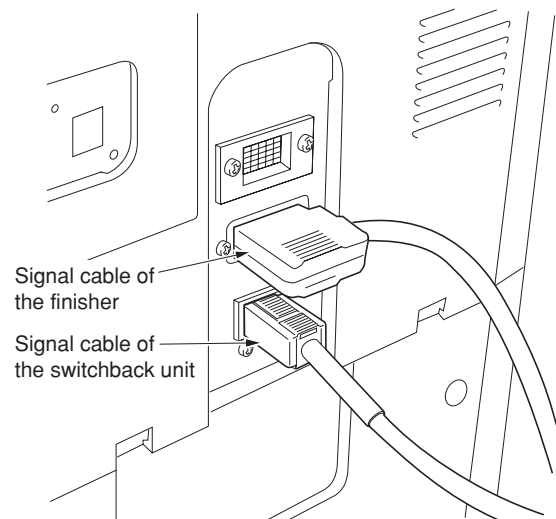
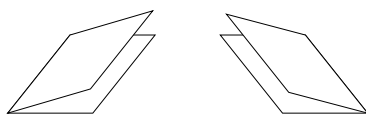


Figure 1-3-68

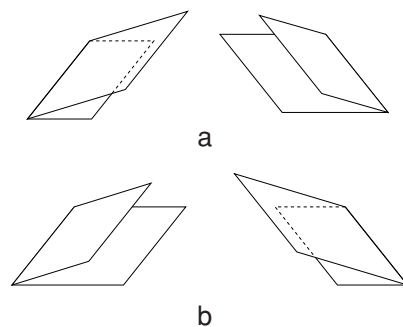
Setting the booklet stapling position

1. Enter the maintenance mode and run U246.
2. Select "Saddle finisher" and press the start key.
3. Select the size to be set. The selected item is displayed in reverse.
4. Change the setting using the cursor up/down keys.
 - a: Decrease the preset value.
 - b: Increase the preset value.

*Setting range: -125 to +125
Initial setting: 0
Change in value per step: Approx. 0.25 mm
5. Press the start key. The value is set.
6. Press the stop/clear key twice.
7. Run U001 to exit the maintenance mode.



OK



NG

Figure 1-3-69

1-3-8 Installing the sheet-through document processor (option)

Preparation

1. Insert the DP into the copier.

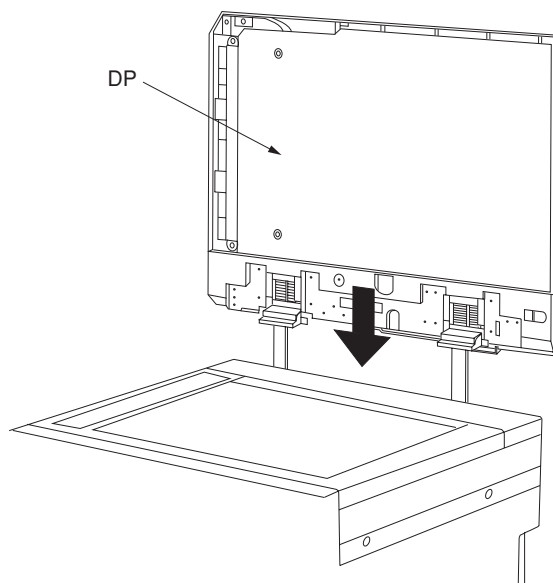


Figure 1-3-70

2. Connect the connector of the DP to the copier.
3. Insert the copier power plug to the wall outlet and turn the power switch on.

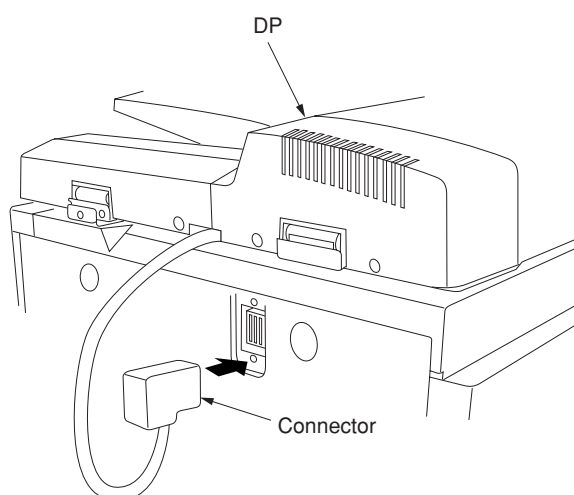


Figure 1-3-71

4. Place the original on the DP and make a test copy. Check the operation and the copy image.
5. If the copy image is different from the original, run the following adjustment.
 - Maintenance item U070 (sub-scan line adjustment) (see page 1-4-25)
 - Maintenance item U071 (leading edge timing adjustment) (see page 1-4-26)
 - Maintenance item U072 (center line adjustment) (see page 1-4-27)

1-3-9 Installing the Printing System (option)

Procedure

1. Remove 2 screws and take off the cover.

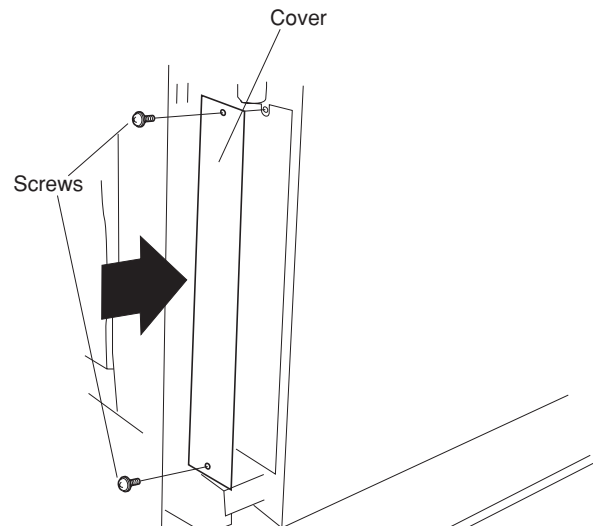


Figure 1-3-72

2. Push the printing system all the way in along the rails, and fasten it with 2 screws.

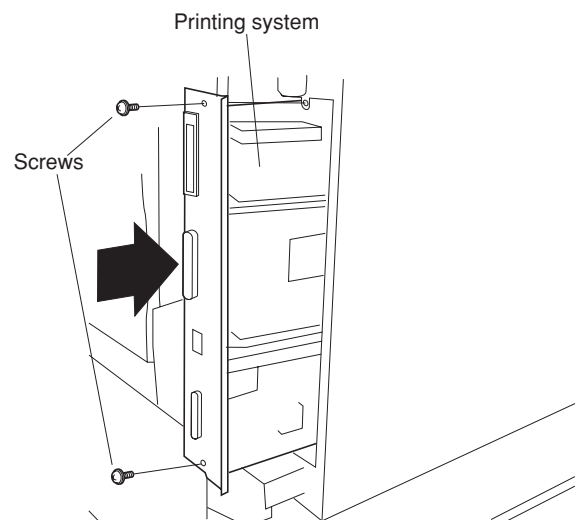


Figure 1-3-73

Install the (optional) network printer board.

3. Remove 2 screws and take off the cover.
4. Push the network printer board all the way in along the rails, and fasten it with 2 screws.

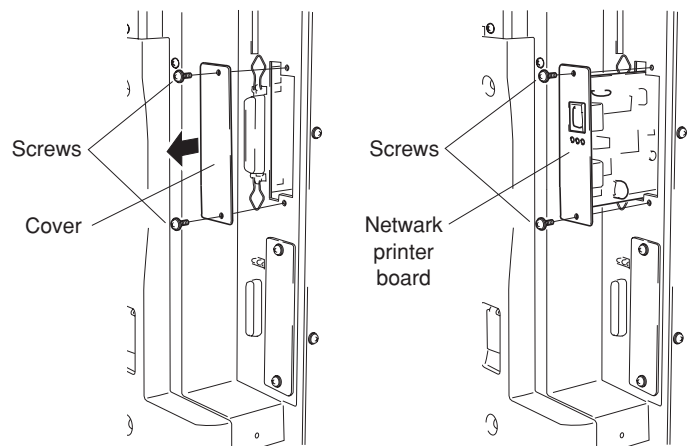
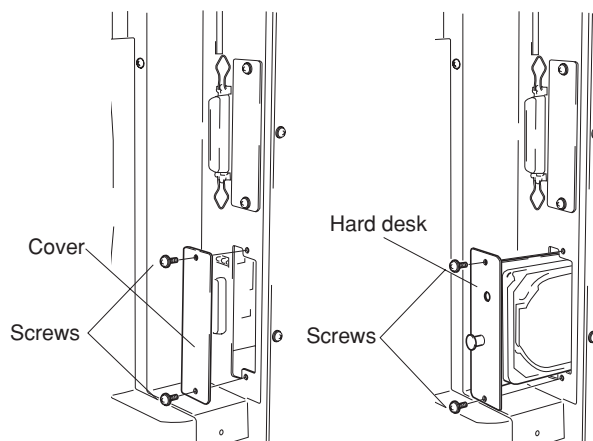


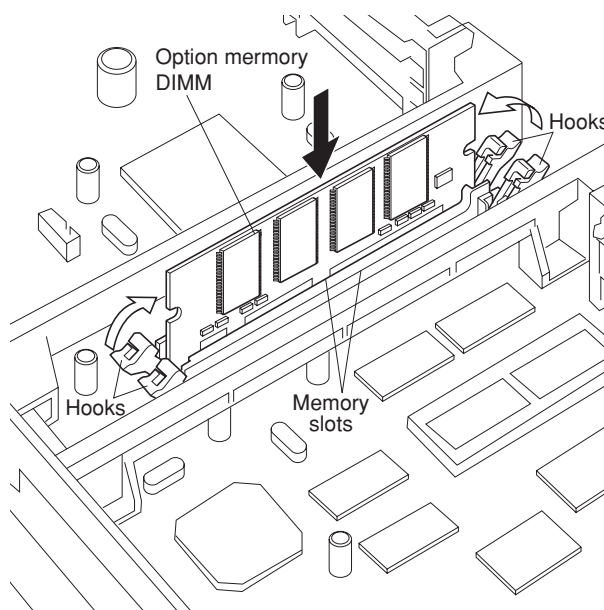
Figure 1-3-74

Install the (optional) hard disk.

5. Remove 2 screws and take off the cover.
6. Push the hard disk all the way in along the rails, and fasten it with 2 screws.

**Figure 1-3-75****Installing the Optional Memory DIMM**

7. Remove the printing system, and insert the optional memory DIMM firmly into either of the memory slots. Push the DIMM firmly into the slot so that the two hooks (one hook at each end of the slot) snap closed.
- The board provides two DIMM slots, and can accept up to two optional DIMMs. If installing a single DIMM, you can use either slot.

**Figure 1-3-76**

1-3-10 Installing the Scanning System (option)

Procedure

1. Remove 13 screws and take off the rear cover.

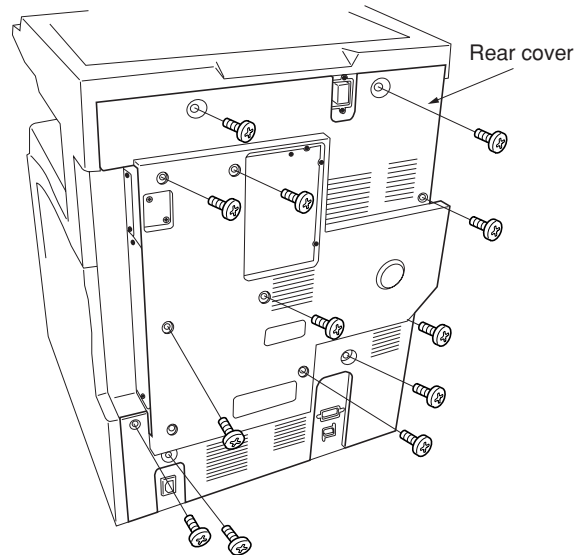


Figure 1-3-77

- If the printing system is installed
2. Remove the 2 screws holding the printer system in place, and pull the printing system out of the shield cover.

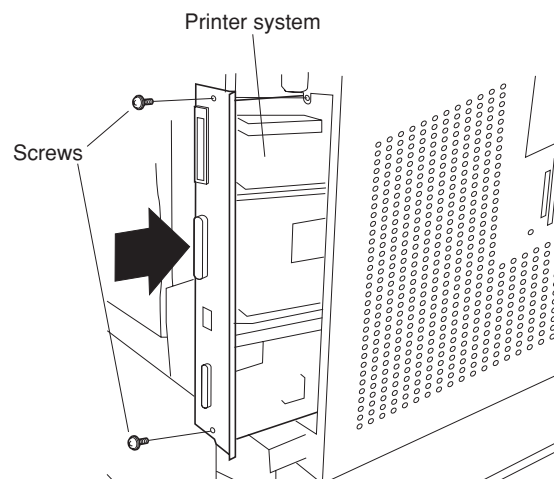


Figure 1-3-78

3. Remove 13 screws and take off the shield cover.

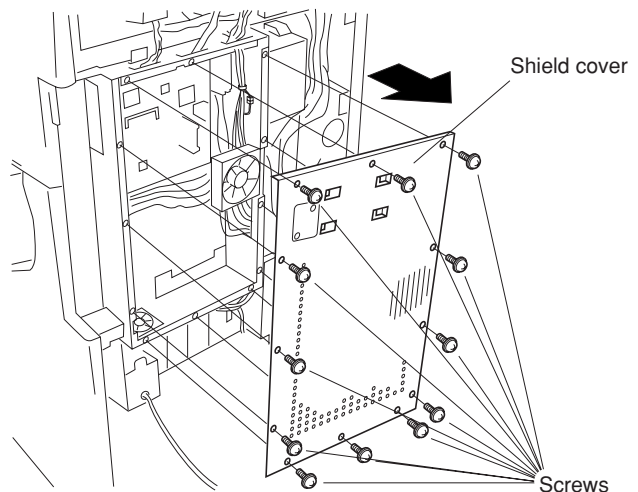


Figure 1-3-79

4. Remove 2 screws, and take off the cover.

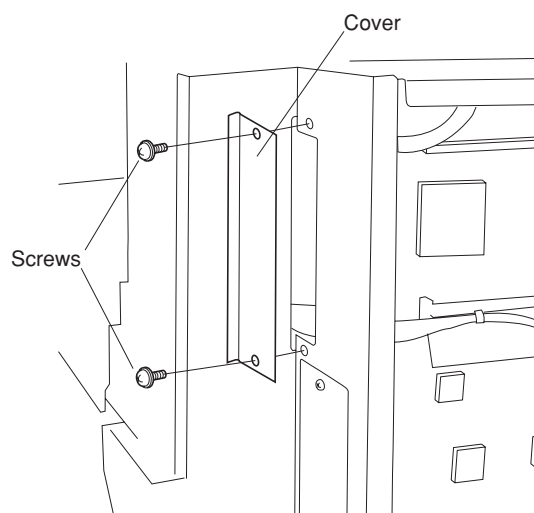


Figure 1-3-80

5. Firmly push connector CN1 on the scanner board all the way into connector YC46 on the main PCB.
6. Fasten the scanner board with 2 screws.

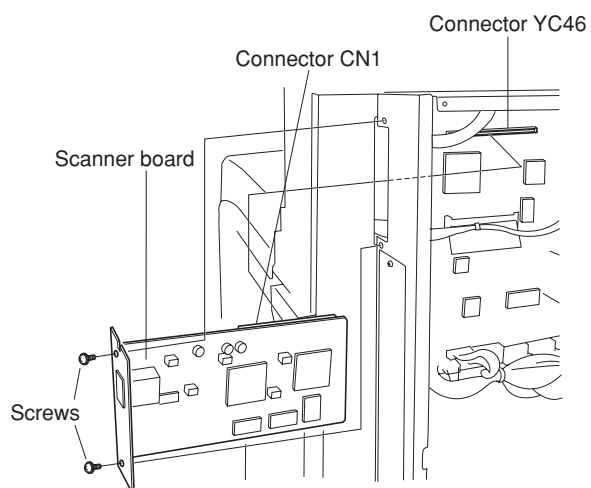


Figure 1-3-81

7. Fasten the shield cover into place with 13 screws.

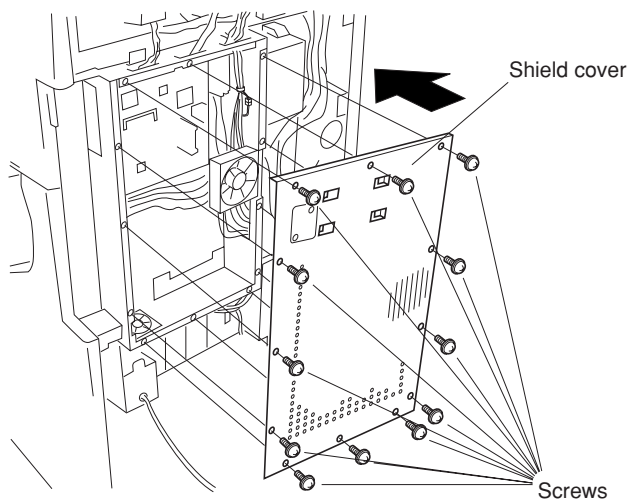


Figure 1-3-82

- If the printing system was installed
8. Reinstall the printing system into the shield cover, fastening it into place with 2 screws.

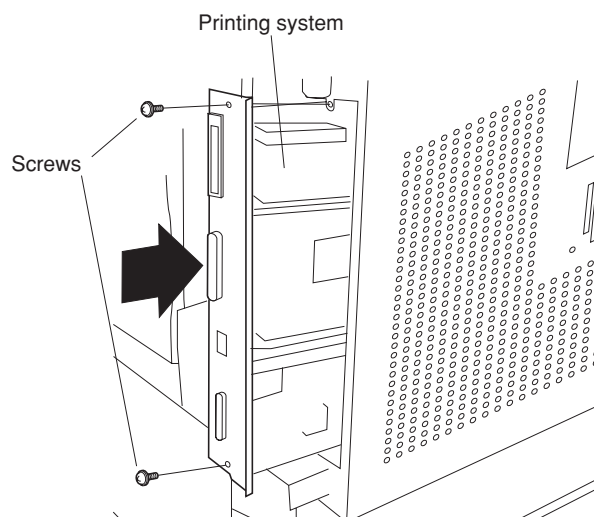


Figure 1-3-83

9. Reattach the rear cover with 13 screws.

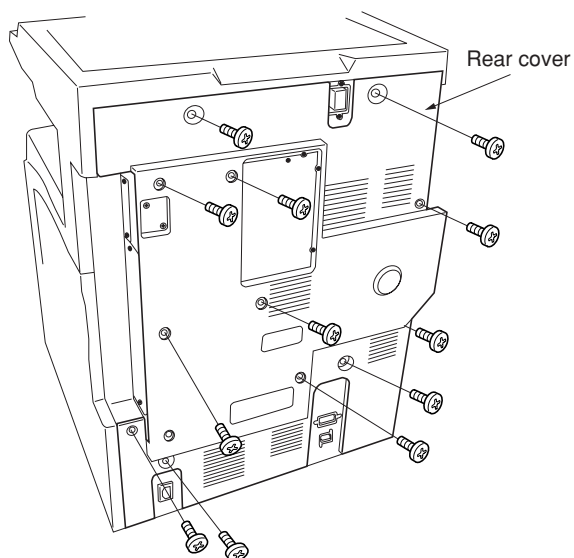


Figure 1-3-84

1-3-11 Installing the built-in finisher (option)

Preparation

Note: When placing the transfer unit on the floor or the like, be sure to place it upside down. If not, the stapler mounting plate may be deformed, resulting in a malfunction.

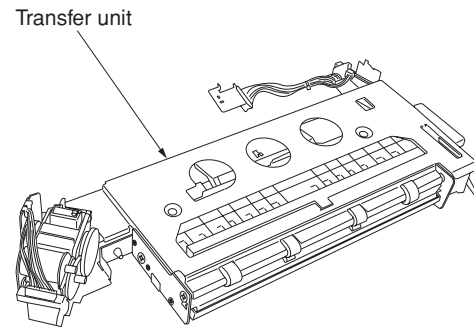


Figure 1-3-85

Procedure

1. Remove the screw and the pin to remove the upper left cover.

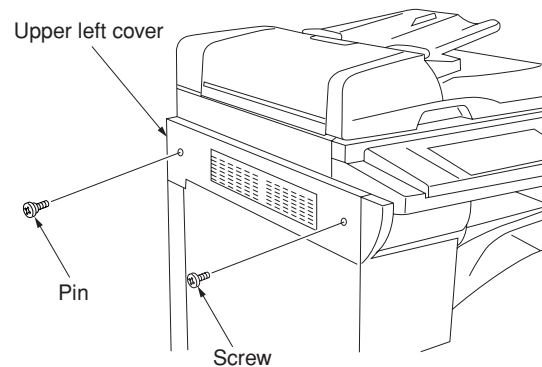


Figure 1-3-86

2. Open the conveying cover and the front cover.
3. Loosen the two screws on the left side and the screw on the front side, open the hook on the right side, and remove the left front cover.

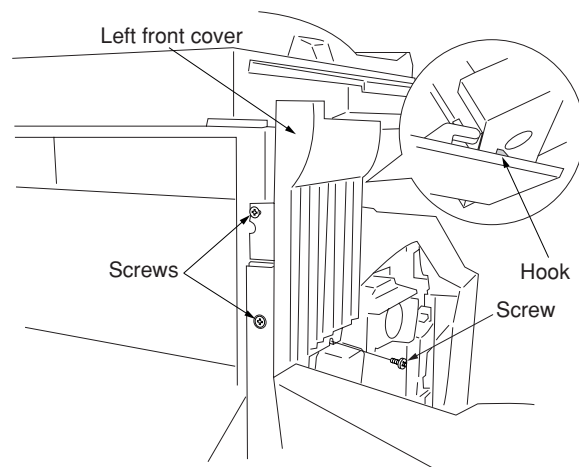


Figure 1-3-87

4. Close the conveying cover and the front cover.
5. Remove the two screws and then remove the ejection cover with the mounting plate.

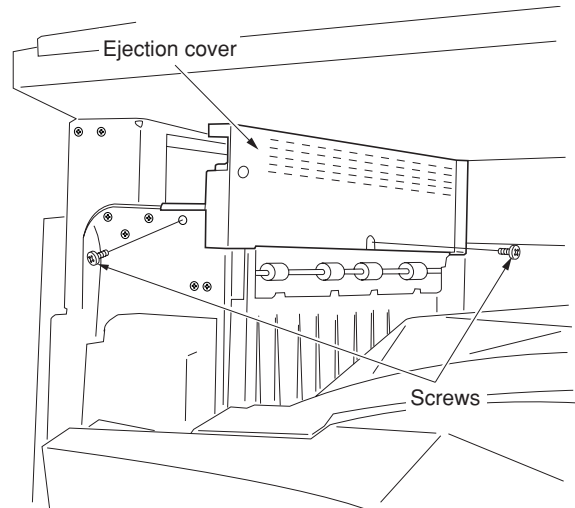


Figure 1-3-88

6. Remove the two screws and then remove the inner ejection cover.

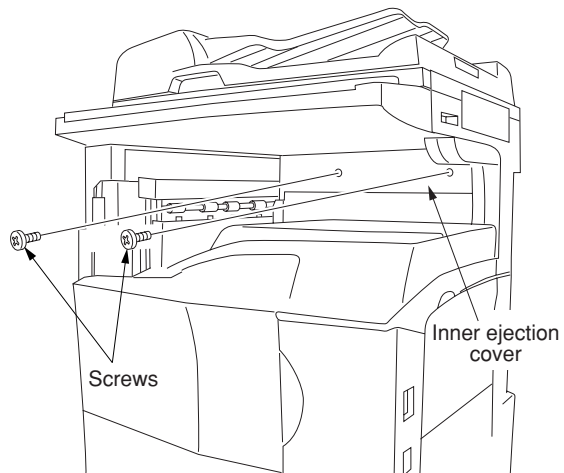


Figure 1-3-89

7. Remove the screw located at the front of the static charge eliminator of the copier, fit the flat spring ejection from the lower side, and secure it with the removed screw.

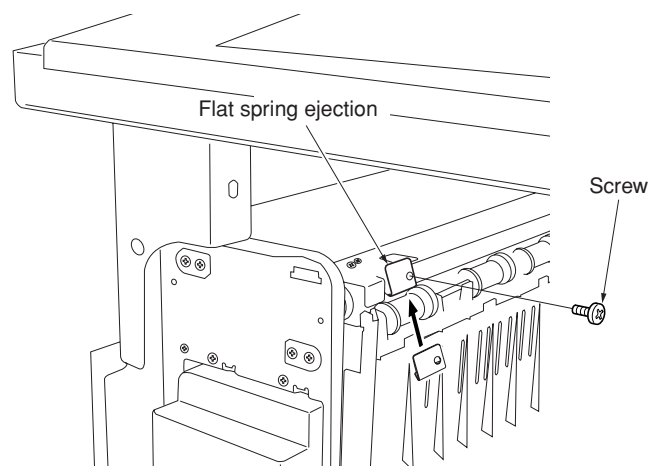


Figure 1-3-90

8. Remove the blue screw from the transfer unit and then remove the mounting plate.
9. Remove the securing tape from the 13-pin connector, pass the wire under the stapler motor, and connect the wire with the 13-pin connector.

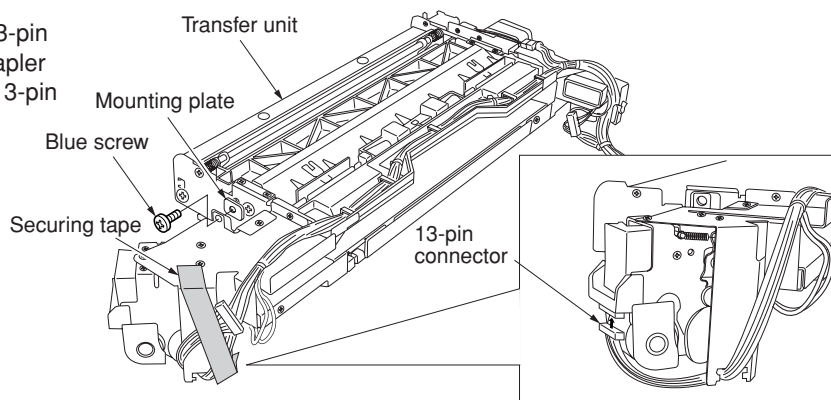


Figure 1-3-91

10. Insert the transfer unit into the copier from the front side and slide it to the left. Secure the unit using two +TP-A bronze screws M3 × 05 and the pin that has been fitted to the transfer unit.

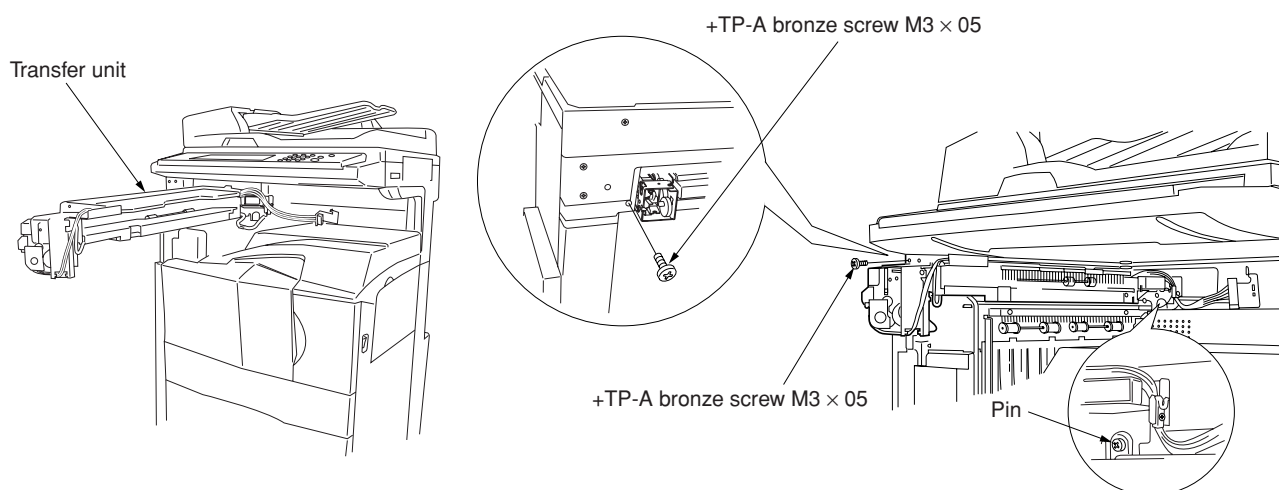


Figure 1-3-92

11. Insert the metal hook of the transfer unit into the oblong hole of the frame of the copier and secure it using a +TP-A bronze screw M3 × 05.

* Insert the projection of the frame into the hole of the metal hook to position the hook.
 * Arrange the cable to position it under the metal fittings.

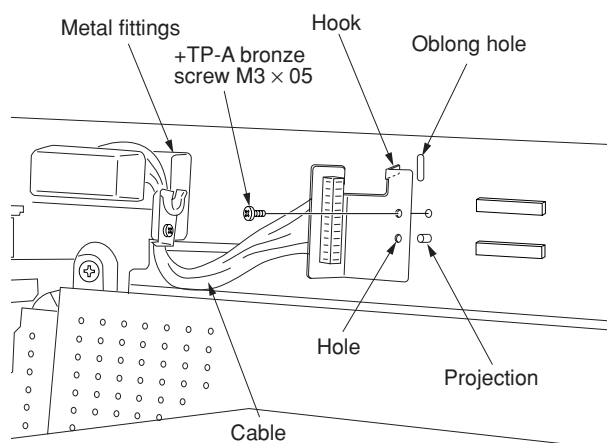


Figure 1-3-93

12. Remove a screw, turn the metal fittings upward, and fit the screw again to the lower hole.

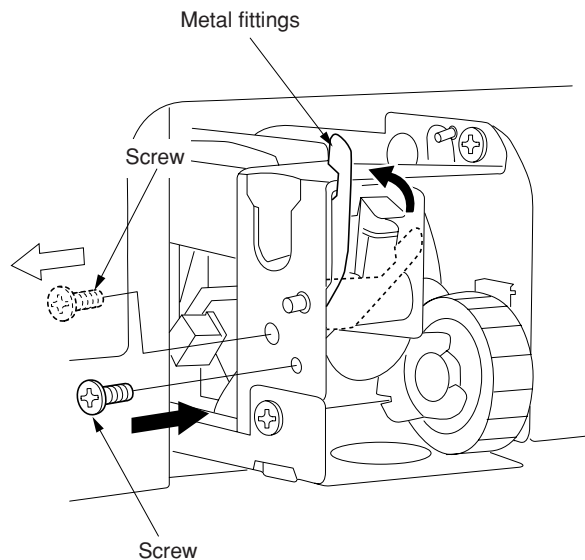


Figure 1-3-94

13. Insert the intermediate tray and connect the connector (white) of the intermediate tray to the transfer unit. Connect the connectors (gray) to the connectors of the copier as shown in the illustration. Connect the gray connector with more pins to the upper connector and the gray connector with less pins to the lower connector.

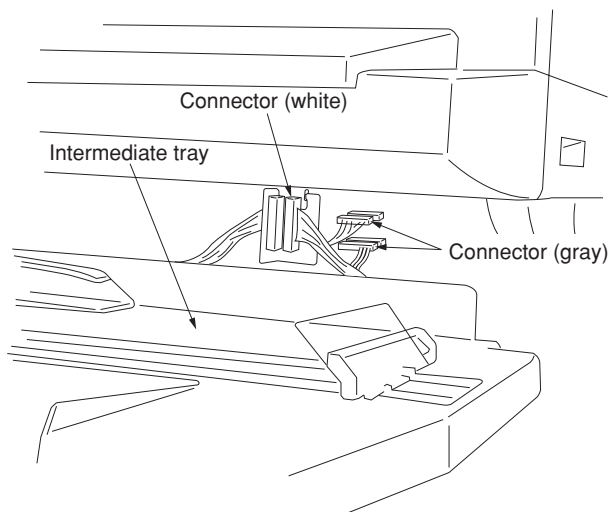


Figure 1-3-95

14. Attach the intermediate tray to the copier as shown in the illustration so that the right and left pins of the intermediate tray are positioned to the recessed portions of the copier and the transfer unit.

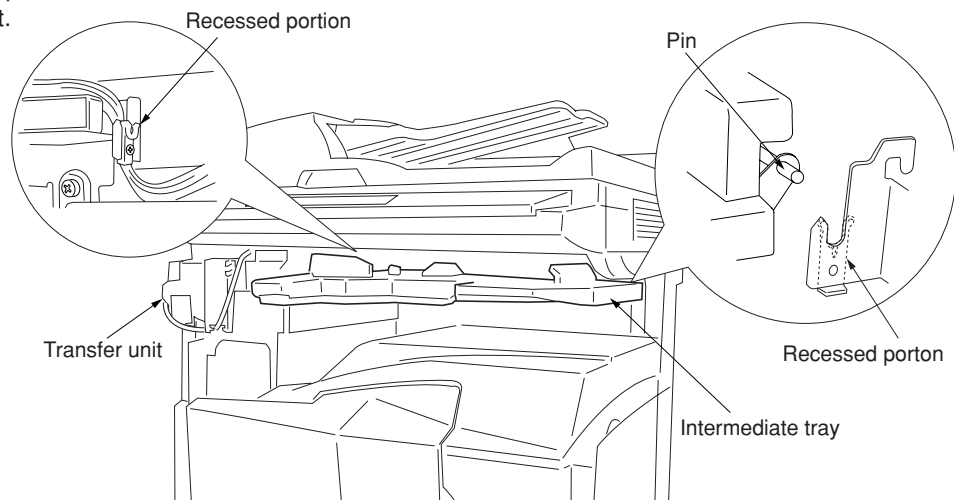


Figure 1-3-96

15. Attach the large ejection cover using the two screws that have secured the upper left cover.

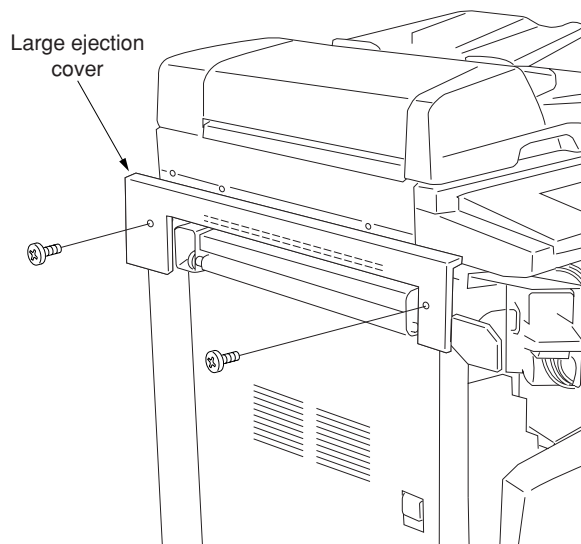


Figure 1-3-97

16. Open the front cover and the conveying cover.
 17. Attach the staple cover.
 * Tighten the two screws on the left side to secure the cover with the copier, secure the front side using the screw that has been removed in step 3, and secure the right side using a +TP-A chrome screw M3 × 05.

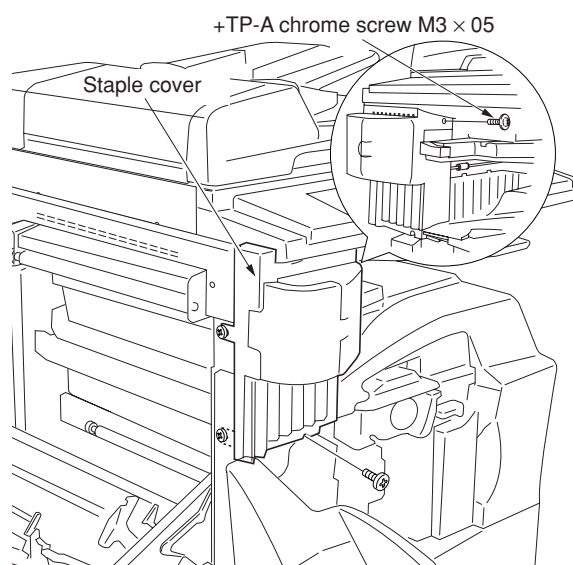


Figure 1-3-98

18. Close the conveying cover and the front cover. Attach the front ejection cover and the rear ejection cover using a +TP-A chrome screw M3 × 05 each.

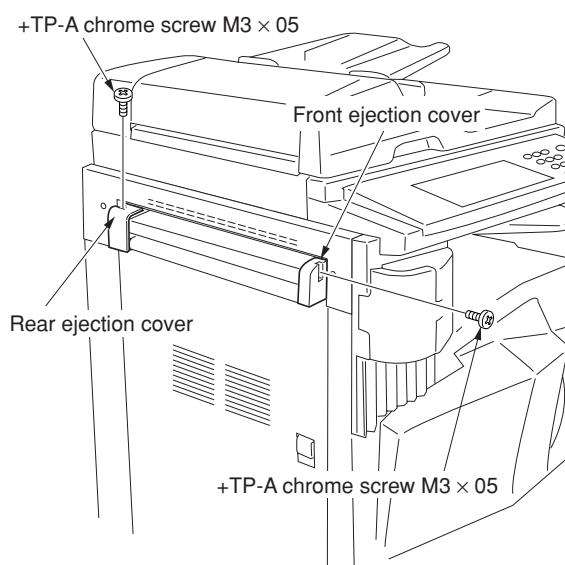


Figure 1-3-99

19. Attach the copy tray.

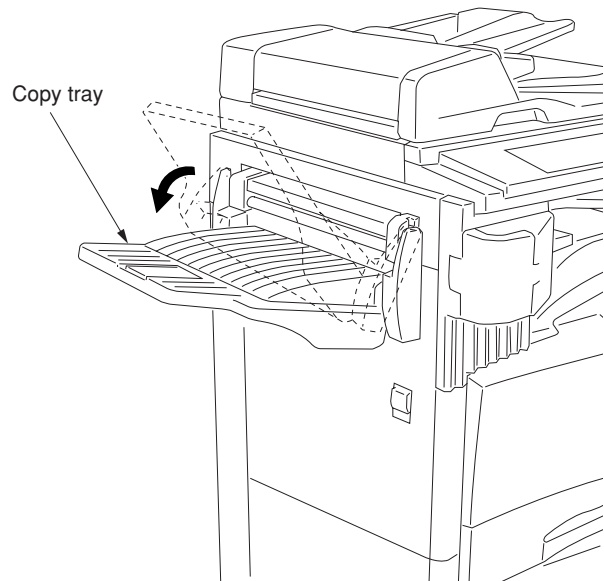


Figure 1-3-100

20. Open the staple cover and insert the staple cartridge into the stapler.
21. Close the staple cover.
22. Insert the power plug of the copier into an outlet and turn the power switch on.
23. Select the staple mode and make a stapled copy to check that stapling is performed properly.

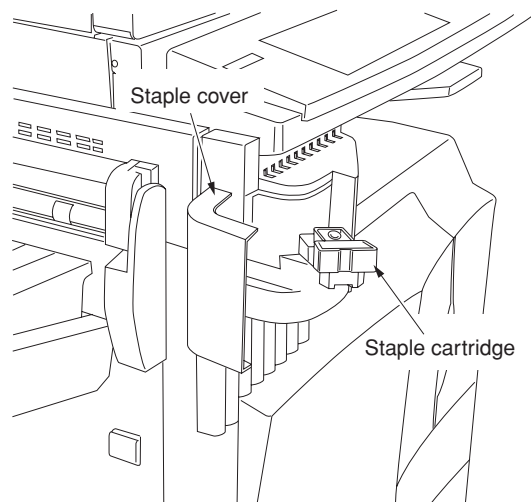


Figure 1-3-101

1-3-12 Installing the job separator (option)

Preparation

1. Insert the LED PCB into the job separator and connect the 2-pin connector of the LED PCB into the 2-pin connector of the job separator.
* Arrange the wire into the two grooves of the job separator.

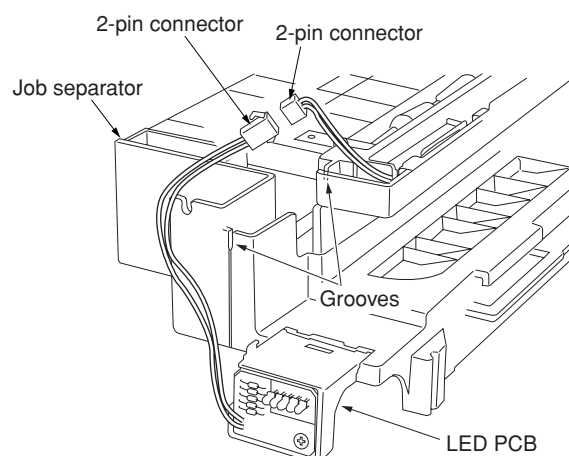


Figure 1-3-102

2. Open the conveying cover and the front cover.
3. Loosen the two left screws on the left side, remove the screw on the front side, open the hook on the right side, and remove the left front cover.
4. Close the conveying cover and the front cover.

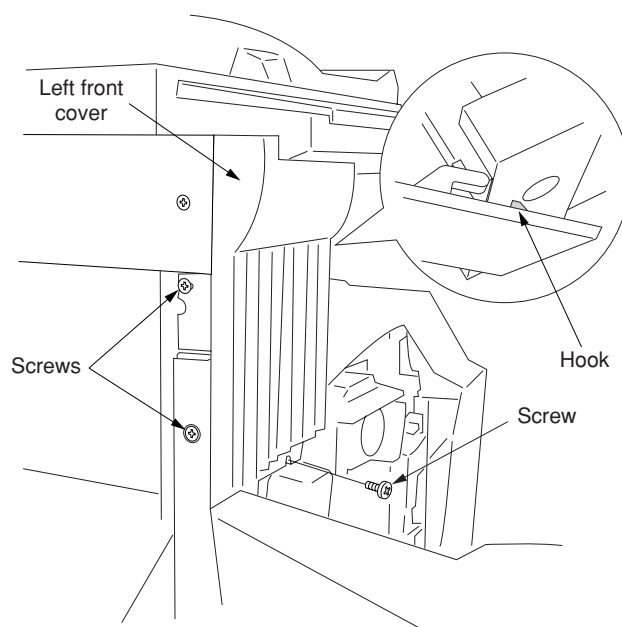


Figure 1-3-103

5. Remove the two screws and remove the ejection cover with the mounting plate.

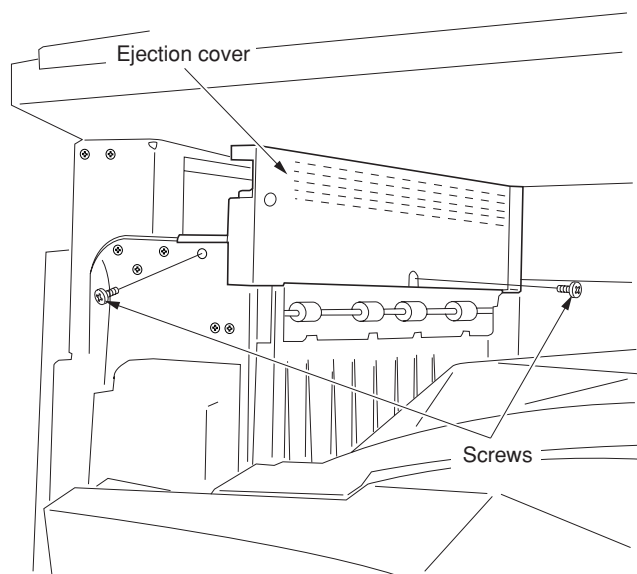


Figure 1-3-104

6. Remove the two screws and then remove the inner ejection cover.

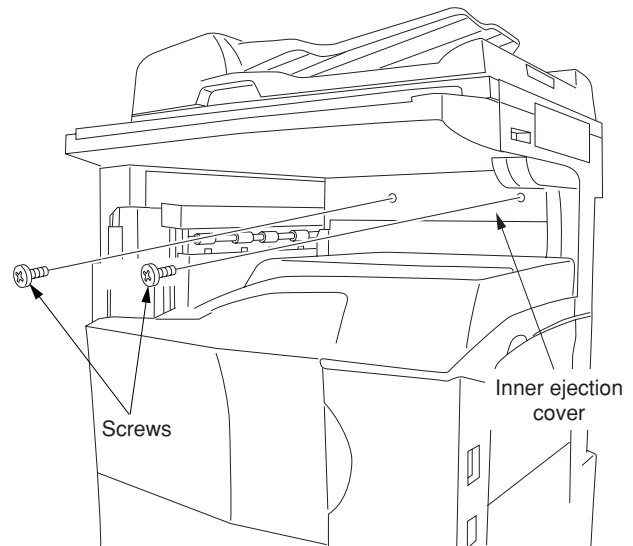


Figure 1-3-105

7. Insert the job separator into the copier from the front side and slide it to the left. Secure the front side using a +TP-A bronze screw M3 × 05 and the rear side using a pin.
* Check to see if the branch pressure lever on the rear side of the job separator has lowered.

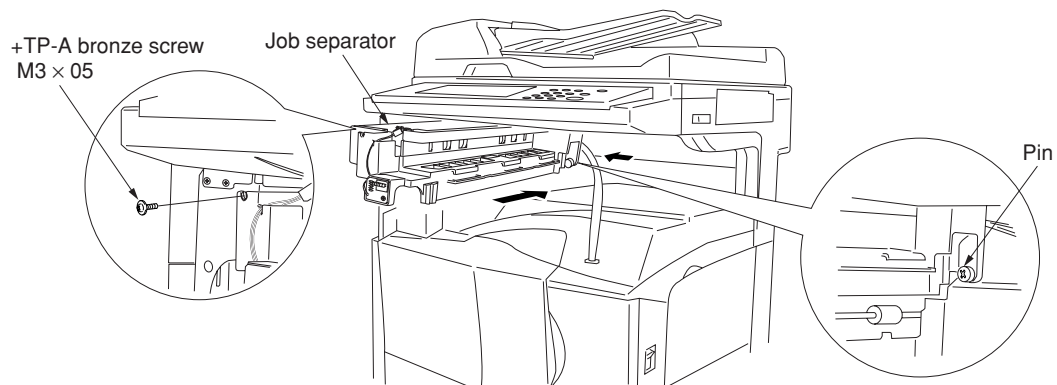


Figure 1-3-106

8. Connect the connector of the job separator to the lower connector of the copier.

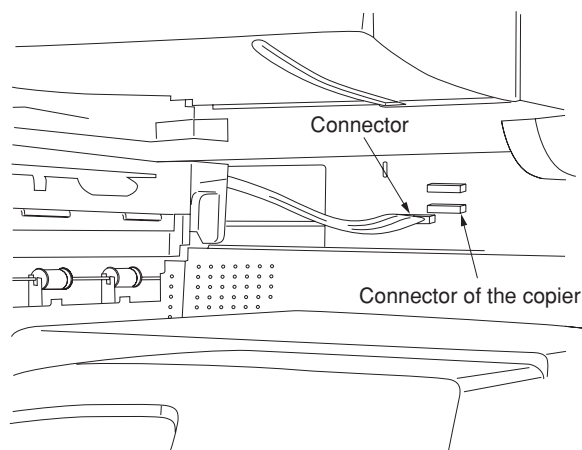


Figure 1-3-107

9. Attach the job separator tray to the rail of the job separator by sliding it from the front side.
 - * Insert the fitting section on the right side of the job separator tray into the recessed portion of the copier.
 - * Put the hook on the right side onto the pin.
10. Open the left transfer cover and the front cover. Fit the left front cover JS to the location to which the upper front cover that has been removed in step 3 was fitted.

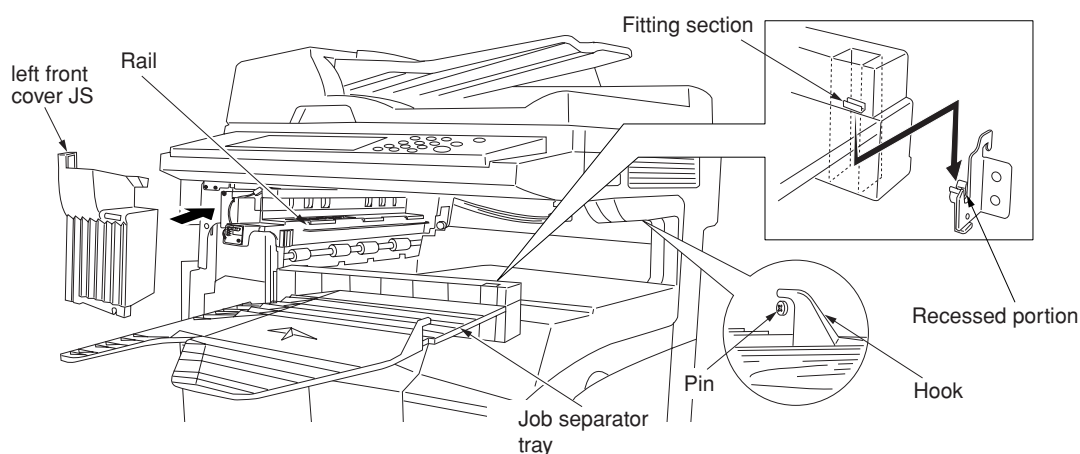


Figure 1-3-108

11. Insert the power plug of the copier into an outlet and turn the power switch on.
12. Set the "copy ejection location" of the machine default settings to job separator.
13. Make a test copy to check that a copy is ejected to the job separator tray.

1-3-13 Installing the Facsimile System (option)

Procedure

1. Remove 13 screws and take off the rear cover.

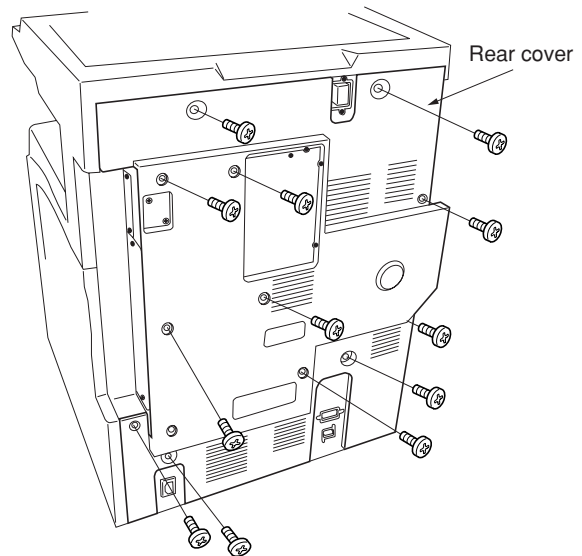


Figure 1-3-109

- If the printing system is installed
2. Remove the 2 screws holding the printer system in place, and pull the printing system out of the shield cover.

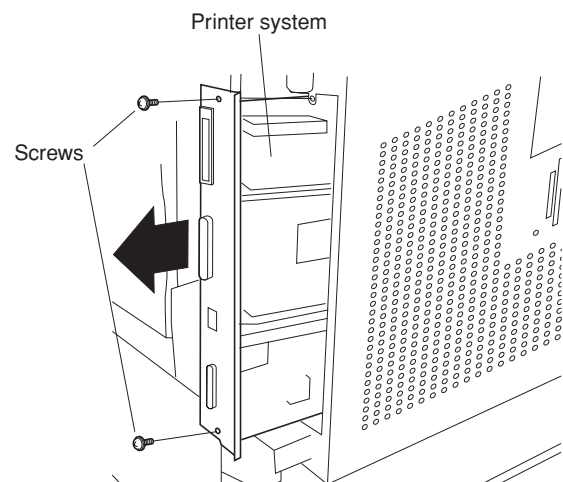


Figure 1-3-110

3. Remove 13 screws and take off the shield cover.

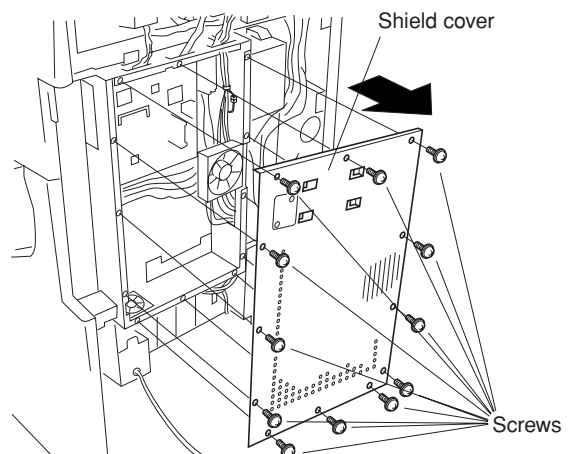


Figure 1-3-111

4. Move the film out of the way to the left, and fasten the fax board into place using four M3 × 06 chrome binding screws.

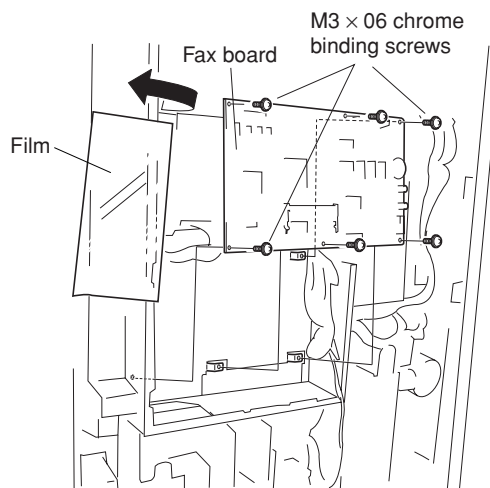


Figure 1-3-112

5. Connect the NCU cable to connector CN1 on the NCU board assembly.

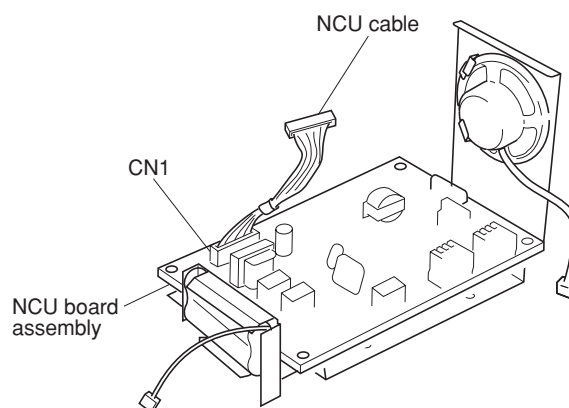


Figure 1-3-113

6. Fasten the NCU board assembly into place from the bottom with two M3 × 06 chrome binding screws.
7. Connect the three connectors from the NCU board assembly to the corresponding connectors on the fax board, as follows:
- Speaker 2-pin connector → YC7
 - NCU board connector → YC3
 - Battery connector → YC6

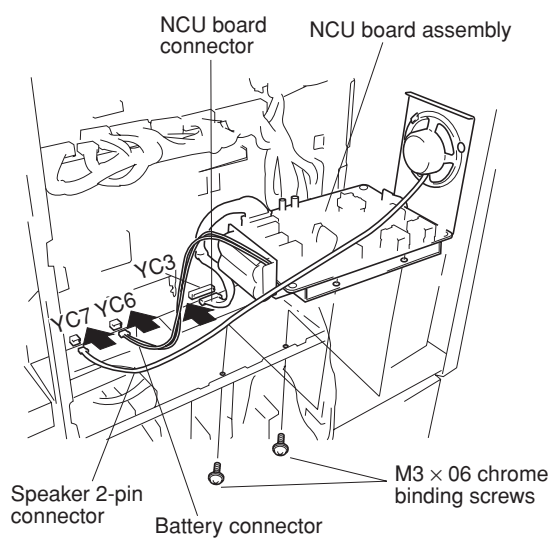


Figure 1-3-114

8. Remove the film that fixes the three positive connectors of the power source PCB from the optional interface mounting plate.

Important: Dispose of the film that has been removed.

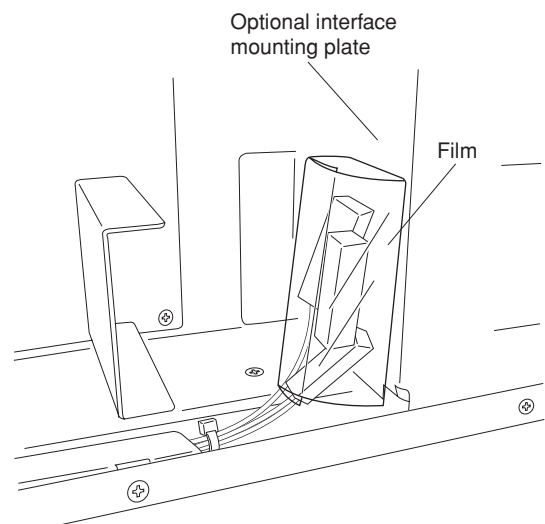


Figure 1-3-115

9. Connect the FAX-PCB-Power cable to connector CN1 on the auxiliary power source PCB assembly.

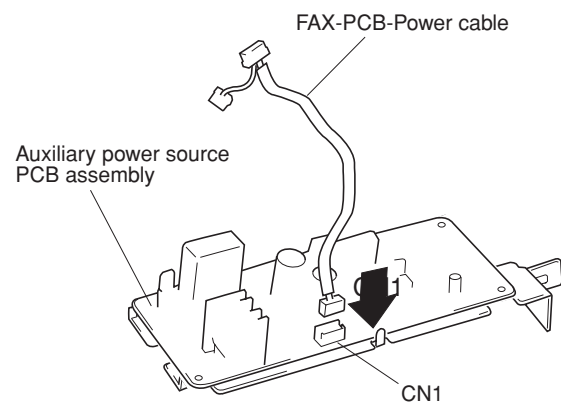


Figure 1-3-116

10. Connect the three positive connectors on the power board to the corresponding connectors on the auxiliary power source PCB assembly, as follows.

- White positive connector → TB1 (white)
- Green positive connector → TB2 (green)
- Small white positive connector → TB3

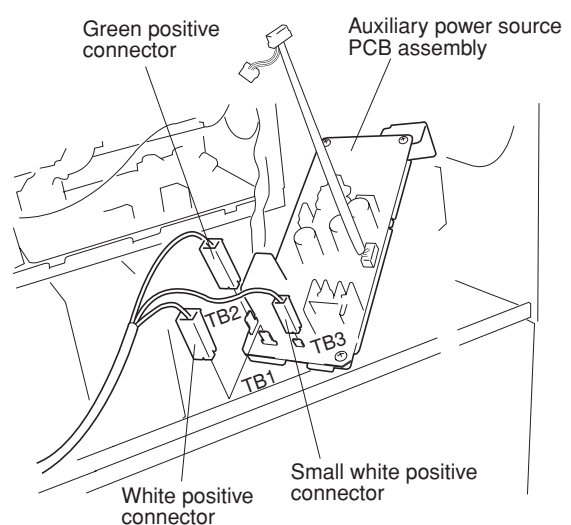


Figure 1-3-117

11. Fit the catch on the auxiliary power unit into the mount hole in the copier, and fasten the auxiliary power unit into place with one M3 × 06 chrome binding screw.

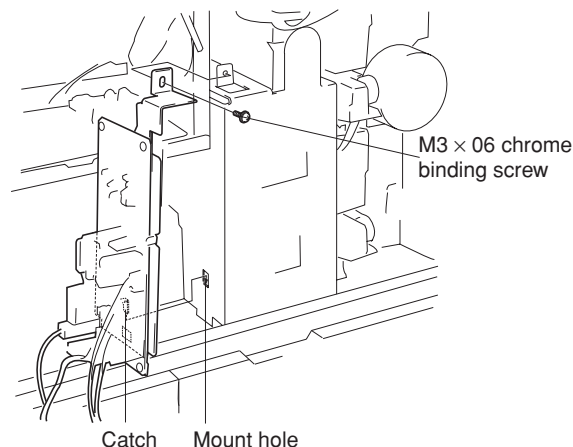


Figure 1-3-118

12. Through the opening of controller-box above the speaker, connect the FAX-PCB-Power cable on the auxiliary power source PCB assembly to connector YC8 on the fax board.
13. Connect the 2-pin connector to the 2-pin connector with green cable.

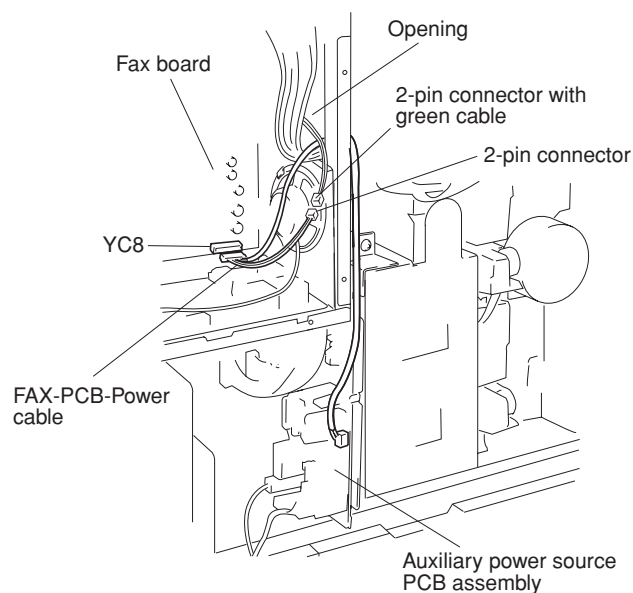


Figure 1-3-119

14. Unlock YC1 on the fax board by pulling its connector housing.
 15. Hold the fax cable with its conductive side facing up, insert it into connector YC1, then push the housing back in to lock the connector.
 16. Hold the other end of the fax cable with its conductive side facing down, and connect it to connector YC44 on the main PCB. (Pull the YC44 housing out to release the connector lock, then insert the cable, and then push the housing back in.)
- Important:** Be sure to push the fax cable all the way in, and be sure that the connection is straight. A poor connection may result in a variety of problems.

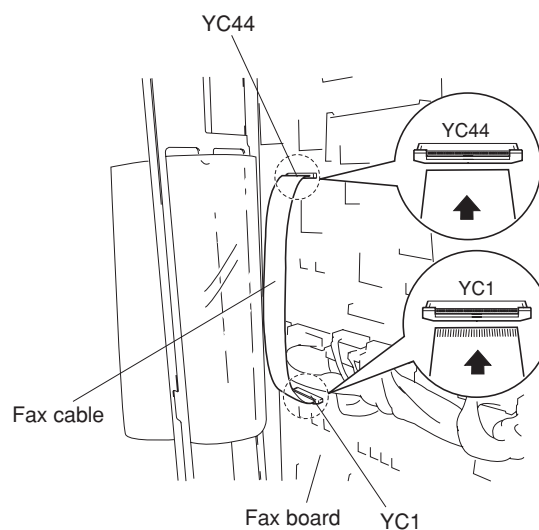


Figure 1-3-120

17. Fasten the shield cover into place with 13 screws.

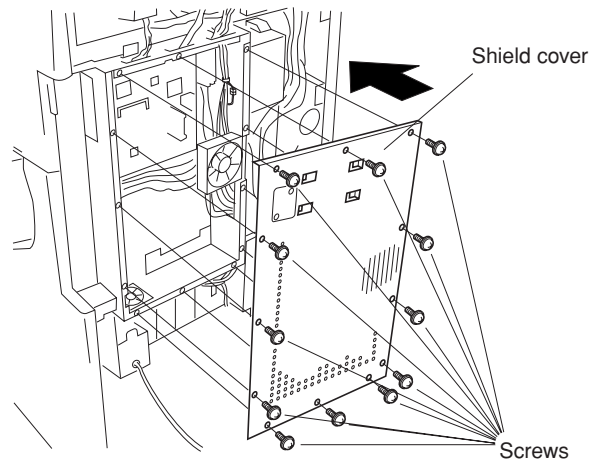


Figure 1-3-121

18. Remove 1 screw and take off the modular cover.

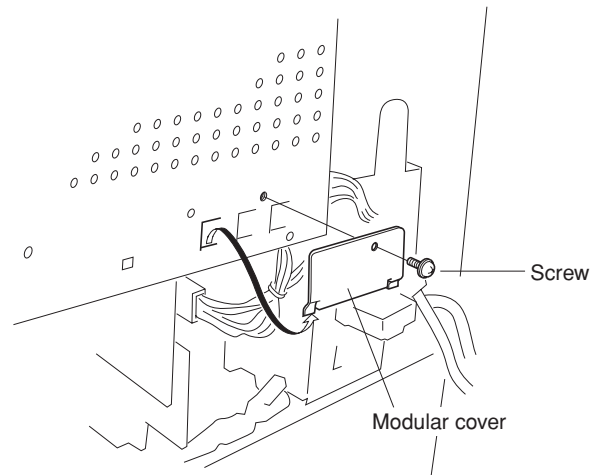


Figure 1-3-122

19. Hang the modular cover onto the holes on the controller-box cover, and fasten it into place with 1 screw.

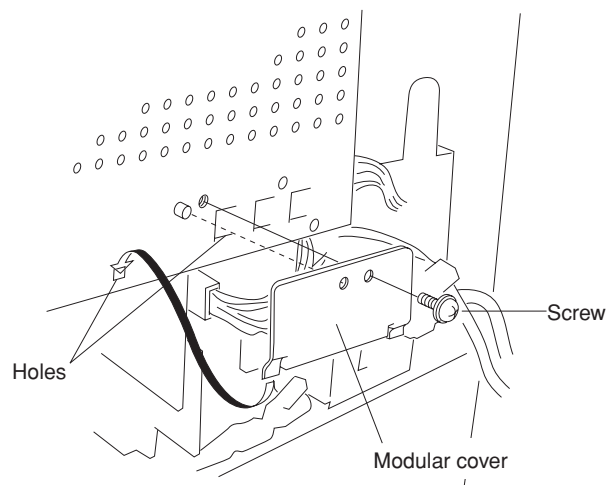


Figure 1-3-123

- If the printing system was installed
20. Reinstall the printing system into the shield cover, fastening it into place with 2 screws.

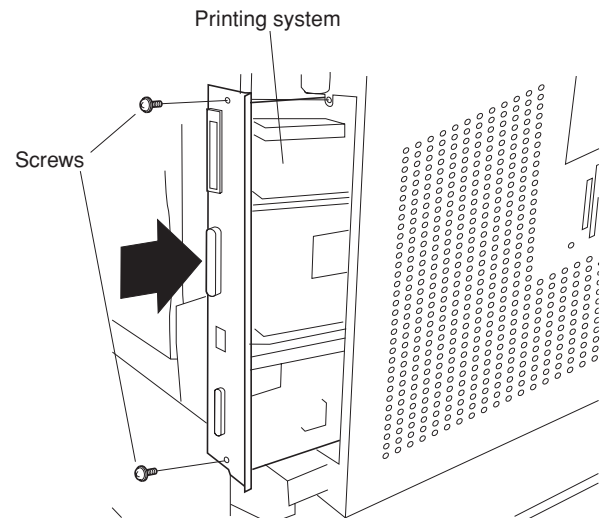


Figure 1-3-124

21. Reattach the rear cover with 13 screws.

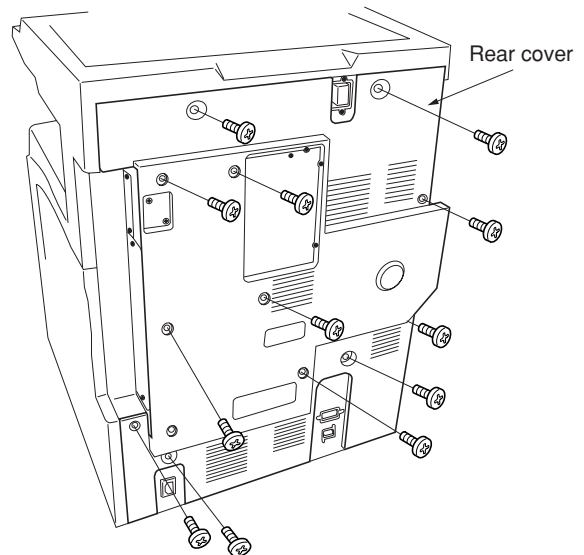


Figure 1-3-125

22. Adhere the certification labels to the rear cover at the locations indicated in the illustration (only 120 V Spac.).

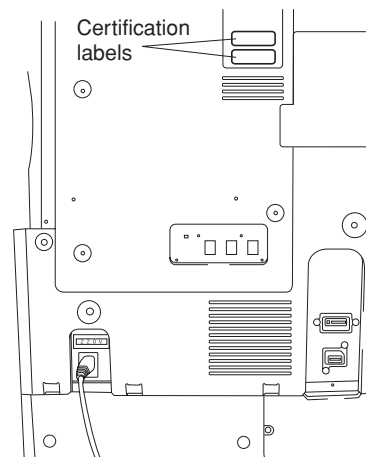


Figure 1-3-126

23. Take the power label from the fax-kit label sheet, and adhere it to the copier directly under the power switch.

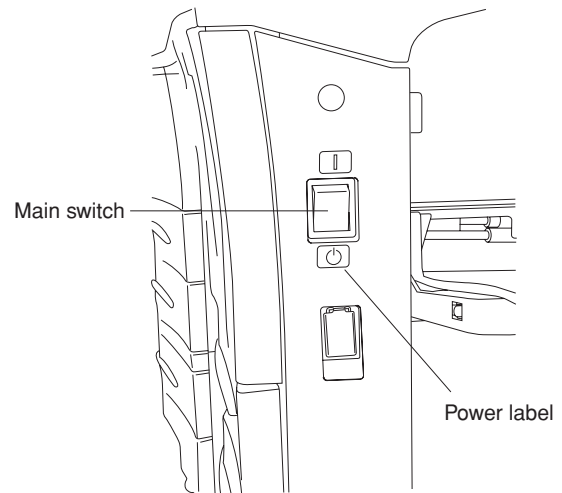


Figure 1-3-127

24. Take the alphabet labels from the fax-lit label sheet, and adhere them above the corresponding numeric keys on the operation panel.
- In Asia, use the "PQRS TUV WXYZ" label, and do not use the "PRS TUV WXZ" and "OPER" labels.

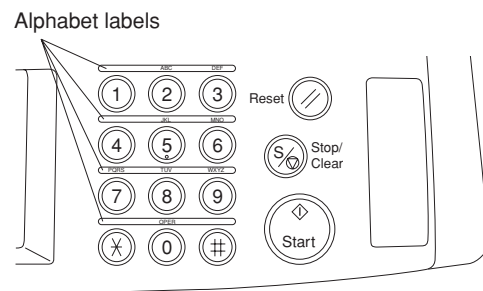


Figure 1-3-128

25. Connect the L terminal to the phone circuit using a modular connector cable.
- Important:** On 120 V systems, use the included modular connector cable to make the connection.

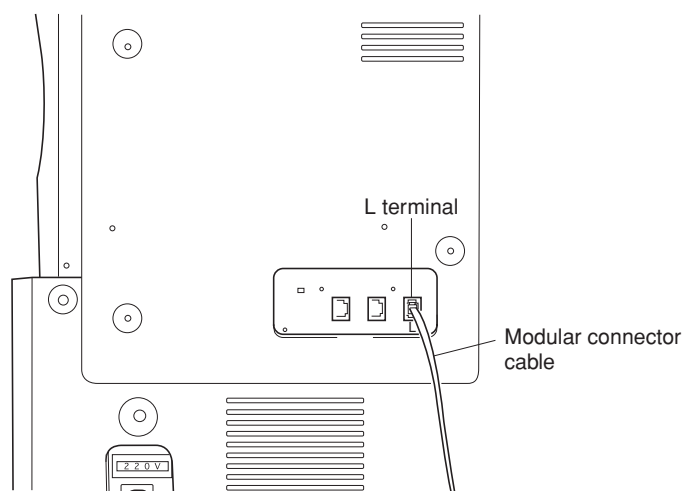


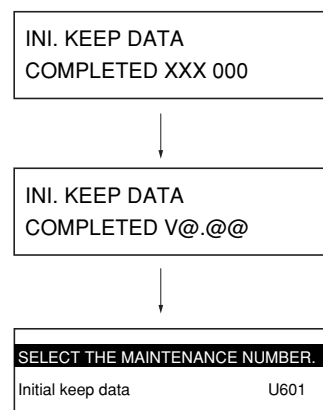
Figure 1-3-129

Initialization procedure after installation of facsimile system

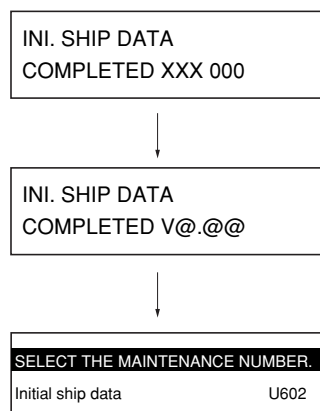
1. Insert the copier power plug to the wall outlet and turn the power switch on.
2. Run maintenance item U601.
3. Enter a destination code using the numeric keys (refer to the destination code list) and then press the start key.
- * Enter a destination code with three digits.

Code	Destination	Code	Destination	Code	Destination
000	Japan	159	South Africa	253	Sweden
009	Australia	169	Thailand		France
080	Hong Kong	181	U.S.A.		Austria
084	Indonesia	242	South America		Switzerland
088	Israel	243	Saudi Arabia		Belgium
108	Malaysia	253	CTR21 (European nations)		Denmark
126	New Zealand		Italy		Finland
136	Peru		Germany		Portugal
137	Philippines		Spain		Ireland
152	Middle East		U.K.		Norway
156	Singapore		Netherlands	254	Taiwan

4. Enter the OEM code (000) and then press the start key.
5. Confirm that the display is changed as shown in the illustration.
- * At the position of @, the version number of the software is displayed.

**Figure 1-3-130**

6. Press the cursor key to change the display to maintenance item U602.
7. Press the start key and confirm that the display is changed as shown in the illustration.
- * At the position of @, the version number of the software is displayed.
8. After completing the installation, run a communications test to confirm that the fax system is working correctly.

**Figure 1-3-131**

1-3-14 Installing the hard disk (option)

Procedure

1. Remove the screw and remove the cover for the rear cover.

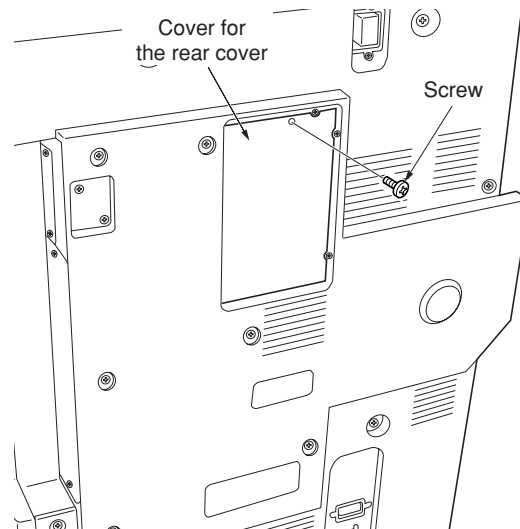


Figure 1-3-132

2. Attach the core to the wire of the hard disk by winding it one turn around the core.
Attach the core to the 4-pin wire of the machine by winding it one turn around the core.

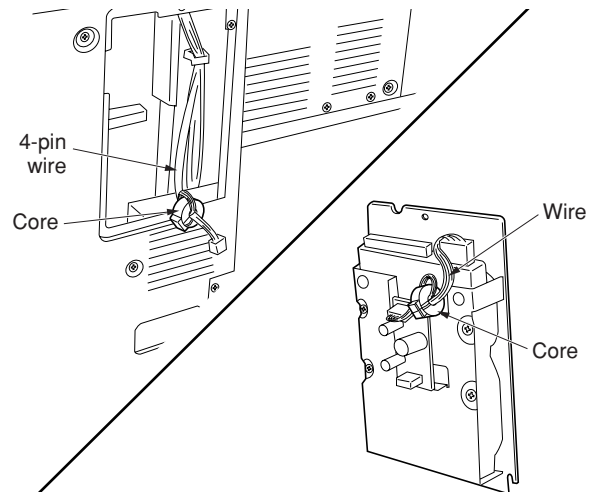


Figure 1-3-133

3. Connect the wire to the YC49 connector on the main PCB and to the connector on the hard disk.
Caution: Connect the blue connector of the wire to the YC49 connector of the main PCB, and connect the black connector of the wire to the connector of the hard disk.
Connect the 4-pin connector of the machine to the YC1 connector on the sub power supply PCB of the hard disk.

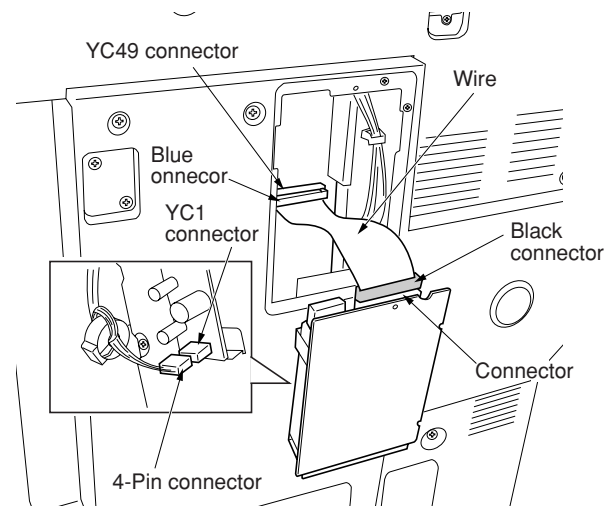
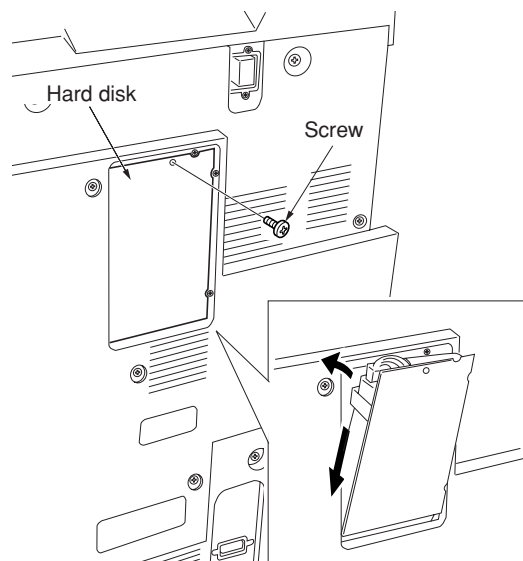


Figure 1-3-134

4. Insert the hard disk and secure it with the screw that has been removed in step 1.
5. Insert the power plug of the copier to the outlet and turn the power switch on.
6. Run maintenance item U024 to initialize the hard disk.

**Figure 1-3-135**

1-3-15 Installing the 1000-sheet finisher (option)

Procedure

1. Open the left cover of the copier.
2. Remove the two screws securing the feedshift guide assembly and then the assembly.

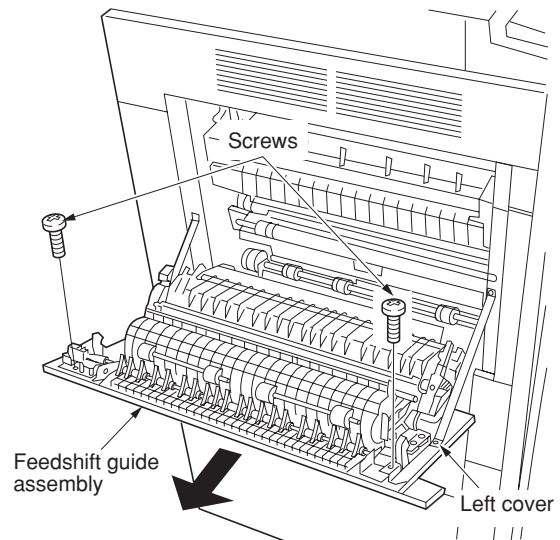


Figure 1-3-136

3. Fit the curl eliminator to the left cover such that the projections on the cover fit into the two ends of the curl eliminator.
4. Secure the curl eliminator using the two screws removed in step 2.

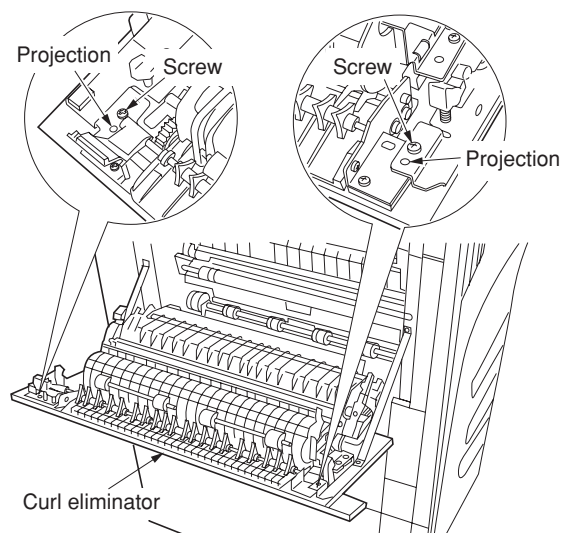


Figure 1-3-137

5. Close the left cover.
6. Fit the latch catch to the left cover using two M4 × 10 binding screws.

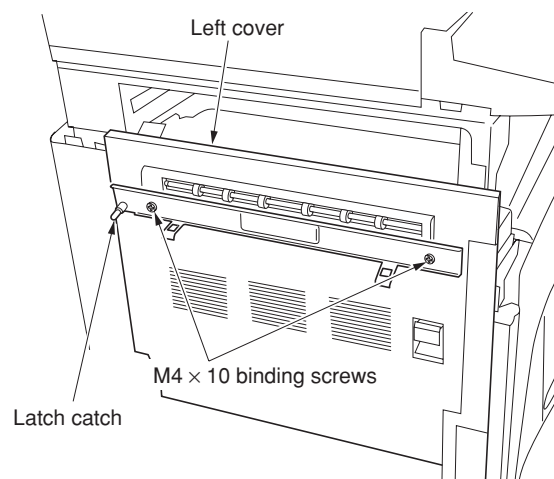


Figure 1-3-138

7. Align the rail retainer with the groove of the guide rail and attach the rail retainer to the guide rail. Make sure that the plate spring of the rail retainer fits into the groove and the edge of the guide rail fits between the pulleys on the reverse side of the rail retainer.

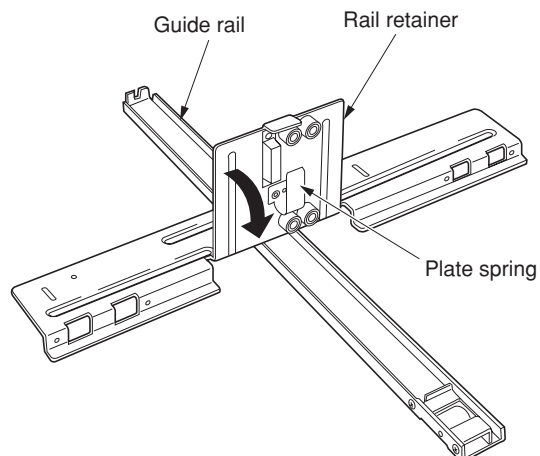


Figure 1-3-139

8. Orient the guide rail such that its pulley is positioned toward the copier.

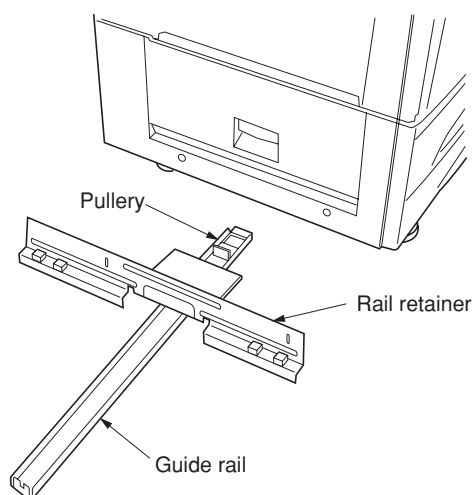


Figure 1-3-140

9. Secure the rail retainer to the copier using two M4 × 10 binding screws such that the front and the rear gaps between the floor and the rail retainer are approximately 10 mm.

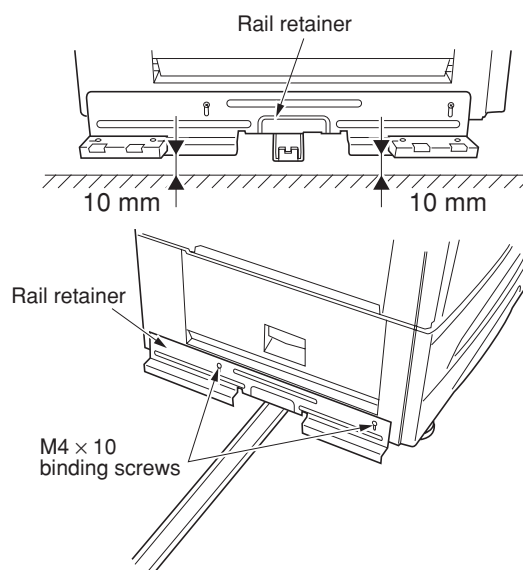


Figure 1-3-141

10. Insert the rail fixing plate into the bottom of the finisher and join them by inserting two M4 × 6 binding screws loosely.

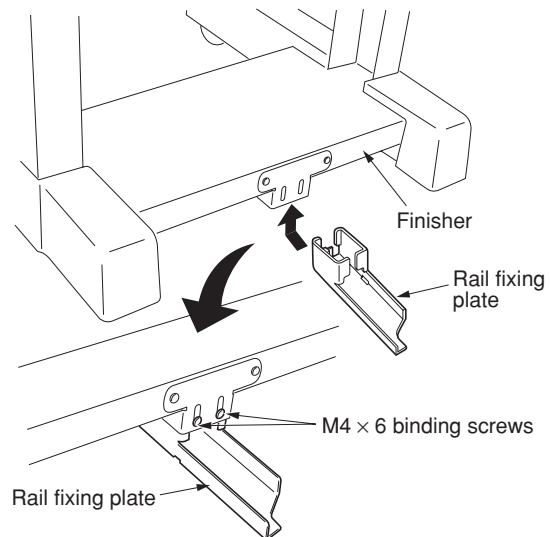


Figure 1-3-142

11. Insert the guide rail into the rail fixing plate and secure it using two M4 × 6 binding screws at the positions where the screw holes in it and those in the rail fixing plate meet.

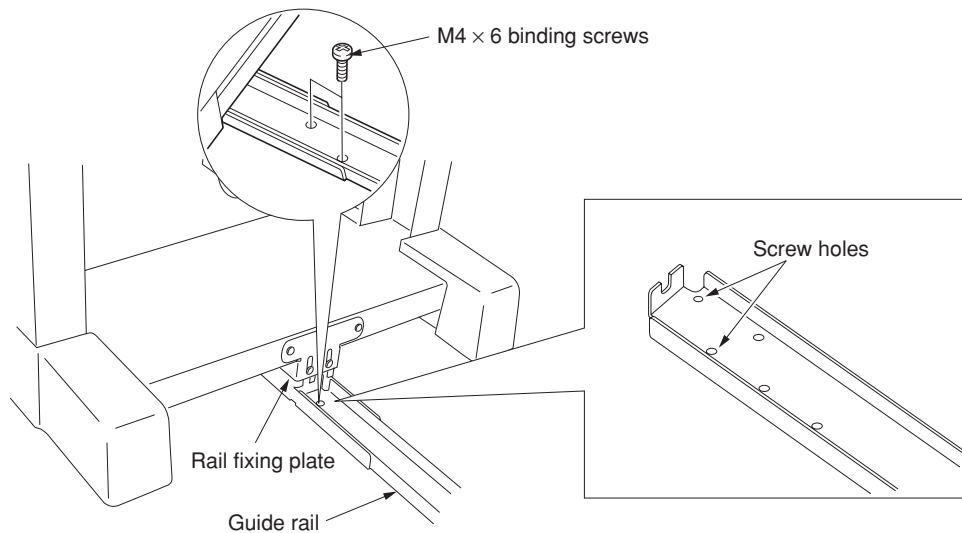


Figure 1-3-143

12. Adjust the position of the rail fixing plate so that the gap between the plate and the floor is approximately 8.0 mm, and then tighten the two loosely fitted M4 × 6 binding screws. If the finisher and the copier do not engage securely, perform the following finisher height adjustment.

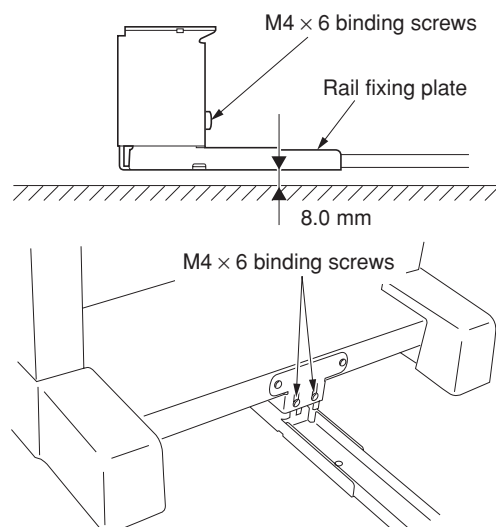


Figure 1-3-144

Adjusting the height of the finisher

1. Remove the front and rear covers from the finisher by removing two screws each.
*When removing the covers, open both ends of the covers in the directions indicated by the arrows and remove three inside ribs to remove the covers.

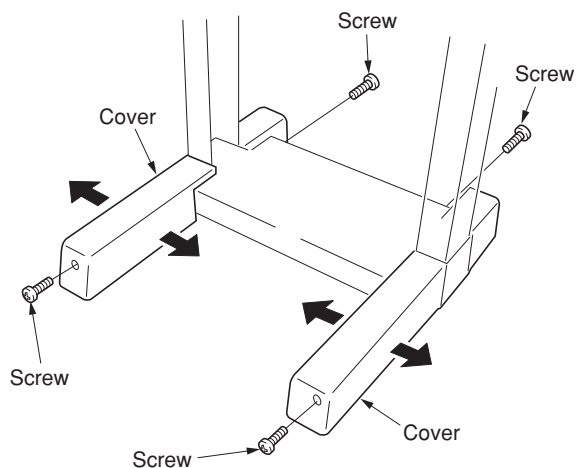


Figure 1-3-145

2. Loosen the two screws on the rear right caster of the finisher. Adjust the height of the rear right caster by turning its adjustment bolt using a cross-headed screwdriver so that the axis of the pin of the latch catch is aligned with the marking of the slot of the finisher when the finisher is joined to the copier (viewed from the machine front).
Note: Turning the adjustment bolt clockwise lifts the finisher, while turning it counterclockwise lowers the finisher.

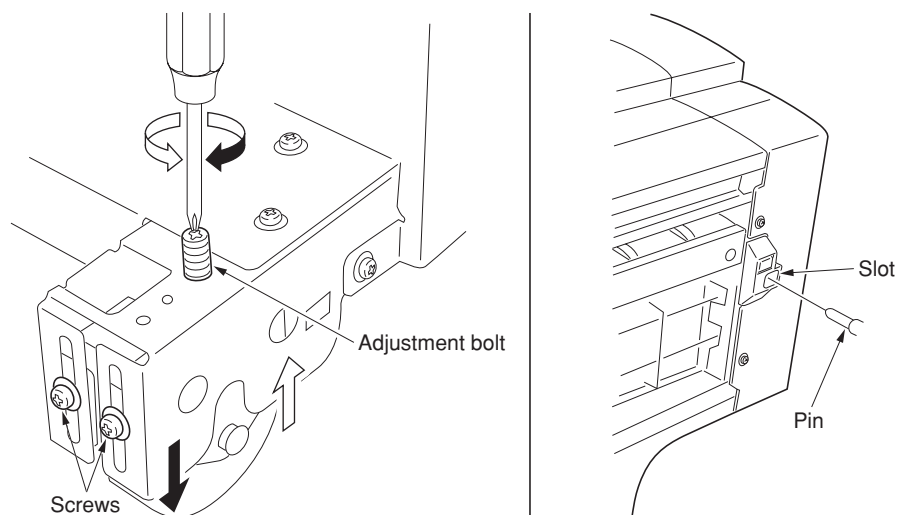


Figure 1-3-146

3. Adjust the height of the front right caster in the same manner as in step 2 so that each center of the hooking portions of the latch catch is aligned with the center of the two hooks on the finisher when the finisher is joined to the copier (viewed from above).

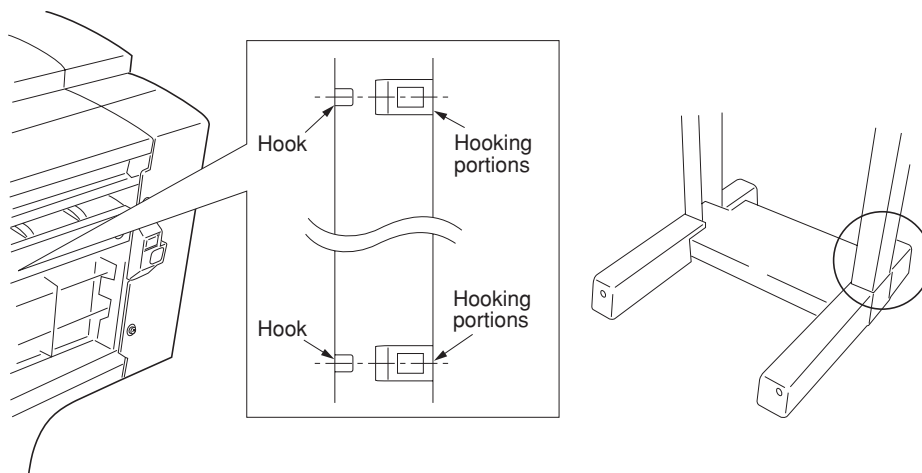


Figure 1-3-147

4. Adjust the height of the left two casters in the same manner as in step 2 so that the right and left gaps "a" between the finisher and the copier are the same at the top and bottom when the finisher is detached from the copier.
5. Reattach the removed parts to their original positions.

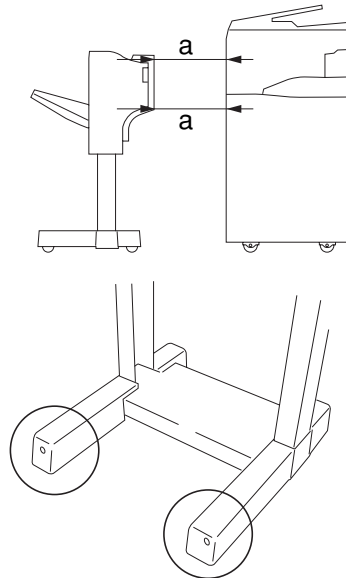


Figure 1-3-148

Connecting the signal cable

1. Connect the signal cable of the finisher to the copier.

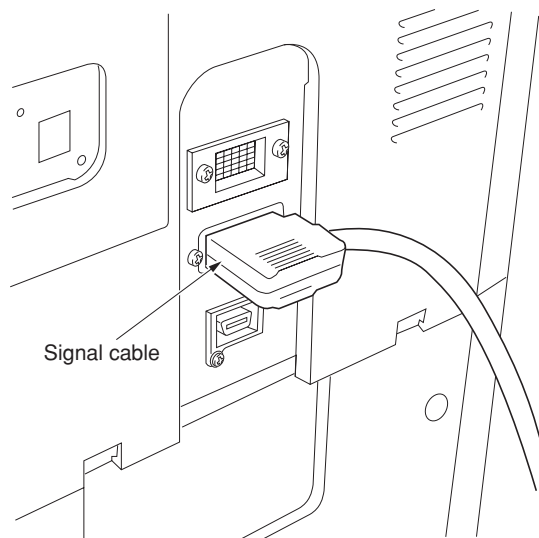


Figure 1-3-149

Operation check

1. Insert the copier power plug to the wall outlet and turn the power switch on.
2. Make test copies and check that the finisher operates correctly.

1-3-16 Installing the 3000-sheet finisher (option)

Procedure

[Mounting the curl eliminator]

1. Open the copier's left cover.
2. Remove two screws and take off the feedshift guide assembly.

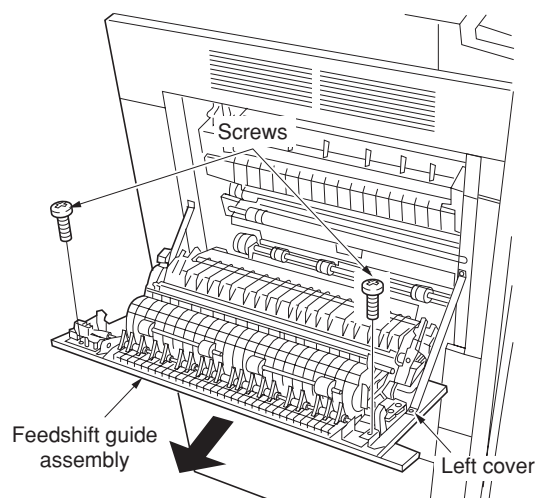


Figure 1-3-150

3. Mount the curl eliminator onto the left cover so that the projections at each end fits into place.
4. Fasten the curl eliminator into place with the two screws removed at step 2.

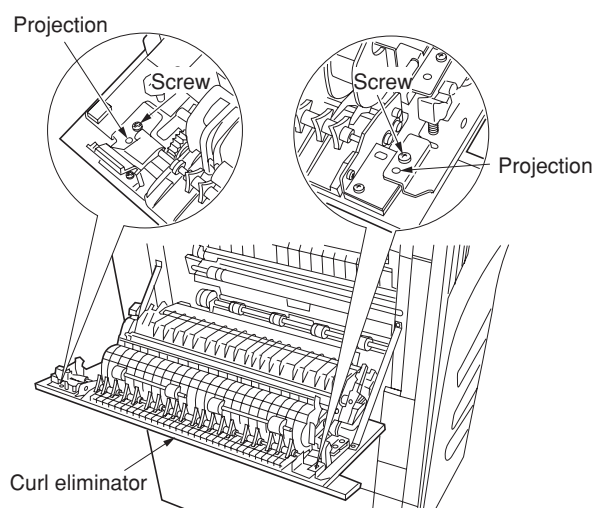


Figure 1-3-151

5. Fasten the retainer to the left cover with the two M4 × 8 TP-A chrome screws. Fasten at the center of the oblong holes.

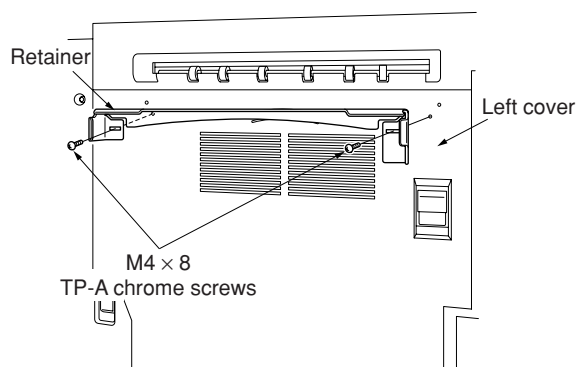


Figure 1-3-152

[Mounting the finisher]

1. Unscrew the two blue screws and remove the two metal fittings holding the rail unit to the finisher.

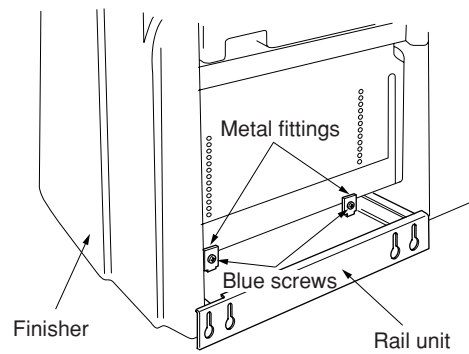


Figure 1-3-153

2. Unscrew the transport fastening screw from the rail unit, move it into the front screw hole, and screw it in.

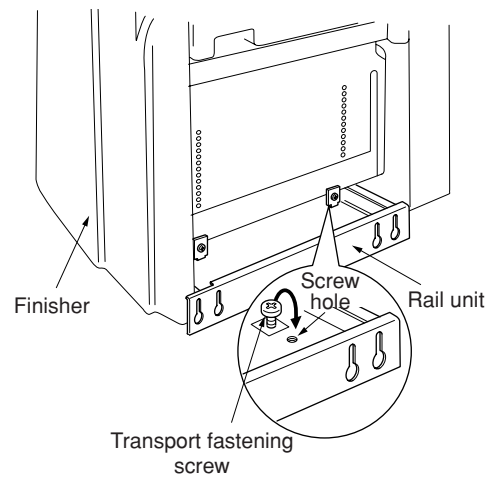


Figure 1-3-154

3. Pull out the two fastening pins holding the waste punch box in place, and take the waste punch box out of the finisher.

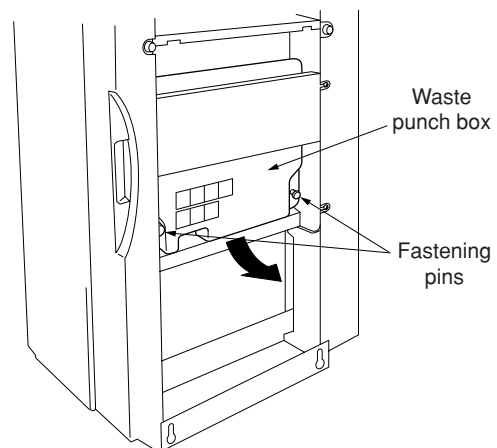


Figure 1-3-155

4. Remove the tape securing the solenoid, and the tape securing the shifting guide.
5. Set the waste punch box back into the finisher, and fasten it into place with the two fastening pins.

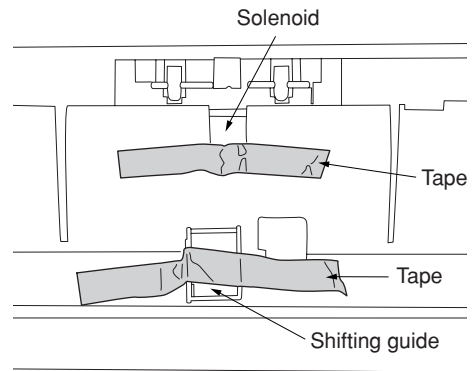


Figure 1-3-156

6. Pull the rail unit out of the finisher.
7. Loosely fasten the rail unit to the copier's finisher-attachment area with the two M4 × 10 TP-A bronze screws.

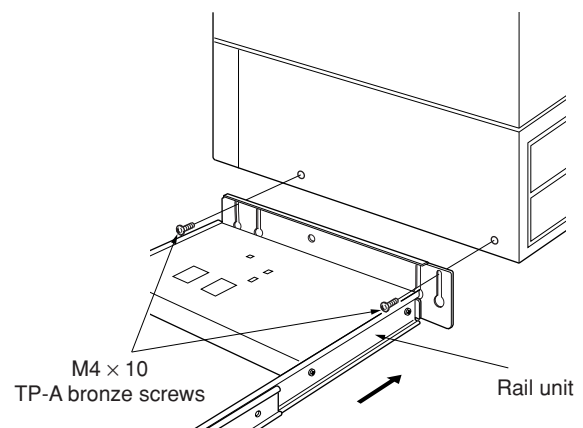


Figure 1-3-157

8. Move the finisher next to the copier, and open the finisher's front cover. Adjust the height-adjustment screw in the rail unit until the guideline marked on the retainer is aligned with the center of the height-adjustment plate.

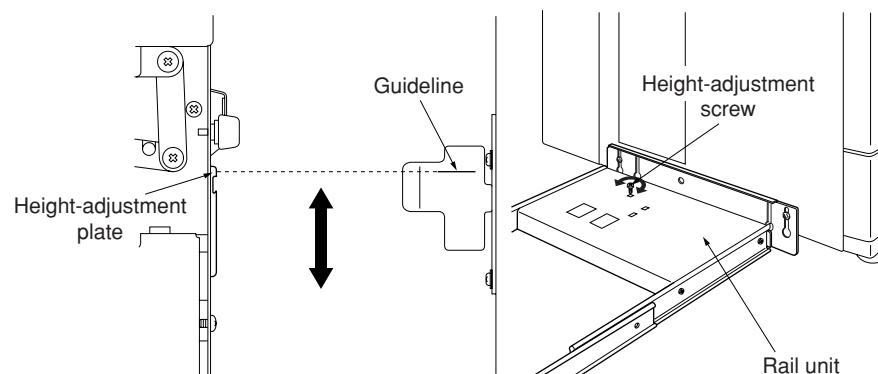


Figure 1-3-158

9. Pull the finisher away, and tighten up the two M4 × 10 TP-A bronze screws.
10. Set the finisher against the copier.

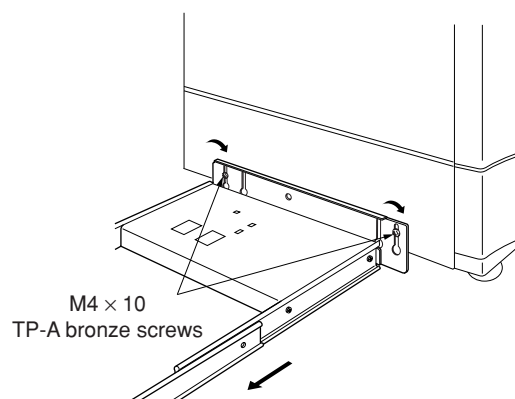


Figure 1-3-159

11. Open the finisher's front cover.
12. Remove the tape securing the internal tray unit.

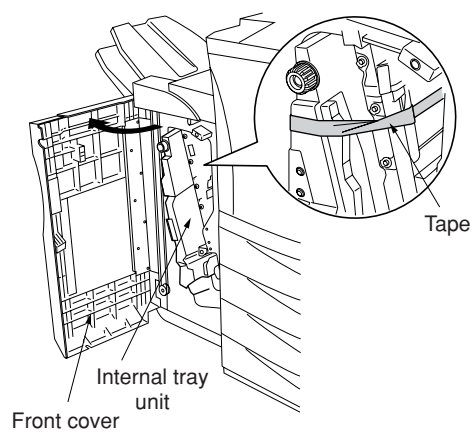


Figure 1-3-160

13. Remove the fastening pin holding the internal tray unit in place, and pull out the middle tray unit.

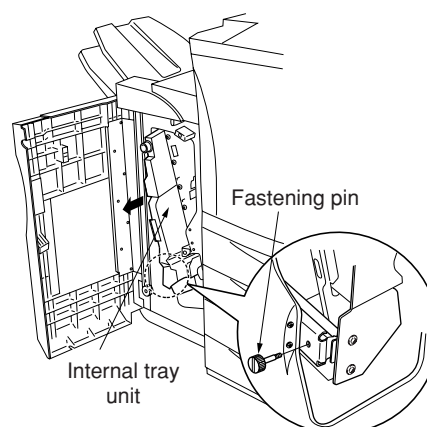


Figure 1-3-161

14. Remove the tape securing the cushioning material for the stapler unit, and remove the cushioning material.

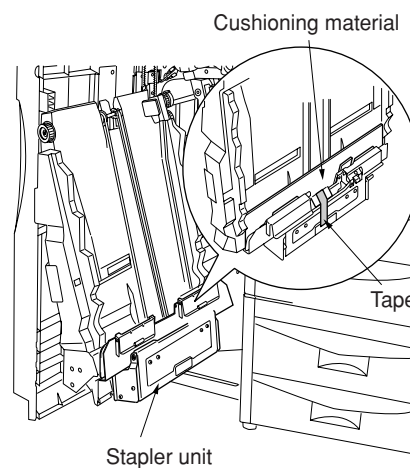


Figure 1-3-162

15. Remove the two fastening pins securing the stapler unit at the bottom of the intermediate tray unit.

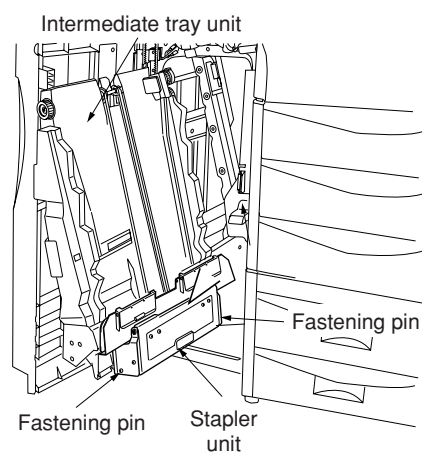


Figure 1-3-163

16. Raise the stapler unit in the indicated direction, and load the two stapler cartridges into the unit.

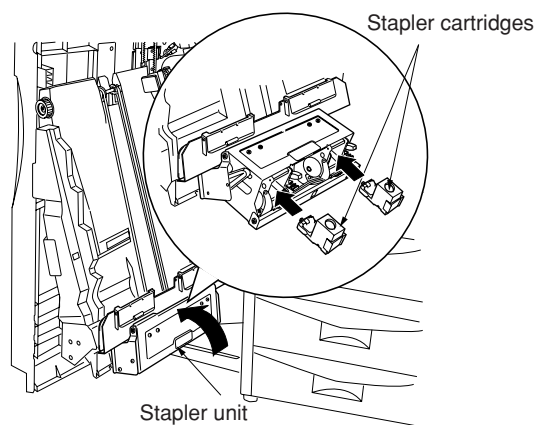


Figure 1-3-164

17. Lift the stapler unit further up, and then lower it.
18. Set the intermediate tray unit back into the finisher, and close the front cover.

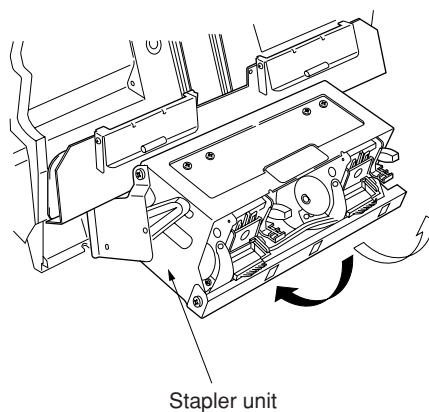


Figure 1-3-165

19. Fasten the main tray to the finisher using the two fixing guide pins and the two hexagonal cap nuts.

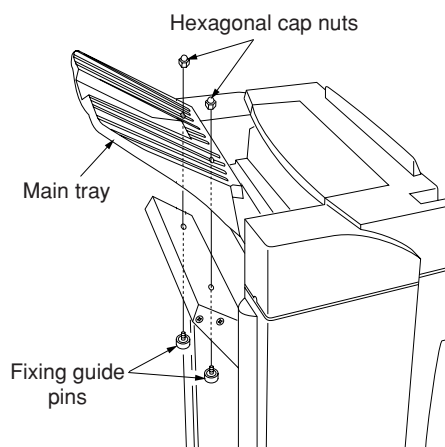


Figure 1-3-166

20. Hold the auxiliary tray vertically, attach it to the top of the finisher, and lower it toward the exit side.

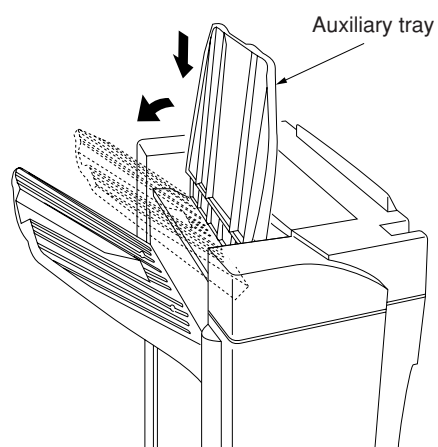


Figure 1-3-167

[Connecting the signal cable]

1. Connect the finisher's signal cable to the connector on the rear of the copier.
2. Plug the copier into a wall outlet, and turn its power switch on.

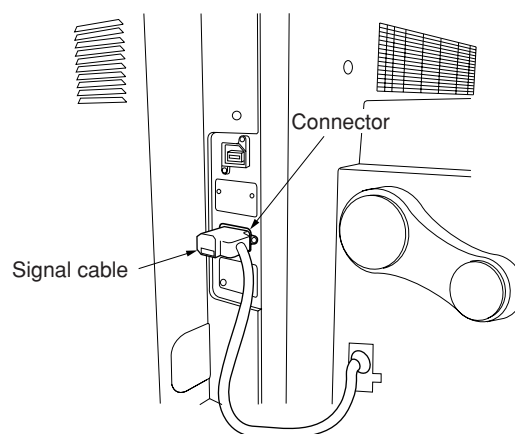


Figure 1-3-168

[Adjust the punch-hole centering]

1. Set the machine into punch mode, and make a test copy using manual feed.
Note: Perform this check after checking that the center position of each drawer in the copier is correct.
2. Check the centering of the punch-holes on the test copy.
3. Loosen the two screws securing the retainer, move the retainer as necessary to adjust, and then retighten the screws.

If holes are off-center toward the front of the copier (case [a] in illustration):

- Move the retainer toward the rear of the machine (in the direction of the ← in the illustration.)

If holes are off-center toward the rear of the copier (case [b] in illustration):

- Move the retainer toward the rear of the machine (in the direction of the → in the illustration.)

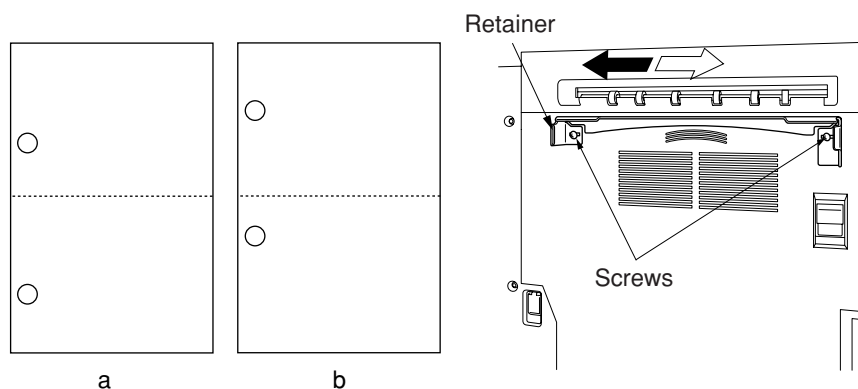


Figure 1-3-169

[Adjust the paper curl]

1. Run paper through the machine.
2. Check the curl on the paper ejected onto the finisher's auxiliary tray.

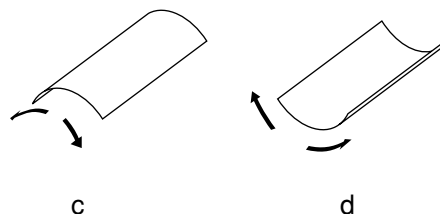


Figure 1-3-170

If excessive downward curl (case [c] in illustration):

- (1) Open the document finisher's front cover.
- (2) Move the lower lever one step to the left.
Note: The lever is initially set to position "1", and can be adjusted to five positions ("1" to "5").
- (3) Run paper through the machine.
- (4) Check the downward curl on the ejected paper.
- (5) Repeat steps 2 to 4 until there is no curl.
- (6) Close the finisher's front cover.

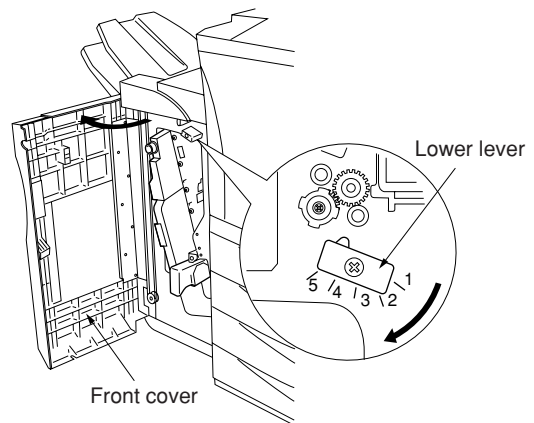


Figure 1-3-171

If excessive upward curl (case [d] in illustration):

- (1) Loosen the four screws and remove the finisher's upper cover.

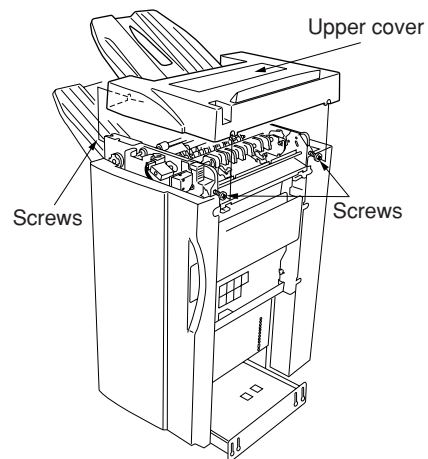


Figure 1-3-172

- (2) Move the upper lever one step to the right.
Note: The lever is initially set to position "1", and can be adjusted to five positions ("1" to "5").
- (3) Run paper through the machine.
- (4) Check the upward curl on the ejected paper.
- (5) Repeat steps 2 to 4 until there is no curl.
- (6) Reattach the finisher's upper, and tighten the four screws.

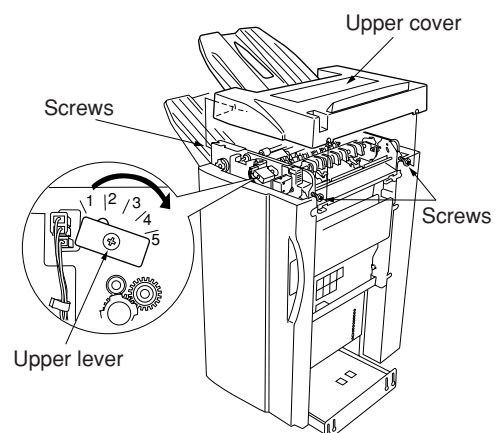
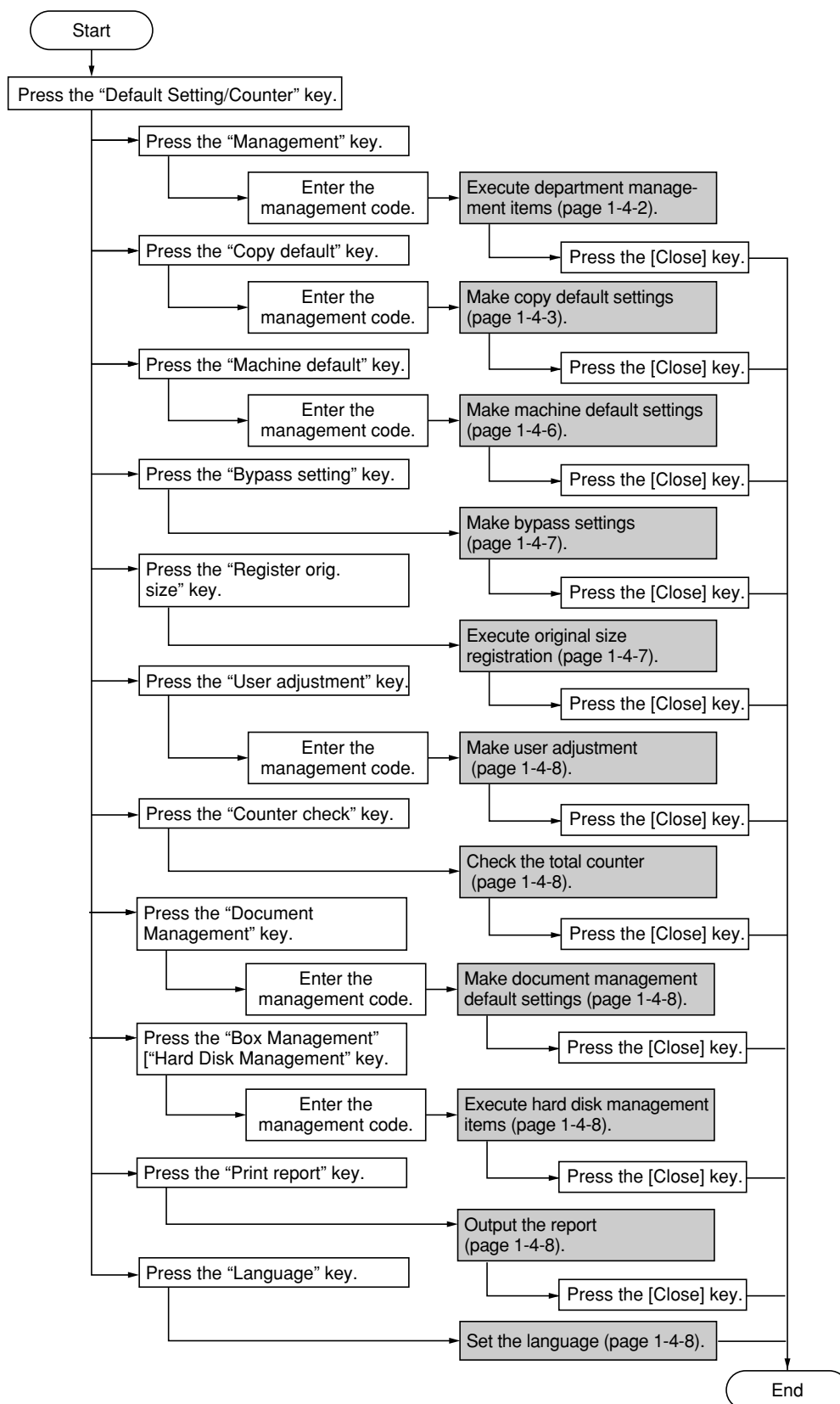


Figure 1-3-173

1-4-1 Copier management

In addition to a maintenance function for service, the copier is equipped with a management function which can be operated by users (mainly by the copier administrator). In this copier management mode, settings such as default settings can be changed.

(1) Using the copier management mode



(2) Setting department management items**Register new department ID-codes**

Registers department ID-codes and the corresponding department name, and set certain restrictions for using the copier under that ID-code.

1. Press the "Management edit" key.
2. Press the "Register" key.
3. Select "ID-code" and then press the "Change #" key.
4. Enter the department ID-code to register (up to 8 digits) using the numeric keys.
5. Select "Name to display" and then press the "Change #" key.
6. Enter the name for that department, and then press the "End" key.
7. Set the restrictions for using the copier under that department ID-code and then press the "Registr." key.

Delete department ID-codes

1. Press the "Management edit" key.
2. Select the department ID-code to delete, and then press the "Delete" key.
3. Verify that this is the ID-code to delete, and press the "Yes" key.

Change registered information

1. Press the "Management edit" key.
2. Select the department ID-code to change the registered information, and then press the "Mgt. Inf. Correction" key.
3. Select "ID-code" and then press the "Change #" key.
4. Press the "Clear" key to delete the old ID-code.
5. Enter the new ID-code (up to 8 digits) using the numeric keys.
6. Select "Name to display" and then press the "Change #" key.
7. Press the "AllDel." key to delete the old department name, then enter the new name.
8. Press the "End" key.

Check all departments

Checks the total number of copies made under all department ID-codes as a whole, print out a copy management report and clear the copy counts for all of the registered department ID-codes.

1. Press the "Management total" key.
The total number of copies made under all department ID-codes as a whole will be displayed.
2. Press the "Print report" key.
The copy management report is printed out.
3. Press the "Counter clear" key to clear all of the copy counts.
4. Press the "Yes" key.

Check individual departments

Checks the total number of copies made under each individual department ID-code and/or clears the copy counts for individual departments as well.

1. Press the "Each Mgt. Total" key.
2. Select the department ID-code to check the copy counts, and then press the "Total" key.
The total number of copies made under that department ID-code will be displayed.
3. Press the "Counter clear" key to clear all of the copy counts for that ID-code.
4. Press the "Yes" key.

Turning the copy management function ON/OFF

1. Select "On" or "Off" key.

Copier function management ON/OFF

1. Press the "Management Def. Set." key.
2. Select "Copy management" and then press the "Change #" key.
3. Press the "On" key.

Printer function management ON/OFF

Note: This setting is only available when the optional printer board or network printer board is installed in the copier.

Printer error report

Note: This setting is only available when the optional printer board or network printer board is installed in the copier.

Non-standard printer driver printout (printer)

Note: This setting is only available when the optional printer board or network printer board is installed in the copier.

Copy/Printer output management

1. Press the "Management Def. Set." key.
2. Select "Copy/Printer output mgt." and then press the "Change #" key.
3. Select "All" or "Each" key.

Scanner function management ON/OFF

Note: This setting is only available when the optional network scanner board is installed in the copier.

Fax function management ON/OFF

Note: This setting is only available when the optional fax kit is installed in the copier.

Response to exceeded restriction

Determines whether further use of the machine will be canceled or an error message will be generated when a department ID-code has exceeded its set limit.

1. Press the "Management Def. Set." key.
2. Select "Excess of limit Setting" and then press the "Change #" key.
3. Select "Is not permitted" or "Only warning" key.

Default copy limit

1. Press the "Management Def. Set." key.
2. Select "Def. Val. of coun. limit" and then press the "Change #" key.
3. Enter the default copy limit using the numeric keys. The limit can be set to any 1-page increment up to 999,999.

Total count for specified paper size (1 to 5)

1. Press the "Management Def. Set." key.
2. Select one of the "Total size 1" through "Total size 5" settings and then press the "Change #" key.
3. Press the "On" key.
4. Press the "Select size" key.
5. Press the key that corresponds to the desired paper size, and then press the "Close" key.
6. To specify a paper type as well, press the "Select paper type" key.
7. Press the key that corresponds to the desired paper type, and then press the "Close" key.

(3) Copy default

Exposure mode

Selects the exposure mode at power-on.

1. Select "Exposure mode" and then press the "Change #" key.
2. Select "Manual" or "Auto" key.

Exposure adjustment step

Sets the number of exposure steps for the manual exposure mode.

1. Select "Exposure steps" and then press the "Change #" key.
2. Select "1 step" or "0.5 step" key.

Original quality

Sets the default mode for the image quality.

1. Select "Original image quality" ["Image quality Original"] and then press the "Change #" key.
2. Select "Text+Photo", "Photo" or "Text" key.

Eco print mode ON/OFF

Determines whether or not the eco print mode will be the default setting in the initial mode.

1. Select "Eco Print" and then press the "Change #" key.
2. Select "On" or "Off" key.

Background exposure adjustment

Adjust the ground color of the copied paper.

1. Select "Background exp. adj." and then press the "Change #" key.
2. Adjust the exposure using the "Lighter" key or the "Darker" key.
Setting range: -2 to 2

Paper selection

Sets whether the copier will automatically select the same size of copy paper as the original once an original is set, or whether the designated default drawer will be automatically selected.

1. Select "Select paper" and then press the "Change #" key.
2. Select "APS" or "Default drawer[cassette]" key.

Paper type (Auto paper selection mode)

Selects the types of paper that will be available for selection under the APS (Auto Paper Selection) mode.

1. Select "Select paper type(APS)" and then press the "Change #" key.
2. Press the "On" key and then press the keys that correspond to the types of paper to allow to be used under the auto paper selection mode.

Default drawer

Sets one drawer that will be selected automatically regardless of the size of paper loaded in that drawer.

1. Select "Default drawer[cassette]" and then press the "Change #" key.
2. Press the key that corresponds to the desired drawer[cassette].
Settings: 1st paper/2nd paper/3rd paper/4th paper
* The setting for drawer 3 and 4 will only be available when the optional paper feeder is installed.

Cover drawer

Sets which drawer will be used to feed the cover sheets in the cover mode, the booklet/stitching mode and the book to booklet mode.

1. Select "Drawer for cover paper" ["Cassette for cover paper"] and then press the "Change #" key.
2. Press the key that corresponds to the desired drawer
Settings: 1st paper/2nd paper/3rd paper/4th paper/Bypass
* The setting for drawer 3 and 4 will only be available when the optional paper feeder is installed.

Default magnification ratio

Sets whether or not the appropriate magnification ratio to be calculated automatically when selecting the size of copy paper.

1. Select "Default magnification" ["Default mode"] and then press the "Change #" key.
2. Select "Manual" or "AMS" key.

Auto exposure adjustment

Adjusts the overall exposure level for the auto exposure mode when making color copies.

1. Select "Auto exposure adj.(Auto)" and then press the "Change #" key.
2. Adjust the exposure using the "Lighter" key or the "Darker" key.
Setting range: -3 to 3

Auto exposure adjustment (OCR)

Adjusts the overall exposure level for scanning with OCR (Optical Character Recognition) software when using the optional scanner functions of this copier.

1. Select "Adjust auto exposure (OCR)" and then press the "Change #" key.
2. Adjust the exposure using the "Lighter" key or the "Darker" key.
Setting range: -3 to 3

Manual exposure adjustment (text+photo mode)

Adjusts the median exposure value when the text+photo mode is selected for the image quality.

1. Select "Manual exp.adj. (Mixed)" and then press the "Change #" key.
2. Adjust the exposure using the "Lighter" key or the "Darker" key.
Setting range: -3 to 3

Manual exposure adjustment (text mode)

Adjusts the median exposure value when the text mode is selected for the image quality.

1. Select "Manual exp.adj. (Text)" and then press the "Change #" key.
2. Adjust the exposure using the "Lighter" key or the "Darker" key.
Setting range: -3 to 3

Manual exposure adjustment (photo mode)

Adjusts the median exposure value when the photo mode is selected for the image quality.

1. Select "Manual exp.adj. (Photo)" and then press the "Change #" key.
2. Adjust the exposure using the "Lighter" key or the "Darker" key.
Setting range: -3 to 3

Sort mode ON/OFF

Determines whether or not the Sort mode will be the default setting in the initial mode.

1. Select "Sort" and then press the "Change #" key.
2. Select "Sort:On" or "Sort:Off" key.

Auto Rotation mode ON/OFF

Determines whether or not the Auto Rotation mode will be the default setting in the initial mode.

1. Select "Auto Rotation" and then press the "Change #" key.
2. Select "Rotate" or "No Rotate" key.

Margin width

Determines the default value of the location and width of the margins in the margin mode.

1. Select "Default margin width" and then press the "Change #" key.
2. Press the cursor up/down and left/right keys, as desired, to change the default margins and margin widths to the desired setting.
Setting range: 0 to $\frac{3}{4}$ (inch specifications)
0 to 18 mm (metric specifications)

Erased border width

Determines the default value for the width of the border to be erased in the two border erase modes.

1. Select "Default erase width" and then press the "Change #" key.
2. Press the +/- keys to change the displayed widths to those desired.
Setting range
(Inch specifications)
Outside border: 0 to $\frac{3}{4}$ "
Center area: 0 to $1\frac{1}{2}$ "
(Metric specifications)
Outside border: 0 to 18 mm
Center area: 0 to 36 mm

Copy limit

Sets the limit for the number of copies (or copy sets) that can be made at a time.

1. Select "Preset limit" and then press the "Change #" key.
2. Press the +/- keys to change the copy limit to the desired setting.
Setting range: 1 to 999

Repeat copying ON/OFF

Sets whether or not to prohibit repeat copying, as well as whether or not to make repeat copying the default setting in the initial mode.

Note: This setting is only available when the optional hard disk is installed in the copier.

1. Select "Modify Copy" and then press the "Change #" key.
2. Select "On" or "Off" key.

Registration keys ON/OFF

Sets whether or not to allow a "Register" key to be displayed in the screen for those function and modes which can be registered under the registration keys. Functions and/or modes can only be registered under registration keys through the "Register" key.

1. Select "Display register key" ["Display "Register" key"] and then press the "Change #" key.
2. Select "On" or "Off" key.

Customize screen layout (Main functions)

Changes the order of the main functions and modes that are displayed in the "Basic" and the "User choice" tabs in order to make the display more appropriate to the way you use the copier.

1. Select "Customize(Main function)" and then press the "Change #" key.
2. Press the cursor up/down keys, "Move Ahead" key or the "Move Behind" ["Move backward"] key to change the order of the basic functions and modes.

Customize screen layout (Add functions)

Adds often-used functions and/or modes, or to change the order of their layout, in order to make the display more appropriate to the way use of the copier.

1. Select "Customize(Add function)" and then press the "Change #" key.
2. Press the cursor up/down keys and "" key to change the order of layout.

(4) Machine default**Auto drawer switching ON/OFF**

Turns automatic drawer switching ON or OFF.

1. Select "Auto drawer switching" ["Auto cassette switching"] and then press the "Change #" key.
2. Select "On" or "Off" key.
3. Select "All types of paper" or "Feed same paper type" key.

Paper size (drawer No.1 - No.4)

Sets the size of paper that is loaded in drawer No.1 through No.4.

1. Select one of the "Paper size" settings ("1st drawer[cassette]" through "4th drawer[cassette]") and then press the "Change #" key.
2. If you select "Auto Detection" (automatic size detection) here, select the desired unit of measure ("Centimeter" or "Inch").
If you select "Standard sizes" (standard paper size) here, simply press the key that corresponds to the size of paper that is loaded in that drawer.

Note: The setting for drawer No.3 and No.4 will only be available when the optional paper feeder is installed.

Paper type (drawer No.1 - No.4)

Sets the type of paper that is loaded in drawers No.1 through No.4.

1. Select one of the "Paper type" settings ("1st drawer[cassette]" through "4th drawer[cassette]") and then press the "Change #" key.
2. Press the key that corresponds to the type of paper.

Note: The setting for drawer No.3 and No.4 will only be available when the optional paper feeder is installed.

Custom paper type for 2-sided copying

Sets whether or not each custom type of paper (custom 1 – custom 8) will be available for use in 2-sided copying.

1. Select "Select paper type (2sided)" and then press the "Change #" key.
2. Select one of the "custom" paper type settings ("Custom 1" through "Custom 8") and then press the "On / Off" key to change the setting.

Auto sleep time

Sets the amount of time that will elapse before the auto sleep function automatically engages and puts the copier in the sleep mode if no operation has been performed on the copier during that time.

1. Select "Sleep mode changing time" and then press the "Change #" key.
2. Press the +/- keys to change the displayed time to the desired setting.
Setting range: 1/5/15/30/45/60/90/120/180/240 minutes

Auto low power time

Sets the amount of time that will elapse before the auto low power function automatically engages and puts the copier in the low power mode if no operation has been performed on the copier during that time.

1. Select "Low power mode chng. time" and then press the "Change #" key.
2. Press the +/- keys to change the displayed time to the desired setting.
Setting range: 1/5/15/30/45/60/90/120/180/240 minutes

Copy eject location

Sets where finished copies will be ejected. This setting is only available when the optional finisher, built-in finisher or job separator is installed in the copier.

1. Select "Select Copy output mode" and then press the "Change #" key.
2. Select the desired location.

Fax eject location

Sets where incoming faxes will be ejected. This setting is only available when the optional fax kit and finisher (or the built-in finisher or job separator) are installed in the copier.

1. Select "Select FAX output mode" and then press the "Change #" key.
2. Select the desired location.

Default operation mode

Sets whether the display that appears after power is turned on to the copier will be the one for the copy operation mode or for the fax operation mode.

This setting is only available when the optional fax kit is installed.

1. Select "Select the main mode" ["Select main mode"] and then press the "Change #" key.
2. Select "Copy mode" or "FAX mode" key.

Touch panel sound ON/OFF

Sets whether or not the touch panel will emit a "beep" sound each time a key is pressed.

1. Select "Key sound ON/OFF" and then press the "Change #" key.
2. Select "On" or "Off" key.

Silent mode ON/OFF

Sets whether or not to use the silent mode which shortens the length of time that the laser data writing motor continues to spin after each copy job is finished.

1. Select "Silent mode" and then press the "Change #" key.
2. Select "On" or "Off" key.

Day and time

Sets the current date and time.

1. Select "Date/Time" and then press the "Change #" key.
2. Press the +/- keys to change the displayed information for each field ("Year", "Month", "Day" and "Time") to the current time and date.

Time difference

Sets a designated time difference.

1. Select "Time difference" and then press the "Change #" key.
2. Press the +/- keys to change the displayed time difference to the desired setting.
Setting range: +12:00 to -12:00

Changing the management code

Changes the management code used by the copy manager.

1. Select "Management code change" ["Change MGMT code with #"] and then press the "Change #" key.
2. Enter a new 4-digit management code using the numeric keys.

Auto sleep ON/OFF

Sets whether or not to have the auto sleep function automatically engage and put the copier in the sleep mode if no operation is performed on the copier for a designated amount of the time.

1. Select "Auto Sleep" and then press the "Change #" key.
2. Select "On" or "Off" key.

Changing the energy-saving mode

Changes the energy-saving mode that will be entered into when the energy saver key is pressed.

This setting is only available when the optional printer kit or printer/scanner kit is installed.

1. Select "Energy Saver key setting" and then press the "Change #" key.
2. Select "Low power mode" or "Sleep mode" key.

(5) Bypass setting

Paper size and type

Sets the paper size and paper type for the bypass settings.

When using special papers such as transparency, cards, and postcards, be sure to set the paper type to prevent faulty transfer and faulty fixing.

1. Press the key that corresponds to the size of paper to be used. If to set the custom size, press the "Input size" key.
Press the +/- keys to change each of the displayed sizes (length and width) to the desired settings. In metric specifications, the desired sizes can also be entered directly by pressing the corresponding "#-Keys" key and then using the numeric keys.

Setting range

(Inch specifications)

Width: 3 7/8" - 11 5/8"

Length: 5 7/8" - 17"

(Metric specifications)

Width: 98 - 297 mm

Length: 148 - 432 mm

2. Press the "Select paper type" key.
3. Press the key that corresponds to the type of paper to be used.

Selecting other standard sizes

Sets a special standard size.

1. Press the "Others Standard" key.
2. Press the "Select size" key.
3. Press the key that corresponds to the size of paper to use, and then press the "Close" key.
4. Press the "Select paper type" key. Press the key that corresponds to the type of paper to use, and then press the "Close" key.

(6) Original size registration

Sets a custom original size that can be used under the "Original size selection" procedure.

1. Press the "Register orig. size" key.
2. Select of the "Original size (custom 1)" to "Original size (custom 4)" settings and then press the "Change #" key.
3. Press the +/- keys to change each of the displayed sizes (Y = width and X = length) to the desired settings.

Setting range

(Inch specifications)

Width: 2" - 11 5/8"

Length: 2" - 17"

(Metric specifications)

Width: 50 - 297 mm

Length: 50 - 432 mm

(7) User adjustment**Drum refresh**

This operation should be performed when the copy image becomes blurred or if white spots which are not on the originals appear on the copies.

1. Press the "Drum refresh" key.
2. Press the "On" key. The drum refreshing process will begin. This operation will take approximately 5 minutes.

(8) Checking the total counter and printing out the counter report

Checks the total count of copies, etc., and prints out the information as a counter report.

1. Press the "Counter check" key. The total number of copies and printouts made will be displayed.
2. Press the "Print report" key to print out a counter report.

(9) Document management default setting

This setting is available when the optional hard disk is installed in the copier.

Document list print out

Prints out each job list.

1. Press the "Print the list" key to print out the document list you want.

Reset box

Prints out each job list.

1. Press the "Reset Box" key to delete all data for.
2. Press the "Yes" key.

Box name setting

Sets the name of synergy print box.

1. Press the "Box editing" key.
2. Select the desired box and press the "Enter" key.
3. Select "Box name" and press the "Change #" key.
4. Enter the box name.
5. Press the "Close" key.
6. Press the "End" key.

Box password setting

Sets the password for the synergy box.

1. Press the "Box editing" key.
2. Select the desired box.
3. Select "Password" and press the "Change #" key.
4. Enter the password and press the "Close" key.
5. Press the "Close" key.
6. Press the "End" key.

Box data deletion

Deletes the data in the synergy print box.

1. Press the "Box editing" key.
2. Select the desired box.
3. Press the "Reset Box" key.
4. Press the "Yes" key.
5. Press the "Close" key.
6. Press the "End" key.

Duration to save document data setting

Sets the duration to save the document data in the synergy print box.

1. Press the "Document save term" [Document saving] key.
2. Press the +/- keys to set the duration.
Setting range: 1 to 7 days
To save documents with no specific duration, press the "No time limit" key.
3. Press the "Close" key.

(10) Hard disk management

This setting is available when the optional hard disk is installed in the copier.

Checks available space and/or deletes any invalid data on the optional hard disk.

1. Press the "On" key under "Check HDD capacity". The overall size of the hard disk and the currently available space will be displayed.
2. Press the "On" key under "Delete invalid data". The operation to delete invalid data will start.

(11) Status report print out

Prints out one of the status report.

1. Press the key of the report to print out.
<Copy report>
<Machine report>
<Toner coverage report>
The selected status report will be printed out.

(12) Language selection function

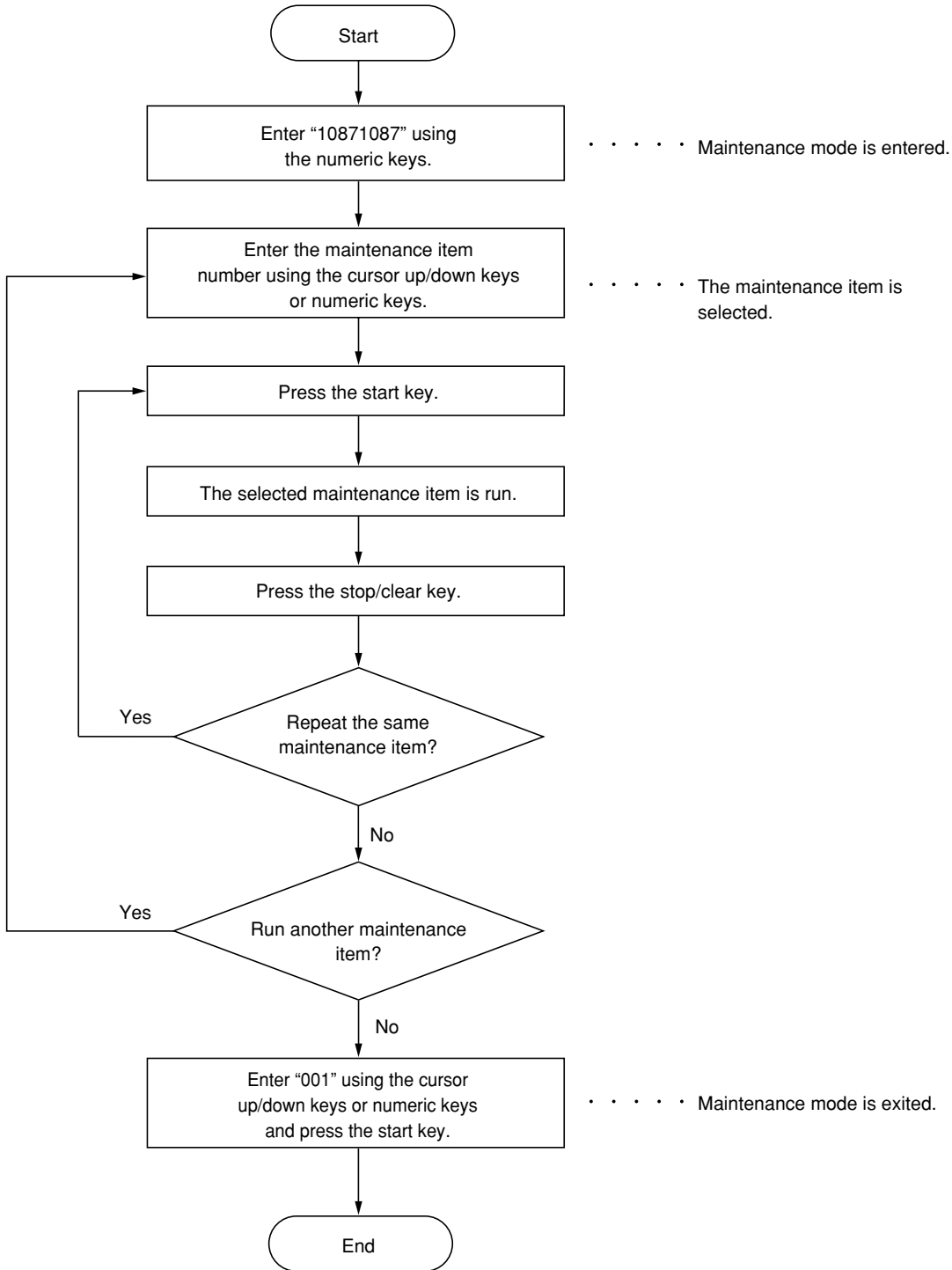
Switches the language to be displayed on the touch panel.

1. Press the "Language" key.
2. Press the key that corresponds to the language to use.
Available languages:
Inch specifications
Japanese, English, French and Spanish
Metric specifications
English, German, French, Spanish and Italian

1-4-2 Maintenance mode

The copier is equipped with a maintenance function which can be used to maintain and service the machine.

(1) Executing a maintenance item



(2) Maintenance mode item list

Section	Item No.	Maintenance item contents	Initial setting*
General	U000	Outputting an own-status report	—
	U001	Exiting the maintenance mode	—
	U002	Setting the factory default data	—
	U003	Setting the service telephone number	*****
	U004	Displaying the machine number	—
	U005	Copying without paper	—
	U018	Displaying the ROM checksum	—
	U019	Displaying the ROM version	—
Initialization	U020	Initializing all data	—
	U021	Initializing counters and mode settings	—
	U022	Initializing backup memory	—
	U024	HDD formatting	—
Drive, paper feed, paper conveying and cooling system	U030	Checking motor operation	—
	U031	Checking switches for paper conveying	—
	U032	Checking clutch operation	—
	U033	Checking solenoid operation	—
	U034	Adjusting the print start timing • Adjusting the leading edge registration • Adjusting the center line	0.5/0/-1.5 1.0/0
	U035	Setting folio size • Length/Width	330/210
	U038	Checking the copier cover switch	—
	U051	Adjusting the amount of slack in the paper • Regist data • Feed data	0/0/0 0/20/0/0/0/0
	U053	Performing fine adjustment of the motor speed • Drive motor • Eject motor • Polygon motor	7 7 0
Optical	U060	Adjusting the scanner input properties	12
	U061	Turning the exposure lamp on	—
	U063	Adjusting the shading position	0
	U065	Adjusting the scanner magnification • Main scanning direction/auxiliary scanning direction	0/1
	U066	Adjusting the leading edge registration for scanning an original on the contact glass	-5/10
	U067	Adjusting the center line for scanning an original on the contact glass	-4/18
	U068	Adjusting the scanning position for originals from the DP	5
	U070	Adjusting the DP magnification	-2
	U071	Adjusting the DP scanning timing • DP leading edge registration/DP trailing edge registration	0/0
	U072	Adjusting the DP center line	-3/2/-3
	U073	Checking scanner operation	—
	U074	Adjusting the DP input light luminosity	1
	U076	Adjusting the DP input light luminosity	—
	U080	Adjusting exposure in toner economy mode	-6
	U089	Outputting a MIP-PG pattern	—
	U091	Checking shading	—
	U092	Adjusting the scanner automatically	—

* Initial setting for executing maintenance item U020

Section	Item No.	Maintenance item contents	Initial setting*
Optical	U093	Setting the exposure density gradient • Text and photo/text/photo/text in fax mode/photo in fax mode	0/0/0/2/3
	U099	Initializing original size	—
High voltage	U100	Checking the operation of main high voltage	—
	U101	Setting high voltages • Developing bias AC component frequency at image formation • Developing bias AC component duty at image formation • Developing shift bias potential at image formation • Transfer control voltage	0 0 0 120
	U109	Displaying the drum type	—
	U110	Checking/clearing the drum count	—
	U112	Setting toner refresh operation • Time of toner refreshment • Developing bias on time	120 700 (30 cpm) 540 (40/50 cpm)
	U113	Performing the drum refreshment	—
	U114	Setting separation charger mode • Specifying SC Whole mode to ON/OFF • Specifying the temperature/humidity of which SC Whole mode in ON • Specifying SC Whole mode to ON/OFF when using thin paper • Specifying SC Whole mode to ON/OFF when using plain paper	ON 20/50 OFF MODE0
	U117	Checking the drum number	—
	U118	Displaying the drum history	—
Developing	U130	Initial setting for the developer	—
	U144	Setting toner loading operation	MODE2
	U150	Checking sensors and switches for toner	—
	U157	Checking/clearing the developing drive time	—
	U158	Checking the developing count	—
Fixing and cleaning	U161	Setting the fixing control temperature • Control temperature during copying • Primary stabilization fixing temperature • Secondary stabilization fixing temperature • Time from power on to stabilization of fixing • Fixing temperature decrease amount for duplex copying • Fixing temperature decrease amount for duplex copying for copy store section/optional mail box ejection • Fixing correct temperature for large size copying • Fixing correct temperature for middle size copying • Fixing correct temperature for small size copying • Fixing temperature increase amount at low temperature and low humidity • Fixing temperature decrease amount at high temperature and high humidity • Variable range of correct temperature for fixing heater M	130 115 (30 cpm) 120 (40/50 cpm) 130 (30 cpm) 145 (40/50 cpm) 0 5 0 45 (30 cpm) 50 (40 cpm) 65 (50 cpm) 45 (30 cpm) 60 (40 cpm) 70 (50 cpm) 25 (30 cpm) 40 (40 cpm) 45 (50 cpm) 5 0 0
	U162	Stabilizing fixing forcibly	—
	U163	Resetting the fixing problem data	—
	U165	Checking fixing counts	—
	U196	Turning the fixing heater on	—
	U198	Setting the fixing phase control	OFF
	U199	Checking the fixing temperature	—

* Initial setting for executing maintenance item U020

Section	Item No.	Maintenance item contents	Initial setting*
Operation panel and support equipment	U200	Turning all LEDs on	—
	U201	Initializing the touch panel	—
	U202	Setting the KMAS host monitoring system	—
	U203	Checking DP operation	—
	U204	Setting the presence or absence of a key card or key counter	—
	U206	Setting the presence or absence of the coin vender	—
	U207	Checking the operation panel keys	—
	U208	Setting the paper size for the large paper deck	Inch specifications: Letter Metric specifications: A4
	U236	Setting the limit for the ejection section of the built-in finisher	OFF
	U237	Setting finisher stack quantity	—
	U243	Checking the operation of the DP motors, solenoids and clutch	—
	U244	Checking the DP switches	—
	U245	Checking messages	—
	U246	Setting the finisher • Amount of slack in the paper • Booklet stapling position adjustment • Side registration cursor stop position	0 0 0
	U247	Checking the operation of large paper deck and paper feeder	—
	U249	Checking the paper ejection to optional devices	—
Mode setting	U250	Setting the maintenance cycle	400000 (30 cpm) 500000 (40/50 cpm)
	U251	Checking/clearing the maintenance count	—
	U252	Setting the destination	Japan
	U253	Switching between double and single counts	Double count
	U254	Turning auto start function on/off	ON
	U255	Setting auto clear time	90
	U258	Switching copy operation at toner empty detection	Single mode, 70
	U260	Changing the copy count timing	After ejection
	U264	Setting the display order of the date	Inch specifications: MONTH-DATE-YEAR Metric specifications: DATE-MONTH-YEAR
	U265	Setting OEM purchaser code	0
	U266	Setting the number of days after which to automatically delete documents	7
	U274	Setting the laser scanner unit type • Type of the laser scanner unit • Laser scanner unit output power	2 0 (30 cpm) 1 (40/50 cpm)
	U277	Setting auto application change time	30
	U280	Setting the individual border ease mode indication	OFF
	U326	Setting the black line cleaning indication	ON
	U328	Side ejection setting	OFF
	U330	Setting the number of sheets to enter stacking mode during sort operation	—
	U331	Setting the paper ejection	FACE-DOWN
	U332	Setting the size conversion factor	—
	U341	Specific paper feed location setting for printing function	—

* Initial setting for executing maintenance item U020

Section	Item No.	Maintenance item contents	Initial setting*
Mode setting	U342	Setting the ejection restriction	ON
	U343	Switching between duplex/simplex copy mode	OFF
	U344	Setting preheat/energy saver mode	ENERGY STAR
	U345	Setting the value for maintenance due indication	—
	U346	Setting the sleep mode operation	MODE0
Image processing	U402	Adjusting margins of image printing	—
	U403	Adjusting margins for scanning an original on the contact glass	—
	U404	Adjusting margins for scanning an original from the DP	—
	U407	Adjusting the leading edge registration for memory image printing	2
Network scanner	U504	Initializing the scanner NIC	—
	U505	Setting Data Base Assistant	ON
	U506	Setting the time out	10
	U508	Setting the LDAP	OFF
	U510	Setting the enterprise mode	OFF
	U511	Setting scan To FTP	OFF
Others	U901	Checking/clearing copy counts by paper feed locations	—
	U902	Checking/clearing finisher punch count	75000/0
	U903	Checking/clearing the paper jam counts	—
	U904	Checking/clearing the service call counts	—
	U905	Checking/clearing counts by optional devices	—
	U906	Resetting partial operation control	—
	U908	Changing the total counter value	—
	U910	Clearing the black ratio data	—
	U911	Checking/clearing copy counts by paper sizes	—
	U917	Setting backup data reading/writing	—
	U920	Checking the copy counts	—
	U925	Checking/clearing the system error counts	—
	U926	Rewriting FAX program	—
	U927	Clearing the all copy counts and machine life counts	—
	U928	Checking machine life counts	—
	U941	Setting the default magnification ratio of the default drawer	100 %
	U954	Setting the type of cooling fan	NEW
	U956	Setting the type of paper conveying unit	NEW
	U960	Outputting the machine used circumstances list	—
	U962	Setting the type of fixing unit	FIXING UNIT1
	U971	Specifying the aging before copying	ON
	U988	ID-code scanner count mode setting	—
	U989	HDD Scandisk	—
	U990	Checking/clearing the time for the exposure lamp to light	—
	U991	Checking/clearing the scanner count	—
	U993	Outputting a VTC-PG pattern	—

* Initial setting for executing maintenance item U020

(3) Contents of maintenance mode items

Maintenance item No.	Description								
U000	<p>Outputting an own-status report</p> <p>Description Outputs lists of the current settings of the maintenance items, and paper jam and service call occurrences.</p> <p>Purpose To check the current setting of the maintenance items, or paper jam or service call occurrences. Before initializing or replacing the backup RAM, output a list of the current settings of the maintenance items to reenter the settings after initialization or replacement.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed. 2. Select the item to be output. The selected item is displayed in reverse. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Output list</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MAINTENANCE</td><td>List of the current settings of the maintenance modes</td></tr> <tr> <td>JAM</td><td>List of the paper jam occurrences</td></tr> <tr> <td>SERVICE CALL</td><td>List of the service call occurrences</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Press the start key. The interrupt copy mode is entered and a list is output. When A4/11" × 8 1/2" paper is available, a report of this size is output. If not, specify the paper feed location. When output is complete, the screen for selecting an item is displayed. <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key at the screen for selecting an item. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Output list	MAINTENANCE	List of the current settings of the maintenance modes	JAM	List of the paper jam occurrences	SERVICE CALL	List of the service call occurrences
Display	Output list								
MAINTENANCE	List of the current settings of the maintenance modes								
JAM	List of the paper jam occurrences								
SERVICE CALL	List of the service call occurrences								
U001	<p>Exiting the maintenance mode</p> <p>Description Exits the maintenance mode and returns to the normal copy mode.</p> <p>Purpose To exit the maintenance mode.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The normal copy mode is entered.</p>								
U002	<p>Setting the factory default data</p> <p>Description Restores the machine conditions to the factory default settings.</p> <p>Purpose To move the mirror frame of the scanner to the position for transport (position in which the frame can be fixed).</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. The screen for executing is displayed. 2. Press EXECUTE on the touch panel. It is displayed in reverse. 3. Press the start key. The mirror frame of the scanner returns to the position for transport. <p>Completion The power switch turns off.</p>								

Maintenance item No.	Description								
U003	<p>Setting the service telephone number</p> <p>Description Sets the telephone number to be displayed when a service call code is detected.</p> <p>Purpose To set the telephone number to call service when installing the machine.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The currently set telephone number is displayed.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Enter a telephone number (up to 15 digits) using the numeric keys. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To enter symbols such as hyphens and parentheses, select as required from the symbols displayed on the touch panel as shown below. To move the cursor, press Left or Right in the bottom row. <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>*</td><td>#</td></tr> <tr> <td>(</td><td>)</td></tr> <tr> <td>-</td><td>(Space)</td></tr> <tr> <td>Left</td><td>Right</td></tr> </tbody> </table> 2. Press the start key. The phone number is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed. <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the current setting, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	*	#	()	-	(Space)	Left	Right
*	#								
()								
-	(Space)								
Left	Right								
U004	<p>Displaying the machine number</p> <p>Description Displays the machine number.</p> <p>Purpose To check the machine number.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The currently machine number is displayed.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>								

Maintenance item No.	Description										
U005	<p>Copying without paper</p> <p>Description Simulates the copy operation without paper feed.</p> <p>Purpose To check the overall operation of the machine.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed. 2. Select the item to be operated. The selected item is displayed in reverse. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Operation</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>PPC</td><td>Only the copier operates.</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPC + DP</td><td>Both the copier and DP operate (continuous operation).</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Press the interrupt key. The copy mode screen is displayed. 4. Set the operation conditions required on the copy mode screen. Changes in the following settings can be made. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Paper feed locations • Magnifications • Simplex or duplex copy mode • Number of copies: in simplex copy mode, continuous copying is performed when set to 999; in duplex copy mode, continuous copying is performed regardless of the setting. • Copy density • Keys on the operation panel other than the energy saver (preheat) key 5. To control the paper feed pulley, remove all the paper in the drawers, or the drawers. With the paper present, the paper feed pulley does not operate. 6. Press the start key. The operation starts. Copy operation is simulated without paper under the set conditions. When operation is complete, the screen for selecting an item is displayed. 7. To stop continuous operation, press the stop/clear key. <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key at the screen for selecting an item. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Operation	PPC	Only the copier operates.	PPC + DP	Both the copier and DP operate (continuous operation).				
Display	Operation										
PPC	Only the copier operates.										
PPC + DP	Both the copier and DP operate (continuous operation).										
U018	<p>Displaying the ROM checksum</p> <p>Description Displays the checksum of ROM.</p> <p>Purpose To check the checksum.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. Program names for the copier is displayed. 2. Press the start key. The ROM checksum is displayed. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MAIN</td><td>Main PCB ROM checksum</td></tr> <tr> <td>MMI</td><td>Operation PCB ROM checksum</td></tr> <tr> <td>LANGUAGE(Stand.)</td><td>Standard language ROM checksum</td></tr> <tr> <td>LANGUAGE(Option)</td><td>Optional language ROM checksum</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	MAIN	Main PCB ROM checksum	MMI	Operation PCB ROM checksum	LANGUAGE(Stand.)	Standard language ROM checksum	LANGUAGE(Option)	Optional language ROM checksum
Display	Description										
MAIN	Main PCB ROM checksum										
MMI	Operation PCB ROM checksum										
LANGUAGE(Stand.)	Standard language ROM checksum										
LANGUAGE(Option)	Optional language ROM checksum										

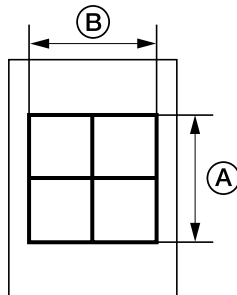
Maintenance item No.	Description																				
U019	<p>Displaying the ROM version</p> <p>Description Displays the part number of the ROM fitted to each PCB.</p> <p>Purpose To check the part number or to decide if the ROM version is new from the last digit of the number.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The last eight digits of the part number indicating the ROM version are displayed.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MAIN</td><td>Main ROM IC</td></tr> <tr> <td>MMI</td><td>Operation ROM IC</td></tr> <tr> <td>LANGUAGE(Stand.)</td><td>Standard language ROM IC</td></tr> <tr> <td>LANGUAGE(Optional)</td><td>Optional language ROM IC</td></tr> <tr> <td>MAIN BOOT</td><td>Boot of main ROM IC</td></tr> <tr> <td>MMI BOOT</td><td>Boot of operation ROM IC</td></tr> <tr> <td>PRINTER</td><td>Boot of printer board ROM IC</td></tr> <tr> <td>NETWORK SCANNER</td><td>Network scanner ROM IC</td></tr> <tr> <td>POWER SAVE</td><td></td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	MAIN	Main ROM IC	MMI	Operation ROM IC	LANGUAGE(Stand.)	Standard language ROM IC	LANGUAGE(Optional)	Optional language ROM IC	MAIN BOOT	Boot of main ROM IC	MMI BOOT	Boot of operation ROM IC	PRINTER	Boot of printer board ROM IC	NETWORK SCANNER	Network scanner ROM IC	POWER SAVE	
Display	Description																				
MAIN	Main ROM IC																				
MMI	Operation ROM IC																				
LANGUAGE(Stand.)	Standard language ROM IC																				
LANGUAGE(Optional)	Optional language ROM IC																				
MAIN BOOT	Boot of main ROM IC																				
MMI BOOT	Boot of operation ROM IC																				
PRINTER	Boot of printer board ROM IC																				
NETWORK SCANNER	Network scanner ROM IC																				
POWER SAVE																					
U020	<p>Initializing all data</p> <p>Description Initializes all the backup RAM on the main PCB to return to the original settings.</p> <p>Purpose Used when replacing the backup RAM on the main PCB.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. The screen for executing is displayed. 2. Press EXECUTE on the touch panel. It is displayed in reverse. 3. Press the start key. All data in the backup RAM is initialized, and the original settings for Inch specifications are set. When initialization is complete, the machine automatically returns to the same status as when the main switch is turned on and the display language to the initial setting of English. <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without executing initialization, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>																				
U021	<p>Initializing counters and mode settings</p> <p>Description Initializes the setting data other than that for adjustments due to variations between respective machines, i.e., settings for counters, service call history and mode settings. As a result, initializes the backup RAM according to the specifications depending on the destination selected in U252.</p> <p>Purpose Used to return the machine settings to the factory settings.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. The screen for executing is displayed. 2. Press EXECUTE on the touch panel. It is displayed in reverse. 3. Press the start key. All data other than that for adjustments due to variations between machines is initialized based on the destination setting. <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>																				

Maintenance item No.	Description
U022	<p>Initializing backup memory</p> <p>Description Initializes only the data set for the optical section or initializes various setting data when installing the optional network scanner board.</p> <p>Purpose To be executed after replacing the scanner unit or installing the network scanner board.</p> <p>Start Press the start key. The screen for executing is displayed.</p> <p>Method:Initializing the data for the optical section.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press SCANNER on the touch panel. 2. Press EXECUTE on the touch panel. It is displayed in reverse. 3. Press the start key. The data for the optical section (U060 to 067, U088 to 099, U403, U990 and U991) is initialized. <p>Method:Initializing the setting data for the network scanner.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press NETWORK SCANNER on the touch panel. 2. Press EXECUTE on the touch panel. It is displayed in reverse. 3. Press the start key. The setting data of scanner function initial settings are initialized, and the registered transmission and reception are cleared. <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>
U024	<p>HDD formatting</p> <p>Description Formats the document management data, HDD backup data areas for the network scanner and department administration.</p> <p>Purpose To initialize the HDD when installing or replacing the HDD after shipping.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. The screen for executing is displayed. 2. Press EXECUTE on the touch panel. It is displayed in reverse. 3. Press the start key to initialize the hard disk. The EXECUTE display flashes during initializing. Initialization results will be displayed when initializing is completed. 4. Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed. <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without executing initialization, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>

Maintenance item No.	Description																				
U030	<p>Checking motor operation</p> <p>Description Drives each motor.</p> <p>Purpose To check the operation of each motor.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed. 2. Select the motor to be operated. The selected item is displayed in reverse and the operation starts. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Operation</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>FEED</td><td>Paper feed motor operates</td></tr> <tr> <td>MAIN</td><td>Drive motor operates</td></tr> <tr> <td>EJECT(FW)</td><td>Eject motor rotates forward</td></tr> <tr> <td>EJECT(REV)</td><td>Eject motor rotates in reverse</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. To stop operation, press the stop/clear key. <p>Completion Press the stop key after operation stops. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Operation	FEED	Paper feed motor operates	MAIN	Drive motor operates	EJECT(FW)	Eject motor rotates forward	EJECT(REV)	Eject motor rotates in reverse										
Display	Operation																				
FEED	Paper feed motor operates																				
MAIN	Drive motor operates																				
EJECT(FW)	Eject motor rotates forward																				
EJECT(REV)	Eject motor rotates in reverse																				
U031	<p>Checking switches for paper conveying</p> <p>Description Displays the on-off status of each paper detection switch on the paper path.</p> <p>Purpose To check if the switches for paper conveying operate correctly.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. A list of the switches, the on-off status of which can be checked, are displayed. 2. Turn each switch on and off manually to check the status. <p>When the on-status of a switch is detected, that switch is displayed in reverse.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Switches</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>F1</td><td>Feed switch 1 (FSW1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>F2</td><td>Feed switch 2 (FSW2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>F3</td><td>Feed switch 3 (FSW3)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BYP</td><td>Bypass feed switch (BYPFSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>RES</td><td>Registration switch (RSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>EJE</td><td>Eject switch (ESW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BRA</td><td>Feedshift switch (FSSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>DUP</td><td>Duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>JOB</td><td>Job separator eject switch (JBESW)*</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>*Optional.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Switches	F1	Feed switch 1 (FSW1)	F2	Feed switch 2 (FSW2)	F3	Feed switch 3 (FSW3)	BYP	Bypass feed switch (BYPFSW)	RES	Registration switch (RSW)	EJE	Eject switch (ESW)	BRA	Feedshift switch (FSSW)	DUP	Duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW)	JOB	Job separator eject switch (JBESW)*
Display	Switches																				
F1	Feed switch 1 (FSW1)																				
F2	Feed switch 2 (FSW2)																				
F3	Feed switch 3 (FSW3)																				
BYP	Bypass feed switch (BYPFSW)																				
RES	Registration switch (RSW)																				
EJE	Eject switch (ESW)																				
BRA	Feedshift switch (FSSW)																				
DUP	Duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW)																				
JOB	Job separator eject switch (JBESW)*																				

Maintenance item No.	Description																				
U032	<p>Checking clutch operation</p> <p>Description Turns each clutch on.</p> <p>Purpose To check the operation of each clutch.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed. 2. Select the clutch to be operated. The selected item is displayed in reverse, and the clutch turns on for 1 s. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Clutches</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>PF1</td><td>Upper paper feed clutch (PFCL-U)</td></tr> <tr> <td>PF2</td><td>Lower paper feed clutch (PFCL-L)</td></tr> <tr> <td>PFBYP</td><td>Bypass paper feed clutch (BYPPFCL)</td></tr> <tr> <td>FEED1</td><td>Feed clutch 1 (FCL1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>FEED2</td><td>Feed clutch 2 (FCL2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>FEED3</td><td>Feed clutch 3 (FCL3)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BYPF</td><td>Bypass feed clutch (BYPFCL)</td></tr> <tr> <td>RES</td><td>Registration clutch (RCL)</td></tr> <tr> <td>DUPF</td><td>Duplex feed clutch (DUPFCL)</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Clutches	PF1	Upper paper feed clutch (PFCL-U)	PF2	Lower paper feed clutch (PFCL-L)	PFBYP	Bypass paper feed clutch (BYPPFCL)	FEED1	Feed clutch 1 (FCL1)	FEED2	Feed clutch 2 (FCL2)	FEED3	Feed clutch 3 (FCL3)	BYPF	Bypass feed clutch (BYPFCL)	RES	Registration clutch (RCL)	DUPF	Duplex feed clutch (DUPFCL)
Display	Clutches																				
PF1	Upper paper feed clutch (PFCL-U)																				
PF2	Lower paper feed clutch (PFCL-L)																				
PFBYP	Bypass paper feed clutch (BYPPFCL)																				
FEED1	Feed clutch 1 (FCL1)																				
FEED2	Feed clutch 2 (FCL2)																				
FEED3	Feed clutch 3 (FCL3)																				
BYPF	Bypass feed clutch (BYPFCL)																				
RES	Registration clutch (RCL)																				
DUPF	Duplex feed clutch (DUPFCL)																				
U033	<p>Checking solenoid operation</p> <p>Description Turns each solenoid on.</p> <p>Purpose To check the operation of each solenoid.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed. 2. Select the solenoid to be operated. The selected item is displayed in reverse, and the solenoid turns on for 1 s. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Solenoids</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>TONER SOL</td><td>Toner feed solenoid (TNFSOL)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BRANCH1 SOL</td><td>Feedshift solenoid (FSSOL)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BRANCH2 SOL</td><td>Feedshift solenoid (FSSOL)*</td></tr> <tr> <td>MAIN SW SOL</td><td>Power switch turns on</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>*Optional. Select MAIN SW SOL to check the operation of the power switch in auto shut off.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Solenoids	TONER SOL	Toner feed solenoid (TNFSOL)	BRANCH1 SOL	Feedshift solenoid (FSSOL)	BRANCH2 SOL	Feedshift solenoid (FSSOL)*	MAIN SW SOL	Power switch turns on										
Display	Solenoids																				
TONER SOL	Toner feed solenoid (TNFSOL)																				
BRANCH1 SOL	Feedshift solenoid (FSSOL)																				
BRANCH2 SOL	Feedshift solenoid (FSSOL)*																				
MAIN SW SOL	Power switch turns on																				
U034	<p>Adjusting the print start timing</p> <p>Adjustment See pages 1-6-10 and 12.</p>																				

Maintenance item No.	Description												
U035	<p>Setting folio size</p> <p>Description Changes the image area for copying onto folio size paper.</p> <p>Purpose To prevent the image at the trailing edge, or right or left side of the paper from not being copied by setting the actual size of the folio paper used.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <p>Setting</p> <div><div><div>1. Select the item to be set. The selected item is displayed in reverse.</div><div>2. Change the setting using the cursor up/down keys.</div></div><table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Setting</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>LENGTH DATA</td><td>Length</td><td>330 to 356 mm</td><td>330</td></tr><tr><td>WIDTH DATA</td><td>Width</td><td>200 to 220 mm</td><td>210</td></tr></table><div><div>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</div></div></div> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p>	Display	Setting	Setting range	Initial setting	LENGTH DATA	Length	330 to 356 mm	330	WIDTH DATA	Width	200 to 220 mm	210
Display	Setting	Setting range	Initial setting										
LENGTH DATA	Length	330 to 356 mm	330										
WIDTH DATA	Width	200 to 220 mm	210										
U038	<p>Checking the copier cover switch</p> <p>Description Displays the on-off status of each cover switch.</p> <p>Purpose To check if the switches of covers operate correctly.</p> <p>Method</p> <div><div><div>1. Press the start key. A list of the switches, the on-off status of which can be checked, are displayed.</div><div>2. Open and close each cover to check the status of each switch. When the cover is closed, the switch shall be displayed in reverse. When the cover is open, the switch shall be displayed normally.</div></div><table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Switches</th></tr><tr><td>INTER LOCK SW</td><td>Safety switch 1 and 2 (SSW1 and 2)</td></tr><tr><td>FRONT COVER</td><td>Front cover switch (FRCSW)</td></tr><tr><td>LEFT1 COVER</td><td>Conveying cover switch (CCSW)</td></tr><tr><td>LEFT2 COVER</td><td>Side cover switch (SCSW)</td></tr></table></div> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p>	Display	Switches	INTER LOCK SW	Safety switch 1 and 2 (SSW1 and 2)	FRONT COVER	Front cover switch (FRCSW)	LEFT1 COVER	Conveying cover switch (CCSW)	LEFT2 COVER	Side cover switch (SCSW)		
Display	Switches												
INTER LOCK SW	Safety switch 1 and 2 (SSW1 and 2)												
FRONT COVER	Front cover switch (FRCSW)												
LEFT1 COVER	Conveying cover switch (CCSW)												
LEFT2 COVER	Side cover switch (SCSW)												
U051	<p>Adjusting the amount of slack in the paper</p> <p>Adjustment See page 1-6-14.</p>												

Maintenance item No.	Description																
U053	<p>Performing fine adjustment of the motor speed</p> <p>Description Performs fine adjustment of the speeds of the motors.</p> <p>Purpose Used to adjust the speed of the respective motors when the magnification is not correct.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Select the item to be set. The selected item is displayed in reverse.2. Change the setting using the cursor up/down keys. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>MAIN MOTOR</td><td>Drive motor speed adjustment</td><td>0 to +40</td><td>7</td></tr><tr><td>EJECT MOTOR</td><td>Eject motor speed adjustment</td><td>0 to +14</td><td>7</td></tr><tr><td>POLYGON MOTOR</td><td>Polygon motor speed adjustment</td><td>-20 to +20</td><td>0</td></tr></table> <p>MAIN MOTOR /EJECT MOTOR Increasing the setting makes the image shorter in the auxiliary scanning direction, and decreasing it makes the image longer in the auxiliary scanning direction.</p> <p>POLYGON MOTOR Increasing the setting makes the setting makes the image shorter in the main scanning direction and longer in the auxiliary scanning direction; decreasing the image longer in the main scanning direction and shorter in the auxiliary scanning direction.</p> <p>EJECT MOTOR Normally no change is necessary but this can be used as countermeasures against wrinkles (waving) of paper.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Interrupt copy mode While this maintenance item is being performed, a VTC pattern shown below is output in interrupt copy mode. Correct values for an A3/11" × 17" output are: A = 300 ± 1.5 mm B = 260 ± 1.0 mm</p> <div></div> <p>Figure 1-4-1</p> <p>Adjustment</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Output an A3/11" × 17" VTC pattern in interrupt mode.2. Measure A and B on the VTC pattern (Figure 1-4-1), and perform the following adjustments if they are different from the correct sizes: A: Drive motor speed adjustment B: Polygon motor speed adjustment <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key at the screen for selecting an item. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	MAIN MOTOR	Drive motor speed adjustment	0 to +40	7	EJECT MOTOR	Eject motor speed adjustment	0 to +14	7	POLYGON MOTOR	Polygon motor speed adjustment	-20 to +20	0
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting														
MAIN MOTOR	Drive motor speed adjustment	0 to +40	7														
EJECT MOTOR	Eject motor speed adjustment	0 to +14	7														
POLYGON MOTOR	Polygon motor speed adjustment	-20 to +20	0														

Maintenance item No.	Description						
U060	<p>Adjusting the scanner input properties</p> <p>Description Adjusts the image scanning density in text, text and photo, or photo mode.</p> <p>Purpose Used when the entire image appears too dark or light.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for executing is displayed.</p> <p>Setting 1. Change the setting using the cursor up/down keys.</p> <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>Image scanning density</td><td>1 to +23</td><td>12</td></tr></table> <p>Increasing the setting makes the density lower, and decreasing it makes the density higher.</p> <p>2. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p>Interrupt copy mode While this maintenance item is being performed, copying from an original can be made in interrupt copy mode.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key at the screen for selecting an item. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p>	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Image scanning density	1 to +23	12
Description	Setting range	Initial setting					
Image scanning density	1 to +23	12					
U061	<p>Turning the exposure lamp on</p> <p>Description Turns the exposure lamp on.</p> <p>Purpose To check the exposure lamp.</p> <p>Method 1. Press the start key. The screen for executing is displayed. 2. Press the start key. The exposure lamp lights. 3. To turn the exposure lamp off, press the stop/clear key.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p>						

Maintenance item No.	Description								
U063	<p>Adjusting the shading position</p> <p>Description Changes the shading position.</p> <p>Purpose Used when white lines continue to appear longitudinally on the image after the shading plate is cleaned. This is due to flaws or stains inside the shading plate. To prevent this problem, the shading position should be changed so that shading is possible without being affected by the flaws or stains.</p> <p>Method 1. Press the start key. The screen for adjustment is displayed. 2. Change the setting using the cursor up/down keys.</p> <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>Shading position</td><td>-8 to +2</td><td>0</td><td>0.17 mm</td></tr></table> <p>Increasing the setting moves the shading position toward the machine right, and decreasing it moves the position toward the machine left.</p> <p>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p>Interrupt copy mode While this maintenance item is being performed, copying from an original can be made in interrupt copy mode.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key at the screen for adjustment. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p>	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	Shading position	-8 to +2	0	0.17 mm
Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step						
Shading position	-8 to +2	0	0.17 mm						
U065	<p>Adjusting the scanner magnification</p> <p>Adjustment See pages 1-6-27 and 28.</p>								
U066	<p>Adjusting the leading edge registration for scanning an original on the contact glass</p> <p>Adjustment See page 1-6-29.</p>								
U067	<p>Adjusting the center line for scanning an original on the contact glass</p> <p>Adjustment See page 1-6-30.</p>								
U068	<p>Adjusting the scanning position for originals from the DP</p> <p>Description Adjusts the position for scanning originals from the DP.</p> <p>Purpose Used when there is a regular error between the leading edges of the original and the copy image when the DP is used.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for executing is displayed.</p> <p>Setting 1. Change the setting using the cursor up/down keys.</p> <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>Scanning position</td><td>-32 to +32</td><td>5</td><td>0.17 mm</td></tr></table> <p>Increasing the setting moves the image backward, and decreasing it moves the image forward.</p> <p>2. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p>	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	Scanning position	-32 to +32	5	0.17 mm
Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step						
Scanning position	-32 to +32	5	0.17 mm						

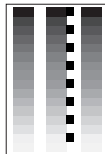

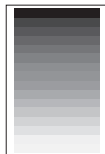
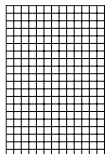
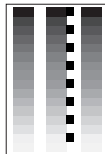

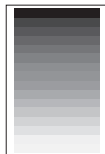
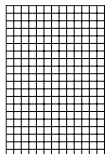
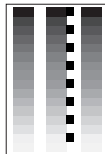

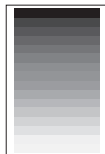
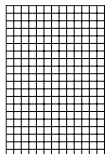
Maintenance item No.	Description								
U070	<p>Adjusting the DP magnification</p> <p>Description Adjusts the DP original scanning speed.</p> <p>Purpose To be executed if the correct magnification is not obtained in the auxiliary scanning direction when the optional DP is used.</p> <p>Caution Before making this adjustment, ensure that the following adjustments have been made in maintenance mode.</p> <p>U053 → U065 → U070</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for executing is displayed.</p> <p>Setting</p> <p>1. Change the setting using the cursor up/down keys.</p> <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>Original conveying motor speed</td><td>−25 to +25</td><td>−2</td><td>0.1%</td></tr></table> <p>Increasing the setting makes the image longer, and decreasing it makes the image shorter.</p> <p>2. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p>Interrupt copy mode While this maintenance item is being performed, copying from an original can be made in interrupt copy mode.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key at the screen for selecting an item. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	Original conveying motor speed	−25 to +25	−2	0.1%
Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step						
Original conveying motor speed	−25 to +25	−2	0.1%						

Maintenance item No.	Description															
U071	<p>Adjusting the DP scanning timing</p> <p>Description Adjusts the DP original scanning timing.</p> <p>Purpose To be executed if there is a regular error between the leading or trailing edges of the original and the copy image when the optional DP is used.</p> <p>Caution Before making this adjustment, ensure that the following adjustments have been made in maintenance mode.</p> <div><div>U034</div>→<div>U066</div>→<div>U071</div></div> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <p>Setting</p> <div><div>1. Select the item to be set. The selected item is displayed in reverse.</div><div>2. Change the setting using the cursor up/down keys.</div></div> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>LEAD EDGE ADJ</td><td>DP leading edge registration</td><td>−32 to +32</td><td>0</td><td>0.19 mm</td></tr><tr><td>TRAIL EDGE ADJ</td><td>DP trailing edge registration</td><td>−32 to +32</td><td>0</td><td>0.19 mm</td></tr></table> <p>Increasing the setting moves the copy image backward, and decreasing it moves the copy image forward.</p> <div><div>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</div></div> <p>Interrupt copy mode While this maintenance item is being performed, copying from an original can be made in interrupt copy mode.</p> <p>Adjustment</p> <div><div>1. In interrupt copy mode, make a copy using the DP.</div><div>2. Check the copy image and adjust the registration as follows. For copy example 1, increase the setting of LEAD EDGE ADJ For copy example 2, decrease the setting of LEAD EDGE ADJ</div></div> <div><div><div><div></div></div><div>Original</div></div><div><div><div></div></div><div>Copy example 1</div></div><div><div><div></div></div><div>Copy example 2</div></div></div> <p>Figure 1-4-2</p> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key at the screen for selecting an item. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	LEAD EDGE ADJ	DP leading edge registration	−32 to +32	0	0.19 mm	TRAIL EDGE ADJ	DP trailing edge registration	−32 to +32	0	0.19 mm
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step												
LEAD EDGE ADJ	DP leading edge registration	−32 to +32	0	0.19 mm												
TRAIL EDGE ADJ	DP trailing edge registration	−32 to +32	0	0.19 mm												

Maintenance item No.	Description																				
U072	<p>Adjusting the DP center line</p> <p>Description Adjusts the scanning start position for the DP original.</p> <p>Purpose To be executed if there is a regular error between the centers of the original and the copy image when the optional DP is used.</p> <p>Caution Before making this adjustment, ensure that the following adjustments have been made in maintenance mode. U034 → U067 → U072</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for executing is displayed.</p> <p>Setting</p> <div><div>1. Select the item to be set. The selected item is displayed in reverse.</div><div>2. Change the setting using the cursor up/down keys.</div></div> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>1 sided</td><td>Simplex copy mode</td><td>-39 to +39</td><td>-3</td><td>0.17 mm</td></tr><tr><td>2 sided front</td><td>Front face in duplex copy mode</td><td>-39 to +39</td><td>2</td><td>0.17 mm</td></tr><tr><td>2 sided back</td><td>Reverse face in duplex copy mode</td><td>-39 to +39</td><td>-3</td><td>0.17 mm</td></tr></table> <p>Increasing the setting moves the image to the right, and decreasing it moves the image to the left.</p> <div><div>2. Press the start key. The value is set.</div></div> <p>Interrupt copy mode While this maintenance item is being performed, copying from an original can be made in interrupt copy mode.</p> <p>Adjustment</p> <div><div>1. In interrupt copy mode, make a copy using the DP.</div><div>2. Check the copy image and adjust the center line as follows. For copy example 1, increase the setting. For copy example 2, decrease the setting.</div></div> <div><div><div>Reference</div><div></div><div>Original</div><div>Copy example 1</div><div>Copy example 2</div></div></div> <p>Figure 1-4-3</p> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key at the screen for selecting an item. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	1 sided	Simplex copy mode	-39 to +39	-3	0.17 mm	2 sided front	Front face in duplex copy mode	-39 to +39	2	0.17 mm	2 sided back	Reverse face in duplex copy mode	-39 to +39	-3	0.17 mm
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																	
1 sided	Simplex copy mode	-39 to +39	-3	0.17 mm																	
2 sided front	Front face in duplex copy mode	-39 to +39	2	0.17 mm																	
2 sided back	Reverse face in duplex copy mode	-39 to +39	-3	0.17 mm																	

Maintenance item No.	Description																																												
U073	<p>Checking scanner operation</p> <p>Description Simulates the scanner operation under arbitrary conditions.</p> <p>Purpose To check scanner operation.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.2. Select the item to be changed. The selected item is displayed in reverse.3. Change the setting using the cursor up/down keys. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Operating conditions</th><th>Setting range</th></tr><tr><td>ZOOM</td><td>Magnification</td><td>100 to 400%</td></tr><tr><td>SIZE</td><td>Original size</td><td>See below.</td></tr><tr><td>LAMP</td><td>On and off of the exposure lamp</td><td>0 (off) or 1 (on)</td></tr></table> <p>Original sizes for each setting in SIZE</p> <table><tr><th>Setting</th><th>Paper size</th><th>Setting</th><th>Paper size</th></tr><tr><td>8</td><td>A4</td><td>42</td><td>A5R</td></tr><tr><td>9</td><td>B5</td><td>47</td><td>Folio</td></tr><tr><td>24</td><td>11" × 8½"</td><td>52</td><td>11" × 17"</td></tr><tr><td>36</td><td>A3</td><td>53</td><td>11" × 15"</td></tr><tr><td>39</td><td>B4</td><td>55</td><td>8½" × 14"</td></tr><tr><td>40</td><td>A4R</td><td>56</td><td>8½" × 11"</td></tr><tr><td>41</td><td>B5R</td><td>58</td><td>5½" × 8½"</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">4. Press the start key. Scanning starts under the selected conditions.5. To stop operation, press the stop/clear key. <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key when scanning stops. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Operating conditions	Setting range	ZOOM	Magnification	100 to 400%	SIZE	Original size	See below.	LAMP	On and off of the exposure lamp	0 (off) or 1 (on)	Setting	Paper size	Setting	Paper size	8	A4	42	A5R	9	B5	47	Folio	24	11" × 8½"	52	11" × 17"	36	A3	53	11" × 15"	39	B4	55	8½" × 14"	40	A4R	56	8½" × 11"	41	B5R	58	5½" × 8½"
Display	Operating conditions	Setting range																																											
ZOOM	Magnification	100 to 400%																																											
SIZE	Original size	See below.																																											
LAMP	On and off of the exposure lamp	0 (off) or 1 (on)																																											
Setting	Paper size	Setting	Paper size																																										
8	A4	42	A5R																																										
9	B5	47	Folio																																										
24	11" × 8½"	52	11" × 17"																																										
36	A3	53	11" × 15"																																										
39	B4	55	8½" × 14"																																										
40	A4R	56	8½" × 11"																																										
41	B5R	58	5½" × 8½"																																										
U074	<p>Adjusting the DP input light luminosity</p> <p>Description Adjusts the luminosity of the exposure lamp for scanning originals from the DP.</p> <p>Purpose Used if the exposure amount differs significantly between when scanning an original on the contact glass and when scanning an original from the DP.</p> <p>Method Press the start key.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Change the setting using the cursor up/down keys. <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>DP input light luminosity</td><td>0 to 8</td><td>1</td></tr></table> <p>Increasing the setting makes the luminosity higher, and decreasing it makes the luminosity lower.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">2. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Interrupt copy mode While this maintenance item is being performed, copying from an original can be made in interrupt copy mode.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	DP input light luminosity	0 to 8	1																																						
Description	Setting range	Initial setting																																											
DP input light luminosity	0 to 8	1																																											

Maintenance item No.	Description																		
U076	<p>Executing DP automatic adjustment</p> <p>Description Uses a specified original and automatically adjusts the following items in the DP scanning section.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Adjusting the DP magnification (U070)• Adjusting the DP scanning timing (U071)• Adjusting the DP center line (U072)• Adjusting the margins for scanning an original from the DP (U404) <p>When you run this maintenance mode, the preset values of U070, U071, U072, and U404 will also be updated.</p> <p>Purpose To perform automatic adjustment of various items in the DP scanning section.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Set a specified original (part number: 2AC68241) in the DP.2. Press the start key. The screen for executing is displayed.3. Press the start key. Auto adjustment starts. When adjustment is complete, each adjusted value is displayed. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>CONVEY SPEED</td><td>DP magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction</td></tr><tr><td>LEAD EDGE ADJ</td><td>DP leading edge registration</td></tr><tr><td>TRAIL EDGE ADJ</td><td>DP trailing edge registration</td></tr><tr><td>DP CENTER</td><td>DP original center line</td></tr><tr><td>DP A MARGIN</td><td>DP scanning margin (A side)</td></tr><tr><td>DP B MARGIN</td><td>DP scanning margin (B side)</td></tr><tr><td>DP C MARGIN</td><td>DP scanning margin (C side)</td></tr><tr><td>DP D MARGIN</td><td>DP scanning margin (D side)</td></tr></table> <p>If a problem occurs during auto adjustment, DATA: XX (XX is replaced by an error code) is displayed and operation stops. Should this happen, determine the details of the problem and either repeat the procedure from the beginning, or adjust the remaining items manually by running the corresponding maintenance items.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key after auto adjustment is complete. The screen for selecting a maintenance item is displayed. If the stop/clear key is pressed during auto adjustment, adjustment stops and no settings are changed.</p>	Display	Description	CONVEY SPEED	DP magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction	LEAD EDGE ADJ	DP leading edge registration	TRAIL EDGE ADJ	DP trailing edge registration	DP CENTER	DP original center line	DP A MARGIN	DP scanning margin (A side)	DP B MARGIN	DP scanning margin (B side)	DP C MARGIN	DP scanning margin (C side)	DP D MARGIN	DP scanning margin (D side)
Display	Description																		
CONVEY SPEED	DP magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction																		
LEAD EDGE ADJ	DP leading edge registration																		
TRAIL EDGE ADJ	DP trailing edge registration																		
DP CENTER	DP original center line																		
DP A MARGIN	DP scanning margin (A side)																		
DP B MARGIN	DP scanning margin (B side)																		
DP C MARGIN	DP scanning margin (C side)																		
DP D MARGIN	DP scanning margin (D side)																		
U080	<p>Adjusting exposure in toner economy mode</p> <p>Description Adjusts the image density in the eco-print mode.</p> <p>Purpose To increase or decrease the image density in the eco-print mode.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for adjustment is displayed.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Change the setting using the cursor up/down keys. <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>Exposure is toner economy mode</td><td>–12 to 0</td><td>–6</td></tr></table> <p>Increasing the setting makes the image darker; decreasing it makes the image lighter.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">2. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Interrupt copy mode While this maintenance item is being performed, copying from an original can be made in interrupt copy mode.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key at the screen for adjustment. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Exposure is toner economy mode	–12 to 0	–6												
Description	Setting range	Initial setting																	
Exposure is toner economy mode	–12 to 0	–6																	

Maintenance item No.	Description																								
U089	<p>Outputting a MIP-PG pattern</p> <p>Description Selects and outputs the MIP-PG pattern created in the copier.</p> <p>Purpose When performing respective image printing adjustments, used to check the machine status apart from that of the scanner with a non-scanned output MIP-PG pattern.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.2. Select the MIP-PG pattern to be output. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>PG pattern to be output</th><th>Purpose</th></tr><tr><td>GRAYSCALE</td><td></td><td>To check the laser scanner unit engine output characteristics.</td></tr><tr><td>MONO-LEVEL</td><td></td><td>To check the drum quality.</td></tr><tr><td>256-LEVEL</td><td></td><td>To check resolution reproducibility in printing.</td></tr><tr><td>1 DOT-LINE</td><td></td><td>To check fine line reproducibility. To adjust the position of the laser scanner unit (lateral squareness)</td></tr></table> <p>3. To change the output conditions of MONO-LEVEL and 1dot-LINE, use the cursor up/down keys to change the preset values and press the Start key to register the setting.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>Output density of MONO-LEVEL</td><td>0 or 70</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>1dot-LINE</td><td>0 to 21</td><td>0</td></tr></table> <p>4. Press the interrupt key. The copy mode screen is displayed.</p> <p>5. Press the start key. A MIP-PG pattern is output.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key at the screen for selecting an item. The screen for maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	PG pattern to be output	Purpose	GRAYSCALE		To check the laser scanner unit engine output characteristics.	MONO-LEVEL		To check the drum quality.	256-LEVEL		To check resolution reproducibility in printing.	1 DOT-LINE		To check fine line reproducibility. To adjust the position of the laser scanner unit (lateral squareness)	Display	Setting range	Initial setting	Output density of MONO-LEVEL	0 or 70	0	1dot-LINE	0 to 21	0
Display	PG pattern to be output	Purpose																							
GRAYSCALE		To check the laser scanner unit engine output characteristics.																							
MONO-LEVEL		To check the drum quality.																							
256-LEVEL		To check resolution reproducibility in printing.																							
1 DOT-LINE		To check fine line reproducibility. To adjust the position of the laser scanner unit (lateral squareness)																							
Display	Setting range	Initial setting																							
Output density of MONO-LEVEL	0 or 70	0																							
1dot-LINE	0 to 21	0																							

Maintenance item No.	Description						
U091	<p>Checking shading</p> <p>Description Performs scanning under the same conditions as before and after shading is performed, displaying the original scanning values at nine points of the contact glass.</p> <p>Purpose To check the change in original scanning values before and after shading. The results may be used to decide the causes for fixing unevenness (uneven density) of the gray area of an image: either due to optical (shading or CCD) or other problems. Also to check the causes for a white or black line appearing longitudinally.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed. 2. Select the item to be operated. The selected item is displayed in reverse. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>SHD BEFORE</td><td>Performs scanning before shading and displays the result.</td></tr> <tr> <td>SHD AFTER</td><td>Performs scanning after shading and displays the result.</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Press the start key. Scanning is performed under the selected conditions and the result is displayed. When scanning is performed before shading, the scan value at the machine center should be slightly different from those at the machine front and rear. When scanning is performed after shading, there should be no difference between respective values. Any differences between the values at machine front and rear indicates that scanner problem causes the fixing unevenness. If the displayed results indicate no shading problems, the fixing unevenness (uneven copy density) is caused by factors other than in the scanner section (shading or CCD). If a black line appears, the cause may assumed to be based on the results of the scanning operation before shading: if a white line appears, they may be assumed based on the results of the scanning operation after shading. Note that depending on the thickness and location of the black or white line, it may not be possible to use this method to determine the cause. This is because the displayed values obtained from scanning at the limit of nine points are insufficient to provide significant information. <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>20 mm from the machine left — ① ② ③</p> <p>200 mm from the machine left — ④ ⑤ ⑥</p> <p>400 mm from the machine left — ⑦ ⑧ ⑨</p> <p>100 mm from the machine center toward machine front Machine center 100 mm from the machine center toward machine rear</p> </div> <p style="text-align: center;">Figure 1-4-4</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key. <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key at the screen for selecting an item. The screen for entering a maintenance item is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	SHD BEFORE	Performs scanning before shading and displays the result.	SHD AFTER	Performs scanning after shading and displays the result.
Display	Description						
SHD BEFORE	Performs scanning before shading and displays the result.						
SHD AFTER	Performs scanning after shading and displays the result.						

Maintenance item No.	Description																		
U092	<p>Adjusting the scanner automatically</p> <p>Description Makes auto scanner adjustments in the order below using the specified original.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Adjusting the scanner center line (U067) • Adjusting the scanner leading edge registration (U066) • Adjusting scanner magnification in the auxiliary direction (U065) • Adjusting the scanner margins (U403) <p>When this maintenance item is performed, the settings in U065, U066, U067 and U403 are also changed.</p> <p>Purpose Used to make respective auto adjustments for the scanner.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Place the specified original (P/N: 2A068020) on the contact glass. 2. Press the start key. The screen for executing is displayed. 3. Press the start key. Auto adjustment starts. When adjustment is complete, each adjusted value is displayed. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>SCAN CENTER</td><td>Scanner center line</td></tr> <tr> <td>SCAN TIMING</td><td>Scanner leading registration</td></tr> <tr> <td>SUB SCAN</td><td>Scanner magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction</td></tr> <tr> <td>MAIN SCAN</td><td>Scanner magnification in the main scanning direction</td></tr> <tr> <td>SCAN A MARGIN</td><td>Scanner reading margin (A side)</td></tr> <tr> <td>SCAN B MARGIN</td><td>Scanner reading margin (B side)</td></tr> <tr> <td>SCAN C MARGIN</td><td>Scanner reading margin (C side)</td></tr> <tr> <td>SCAN D MARGIN</td><td>Scanner reading margin (D side)</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>If a problem occurs during auto adjustment, DATA: XX (XX is replaced by an error code) is displayed and operation stops. Should this happen, determine the details of the problem and either repeat the procedure from the beginning, or adjust the remaining items manually by running the corresponding maintenance items.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key after auto adjustment is complete. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p> <p>If the stop/clear key is pressed during auto adjustment, adjustment stops and no settings are changed.</p>	Display	Description	SCAN CENTER	Scanner center line	SCAN TIMING	Scanner leading registration	SUB SCAN	Scanner magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction	MAIN SCAN	Scanner magnification in the main scanning direction	SCAN A MARGIN	Scanner reading margin (A side)	SCAN B MARGIN	Scanner reading margin (B side)	SCAN C MARGIN	Scanner reading margin (C side)	SCAN D MARGIN	Scanner reading margin (D side)
Display	Description																		
SCAN CENTER	Scanner center line																		
SCAN TIMING	Scanner leading registration																		
SUB SCAN	Scanner magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction																		
MAIN SCAN	Scanner magnification in the main scanning direction																		
SCAN A MARGIN	Scanner reading margin (A side)																		
SCAN B MARGIN	Scanner reading margin (B side)																		
SCAN C MARGIN	Scanner reading margin (C side)																		
SCAN D MARGIN	Scanner reading margin (D side)																		

Maintenance item No.	Description																																				
U093	<p>Setting the exposure density gradient</p> <p>Description Changes the exposure density gradient in manual density mode, depending on respective image modes (text, text and photo, photo, text in fax mode, photo in fax mode).</p> <p>Purpose To set how the image density is altered by a change of one step in the manual density adjustment. Also used to make copy image darker or lighter.</p> <p>Start</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.2. Select the image mode to be adjusted and press the start key. The screen for the selected item is displayed. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>MIXED</td><td>Density in text and photo mode</td></tr><tr><td>TEXT</td><td>Density in text mode</td></tr><tr><td>PHOTO</td><td>Density in photo mode</td></tr><tr><td>FAX TEXT</td><td>Density in the text in fax mode</td></tr><tr><td>FAX PHOTO</td><td>Density in the photo in fax mode</td></tr></table> <p>Setting:Density in text and photo mode</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Select the item to be adjusted. The selected item is displayed in reverse.2. Adjust the setting using the cursor up/down keys. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>MIXED DARKER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set dark</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>MIXED LIGHTER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set light</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr></table> <p>Increasing the setting makes the change in density larger, and decreasing it makes the change smaller.</p> <div><p>Figure 1-4-5 Exposure density gradient</p></div> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the start key. The value is set.4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key. <p>Setting:Density in text mode</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Select the item to be adjusted. The selected item is displayed in reverse.2. Adjust the setting using the cursor up/down keys. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>TEXT DARKER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set dark</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>TEXT LIGHTER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set light</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr></table> <p>Increasing the setting makes the change in density larger, and decreasing it makes the change smaller.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the start key. The value is set.4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.	Display	Description	MIXED	Density in text and photo mode	TEXT	Density in text mode	PHOTO	Density in photo mode	FAX TEXT	Density in the text in fax mode	FAX PHOTO	Density in the photo in fax mode	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	MIXED DARKER	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0	MIXED LIGHTER	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	TEXT DARKER	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0	TEXT LIGHTER	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0
Display	Description																																				
MIXED	Density in text and photo mode																																				
TEXT	Density in text mode																																				
PHOTO	Density in photo mode																																				
FAX TEXT	Density in the text in fax mode																																				
FAX PHOTO	Density in the photo in fax mode																																				
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																																		
MIXED DARKER	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0																																		
MIXED LIGHTER	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0																																		
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																																		
TEXT DARKER	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0																																		
TEXT LIGHTER	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0																																		

Maintenance item No.	Description												
U093	Setting:Density in photo mode 1. Select the item to be adjusted. The selected item is displayed in reverse. 2. Adjust the setting using the cursor up/down keys.												
	<table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>PHOTO DARKER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set dark</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>PHOTO LIGHTER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set light</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr></table>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	PHOTO DARKER	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0	PHOTO LIGHTER	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0
	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting									
	PHOTO DARKER	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0									
	PHOTO LIGHTER	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0									
	Increasing the setting makes the change in density larger, and decreasing it makes the change smaller.												
	3. Press the start key. The value is set. 4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.												
	Setting:Density in the text in fax mode 1. Select the item to be adjusted. The selected item is displayed in reverse. 2. Adjust the setting using the cursor up/down keys.												
	<table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>FAX TEXT DARKER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set dark</td><td>0 to 4</td><td>2</td></tr><tr><td>FAX TEXT LIGHTER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set light</td><td>0 to 9</td><td>2</td></tr></table>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	FAX TEXT DARKER	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 4	2	FAX TEXT LIGHTER	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 9	2
	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting									
	FAX TEXT DARKER	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 4	2									
	FAX TEXT LIGHTER	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 9	2									
	Increasing the setting makes the change in density larger, and decreasing it makes the change smaller.												
3. Press the start key. The value is set. 4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.													
Setting:Density in the photo in fax mode 1. Select the item to be adjusted. The selected item is displayed in reverse. 2. Adjust the setting using the cursor up/down keys.													
<table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>FAX PHOTO DARKER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set dark</td><td>0 to 6</td><td>3</td></tr><tr><td>FAX PHOTO LIGHT.</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set light</td><td>0 to 6</td><td>3</td></tr></table>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	FAX PHOTO DARKER	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 6	3	FAX PHOTO LIGHT.	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 6	3	
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting										
FAX PHOTO DARKER	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 6	3										
FAX PHOTO LIGHT.	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 6	3										
Increasing the setting makes the change in density larger, and decreasing it makes the change smaller.													
3. Press the start key. The value is set. 4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.													
Interrupt copy mode While this maintenance item is being performed, copying from an original can be made in interrupt copy mode.													
Completion Press the stop/clear key at the screen for selecting an item. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.													

Maintenance item No.	Description																																
U099	<p>Initializing original size</p> <p>Description Checks the operation of the original size detection sensor and sets the sensing threshold value.</p> <p>Purpose To adjust the sensitiveness of the sensor and size judgement time if the original size detection sensor malfunctions frequently due to incident light or the like.</p> <p>Start</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.2. Select an item and press the start key. The screen for executing each item is displayed. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>DATA</td><td>Displaying detection sensor transmission data</td></tr><tr><td>B/W LEVEL</td><td>Setting detection sensor threshold value</td></tr><tr><td></td><td>Setting original size judgment time</td></tr></table> <p>Method to display the data for the sensor</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key. The detection sensor transmission data is displayed. <div><div>Rear of machine Center of machine Front of machine</div><div><div>: 123 123 123</div><div>: 123 123 123</div><div>: 255 255 255</div></div></div> <p>Figure 1-4-6</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">2. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key. <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Select an item to be set. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>LEVEL</td><td>Detection sensor threshold value</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>170</td></tr><tr><td>WAIT TIME</td><td>Original size judgment time*</td><td>0 to 100</td><td>50</td></tr><tr><td>A4R AREA</td><td>Threshold value in the main scan direction for A4R detection</td><td>220 (mm)/ 240 (mm)</td><td>240</td></tr><tr><td>ORIG. AREA</td><td>Original size detection position display (mm)</td><td>0 to 350</td><td>—</td></tr><tr><td>SIZE</td><td>Detected original size display</td><td>0 to 63</td><td>—</td></tr></table> <p>* Time from activation of the original detection switch (ODSW) to original size judgment</p> <p>Method to set the detection threshold value</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Adjust the preset value using the cursor up/down keys. * A larger value increases the sensor sensitivity, and a smaller value decreases it.2. Press the start key. The value is set.3. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key. <p>Method to set the original size judgment time</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Adjust the preset value using the cursor up/down keys. * A larger value increases the original size judgment time, and a smaller value decreases it.2. Press the start key. The value is set.3. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key. <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key at the screen for selecting an item. The screen for maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	DATA	Displaying detection sensor transmission data	B/W LEVEL	Setting detection sensor threshold value		Setting original size judgment time	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	LEVEL	Detection sensor threshold value	0 to 255	170	WAIT TIME	Original size judgment time*	0 to 100	50	A4R AREA	Threshold value in the main scan direction for A4R detection	220 (mm)/ 240 (mm)	240	ORIG. AREA	Original size detection position display (mm)	0 to 350	—	SIZE	Detected original size display	0 to 63	—
Display	Description																																
DATA	Displaying detection sensor transmission data																																
B/W LEVEL	Setting detection sensor threshold value																																
	Setting original size judgment time																																
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																														
LEVEL	Detection sensor threshold value	0 to 255	170																														
WAIT TIME	Original size judgment time*	0 to 100	50																														
A4R AREA	Threshold value in the main scan direction for A4R detection	220 (mm)/ 240 (mm)	240																														
ORIG. AREA	Original size detection position display (mm)	0 to 350	—																														
SIZE	Detected original size display	0 to 63	—																														

Maintenance item No.	Description																									
U100	<p>Checking the operation of main high voltage</p> <p>Description Performs main charging.</p> <p>Purpose To check main charging.</p> <p>Start Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>MC ON</td><td>Turning the main charger on</td></tr><tr><td>LASER ON/OFF</td><td>Turning the main charger on and the laser scanner unit on and off</td></tr></table> <p>Method 1. Select the item to be operated. 2. Press the start key. The selected operation starts. 3. To stop operation, press the stop/clear key.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key at the screen for selecting an item when main charger output stops The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	MC ON	Turning the main charger on	LASER ON/OFF	Turning the main charger on and the laser scanner unit on and off																			
Display	Description																									
MC ON	Turning the main charger on																									
LASER ON/OFF	Turning the main charger on and the laser scanner unit on and off																									
U101	<p>Setting high voltages</p> <p>Description Changes the developing bias voltage and transfer voltage by changing the developing bias control voltage and transfer control voltage.</p> <p>Purpose To check the developing bias and the transfer voltage or to take measures against drop of image density or background fog.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <p>Setting 1. Select the item to be set.The selected item is displayed in reverse. 2. Change the setting using the cursor up/down keys.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Adjustable range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>DEV BIAS</td><td>Developing bias AC component frequency at image formation</td><td>-255 to 255</td><td>-10 to 10</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>DEV DUTY</td><td>Developing bias AC component duty at image formation</td><td>-100 to 100</td><td>-5 to 5</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>DEV SBIAS</td><td>Developing shift bias potential at image formation</td><td>-1 to 1</td><td>0 to 1</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>TC DATA</td><td>Transfer control voltage</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>120</td></tr></table> <p>When changing the setting value, be sure to adjust within the adjustable range. Increasing the DEV BIAS setting makes the image darker; decreasing it makes the image lighter. Increasing the DEV DUTY setting makes the image lighter; decreasing it makes the image darker. Increasing the DEV SBIAS setting makes the image darker. Increasing the TC DATA setting makes the transfer voltage higher, and decreasing it makes the voltage lower.</p> <p>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p>Interrupt copy mode While this maintenance item is being performed, copying from an original can be made in interrupt copy mode.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Adjustable range	Initial setting	DEV BIAS	Developing bias AC component frequency at image formation	-255 to 255	-10 to 10	0	DEV DUTY	Developing bias AC component duty at image formation	-100 to 100	-5 to 5	0	DEV SBIAS	Developing shift bias potential at image formation	-1 to 1	0 to 1	0	TC DATA	Transfer control voltage	0 to 255	0 to 255	120
Display	Description	Setting range	Adjustable range	Initial setting																						
DEV BIAS	Developing bias AC component frequency at image formation	-255 to 255	-10 to 10	0																						
DEV DUTY	Developing bias AC component duty at image formation	-100 to 100	-5 to 5	0																						
DEV SBIAS	Developing shift bias potential at image formation	-1 to 1	0 to 1	0																						
TC DATA	Transfer control voltage	0 to 255	0 to 255	120																						

Maintenance item No.	Description
U109	<p>Displaying the drum type</p> <p>Description Displays the drum surface potential set as EEPROM of the drum unit.</p> <p>Purpose To check the drum surface potential.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. * Drum surface potential (V) is displayed.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>
U110	<p>Checking/clearing the drum count</p> <p>Description Displays the drum counts for checking, clearing or changing the figure, which is used as a reference when correcting the main charger potential output.</p> <p>Purpose To check the drum status. Also used to clear the count after replacing the drum during regular maintenance. Since the count was cleared before shipping, do not clear it when installing.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The drum counter count is displayed.</p> <p>Clearing 1. Press the reset key. 2. Press the start key. The count is cleared, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p> <p>Setting 1. Enter a six-digit count using the numeric keys. 2. Press the start key. The count is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p> <p>Completion To exit the maintenance mode without changing the count, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>

Maintenance item No.	Description				
U112	Setting toner refresh operation				
	Description				
	Sets the drum refresh operation time and the developing bias on time at power on and after copying.				
	Purpose				
	To change the drum refresh operation time and the developing bias on time at power on and after copying if image flow level is low.				
	Method				
	Press the start key. The screen for executing is displayed.				
	Setting				
	1. Select the item to be set. The selected item is displayed in reverse.				
	2. Change the setting using the cursor up/down keys.				
	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	
	ON TIME(SEC)	Toner refresh operation time	50 to 150 (sec)	120	
	BIAS TIME(MSEC)	Developing bias on time	500 to 1000 (msec)	700 (30 cpm) 540 (40/50 cpm)	
	3. Press the start key. The value is set.				
	Completion				
	Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.				
U113	Performing drum refresh operation				
	Description				
	Executes drum refresh operation.				
	Purpose				
	To operate when image flow occurs.				
	Method				
	1. Press the start key. The screen for executing is displayed.				
	2. Press the start key. Drum refresh operation starts. (approximately 3 minutes)				
	3. To stop the operation, press the stop/clear key.				
	Completion				
	Press the stop/clear key when the operation stops. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.				
U114	Setting separation charger mode				
	Description				
	Specifies Separation Charger (SC) Whole mode to ON/OFF, and the temperature/humidity of which SC Whole mode is ON.				
	Purpose				
	If the paper wrinkles from causes other than low temperature or low humidity (20 °C/ 50 % RH or less), change the temperature/humidity. If the fixing offset occurs, switch SC Whole mode to OFF.				
	Method				
	1. Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.				
	2. Select the item to be set and press the stat key. The screen for executing each item is displayed.				
		Display	Description		
		SELECT SC WHOLE MODE	Specifying SC Whole mode to ON/OFF		
		SELECT TEMP, HUM	Specifying the temperature/humidity of which SC Whole mode in ON. SC Whole mode turns ON when the temperature/humidity becomes the preset value or less.		
		SELECT VELLUM MODE	Specifying SC Whole mode to ON/OFF when using thin paper		
		SELECT NORMAL MODE	Specifying SC Whole mode to ON/OFF when using plain paper		
	Setting: SELECT SC WHOLE MODE				
	1. Select either ON or OFF. The selected item is displayed in reverse.				
	Display	Description			
	ON	Selecting SC Whole mode			
	OFF	Not selecting SC Whole mode			
	Initial setting: ON				
	2. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting an item is displayed.				

Maintenance item No.	Description																					
U114	<p>Setting: SELECT TEMP, HUM</p> <p>1. Select either TEMP or HUM.</p> <p>2. Change the setting using the cursor up/down keys.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>TEMP</td><td>0 to 100</td><td>20</td></tr><tr><td>HUM</td><td>0 to 999</td><td>50</td></tr></table> <p>3. Press the start key. The value is set, and the screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <p>Setting: SELECT VELLUM MODE</p> <p>1. Select either ON or OFF. The selected item is displayed in reverse.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>ON</td><td>Selecting SC Whole mode when using thin paper</td></tr><tr><td>OFF</td><td>Not selecting SC Whole mode when using thin paper</td></tr></table> <p>Initial setting: OFF</p> <p>2. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <p>Setting: SELECT NORMAL MODE</p> <p>1. Select either MODE0 or MODE1. The selected item is displayed in reverse.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>MODE0</td><td>Selecting SC Whole mode when using plain paper</td></tr><tr><td>MODE1</td><td>Not selecting SC Whole mode when using plain paper</td></tr></table> <p>Initial setting: MODE0</p> <p>2. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <p>Completion</p> <p>Press the stop/clear key at the screen for selecting an item. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p>	Display	Setting range	Initial setting	TEMP	0 to 100	20	HUM	0 to 999	50	Display	Description	ON	Selecting SC Whole mode when using thin paper	OFF	Not selecting SC Whole mode when using thin paper	Display	Description	MODE0	Selecting SC Whole mode when using plain paper	MODE1	Not selecting SC Whole mode when using plain paper
Display	Setting range	Initial setting																				
TEMP	0 to 100	20																				
HUM	0 to 999	50																				
Display	Description																					
ON	Selecting SC Whole mode when using thin paper																					
OFF	Not selecting SC Whole mode when using thin paper																					
Display	Description																					
MODE0	Selecting SC Whole mode when using plain paper																					
MODE1	Not selecting SC Whole mode when using plain paper																					
U117	<p>Checking the drum number</p> <p>Description</p> <p>Displays the drum number.</p> <p>Purpose</p> <p>To check the drum number.</p> <p>Method</p> <p>Press the start key. The drum number is displayed.</p> <p>Completion</p> <p>Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p>																					

Maintenance item No.	Description								
U118	<p>Displaying the drum history</p> <p>Description Displays the past record of machine number and the drum counter.</p> <p>Purpose To check the count value of machine number and the drum counter.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed. 2. Select the item and press the start key. Past record of 5 cases is displayed. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MACHINE No. HISTORY</td><td>Past record of machine number</td></tr> <tr> <td>DRUM COUNT HISTORY</td><td>Past record of drum counter</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	MACHINE No. HISTORY	Past record of machine number	DRUM COUNT HISTORY	Past record of drum counter		
Display	Description								
MACHINE No. HISTORY	Past record of machine number								
DRUM COUNT HISTORY	Past record of drum counter								
U130	<p>Initial setting for the developer</p> <p>Description Replenishes toner to the developer unit to a certain level from the toner container that has been installed.</p> <p>Purpose To operate when installing the machine or replacing the developing unit.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. The screen for executing is displayed. 2. Press the start key. The time that elapses until initialization is complete and whether or not toner remains in the developing unit (0: No, 1: Yes) are displayed. <p>Supplement The following data is also renewed or cleared by performing this maintenance item:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Clearing the developing drive time (U157) • Clearing the developing count (U158) • Resetting the toner feed start level and toner empty detection <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key after initial setting is complete. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p>								
U144	<p>Setting toner loading operation</p> <p>Description Sets toner loading operation after completion of copying.</p> <p>Purpose To set whether or not toner is loaded on the drum after low density copying. Normally no change is necessary from the initial setting.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed. 2. Select the item. The selected item is displayed in reverse. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MODE0</td><td>Toner not loaded</td></tr> <tr> <td>MODE1</td><td>Toner loaded after simplex or duplex copying</td></tr> <tr> <td>MODE2</td><td>Toner loaded after simplex copying</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: MODE2</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	MODE0	Toner not loaded	MODE1	Toner loaded after simplex or duplex copying	MODE2	Toner loaded after simplex copying
Display	Description								
MODE0	Toner not loaded								
MODE1	Toner loaded after simplex or duplex copying								
MODE2	Toner loaded after simplex copying								

Maintenance item No.	Description												
U150	<p>Checking sensors and switches for toner</p> <p>Description Displays the on-off status of each sensor or switch related to toner.</p> <p>Purpose To check if the sensors and switches operate correctly.</p> <p>Method 1. Press the start key. A list of the switches, the on-off status of which can be checked, are displayed. 2. Turn each switch on and off manually to check the status. When the on-status of a switch is detected, that switch is displayed in reverse.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Switches</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>DEVELOPER SENSOR</td><td>Toner sensor (TNS)</td></tr> <tr> <td>CONTAINER SET</td><td>Toner container detection switch (TCDSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>CONTAINER SENSOR</td><td>Toner container sensor (TCS)</td></tr> <tr> <td>DISPOSAL TANK SET</td><td>Toner disposal tank detection switch (TDDSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>DISPOSAL TANK SENSOR</td><td>Overflow sensor (OFS)</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p>	Display	Switches	DEVELOPER SENSOR	Toner sensor (TNS)	CONTAINER SET	Toner container detection switch (TCDSW)	CONTAINER SENSOR	Toner container sensor (TCS)	DISPOSAL TANK SET	Toner disposal tank detection switch (TDDSW)	DISPOSAL TANK SENSOR	Overflow sensor (OFS)
Display	Switches												
DEVELOPER SENSOR	Toner sensor (TNS)												
CONTAINER SET	Toner container detection switch (TCDSW)												
CONTAINER SENSOR	Toner container sensor (TCS)												
DISPOSAL TANK SET	Toner disposal tank detection switch (TDDSW)												
DISPOSAL TANK SENSOR	Overflow sensor (OFS)												
U157	<p>Checking/clearing the developing drive time</p> <p>Description Displays the developing drive time for checking, clearing or changing a figure, which is used as a reference when correcting the toner control. It is automatically cleared when U130 is executed.</p> <p>Purpose To check the developing drive time after replacing the developing unit.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The developing drive time is displayed in minutes.</p> <p>Clearing 1. Press the reset key. 2. Press the start key. The time is cleared, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p> <p>Setting 1. Enter a five-digit drive time (in minutes) using the numeric keys. 2. Press the start key. The time is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p> <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the time press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>												
U158	<p>Checking the developing count</p> <p>Description Displays the developing count for checking a figure which is used as a reference when correcting the toner control.</p> <p>Purpose To check the developing count after replacing the developing unit.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The developing count is displayed.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p>												

Maintenance item No.	Description																																																														
U161	<p>Setting the fixing control temperature</p> <p>Description Changes the fixing control temperature.</p> <p>Purpose Normally no change is necessary. However, can be used to prevent curling or creasing of paper, or solve a fixing problem on thick paper.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.2. Select the item to be set and press the stat key. The screen for executing each item is displayed. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>CONTROL TEMP</td><td>Sets the fixing control temperature.</td></tr><tr><td>CORRECT TEMP</td><td>Sets the fixing correct temperature.</td></tr></table> <p>Setting the fixing control temperature</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Select the item to be set. The selecting item is displayed in reverse.2. Change the setting using the cursor up/down keys. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>CONT TEMP</td><td>Control temperature during copying</td><td>100 to 200 (°C)</td><td>130</td></tr><tr><td>1ST TEMP</td><td>Primary stabilization fixing temperature</td><td>80 to 200 (°C)</td><td>115 (30 cpm) 120 (40/50 cpm)</td></tr><tr><td>2ND TEMP</td><td>Secondary stabilization fixing temperature</td><td>100 to 200 (°C)</td><td>130 (30 cpm) 145 (40/50 cpm)</td></tr><tr><td>WARM UP TIM (S)</td><td>Time from power on to stabilization of fixing</td><td>-5 to +20</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>DUP DOWN TEMP1</td><td>Fixing temperature decrease amount for duplex copying</td><td>0 to +20 (°C)</td><td>5</td></tr><tr><td>DUP DOWN TEMP2</td><td>Fixing temperature decrease amount for duplex copying for copy store section/optional mail box ejection</td><td>0 to +20 (°C)</td><td>0</td></tr></table> <p>The respective temperatures are to be set such that 2NDTEMP ≥ 1ST TEMP.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Setting the fixing correct temperature</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Select the item to be set. The selecting item is displayed in reverse.2. Change the setting using the cursor up/down keys. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>COPY UP TEMP(L)</td><td>Fixing correct temperature for large size copying</td><td>-30 to +100 (°C)</td><td>45 (30 cpm) 50 (40 cpm) 65 (50 cpm)</td></tr><tr><td>COPY UP TEMP(M)</td><td>Fixing correct temperature for middle size copying</td><td>-30 to +100 (°C)</td><td>45 (30 cpm) 60 (40 cpm) 70 (50 cpm)</td></tr><tr><td>COPY UP TEMP(S)</td><td>Fixing correct temperature for small size copying</td><td>-30 to +100 (°C)</td><td>25 (30 cpm) 40 (40 cpm) 45 (50 cpm)</td></tr><tr><td>L/L UP TEMP</td><td>Fixing temperature increase amount at low temperature and low humidity</td><td>0 to +20 (°C)</td><td>5</td></tr><tr><td>H/H DOWN TEMP</td><td>Fixing temperature decrease amount at high temperature and high humidity</td><td>0 to +20 (°C)</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>MH OFF UP TEMP</td><td>Variable range of correct temperature for fixing heater M</td><td>-10 to 10</td><td>0</td></tr></table> <p>If the fixing offset occurs by over heat of fixing temperature, decrease the value of MH OFF UP TEMP to lower the temperature of fixing heater M.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Interrupt copy mode While this maintenance item is being performed, copying from an original can be made in interrupt copy mode.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key at the screen for selecting an item. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	CONTROL TEMP	Sets the fixing control temperature.	CORRECT TEMP	Sets the fixing correct temperature.	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	CONT TEMP	Control temperature during copying	100 to 200 (°C)	130	1ST TEMP	Primary stabilization fixing temperature	80 to 200 (°C)	115 (30 cpm) 120 (40/50 cpm)	2ND TEMP	Secondary stabilization fixing temperature	100 to 200 (°C)	130 (30 cpm) 145 (40/50 cpm)	WARM UP TIM (S)	Time from power on to stabilization of fixing	-5 to +20	0	DUP DOWN TEMP1	Fixing temperature decrease amount for duplex copying	0 to +20 (°C)	5	DUP DOWN TEMP2	Fixing temperature decrease amount for duplex copying for copy store section/optional mail box ejection	0 to +20 (°C)	0	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	COPY UP TEMP(L)	Fixing correct temperature for large size copying	-30 to +100 (°C)	45 (30 cpm) 50 (40 cpm) 65 (50 cpm)	COPY UP TEMP(M)	Fixing correct temperature for middle size copying	-30 to +100 (°C)	45 (30 cpm) 60 (40 cpm) 70 (50 cpm)	COPY UP TEMP(S)	Fixing correct temperature for small size copying	-30 to +100 (°C)	25 (30 cpm) 40 (40 cpm) 45 (50 cpm)	L/L UP TEMP	Fixing temperature increase amount at low temperature and low humidity	0 to +20 (°C)	5	H/H DOWN TEMP	Fixing temperature decrease amount at high temperature and high humidity	0 to +20 (°C)	0	MH OFF UP TEMP	Variable range of correct temperature for fixing heater M	-10 to 10	0
Display	Description																																																														
CONTROL TEMP	Sets the fixing control temperature.																																																														
CORRECT TEMP	Sets the fixing correct temperature.																																																														
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																																																												
CONT TEMP	Control temperature during copying	100 to 200 (°C)	130																																																												
1ST TEMP	Primary stabilization fixing temperature	80 to 200 (°C)	115 (30 cpm) 120 (40/50 cpm)																																																												
2ND TEMP	Secondary stabilization fixing temperature	100 to 200 (°C)	130 (30 cpm) 145 (40/50 cpm)																																																												
WARM UP TIM (S)	Time from power on to stabilization of fixing	-5 to +20	0																																																												
DUP DOWN TEMP1	Fixing temperature decrease amount for duplex copying	0 to +20 (°C)	5																																																												
DUP DOWN TEMP2	Fixing temperature decrease amount for duplex copying for copy store section/optional mail box ejection	0 to +20 (°C)	0																																																												
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																																																												
COPY UP TEMP(L)	Fixing correct temperature for large size copying	-30 to +100 (°C)	45 (30 cpm) 50 (40 cpm) 65 (50 cpm)																																																												
COPY UP TEMP(M)	Fixing correct temperature for middle size copying	-30 to +100 (°C)	45 (30 cpm) 60 (40 cpm) 70 (50 cpm)																																																												
COPY UP TEMP(S)	Fixing correct temperature for small size copying	-30 to +100 (°C)	25 (30 cpm) 40 (40 cpm) 45 (50 cpm)																																																												
L/L UP TEMP	Fixing temperature increase amount at low temperature and low humidity	0 to +20 (°C)	5																																																												
H/H DOWN TEMP	Fixing temperature decrease amount at high temperature and high humidity	0 to +20 (°C)	0																																																												
MH OFF UP TEMP	Variable range of correct temperature for fixing heater M	-10 to 10	0																																																												

Maintenance item No.	Description						
U162	<p>Stabilizing fixing forcibly</p> <p>Description Stops the stabilization fixing dive forcibly, regardless of fixing temperature.</p> <p>Purpose To forcibly stabilize the machine before the fixing section reaches stabilization temperature.</p> <p>Method 1. Press the start key. The screen for executing is displayed. 2. Press the start key. The forced stabilization mode is entered, and stabilization operation stops regardless of fixing temperature. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed. To exit the forced stabilization mode, turn the power off and on.</p> <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without executing forced fixing stabilization, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>						
U163	<p>Resetting the fixing problem data</p> <p>Description Resets the detection of a service call code indicating a problem in the fixing section.</p> <p>Purpose To prevent accidents due to an abnormally high fixing temperature.</p> <p>Method 1. Press the start key. The screen for executing is displayed. 2. Press EXECUTE on the touch panel. It is displayed in reverse. 3. Press the start key. The fixing problem data is initialized.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p>						
U165	<p>Checking fixing counts</p> <p>Description Displays fixing counts.</p> <p>Purpose To check fixing counts after replacing the fixing unit.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The fixing counts are displayed.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p>						
U196	<p>Turning the fixing heater on</p> <p>Description Turns the fixing heater M or S on.</p> <p>Purpose To check fixing heaters turning on.</p> <p>Method 1. Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed. 2. Select the heater to be turned on. The selected heater turns on for 3 s and then turns off.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MAIN</td><td>Fixing heater M (FH-M)</td></tr> <tr> <td>SUB</td><td>Fixing heater S (FH-S)</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key when fixing motors M and S are off. The screen for selecting the maintenance item No is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	MAIN	Fixing heater M (FH-M)	SUB	Fixing heater S (FH-S)
Display	Description						
MAIN	Fixing heater M (FH-M)						
SUB	Fixing heater S (FH-S)						

Maintenance item No.	Description								
U198	<p>Setting the fixing phase control</p> <p>Description Sets the use of fixing phase control to reduce electrical noise generated by the copier.</p> <p>Purpose Normally no change is necessary. If electrical noise generated by the copier causes flickering of the lights around the copier, select fixing phase control to reduce the noise.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for adjustment is displayed.</p> <p>Setting 1. Select ON or OFF. The selected item is displayed in reverse.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> <tr> <td>ON</td><td>Fixing phase control present</td></tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td><td>Fixing phase control absent</td></tr> </table> <p>Initial setting: OFF</p> <p>2. If you select ON, use the * or # key to set 0 (100 V system fixing heater phase control) or 1 (200 V system fixing heater phase control).</p> <p>3. Press the start key. The value is set, and the maintenance mode is exited.</p> <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the current value, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ON	Fixing phase control present	OFF	Fixing phase control absent		
Display	Description								
ON	Fixing phase control present								
OFF	Fixing phase control absent								
U199	<p>Checking the fixing temperature</p> <p>Description Displays the fixing temperature, the ambient temperature and the absolute humidity.</p> <p>Purpose To check the fixing temperature, the ambient temperature and the absolute humidity.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The fixing temperature and ambient temperature are displayed in centigrade (°C) and the absolute humidity is displayed in percentage (%).</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> <tr> <td>FIX TEMP</td><td>Fixing temperature (°C)</td></tr> <tr> <td>SURROUND TEMP</td><td>Ambient temperature (°C)</td></tr> <tr> <td>HUMIDITY</td><td>Absolute humidity (%)</td></tr> </table> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	FIX TEMP	Fixing temperature (°C)	SURROUND TEMP	Ambient temperature (°C)	HUMIDITY	Absolute humidity (%)
Display	Description								
FIX TEMP	Fixing temperature (°C)								
SURROUND TEMP	Ambient temperature (°C)								
HUMIDITY	Absolute humidity (%)								

Maintenance item No.	Description
U200	<p>Turning all LEDs on</p> <p>Description Turns all the LEDs on the operation panel on.</p> <p>Purpose To check if all the LEDs on the operation panel light.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. All the LEDs on the operation panel light. Press the stop/clear key or wait for 10 s. The LEDs turns off, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>
U201	<p>Initializing the touch panel</p> <p>Description Automatically correct the positions of the X- and Y-axes of the touch panel.</p> <p>Purpose To automatically correct the display positions on the touch panel after it is replaced.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. The screen for executing is displayed, and the + key displayed at the upper left of the touch panel flashes. 2. Press on the center of the + key. The + key on lower right flashes. 3. Press the center of the flashing +. Initialization of the touch panel is complete, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed. <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without initializing, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance mode No. is displayed.</p>
U202	<p>Setting the KMAS host monitoring system</p> <p>Description Initializes or operates the KMAS host monitoring system. This is an optional device which is currently supported only by Japanese specification machines, so no setting is necessary.</p>

Maintenance item No.	Description										
U203	<p>Checking DP operation</p> <p>Description Simulates the original conveying operation separately in the optional DP.</p> <p>Purpose To check the DP.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed. 2. Place an original in the DP if running this simulation with paper. 3. Select the item to be operated. The selected item is displayed in reverse. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Operation</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ADP</td><td>With paper, single-sided original</td></tr> <tr> <td>RADP</td><td>With paper, double-sided original</td></tr> <tr> <td>ADP (NON-P)</td><td>Without paper, single-sided original (continuous operation)</td></tr> <tr> <td>RADP (NON-P)</td><td>Without paper, double-sided original (continuous operation)</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. Press the start key. The operation starts. 5. To stop continuous operation, press the stop/clear key. <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key when the operation stops. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Operation	ADP	With paper, single-sided original	RADP	With paper, double-sided original	ADP (NON-P)	Without paper, single-sided original (continuous operation)	RADP (NON-P)	Without paper, double-sided original (continuous operation)
Display	Operation										
ADP	With paper, single-sided original										
RADP	With paper, double-sided original										
ADP (NON-P)	Without paper, single-sided original (continuous operation)										
RADP (NON-P)	Without paper, double-sided original (continuous operation)										
U204	<p>Setting the presence or absence of a key card or key counter</p> <p>Description Sets the presence or absence of the optional key card or key counter.</p> <p>Purpose To run this maintenance item if a key card or key counter is installed.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select the optional counter to be installed using the cursor up/down keys. The selected counter is displayed in reverse. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>KEY-CARD</td><td>The key card is installed</td></tr> <tr> <td>KEY-COUNTER</td><td>The key counter is installed</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. Press the start key. The setting is set and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed. <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the current setting, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	KEY-CARD	The key card is installed	KEY-COUNTER	The key counter is installed				
Display	Description										
KEY-CARD	The key card is installed										
KEY-COUNTER	The key counter is installed										

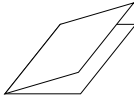
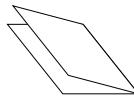
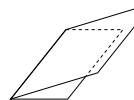
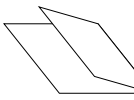
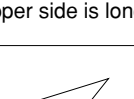
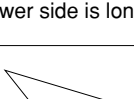
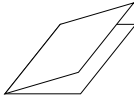
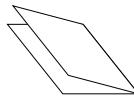
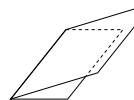
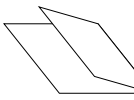
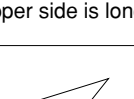
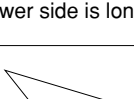
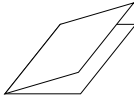
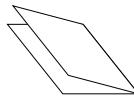
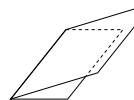
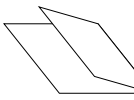
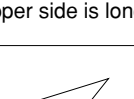
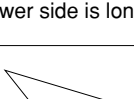
Maintenance item No.	Description
U206	<p>Setting the presence or absence of the coin vender</p> <p>Description Sets the presence or absence of the optional coin vender. Also sets the details for coin vender operation, such as mode and unit price. This is an optional device which is currently supported only by Japanese specification machines, so no setting is necessary.</p>
U207	<p>Checking the operation panel keys</p> <p>Description Checks operation of the operation panel keys.</p> <p>Purpose To check operation of all the keys and LEDs on the operation panel.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. The screen for executing is displayed. 2. "COUNT1" is displayed and the leftmost LED on the operation panel lights. 3. As the keys lined up in the same line as the lit indicator are pressed in the order from the top to the bottom, the figure shown on the touch panel increases in increments of 1. When all the keys in that line are pressed and if there are any LEDs corresponding to the keys in the line on the immediate right, the top LED in that line will light. 4. When all the keys on the operation panel have been pressed, all the LEDs light for up to 10 seconds. 5. When the LEDs go off, press the start key. All the LEDs light for 10 seconds again. <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>
U208	<p>Setting the paper size for the large paper deck</p> <p>Description Sets the size of paper used in the optional large paper deck.</p> <p>Purpose To change the setting when the size of paper used in the large paper deck is changed.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select the paper size (A4, B5 or LETTER). The selected item is displayed in reverse. Initial setting: LETTER (Inch specifications) A4 (Metric specifications) 2. Press the start key. The setting is set. <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>

Maintenance item No.	Description																		
U236	<p>Setting the limit for the ejection section of the built-in finisher</p> <p>Description If the machine is equipped with an optional built-in finisher, this mode sets whether A5/5¹/₂ × 8¹/₂ size paper is output to the machine internal tray or not.</p> <p>Purpose If the machine is equipped with an optional built-in finisher and if paper jams occur due to curling of paper in the built-in ejection section when two-sided copying onto A5/5¹/₂ × 8¹/₂ size paper is performed, this mode is used to change the setting to ON to disable ejection to the machine internal tray.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for executing is displayed.</p> <p>Setting 1. Select ON or OFF. The selected item is displayed in reverse.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> <tr> <td>ON</td><td>Does not eject to the machine internal tray.</td></tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td><td>Eject to the machine internal tray.</td></tr> </table> <p>Initial setting: OFF</p> <p>2. Press the start key. The setting is set.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ON	Does not eject to the machine internal tray.	OFF	Eject to the machine internal tray.												
Display	Description																		
ON	Does not eject to the machine internal tray.																		
OFF	Eject to the machine internal tray.																		
U237	<p>Setting finisher stack quantity</p> <p>Description Sets the number of sheets of each stack on the main tray and on the intermediate tray in the optional finisher.</p> <p>Purpose To change the setting when a stack malfunction has occurred.</p> <p>Method 1. Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed. 2. Select the item to be set. The selected item is displayed in reverse.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> <tr> <td>MAIN TRAY</td><td>Number of sheets of stack on the main tray</td></tr> <tr> <td>MIDDLE TRAY</td><td>Number of sheets of stack on the intermediate tray for sort copying or staple copying</td></tr> </table> <p>Setting the number of sheets of stack on the main tray 1. Change the setting using the cursor up/down keys.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <th>Setting</th><th>Description</th></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>3000-sheet finisher: 3000 sheets, built-in finisher: 500 sheets</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>3000-sheet finisher: 1500 sheets, built-in finisher: 250 sheets</td></tr> </table> <p>Initial setting: 0</p> <p>2. Press the start key. The setting is set.</p> <p>Setting the number of sheets of stack on the intermediate tray for sort copying or staple copying 1. Change the setting using the cursor up/down keys.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <th>Setting</th><th>Description</th></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>For sort copying: 30 sheets, for staple copying: 50 sheets</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>For sort copying: 30 sheets, for staple copying: 30 sheets</td></tr> </table> <p>Initial setting: 0</p> <p>2. Press the start key. The setting is set.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	MAIN TRAY	Number of sheets of stack on the main tray	MIDDLE TRAY	Number of sheets of stack on the intermediate tray for sort copying or staple copying	Setting	Description	0	3000-sheet finisher: 3000 sheets, built-in finisher: 500 sheets	1	3000-sheet finisher: 1500 sheets, built-in finisher: 250 sheets	Setting	Description	0	For sort copying: 30 sheets, for staple copying: 50 sheets	1	For sort copying: 30 sheets, for staple copying: 30 sheets
Display	Description																		
MAIN TRAY	Number of sheets of stack on the main tray																		
MIDDLE TRAY	Number of sheets of stack on the intermediate tray for sort copying or staple copying																		
Setting	Description																		
0	3000-sheet finisher: 3000 sheets, built-in finisher: 500 sheets																		
1	3000-sheet finisher: 1500 sheets, built-in finisher: 250 sheets																		
Setting	Description																		
0	For sort copying: 30 sheets, for staple copying: 50 sheets																		
1	For sort copying: 30 sheets, for staple copying: 30 sheets																		

Maintenance item No.	Description																								
U243	<p>Checking the operation of the DP motors, solenoids and clutch</p> <p>Description Turns the motors, solenoids or clutch in the optional DP on.</p> <p>Purpose To check the operation of the DP motors, solenoids and clutch .</p> <p>Method</p> <div><div><div>1. Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</div><div>2. Select the item to be operated. The selected item is displayed in reverse and the operation starts.</div></div><table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Motors, solenoids and clutch</th><th>Operation In operation</th></tr><tr><td>F MOT</td><td>Original feed motor (OFM)</td><td>In operation</td></tr><tr><td>C MOT</td><td>Original paper conveying motor (OCM)</td><td>On for 0.5 s</td></tr><tr><td>FD CL</td><td>Original feed clutch (OFCL)</td><td>On for 0.5 s</td></tr><tr><td>EJ SL</td><td>Eject feedshift solenoid (EFSSOL)</td><td>On for 0.5 s</td></tr><tr><td>RJ SL</td><td>Switchback feedshift solenoid (SBFSSOL)</td><td>On for 0.5 s</td></tr><tr><td>FD SL</td><td>Original feed solenoid (OFSOL)</td><td>On and off</td></tr><tr><td>RP SL</td><td>Switchback pressure solenoid (SBPSOL)</td><td>On and off</td></tr></table><div><div>3. To turn each motor off, press the stop/clear key.</div></div></div> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key when operation stops. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Motors, solenoids and clutch	Operation In operation	F MOT	Original feed motor (OFM)	In operation	C MOT	Original paper conveying motor (OCM)	On for 0.5 s	FD CL	Original feed clutch (OFCL)	On for 0.5 s	EJ SL	Eject feedshift solenoid (EFSSOL)	On for 0.5 s	RJ SL	Switchback feedshift solenoid (SBFSSOL)	On for 0.5 s	FD SL	Original feed solenoid (OFSOL)	On and off	RP SL	Switchback pressure solenoid (SBPSOL)	On and off
Display	Motors, solenoids and clutch	Operation In operation																							
F MOT	Original feed motor (OFM)	In operation																							
C MOT	Original paper conveying motor (OCM)	On for 0.5 s																							
FD CL	Original feed clutch (OFCL)	On for 0.5 s																							
EJ SL	Eject feedshift solenoid (EFSSOL)	On for 0.5 s																							
RJ SL	Switchback feedshift solenoid (SBFSSOL)	On for 0.5 s																							
FD SL	Original feed solenoid (OFSOL)	On and off																							
RP SL	Switchback pressure solenoid (SBPSOL)	On and off																							
U244	<p>Checking the DP switches</p> <p>Description Displays the status of the respective switches in the optional DP.</p> <p>Purpose To check if respective switches in the optional DP operate correctly.</p> <p>Start</p> <div><div><div>1. Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</div><div>2. Select the type of switches (SW or VR) to be checked. The screen for executing each item is displayed.</div></div><table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Type of switches</th></tr><tr><td>SW</td><td>On/off switches</td></tr><tr><td>VR</td><td>Volume switch</td></tr></table><p>Method for the on/off switches</p><div><div><div>1. Turn the respective switches on and off manually to check the status.</div><div>If the on-status of a switch is detected, the corresponding switch is displayed in reverse.</div></div><table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Switches</th></tr><tr><td>SET SW</td><td>Original set switch (OSSW)</td></tr><tr><td>FEED SW</td><td>Original feed switch (OFSW)</td></tr><tr><td>REV SW</td><td>Original switchback switch (OSBSW)</td></tr><tr><td>TMG SW</td><td>DP timing switch (DPTSW)</td></tr><tr><td>SZ A SW</td><td>Original size length switch (OSLSW)</td></tr></table><div><div>2. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.</div></div></div></div>	Display	Type of switches	SW	On/off switches	VR	Volume switch	Display	Switches	SET SW	Original set switch (OSSW)	FEED SW	Original feed switch (OFSW)	REV SW	Original switchback switch (OSBSW)	TMG SW	DP timing switch (DPTSW)	SZ A SW	Original size length switch (OSLSW)						
Display	Type of switches																								
SW	On/off switches																								
VR	Volume switch																								
Display	Switches																								
SET SW	Original set switch (OSSW)																								
FEED SW	Original feed switch (OFSW)																								
REV SW	Original switchback switch (OSBSW)																								
TMG SW	DP timing switch (DPTSW)																								
SZ A SW	Original size length switch (OSLSW)																								

Maintenance item No.	Description						
U244	<p>Method for the volume switch</p> <p>1. Move the original insertion guides to check the detection status of the original size width switch. The detected original width is displayed as a numerical value with the decimals omitted.</p> <table><tr><th>Numerical value</th><th colspan="2">Original width to be detected</th></tr><tr><td>000 ⋮ 49.664 ⋮ 50.176 ⋮ 61.440 ⋮ 61.952 ⋮ 103.936 ⋮ 104.448 ⋮ 139.264 ⋮ 139.776 ⋮ 146.432 ⋮ 146.994 ⋮ 197.120 ⋮ 197.632 ⋮ 197.720 ⋮ 223.232 ⋮ 256</td><td><div>A5R</div><div>B5R</div><div>Folio/A4R</div><div>B4/B5</div><div>CF (11" × 15")</div><div>A3/A4</div></td><td><div>5½" × 8½"</div><div>8½" × 14"/ 8½" × 11"</div><div>11" × 17"/ 11" × 15"/ 11" × 8½"</div></td></tr></table> <p>For example, if any value between 105 and 139 is displayed when the original insertion guides are adjusted for A4R paper, it indicates that the original width is detected correctly.</p> <p>2. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.</p> <p>Completion</p> <p>Press the stop/clear key at the screen for selecting an item. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Numerical value	Original width to be detected		000 ⋮ 49.664 ⋮ 50.176 ⋮ 61.440 ⋮ 61.952 ⋮ 103.936 ⋮ 104.448 ⋮ 139.264 ⋮ 139.776 ⋮ 146.432 ⋮ 146.994 ⋮ 197.120 ⋮ 197.632 ⋮ 197.720 ⋮ 223.232 ⋮ 256	<div>A5R</div> <div>B5R</div> <div>Folio/A4R</div> <div>B4/B5</div> <div>CF (11" × 15")</div> <div>A3/A4</div>	<div>5½" × 8½"</div> <div>8½" × 14"/ 8½" × 11"</div> <div>11" × 17"/ 11" × 15"/ 11" × 8½"</div>
Numerical value	Original width to be detected						
000 ⋮ 49.664 ⋮ 50.176 ⋮ 61.440 ⋮ 61.952 ⋮ 103.936 ⋮ 104.448 ⋮ 139.264 ⋮ 139.776 ⋮ 146.432 ⋮ 146.994 ⋮ 197.120 ⋮ 197.632 ⋮ 197.720 ⋮ 223.232 ⋮ 256	<div>A5R</div> <div>B5R</div> <div>Folio/A4R</div> <div>B4/B5</div> <div>CF (11" × 15")</div> <div>A3/A4</div>	<div>5½" × 8½"</div> <div>8½" × 14"/ 8½" × 11"</div> <div>11" × 17"/ 11" × 15"/ 11" × 8½"</div>					

Maintenance item No.	Description																																		
U245	<p>Checking messages</p> <p>Description Displays a list of messages on the touch panel of the operation panel.</p> <p>Purpose To check the messages to be displayed.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the item to be displayed.3. Change the screen using the cursor up/down keys to display each message one at a time. When a message number is entered with the numeric keys and then the start key is pressed, the message corresponding the specified number is displayed. <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>																																		
U246	<p>Setting the finisher</p> <p>Description Adjusts various items if the machine is equipped with an optional finisher. 3000-sheet finisher: Adjusts the amount of slack in the paper in punch mode. Booklet stitcher: Adjusts the booklet stapling position for each paper size. Built-in finisher: Adjusts the side registration cursor stop position in the staple sort mode.</p> <p>Purpose Adjusts the amount of slack in the paper while in the punch section if, in punch mode, paper jams or is Z-folded frequently due to too much slack in the paper, or, the position of punch holes varies due to too little slack in the paper. Adjusts the booklet stapling position in the stitching mode if the position is not proper. To adjust when registration is not proper or staple position is shifted in the staple sort mode.</p> <p>Start</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.2. Select the item to be set and press the start key. The screen for executing each item is displayed. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>3000 FINISHER</td><td>Adjustment of the amount of slack in the paper in punch mode</td></tr><tr><td>SADDLE FINISHER</td><td>Adjustment of the booklet stapling position</td></tr><tr><td>INNER FINISHER</td><td>Side registration cursor stop position</td></tr></table> <p>Setting the amount of slack in the paper</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Change the setting using the cursor up/down keys. <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>Amount of slack in the paper</td><td>-15 to +15</td><td>0</td></tr></table> <p>If the position of punch holes varies, increase the setting to make the amount of slack larger. If paper jams or is Z-folded frequently, decrease the setting to make the amount of slack smaller.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">2. Press the start key. The value is set.3. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key. <p>Setting the booklet stapling position</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Select the size to be set. The selected item is displayed in reverse.2. Change the setting using the cursor up/down keys. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>A4R/LTR</td><td>Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A4R/LTR size</td><td>-125 to +125</td><td>0</td><td>0.25 mm</td></tr><tr><td>B4R</td><td>Adjustment of booklet stapling position for B4R size</td><td>-125 to +125</td><td>0</td><td>0.25 mm</td></tr><tr><td>A3R/LDR</td><td>Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A3R/LDR size</td><td>-125 to +125</td><td>0</td><td>0.25 mm</td></tr></table>	Display	Description	3000 FINISHER	Adjustment of the amount of slack in the paper in punch mode	SADDLE FINISHER	Adjustment of the booklet stapling position	INNER FINISHER	Side registration cursor stop position	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Amount of slack in the paper	-15 to +15	0	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	A4R/LTR	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A4R/LTR size	-125 to +125	0	0.25 mm	B4R	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for B4R size	-125 to +125	0	0.25 mm	A3R/LDR	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A3R/LDR size	-125 to +125	0	0.25 mm
Display	Description																																		
3000 FINISHER	Adjustment of the amount of slack in the paper in punch mode																																		
SADDLE FINISHER	Adjustment of the booklet stapling position																																		
INNER FINISHER	Side registration cursor stop position																																		
Description	Setting range	Initial setting																																	
Amount of slack in the paper	-15 to +15	0																																	
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																															
A4R/LTR	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A4R/LTR size	-125 to +125	0	0.25 mm																															
B4R	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for B4R size	-125 to +125	0	0.25 mm																															
A3R/LDR	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A3R/LDR size	-125 to +125	0	0.25 mm																															

Maintenance item No.	Description																												
U246	<table><tr><th>Left stapling</th><th>Right stapling</th><th>Adjustment method</th></tr><tr><td></td><td></td><td>Proper</td></tr><tr><td> Upper side is longer.</td><td> Lower side is longer.</td><td>Increase the preset value.</td></tr><tr><td> Lower side is longer.</td><td> Upper side is longer.</td><td>Decrease the preset value.</td></tr></table> <p>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p>4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.</p> <p>Setting the side registration cursor stop position</p> <p>1. Select the desired cursor position. The selected item is displayed in reverse.</p> <p>2. Change the setting using the cursor up/down keys.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>FRONT</td><td>Front side registration cursor stop position</td><td>-4 to +4</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>REAR</td><td>Rear side registration cursor stop position</td><td>-4 to +4</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>END</td><td>Trailing edge registration cursor stop position</td><td>-4 to +4</td><td>0</td></tr></table> <p>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p>4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.</p> <p>Completion</p> <p>Press the stop/clear key at the screen for selecting an item. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p>	Left stapling	Right stapling	Adjustment method			Proper	 Upper side is longer.	 Lower side is longer.	Increase the preset value.	 Lower side is longer.	 Upper side is longer.	Decrease the preset value.	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	FRONT	Front side registration cursor stop position	-4 to +4	0	REAR	Rear side registration cursor stop position	-4 to +4	0	END	Trailing edge registration cursor stop position	-4 to +4	0
Left stapling	Right stapling	Adjustment method																											
		Proper																											
 Upper side is longer.	 Lower side is longer.	Increase the preset value.																											
 Lower side is longer.	 Upper side is longer.	Decrease the preset value.																											
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																										
FRONT	Front side registration cursor stop position	-4 to +4	0																										
REAR	Rear side registration cursor stop position	-4 to +4	0																										
END	Trailing edge registration cursor stop position	-4 to +4	0																										

Maintenance item No.	Description																																		
U247	<p>Checking the operation of large paper deck and paper feeder</p> <p>Description Turns on motors and clutches of optional large paper deck or paper feeder.</p> <p>Purpose To check the operation of motors and clutches of paper feed device.</p> <p>Start</p> <p>1. Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <p>2. Select the device to be checked.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Paper feed device</th></tr><tr><td>3000 DECK 500 × 2 DECK</td><td>Large paper deck Paper feeder</td></tr></table> <p>Method</p> <p>1. Select the item to be operated. The selected item is displayed in reverse and operation starts.</p> <p>Large paper deck</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Motors and clutches</th><th>Operation</th></tr><tr><td>LCF MOT</td><td>Conveying motor (CM)</td><td>On for 5 s</td></tr><tr><td>B CL</td><td>Conveying clutch (CCL)</td><td>On for 1 s</td></tr><tr><td>PCL1</td><td>Paper feed clutch 1(PFCL1)</td><td>On for 1 s</td></tr><tr><td>PCL2</td><td>Paper feed clutch 2(PFCL2)</td><td>On for 1 s</td></tr></table> <p>Paper feeder</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Motors and clutches</th><th>Operation</th></tr><tr><td>DESK MOT</td><td>Desk Drive motor (DDM)</td><td>On for 5 s</td></tr><tr><td>FEED CL</td><td>Desk feed clutch (DFCL)</td><td>On for 1 s</td></tr><tr><td>UPP CL</td><td>Desk upper paper feed clutch (DPFCL-U)</td><td>On for 1 s</td></tr><tr><td>LOW CL</td><td>Desk lower paper feed clutch (DPFCL-L)</td><td>On for 1 s</td></tr></table> <p>2. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key at the screen for selecting an item. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p>	Display	Paper feed device	3000 DECK 500 × 2 DECK	Large paper deck Paper feeder	Display	Motors and clutches	Operation	LCF MOT	Conveying motor (CM)	On for 5 s	B CL	Conveying clutch (CCL)	On for 1 s	PCL1	Paper feed clutch 1(PFCL1)	On for 1 s	PCL2	Paper feed clutch 2(PFCL2)	On for 1 s	Display	Motors and clutches	Operation	DESK MOT	Desk Drive motor (DDM)	On for 5 s	FEED CL	Desk feed clutch (DFCL)	On for 1 s	UPP CL	Desk upper paper feed clutch (DPFCL-U)	On for 1 s	LOW CL	Desk lower paper feed clutch (DPFCL-L)	On for 1 s
Display	Paper feed device																																		
3000 DECK 500 × 2 DECK	Large paper deck Paper feeder																																		
Display	Motors and clutches	Operation																																	
LCF MOT	Conveying motor (CM)	On for 5 s																																	
B CL	Conveying clutch (CCL)	On for 1 s																																	
PCL1	Paper feed clutch 1(PFCL1)	On for 1 s																																	
PCL2	Paper feed clutch 2(PFCL2)	On for 1 s																																	
Display	Motors and clutches	Operation																																	
DESK MOT	Desk Drive motor (DDM)	On for 5 s																																	
FEED CL	Desk feed clutch (DFCL)	On for 1 s																																	
UPP CL	Desk upper paper feed clutch (DPFCL-U)	On for 1 s																																	
LOW CL	Desk lower paper feed clutch (DPFCL-L)	On for 1 s																																	

Maintenance item No.	Description								
U249	<p>Checking the paper ejection to optional devices</p> <p>Description Ejects paper to an optional mailbox or job separator, or to the ejection slot at the machine left.</p> <p>Purpose To check paper conveying operation to optional paper eject devices or the ejection slot at the machine left.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.2. Select the paper eject location. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Paper eject device</th></tr><tr><td>MAIL</td><td>Mailbox</td></tr><tr><td>JOB SEPARATOR</td><td>Job separator</td></tr><tr><td>LEFT BIN OUTPUT</td><td>Ejection slot at the machine left (finisher not installed)</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. When selecting the mailbox, specify the mail tray number (1 to 7) to which paper is to be ejected by using the cursor up/down keys. If 0 is selected, paper is ejected to the mail trays in ascending order from mail tray 1 to mail tray 7 repeatedly. <p>Interrupt copy mode While this maintenance item is being performed, copying from an original can be made in interrupt copy mode.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Paper eject device	MAIL	Mailbox	JOB SEPARATOR	Job separator	LEFT BIN OUTPUT	Ejection slot at the machine left (finisher not installed)
Display	Paper eject device								
MAIL	Mailbox								
JOB SEPARATOR	Job separator								
LEFT BIN OUTPUT	Ejection slot at the machine left (finisher not installed)								
U250	<p>Setting the maintenance cycle</p> <p>Description Displays and changes the maintenance cycle.</p> <p>Purpose To check and change the maintenance cycle.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The current setting is displayed as follows:</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Change the setting using the numeric keys. <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>Maintenance cycle</td><td>0 to 9999999</td><td>400000 (30 cpm), 500000 (40/50 cpm)</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">2. Press the start key. The value is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed. <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the current setting, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Maintenance cycle	0 to 9999999	400000 (30 cpm), 500000 (40/50 cpm)		
Description	Setting range	Initial setting							
Maintenance cycle	0 to 9999999	400000 (30 cpm), 500000 (40/50 cpm)							

Maintenance item No.	Description																									
U251	<p>Checking/clearing the maintenance count</p> <p>Description Displays, clears and changes the maintenance count.</p> <p>Purpose To check the maintenance count. Also to clear the count during maintenance service.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The maintenance count is displayed.</p> <p>Clearing 1. Press the reset key. 2. Press the start key. The count is cleared, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p> <p>Setting 1. Enter a seven-digit count using the numeric keys. 2. Press the start key. The count is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p> <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the count, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>																									
U252	<p>Setting the destination</p> <p>Description Switches the operations and screens of the machine according to the destination.</p> <p>Purpose To be executed after replacing the backup RAM on the main PCB or initializing the backup RAM by running maintenance item U020, in order to return the setting to the value before replacement or initialization.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <p>Setting 1. Select the destination. The selected item is displayed in reverse.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>JAPAN METRIC</td><td>Metric (Japan) specifications</td></tr><tr><td>INCH</td><td>Inch (North America) specifications</td></tr><tr><td>EUROPE METRIC</td><td>Metric (Europe) specifications</td></tr><tr><td>ASIA PACIFIC</td><td>Metric (Asia Pacific) specifications</td></tr></table> <p>2. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the machine automatically returns to the same status as when the power is turned on.</p> <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the current count, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p> <p>Supplement The specified initial settings are provided according to the destinations in the maintenance items below. To change the initial settings in those items, be sure to run maintenance item U021 after changing the destination.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Initial setting according to the destinations <table><tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Title</th><th>Japan</th><th>Inch</th><th>Europe Metric, Asia Pacific</th></tr><tr><td>253</td><td>Switching between double and single counts</td><td>Single</td><td>Double</td><td>Double</td></tr><tr><td>255</td><td>Setting auto clear time</td><td>120 s</td><td>90 s</td><td>90 s</td></tr></table>	Display	Description	JAPAN METRIC	Metric (Japan) specifications	INCH	Inch (North America) specifications	EUROPE METRIC	Metric (Europe) specifications	ASIA PACIFIC	Metric (Asia Pacific) specifications	Maintenance item No.	Title	Japan	Inch	Europe Metric, Asia Pacific	253	Switching between double and single counts	Single	Double	Double	255	Setting auto clear time	120 s	90 s	90 s
Display	Description																									
JAPAN METRIC	Metric (Japan) specifications																									
INCH	Inch (North America) specifications																									
EUROPE METRIC	Metric (Europe) specifications																									
ASIA PACIFIC	Metric (Asia Pacific) specifications																									
Maintenance item No.	Title	Japan	Inch	Europe Metric, Asia Pacific																						
253	Switching between double and single counts	Single	Double	Double																						
255	Setting auto clear time	120 s	90 s	90 s																						

Maintenance item No.	Description								
U253	<p>Switching between double and single counts</p> <p>Description Switches the count system for the total counter and other counters.</p> <p>Purpose According to user (copy service provider) request, select if A3/11" × 17" paper is to be counted as one sheet (single count) or two sheets (double count).</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <p>Setting 1. Select double or single count. The selected item is displayed in reverse.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>SINGLE COUNT</td><td>Single count for all size paper</td></tr> <tr> <td>DOUBLE COUNT (A3/LEDGER)</td><td>Double count for A3/11" × 17" paper only</td></tr> <tr> <td>DOUBLE COUNT (B4)</td><td>Double count for B4 size or larger</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: DOUBLE COUNT</p> <p>2. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p> <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the current setting, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	SINGLE COUNT	Single count for all size paper	DOUBLE COUNT (A3/LEDGER)	Double count for A3/11" × 17" paper only	DOUBLE COUNT (B4)	Double count for B4 size or larger
Display	Description								
SINGLE COUNT	Single count for all size paper								
DOUBLE COUNT (A3/LEDGER)	Double count for A3/11" × 17" paper only								
DOUBLE COUNT (B4)	Double count for B4 size or larger								
U254	<p>Turning auto start function on/off</p> <p>Description Selects if the auto start function is turned on.</p> <p>Purpose Normally no change is necessary. If incorrect operation occurs, turn the function off: this may solve the problem.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <p>Setting 1. Select either ON or OFF. The selected item is displayed in reverse.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td><td>Auto start function on</td></tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td><td>Auto start function off</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: ON</p> <p>2. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p> <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the current setting, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ON	Auto start function on	OFF	Auto start function off		
Display	Description								
ON	Auto start function on								
OFF	Auto start function off								

Maintenance item No.	Description												
U255	<p>Setting auto clear time</p> <p>Description Sets the time to return to initial settings after copying is complete.</p> <p>Purpose To be set according to frequency of use. Set to a comparatively long time for continuous copying at the same settings, and a comparatively short time for frequent copying at various settings.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The current setting is displayed.</p> <p>Setting 1. Change the setting using the cursor up/down keys.</p> <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>Auto clear time</td><td>0 to 270</td><td>90</td></tr></table> <p>The setting can be changed by 30 s per step. When set to 0, the auto clear function is cancelled.</p> <p>2. Press the start key. The value is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p> <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the current setting, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Auto clear time	0 to 270	90						
Description	Setting range	Initial setting											
Auto clear time	0 to 270	90											
U258	<p>Switching copy operation at toner empty detection</p> <p>Description Selects if continuous copying is enabled after toner empty is detected, and sets the number of copies that can be made after the detection.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The current setting is displayed.</p> <p>Setting 1. Select single or continuous copying. The selected item is displayed in reverse.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>SINGLE</td><td>Enables only single copying.</td></tr><tr><td>CONTINUE</td><td>Enables single and continuous copying.</td></tr></table> <p>Initial setting: SINGLE</p> <p>2. Set the number of copies that can be made using the cursor up/down keys.</p> <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>Number of copies after toner empty detection</td><td>0 to 200 (copies)</td><td>70</td></tr></table> <p>The setting can be changed by 5 copies per step. When set to 0, the number of copies is not limited regardless of the setting for single or continuous copying.</p> <p>3. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p> <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the current setting, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	SINGLE	Enables only single copying.	CONTINUE	Enables single and continuous copying.	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Number of copies after toner empty detection	0 to 200 (copies)	70
Display	Description												
SINGLE	Enables only single copying.												
CONTINUE	Enables single and continuous copying.												
Description	Setting range	Initial setting											
Number of copies after toner empty detection	0 to 200 (copies)	70											

Maintenance item No.	Description								
U260	<p>Changing the copy count timing</p> <p>Description Changes the copy count timing for the total counter and other counters.</p> <p>Purpose To be set according to user (copy service provider) request. If a paper jam occurs frequently in the finisher when the number of copies is counted at the time of paper ejection, copies are provided without copy counts. The copy service provider cannot charge for such copying. To prevent this, the copy timing should be made earlier. If a paper jam occurs frequently in the paper conveying or fixing sections when the number of copies is counted before the paper reaches those sections, copying is charged without a copy being made. To prevent this, the copy timing should be made later.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <p>Setting 1. Select the copy count timing . The selected item is displayed in reverse.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>FEED</td><td>When secondary paper feed starts</td></tr> <tr> <td>EJECT</td><td>When the paper is ejected</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: EJECT</p> <p>2. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p> <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the current setting, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	FEED	When secondary paper feed starts	EJECT	When the paper is ejected		
Display	Description								
FEED	When secondary paper feed starts								
EJECT	When the paper is ejected								
U264	<p>Setting the display order of the date</p> <p>Description Selects year, month and day as the order of that appears on lists, etc.</p> <p>Purpose Set according to the user preference.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <p>Setting 1. Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed. 2. Select the desired order.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Setting</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>YEAR-MONTH-DATE</td><td>Year/Month/Day</td></tr> <tr> <td>MONTH-DATE-YEAR</td><td>Month/Day/Year</td></tr> <tr> <td>DATE-MONTH-YEAR</td><td>Day/Month/Year</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: "MONTH-DATE-YEAR" (for the inch specifications) "DATE-MONTH-YEAR" (for the metric specifications)</p> <p>3. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p> <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the current setting, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Setting	YEAR-MONTH-DATE	Year/Month/Day	MONTH-DATE-YEAR	Month/Day/Year	DATE-MONTH-YEAR	Day/Month/Year
Display	Setting								
YEAR-MONTH-DATE	Year/Month/Day								
MONTH-DATE-YEAR	Month/Day/Year								
DATE-MONTH-YEAR	Day/Month/Year								

Maintenance item No.	Description														
U265	<p>Setting OEM purchaser code</p> <p>Description Sets the OEM purchaser code.</p> <p>Purpose Sets the code when replacing the main PCB and the like.</p> <p>Method Press the start key.</p> <p>Setting 1. Use the numeric keys or cursor up/down keys to adjust the preset value. 2. Press the start key. The count is set , and the screen for selecting a maintenance item is displayed.</p> <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the current setting, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item is displayed.</p>														
U266	<p>Setting the number of days after which to automatically delete documents</p> <p>Description Sets the number of days to save documents on the HDD before automatically deleting.</p> <p>Purpose To change the number of days to retain data that is saved within the auto-delete area of the HDD before automatically deleting.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The current setting is displayed.</p> <p>Setting 1. Change the setting using the cursor up/down keys.</p> <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>Number of days after which to automatically delete documents</td><td>0 to 7 (days)</td><td>7</td></tr></table> <p>2. Press the start key. The value is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p> <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the current setting, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>			Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Number of days after which to automatically delete documents	0 to 7 (days)	7						
Description	Setting range	Initial setting													
Number of days after which to automatically delete documents	0 to 7 (days)	7													
U274	<p>Setting the laser scanner unit type</p> <p>Description Sets the type of the laser scanner unit according to the label stuck on the laser scanner unit. Moreover, changes output power of the laser scanner unit.</p> <p>Purpose To set the type when the laser scanner unit control is changed. Also if reproducibility of half tone is not proper, this mode is used to increase the output power of the laser scanner unit to increase the density.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <p>Setting 1. Select the item to be set. The selected item is displayed in reverse. 2. Change the setting using the cursor up/down keys.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>ADJUST DATA</td><td>Type of the laser scanner unit</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>2</td></tr><tr><td>LASER POWER</td><td>Laser scanner unit output power</td><td>0 to 1</td><td>0 (30 cpm) 1 (40/50 cpm)</td></tr></table> <p>The setting of LASER POWER is changed into 1 from 0, the output power of LSU is go up and half-tone is come to come out darkly.</p> <p>3.Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p> <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the current setting, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item is displayed.</p>			Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	ADJUST DATA	Type of the laser scanner unit	0 to 3	2	LASER POWER	Laser scanner unit output power	0 to 1	0 (30 cpm) 1 (40/50 cpm)
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting												
ADJUST DATA	Type of the laser scanner unit	0 to 3	2												
LASER POWER	Laser scanner unit output power	0 to 1	0 (30 cpm) 1 (40/50 cpm)												

Maintenance item No.	Description						
U277	<p>Setting auto application change time</p> <p>Description Sets the time that passes until the machine starts automatically printing after completing copying or operation when the machine is used as a printer or fax (only if the printer kit or fax kit is installed).</p> <p>Purpose According to user request, changes the setting.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The current setting is displayed.</p> <p>Setting 1. Change the setting using the cursor up/down keys.</p> <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>Switching time</td><td>30 to 270 (s)</td><td>30</td></tr></table> <p>The setting can be changed by 30 s per step.</p> <p>2. Press the start key. The value is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p> <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the current setting, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p>	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Switching time	30 to 270 (s)	30
Description	Setting range	Initial setting					
Switching time	30 to 270 (s)	30					
U280	<p>Setting the individual border erase mode indication</p> <p>Description Sets whether to display the individual border erase mode on the copy default screen.</p> <p>Purpose According to user request, changes the setting.</p> <p>Method 1. Press the start key. 2. Press INDIVIDUAL BORDER ERASE. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <p>Setting 1. Select ON or OFF. The selected item is displayed in reverse.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>PAGE SETTING ON</td><td>Displays the individual border erase mode</td></tr><tr><td>PAGE SETTING OFF</td><td>Not to display the individual border erase mode</td></tr></table> <p>Initial setting: OFF</p> <p>2. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p> <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the current setting, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	PAGE SETTING ON	Displays the individual border erase mode	PAGE SETTING OFF	Not to display the individual border erase mode
Display	Description						
PAGE SETTING ON	Displays the individual border erase mode						
PAGE SETTING OFF	Not to display the individual border erase mode						
U326	<p>Setting the black line cleaning indication</p> <p>Description Sets whether to display the cleaning guidance when detecting the black line.</p> <p>Purpose Displays the cleaning guidance in order to make the call for service with the black line decrease by the rubbish on the contact glass when scanning from the optional DP</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <p>Setting 1. Select ON or OFF.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>ON</td><td>Displays the cleaning guidance</td></tr><tr><td>OFF</td><td>Not to display the cleaning guidance</td></tr></table> <p>Initial setting: ON</p> <p>2. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p> <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the current setting, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ON	Displays the cleaning guidance	OFF	Not to display the cleaning guidance
Display	Description						
ON	Displays the cleaning guidance						
OFF	Not to display the cleaning guidance						

Maintenance item No.	Description								
U328	<p>Side ejection setting</p> <p>Description Sets whether to eject to the side of the machine when an optional cut eliminator is installed.</p> <p>Purpose Set according to the preference of the user.</p> <p>Method 1. Select ON or OFF.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> <tr> <td>ON</td><td>To eject to the side of the machine</td></tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td><td>Not to eject to the side of the machine</td></tr> </table> <p>2. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p> <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the current setting, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ON	To eject to the side of the machine	OFF	Not to eject to the side of the machine		
Display	Description								
ON	To eject to the side of the machine								
OFF	Not to eject to the side of the machine								
U330	<p>Setting the number of sheets to enter stacking mode during sort operation</p> <p>Description When sort copying is set to perform automatically in the output form setting of the user simulation, sets the number of sheets at which the eject location is switched to the optional finisher (only when the finisher is installed).</p> <p>Purpose To be set as required according to the number of copies the user makes.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The current setting is displayed.</p> <p>Setting 1. Set the number of sheets (0 to 250) using the numeric keys or cursor up/down keys. 2. Press the start key. The setting is set. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p> <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the current setting, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>								
U331	<p>Setting the paper ejection</p> <p>Description Sets whether the copies will be ejected in the same or opposite order as the originals.</p> <p>Purpose Set according to the preference of the user.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <p>Setting 1. Select the ejection order.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Setting</th></tr> <tr> <td>FACE-DOWN (NOMAL)</td><td>Face down ejection</td></tr> <tr> <td>FACE-UP (SPEED)</td><td>Face up ejection with bitmap copy</td></tr> <tr> <td>FACE-UP (MEMORY)</td><td>Face up ejection with memory copy</td></tr> </table> <p>Initial setting: FACE-DOWN</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To the auxiliary tray of the 3000-sheet finisher • To the booklet stitcher • To the 1000-sheet finisher <p>2. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p> <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the current setting, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item is displayed.</p>	Display	Setting	FACE-DOWN (NOMAL)	Face down ejection	FACE-UP (SPEED)	Face up ejection with bitmap copy	FACE-UP (MEMORY)	Face up ejection with memory copy
Display	Setting								
FACE-DOWN (NOMAL)	Face down ejection								
FACE-UP (SPEED)	Face up ejection with bitmap copy								
FACE-UP (MEMORY)	Face up ejection with memory copy								

Maintenance item No.	Description																
U332	<p>Setting the size conversion factor</p> <p>Description Sets the coefficient of nonstandard sizes in relation to the A4/11" × 8¹/₂" size. The coefficient set here is used to convert the black ratio in relation to the A4/11" × 8¹/₂" size and to display the result in user simulation.</p> <p>Purpose To set the coefficient for converting the black ratio for nonstandard sizes in relation to the A4/11" × 8¹/₂" size for copy mode, printer mode and fax mode respectively.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Select copier mode (COPY), printer mode (PRT) or fax mode (FAX).2. Change the setting using the cursor up/down keys. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>COPY</td><td>Size parameter for copier mode</td><td>0.1 to 3.0</td><td>1.0</td></tr><tr><td>PRT</td><td>Size parameter for printer mode</td><td>0.1 to 3.0</td><td>1.0</td></tr><tr><td>FAX</td><td>Size parameter for fax mode</td><td>0.1 to 3.0</td><td>1.0</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed. <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the current setting, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	COPY	Size parameter for copier mode	0.1 to 3.0	1.0	PRT	Size parameter for printer mode	0.1 to 3.0	1.0	FAX	Size parameter for fax mode	0.1 to 3.0	1.0
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting														
COPY	Size parameter for copier mode	0.1 to 3.0	1.0														
PRT	Size parameter for printer mode	0.1 to 3.0	1.0														
FAX	Size parameter for fax mode	0.1 to 3.0	1.0														
U341	<p>Specific paper feed location setting for printing function</p> <p>Description Sets a paper feed location specified for printer output (only if a printer kit is installed).</p> <p>Purpose To use a paper feed location only for printer output.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.2. Select the paper feed location for the printer. The selected item is displayed in reverse. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>FIRST</td><td>Upper drawer</td></tr><tr><td>SECOND</td><td>Lower drawer</td></tr><tr><td>THIRD</td><td>Optional upper drawer</td></tr><tr><td>FOURTH</td><td>Optional lower drawer</td></tr><tr><td>LCF</td><td>Optional large paper deck</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the start key. The setting is set. <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	FIRST	Upper drawer	SECOND	Lower drawer	THIRD	Optional upper drawer	FOURTH	Optional lower drawer	LCF	Optional large paper deck				
Display	Description																
FIRST	Upper drawer																
SECOND	Lower drawer																
THIRD	Optional upper drawer																
FOURTH	Optional lower drawer																
LCF	Optional large paper deck																

Maintenance item No.	Description														
U342	<p>Setting the ejection restriction</p> <p>Description Sets or cancels the restriction on the number of sheets to be ejected continuously when the internal eject tray is selected as the eject location.</p> <p>Purpose According to user request, sets or cancels restriction on the number of sheets.</p> <p>Method 1. Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed. 2. Select ON or OFF.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> <tr> <td>ON</td><td>Sets restriction on the number of sheets</td></tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td><td>Cancels restriction on the number of sheets</td></tr> </table> <p>Details of restriction (number of sheets to be ejected continuously after the start key is pressed)</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <th>Condition</th><th>Number of sheets</th></tr> <tr> <td>When no optional ejection device is installed</td><td>250</td></tr> <tr> <td>When the job separator or duplex unit is installed</td><td>150</td></tr> <tr> <td>When the finisher is installed</td><td>100</td></tr> </table> <p>3. Press the start key. The setting is set.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ON	Sets restriction on the number of sheets	OFF	Cancels restriction on the number of sheets	Condition	Number of sheets	When no optional ejection device is installed	250	When the job separator or duplex unit is installed	150	When the finisher is installed	100
Display	Description														
ON	Sets restriction on the number of sheets														
OFF	Cancels restriction on the number of sheets														
Condition	Number of sheets														
When no optional ejection device is installed	250														
When the job separator or duplex unit is installed	150														
When the finisher is installed	100														
U343	<p>Switching between duplex/simplex copy mode</p> <p>Description Switches the initial setting between duplex and simplex copy.</p> <p>Purpose To be set according to frequency of use: set to the more frequently used mode.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <p>Setting 1. Select ON or OFF. The selected item is displayed in reverse.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> <tr> <td>ON</td><td>Duplex copy</td></tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td><td>Simplex copy</td></tr> </table> <p>Initial setting: OFF</p> <p>2. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p> <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the current setting, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ON	Duplex copy	OFF	Simplex copy								
Display	Description														
ON	Duplex copy														
OFF	Simplex copy														

Maintenance item No.	Description						
U344	<p>Setting preheat/energy saver mode</p> <p>Description Changes the control for preheat/energy saver mode.</p> <p>Purpose According to user request, selects which has priority, the recovery time from preheat or energy saver.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <p>Setting 1. Select control mode. The selected item is displayed in reverse.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Control in preheat mode</th></tr> <tr> <td>ENERGY STAR</td><td>The fixing control temperature is lowered by 20°C/68°F and forced stabilization is performed 30 seconds after exiting preheat.</td></tr> <tr> <td>GEEA</td><td>The fixing control temperature is lowered by 15°C/59°F and forced stabilization is performed 30 seconds after exiting preheat.</td></tr> </table> <p>Initial setting: ENERGY STAR</p> <p>2. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p> <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the current setting, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Control in preheat mode	ENERGY STAR	The fixing control temperature is lowered by 20°C/68°F and forced stabilization is performed 30 seconds after exiting preheat.	GEEA	The fixing control temperature is lowered by 15°C/59°F and forced stabilization is performed 30 seconds after exiting preheat.
Display	Control in preheat mode						
ENERGY STAR	The fixing control temperature is lowered by 20°C/68°F and forced stabilization is performed 30 seconds after exiting preheat.						
GEEA	The fixing control temperature is lowered by 15°C/59°F and forced stabilization is performed 30 seconds after exiting preheat.						
U345	<p>Setting the value for maintenance due indication</p> <p>Description Sets when to display a message notifying that the time for maintenance is about to be reached, by setting the number of copies that can be made before the current maintenance cycle ends. When the difference between the number of copies of the maintenance cycle and that of the maintenance count reaches the set value, the message is displayed. This maintenance mode is effective for only Japanese specification.</p>						
U346	<p>Setting the sleep mode operation</p> <p>Description If the machine is equipped with the facsimile feature, this mode sets whether or not the machine performs finisher initialization when the machine receives a facsimile with the main switch off.</p> <p>Purpose To disable finisher initialization, change the setting value to MODE1. If MODE1 is selected, however, even if the main switch is turned off, control in the sleep mode will be performed and the power supply PCB will not be turned off, resulting in increase of power consumption.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <p>Setting 1. Select MODE0 or MODE1. The selected item is displayed in reverse.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> <tr> <td>MODE0</td><td>To enable finisher initialization</td></tr> <tr> <td>MODE1</td><td>To disable finisher initialization</td></tr> </table> <p>Initial setting: MODE0</p> <p>2. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p> <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the current setting, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	MODE0	To enable finisher initialization	MODE1	To disable finisher initialization
Display	Description						
MODE0	To enable finisher initialization						
MODE1	To disable finisher initialization						
U402	<p>Adjusting margins of image printing</p> <p>Adjustment See page 1-6-13.</p>						
U403	<p>Adjusting margins for scanning an original on the contact glass</p> <p>Adjustment See page 1-6-31.</p>						

Maintenance item No.	Description																									
U404	<p>Adjusting margins for scanning an original from the DP</p> <p>Description Adjusts margins for scanning the original from the DP.</p> <p>Purpose Used if margins are not correct when the optional DP is used.</p> <p>Caution Before making this adjustment, ensure that the following adjustments have been made in maintenance mode.</p> <p>U402 → U403 → U404</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Select the item to be set. The selected item is displayed in reverse.2. Change the setting using the cursor up/down keys. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>A MARGIN</td><td>Left margin</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>3.0</td><td>0.1 mm</td></tr><tr><td>B MARGIN</td><td>Leading edge margin</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>2.5</td><td>0.1 mm</td></tr><tr><td>C MARGIN</td><td>Right margin</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>3.0</td><td>0.1 mm</td></tr><tr><td>D MARGIN</td><td>Trailing edge margin</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>4.0</td><td>0.1 mm</td></tr></table> <p>Increasing the setting makes the margin wider, and decreasing it makes the margin narrower.</p> <div><div>Ejection direction (reference)</div><div><div>DP leading edge margin (3 ± 1.5 mm)</div><div>DP left margin (2 ± 1.0 mm)</div><div>DP right margin (2 ± 1.0 mm)</div><div>DP trailing edge margin (2 ± 1.0 mm)</div></div></div> <p>Figure 1-4-7 Correct margin amount</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Interrupt copy mode While this maintenance item is being performed, copying from an original can be made in interrupt copy mode.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key at the screen for selecting an item. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	A MARGIN	Left margin	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.1 mm	B MARGIN	Leading edge margin	0 to 10.0	2.5	0.1 mm	C MARGIN	Right margin	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.1 mm	D MARGIN	Trailing edge margin	0 to 10.0	4.0	0.1 mm
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																						
A MARGIN	Left margin	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.1 mm																						
B MARGIN	Leading edge margin	0 to 10.0	2.5	0.1 mm																						
C MARGIN	Right margin	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.1 mm																						
D MARGIN	Trailing edge margin	0 to 10.0	4.0	0.1 mm																						
U407	<p>Adjusting the leading edge registration for memory image printing</p> <p>Adjustment See page 1-6-11.</p>																									

Maintenance item No.	Description						
U504	<p>Initializing the scanner NIC</p> <p>Description Initializing the optional scanner NIC to its factory default.</p> <p>Purpose To return to a setup at the time of factory shipments.</p> <p>Method 1. Press the start key. The screen for executing is displayed. 2. Press EXECUTE on the touch panel. It is displayed in reverse. 3. Press the start key. All data in the scanner NIC is initialized.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>						
U505	<p>Setting Data Base Assistant</p> <p>Description Sets whether or not the database linkage setting is enabled if an optional network scanner is installed.</p> <p>Purpose According to user request, changes the setting.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <p>Setting 1. Select ON or OFF. The selected item is displayed in reverse.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>ON</td><td>Database linkage setting is enabled.</td></tr><tr><td>OFF</td><td>Database linkage setting is disabled.</td></tr></table> <p>Initial setting: ON</p> <p>2. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p> <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the current setting, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ON	Database linkage setting is enabled.	OFF	Database linkage setting is disabled.
Display	Description						
ON	Database linkage setting is enabled.						
OFF	Database linkage setting is disabled.						
U506	<p>Setting the time out</p> <p>Description Sets the communication timeout time for connection to a computer.</p> <p>Purpose To change the preset value if a communication error occurs after connection to a computer continues for a long time. By delaying the error detection timing, the error may be cleared. If the error is not cleared after the preset value is changed, however, return the preset value to the initial value.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <p>Setting 1. Select ON or OFF. The selected item is displayed in reverse.</p> <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>timeout time</td><td>10 to 120 (s)</td><td>10</td></tr></table> <p>The setting can be changed by 10 s per step.</p> <p>2. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p> <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the current setting, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	timeout time	10 to 120 (s)	10
Description	Setting range	Initial setting					
timeout time	10 to 120 (s)	10					

Maintenance item No.	Description						
U508	<p>Setting the LDAP</p> <p>Description Enables or disables an LDAP server.</p> <p>Purpose To change the setting to ON when use of an LDAP server is requested.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <p>Setting 1. Select ON or OFF. The selected item is displayed in reverse.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td><td>LDAP server is enabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td><td>LDAP server is disabled.</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: OFF</p> <p>2. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p> <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the current setting, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ON	LDAP server is enabled.	OFF	LDAP server is disabled.
Display	Description						
ON	LDAP server is enabled.						
OFF	LDAP server is disabled.						
U510	<p>Setting the enterprise mode</p> <p>Description Sets whether or not the enterprise mode setting is enabled if an optional network scanner is installed. This maintenance mode is effective for only 120 V specifications.</p> <p>Purpose According to user request, changes the setting.</p> <p>Supplement It is not possible to turn setting simultaneously with U511 (Setting scanTo FTP) to ON.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <p>Setting 1. Select ON or OFF. The selected item is displayed in reverse.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td><td>Enterprise mode setting is enabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td><td>Enterprise mode setting is disabled.</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: OFF</p> <p>2. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p> <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the current setting, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ON	Enterprise mode setting is enabled.	OFF	Enterprise mode setting is disabled.
Display	Description						
ON	Enterprise mode setting is enabled.						
OFF	Enterprise mode setting is disabled.						

Maintenance item No.	Description						
U511	<p>Setting scan To FTP</p> <p>Description Sets whether or not scan to FTP setting is enabled if an optional network scanner is installed. This maintenance mode is effective for only 120 V specifications.</p> <p>Purpose According to user request, changes the setting.</p> <p>Supplement It is not possible to turn setting simultaneously with U510 (Setting the enterprise mode) to ON.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <p>Setting 1. Select ON or OFF. The selected item is displayed in reverse.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> <tr> <td>ON</td><td>Scan to FTP setting is enabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td><td>Scan to FTP setting is disabled.</td></tr> </table> <p>Initial setting: OFF</p> <p>2. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p> <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the current setting, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ON	Scan to FTP setting is enabled.	OFF	Scan to FTP setting is disabled.
Display	Description						
ON	Scan to FTP setting is enabled.						
OFF	Scan to FTP setting is disabled.						

Maintenance item No.	Description																
U901	<p>Checking/clearing copy counts by paper feed locations</p> <p>Description Displays or clears copy counts by paper feed locations.</p> <p>Purpose To check the time to replace consumable parts. Also to clear the counts after replacing the consumable parts.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. The counts by paper feed locations are displayed. 2. Change the screen using the cursor up/down keys. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Paper feed locations</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>BYPASS</td><td>Bypass tray</td></tr> <tr> <td>FIRST</td><td>Upper drawer</td></tr> <tr> <td>SECOND</td><td>Lower drawer</td></tr> <tr> <td>THIRD</td><td>Optional drawer 1</td></tr> <tr> <td>FORTH</td><td>Optional drawer 2</td></tr> <tr> <td>LCF</td><td>Optional large paper deck</td></tr> <tr> <td>DUPLEX</td><td>Duplex section</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>When an optional paper feed device is not installed, the corresponding count is not displayed.</p> <p>Clearing</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select the count to be cleared. The selected item is displayed in reverse. To clear the counts for all paper feed locations, press the reset key. 2. Press the start key. The count is cleared, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed. <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the current setting, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Paper feed locations	BYPASS	Bypass tray	FIRST	Upper drawer	SECOND	Lower drawer	THIRD	Optional drawer 1	FORTH	Optional drawer 2	LCF	Optional large paper deck	DUPLEX	Duplex section
Display	Paper feed locations																
BYPASS	Bypass tray																
FIRST	Upper drawer																
SECOND	Lower drawer																
THIRD	Optional drawer 1																
FORTH	Optional drawer 2																
LCF	Optional large paper deck																
DUPLEX	Duplex section																

Maintenance item No.	Description												
U902	<p>Checking/clearing finisher punch count</p> <p>Description Sets the punch limit and displays and clears the punch-hole scrap count when the optional 3000-sheet finisher is attached.</p> <p>Purpose Sets the punch limit to notify the user of the time to collect punch-hole scrap. Also, used to manually clear the punch-hole scrap count if a message requiring collection of punch-hole scrap is shown on the touch panel after collection. If punch-hole scrap is collected with the copier power turned off, the punch-hole scrap count is not cleared and consequently this problem occurs.</p> <p>Start 1. Press the start key. The screen for selecting in item is displayed. 2. Select the item. The selecting an item is displayed in reverse.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>PUNCH LIMIT</td><td>Punch limit (maximum number of punching times)</td><td>0 to 999000</td><td>75000</td></tr><tr><td>PUNCH COUNT</td><td>Punch-hole scrap count (current number of punching times)</td><td>0 to 999999</td><td>0</td></tr></table> <p>Setting the punch limit 1. Change the setting using the numeric keys. 2. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p>Clearing 1. Press the reset key. 2. Press the start key. The count is cleared, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p> <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the current setting, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	PUNCH LIMIT	Punch limit (maximum number of punching times)	0 to 999000	75000	PUNCH COUNT	Punch-hole scrap count (current number of punching times)	0 to 999999	0
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting										
PUNCH LIMIT	Punch limit (maximum number of punching times)	0 to 999000	75000										
PUNCH COUNT	Punch-hole scrap count (current number of punching times)	0 to 999999	0										
U903	<p>Checking/clearing the paper jam counts</p> <p>Description Displays or clears the jam counts by jam locations.</p> <p>Purpose To check the paper jam status. Also to clear the jam counts after replacing consumable parts.</p> <p>Implementation Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>COUNT</td><td>Displays/clears the jam counts</td></tr><tr><td>TOTAL COUNT</td><td>Displays the total jam counts</td></tr></table> <p>Method: Displays/clears the jam counts 1. Select COUNT in the screen for selecting an item. The count for jam detection by type is displayed. 2. Change the screen using the * or # keys. 3. Select the counts for all jam codes and press the reset key. 4. Press the start key. The count is cleared.</p> <p>Method: Displays the total jam counts 1. Select TOTAL COUNT in the screen for selecting an item. The total number of jam counts by type is displayed. 2. Use the * or # keys to switch the display. The total number of jam count cannot be cleared. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop clear key.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key at the screen for selecting an item. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	COUNT	Displays/clears the jam counts	TOTAL COUNT	Displays the total jam counts						
Display	Description												
COUNT	Displays/clears the jam counts												
TOTAL COUNT	Displays the total jam counts												

Maintenance item No.	Description																
U904	<p>Checking/clearing the service call counts</p> <p>Description Displays or clears the service call code counts by types.</p> <p>Purpose To check the service call code status by types. Also to clear the service call code counts after replacing consumable parts.</p> <p>Method 1. Press the start key. The service call count is displayed by service call codes. 2. Change the screen using the * or # keys.</p> <p>Clearing 1. Select the count to be cleared. The selected item is displayed in reverse. To clear all counts, press the reset key. 2. Press the start key. The count is cleared. When all counts are cleared, the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p> <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the current setting, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>																
U905	<p>Checking/clearing counts by optional devices</p> <p>Description Displays or clears the counts of the optional DP or finisher.</p> <p>Purpose To check the use of the DP and finisher. Also to clear the counts after replacing consumable parts.</p> <p>Method 1. Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed. 2. Select the device, the count of which is to be checked and press the start key. The count of the selected device is displayed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DP <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ADP</td><td>No. of single-sided originals that has passed through the DP in ADP mode</td></tr> <tr> <td>RADP</td><td>No. of double-sided originals that has passed through the DP in RADP mode</td></tr> </tbody> </table> • Finisher (SORTER) <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>CP CNT</td><td>No. of copies that has passed</td></tr> <tr> <td>STAPLE</td><td>Frequency the stapler has been activated</td></tr> <tr> <td>PUNCH</td><td>Frequency the punch has been activated</td></tr> <tr> <td>SADDLE</td><td>Frequency the booklet has been activated</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Clearing 1. Select the item to be cleared. The selected item is displayed in reverse. 2. Press the start key. The count is cleared. 3. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key at the screen for selecting an item. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ADP	No. of single-sided originals that has passed through the DP in ADP mode	RADP	No. of double-sided originals that has passed through the DP in RADP mode	Display	Description	CP CNT	No. of copies that has passed	STAPLE	Frequency the stapler has been activated	PUNCH	Frequency the punch has been activated	SADDLE	Frequency the booklet has been activated
Display	Description																
ADP	No. of single-sided originals that has passed through the DP in ADP mode																
RADP	No. of double-sided originals that has passed through the DP in RADP mode																
Display	Description																
CP CNT	No. of copies that has passed																
STAPLE	Frequency the stapler has been activated																
PUNCH	Frequency the punch has been activated																
SADDLE	Frequency the booklet has been activated																

Maintenance item No.	Description
U906	<p>Resetting partial operation control</p> <p>Description Resets the service call code for partial operation control.</p> <p>Purpose To be reset after partial operation is performed due to problems in the drawers or other sections, and the related parts are serviced.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Press EXECUTE on the touch panel. It is displayed in reverse. 3. Press the start key to reset partial operation control. The maintenance mode is exited, and the machine returns to the same status as when the main switch is turned on.
U908	<p>Changing the total counter value</p> <p>Description Displays the total counter value.</p> <p>Purpose To check the total counter value.</p> <p>Method Press the start key.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select the count to be changed. 2. Enter a six-digit value using the numeric keys. 3. Press the start key. The value is set. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed. <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the current total counter value, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>
U910	<p>Clearing the black ratio data</p> <p>Description Clears the accumulated black ratio data for A4 sheets.</p> <p>Purpose To clear data as required at times such as during maintenance service.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Press CANCEL on the touch panel. 3. Press the start key. The accumulated black ratio data is cleared, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item is displayed. <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the current setting, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item is displayed.</p>
U911	<p>Checking/clearing copy counts by paper sizes</p> <p>Description Displays and clears the paper feed counts by paper sizes.</p> <p>Purpose To check or clear the counts after replacing consumable parts.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for the paper feed counts by paper size is displayed.</p> <p>Clearing</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select the paper size. The selected item is displayed in reverse. To clear all counts, press the reset key. 2. Press the start key. The count is cleared. When clearing all counts, the screen for selecting a maintenance item is displayed. <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the count, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item is displayed.</p>

Maintenance item No.	Description																																		
U917	<p>Setting backup data reading/writing</p> <p>Description Stores backup data from the fax control PCB (when an optional fax kit is installed) into CompactFlash or reads the data from CompactFlash.</p> <p>Purpose To store and write data when replacing the PCB.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Turn the power switch off and disconnect the power plug. 2. Remove the middle right cover. 3. Insert Compact Flash in a notch hole of the copier. 4. While pressing the Copier key, turn on the power switch and connect the power plug. Press and hold on the Copier key until the message "Please wait." disappears. 5. Enter the maintenance item. 6. Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed. 7. Select the item. The selected item is displayed in reverse. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>SRAM→CF:FAX DATA</td><td>Writing the backup data of fax control PCB</td></tr> <tr> <td>CF→SRAM:FAX DATA</td><td>Reading the backup data of fax control PCB</td></tr> <tr> <td>SRAM→CF:FAX DIAL</td><td>Writing the backup data of fax dial information</td></tr> <tr> <td>CF→SRAM:FAX DIAL</td><td>Reading the backup data of fax dial information</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 8. Press the start key. Reading or writing is executed, and the screen displays the result. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the operation was successful: EXECUTE 0100 CODE 0000 • If the operation failed: EXECUTE 0100 CODE XXXX Where XXX is the error code indicating the reason for the failure. See "Error Codes for Operation U917 and U926" below. 9. Turn the power switch off and disconnect the power plug. 10. Remove the Compact Flash from the copier. <p>Error Codes for Operation U917 and U926</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Code</th><th>Meaning</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0102</td><td>Detects call for service on fax control PCB.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0104</td><td>Communication error.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0105</td><td>Detects call for service on main PCB.</td></tr> <tr> <td>01FF</td><td>CF error.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0202</td><td>No CF card.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0203</td><td>No data in CF card.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0204</td><td>CF data is incompatible.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0205</td><td>Bad CF data (Checksum error)</td></tr> <tr> <td>0206</td><td>CF read error.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0207</td><td>CF write error.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0212</td><td>Fax control PCB flash memory error.</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Display	Description	SRAM→CF:FAX DATA	Writing the backup data of fax control PCB	CF→SRAM:FAX DATA	Reading the backup data of fax control PCB	SRAM→CF:FAX DIAL	Writing the backup data of fax dial information	CF→SRAM:FAX DIAL	Reading the backup data of fax dial information	Code	Meaning	0102	Detects call for service on fax control PCB.	0104	Communication error.	0105	Detects call for service on main PCB.	01FF	CF error.	0202	No CF card.	0203	No data in CF card.	0204	CF data is incompatible.	0205	Bad CF data (Checksum error)	0206	CF read error.	0207	CF write error.	0212	Fax control PCB flash memory error.
Display	Description																																		
SRAM→CF:FAX DATA	Writing the backup data of fax control PCB																																		
CF→SRAM:FAX DATA	Reading the backup data of fax control PCB																																		
SRAM→CF:FAX DIAL	Writing the backup data of fax dial information																																		
CF→SRAM:FAX DIAL	Reading the backup data of fax dial information																																		
Code	Meaning																																		
0102	Detects call for service on fax control PCB.																																		
0104	Communication error.																																		
0105	Detects call for service on main PCB.																																		
01FF	CF error.																																		
0202	No CF card.																																		
0203	No data in CF card.																																		
0204	CF data is incompatible.																																		
0205	Bad CF data (Checksum error)																																		
0206	CF read error.																																		
0207	CF write error.																																		
0212	Fax control PCB flash memory error.																																		


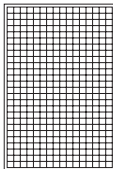
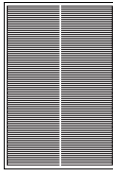

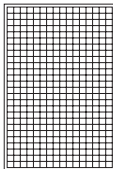
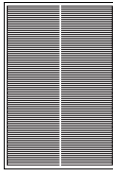

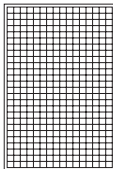
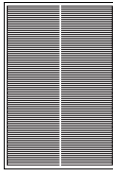
Maintenance item No.	Description
U920	<p>Checking the copy counts</p> <p>Description Checks the copy counts.</p> <p>Purpose To check the copy counts.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The current counts of copy counter, printer counter and fax counter are displayed.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>
U925	<p>Checking/clearing the system error counts</p> <p>Description Displays and clears the count value of system error.</p> <p>Purpose To check the system error status by types. Also to clear the service call code counts after replacing consumable parts.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The count for system error detection by type is displayed.</p> <p>Clearing</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Change the screen using the * or # keys. 2. Select the counts for all system error and press the reset key. 3. Press the start key. The count is cleared. <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the count, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance No. item is displayed.</p>
U926	<p>Rewriting FAX program</p> <p>Description Downloads the fax program and fax fonts when installing an optional fax kit.</p> <p>Purpose To run when upgrading the fax program and fax fonts.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Turn the power switch off and disconnect the power plug. 2. Remove the middle right cover. 3. Insert Compact Flash in a notch hole of the copier. 4. While pressing the Copier key, turn on the power switch and connect the power plug. Press and hold on the Copier key until the message "Please wait." disappears. 5. Enter the maintenance item. 6. Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed. 7. Select FAX PROGRAM/FONT. Check that EXECUTE is displayed and then press the start key. Downloading of the fax program starts and the result shown below is displayed. <p>• If the operation was successful: EXECUTE 0100 CHECKSUM **** CODE 0000</p> <p>• If the operation failed: EXECUTE 0100 CHECKSUM **** CODE XXXX Where XXX is the error code indicating the reason for the failure.</p>

Maintenance item No.	Description						
U926	<p>8. Then, downloading of the fax fonts starts and the result shown below is displayed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the operation was successful: EXECUTE 0100 CHECKSUM **** CODE 0000 • If the operation failed: EXECUTE 0100 CHECKSUM **** CODE XXXX Where XXX is the error code indicating the reason for the failure. See "Error Codes for Operation U917 and U926" on page 1-4-69. <p>9. Turn the power switch off and disconnect the power plug. 10. Remove the Compact Flash from the copier</p>						
U927	<p>Clearing the all copy counts and machine life counts</p> <p>Description Resets all of the counts back to zero.</p> <p>Purpose The total account counter and the machine life counter can be cleared only once only if the count values are 1000 or less.</p> <p>Method 1. Press the start key. The screen for executing is displayed. 2. Press EXECUTE on the touch panel. It is displayed in reverse. 3. Press the start key. All copy counts and machine life counts are cleared.</p> <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the count, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>						
U928	<p>Checking machine life counts</p> <p>Description Displays the machine life counts.</p> <p>Purpose To check the machine life counts.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The current machine life counts is displayed.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p>						
U941	<p>Setting the default magnification ratio of the default drawer</p> <p>Description Sets the default magnification ratio when paper selection of copy default setting is set to the default drawer.</p> <p>Purpose According to user request, changes the setting.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <p>Setting 1. Select 100% or AMS. The selected item is displayed in reverse.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>100%</td><td>100 % magnification ratio</td></tr> <tr> <td>AMS</td><td>Automatic magnification ratio</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: 100 % magnification ratio</p> <p>2. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p> <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the current setting, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	100%	100 % magnification ratio	AMS	Automatic magnification ratio
Display	Description						
100%	100 % magnification ratio						
AMS	Automatic magnification ratio						

Maintenance item No.	Description						
U954	<p>Setting the type of cooling fan</p> <p>Description Sets the new or old type of cooling fan.</p> <p>Purpose To change the setting according to the type of the cooling fan.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <p>Setting 1. Select NEW or OLD. The selected item is displayed in reverse.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>NEW</td><td>New type of cooling fan</td></tr> <tr> <td>OLD</td><td>Old type of cooling fan</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: NEW</p> <p>2. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p> <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the current setting, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	NEW	New type of cooling fan	OLD	Old type of cooling fan
Display	Description						
NEW	New type of cooling fan						
OLD	Old type of cooling fan						
U956	<p>Setting the type of paper conveying unit</p> <p>Description Sets the new or old type of paper conveying unit.</p> <p>Purpose To change the setting according to the type of the paper conveying unit.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <p>Setting 1. Select NEW or OLD. The selected item is displayed in reverse.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>NEW</td><td>New type of paper conveying unit</td></tr> <tr> <td>OLD</td><td>Old type of paper conveying unit</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: NEW</p> <p>2. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p> <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the current setting, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	NEW	New type of paper conveying unit	OLD	Old type of paper conveying unit
Display	Description						
NEW	New type of paper conveying unit						
OLD	Old type of paper conveying unit						
U960	<p>Outputting the machine used circumstances list</p> <p>Description Outputs machine used circumstances list and clears the data.</p> <p>Purpose To check the machine operation situation. Also to clear the data.</p> <p>Method Press the start key.</p> <p>Outputting the list 1. Select OUTPUT. 2. Press the start key to output the list.</p> <p>Clearing 1. Select COUNT CLEAR. 2. Press the start key to clear the count.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p>						

Maintenance item No.	Description								
U962	<p>Setting the type of fixing unit</p> <p>Description Sets the type of fixing unit.</p> <p>Purpose To change the setting according to the type of the fixing unit.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <p>Setting 1. Select New or Old. The selected item is displayed in reverse.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>FIXING UNIT 0</td><td>Type 0</td></tr> <tr> <td>FIXING UNIT 1</td><td>Type 1</td></tr> <tr> <td>FIXING UNIT 2</td><td>Type 2</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: FIXING UNIT 1</p> <p>2. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p> <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the current setting, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	FIXING UNIT 0	Type 0	FIXING UNIT 1	Type 1	FIXING UNIT 2	Type 2
Display	Description								
FIXING UNIT 0	Type 0								
FIXING UNIT 1	Type 1								
FIXING UNIT 2	Type 2								
U971	<p>Specifying the aging before copying</p> <p>Description Selects whether to perform aging before copying.</p> <p>Purpose To set according to the preference of the user. When copying A3 or B4 sized paper, aging before copying takes extra time to start the first copy. To reduce the time for the first copy, select OFF.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <p>Setting 1. Select ON or OFF. The selected item is displayed in reverse.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td><td>Performing the aging before copying</td></tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td><td>Not performing the aging before copying</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: OFF</p> <p>2. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p> <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the current setting, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ON	Performing the aging before copying	OFF	Not performing the aging before copying		
Display	Description								
ON	Performing the aging before copying								
OFF	Not performing the aging before copying								
U989	<p>HDD Scandisk</p> <p>Description Restores data in the hard disk by scanning the disk.</p> <p>Purpose If power is turned off while accessing to the hard disk is performed, the control information in the hard disk drive may be damaged. Use this mode to restore the data.</p> <p>Method 1. Press the start key. The screen for executing is displayed. 2. Press EXECUTE on the touch panel. It is displayed in reverse. 3. Press the start key. When scanning of the disk is complete, the execution result is displayed. 4. Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p> <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without executing scandisk, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>								

Maintenance item No.	Description								
U990	<p>Checking/clearing the time for the exposure lamp to light</p> <p>Description Displays, clears or changes the accumulated time for the exposure lamp to light.</p> <p>Purpose To check duration of use of the exposure lamp. Also to clear the accumulated time for the lamp after replacement.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The accumulated time of illumination for the exposure lamp is displayed in minutes.</p> <p>Clearing 1. Press the reset key. 2. Press the start key. The accumulated time is cleared, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p> <p>Setting 1. Enter a six-digit accumulated time using the numeric keys. 2. Press the start key. The time is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p> <p>Completion To exit this maintenance item without changing the accumulated time, press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>								
U991	<p>Checking the scanner count</p> <p>Description Displays the scanner operation count.</p> <p>Purpose To check the status of use of the scanner</p> <p>Method Press the start key.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>COPY SCAN COUNT</td><td>Scanner operation count for copying</td></tr> <tr> <td>FAX SCAN COUNT</td><td>Scanner operation count for fax</td></tr> <tr> <td>NT SCAN COUNT</td><td>Network scanner operation count</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	COPY SCAN COUNT	Scanner operation count for copying	FAX SCAN COUNT	Scanner operation count for fax	NT SCAN COUNT	Network scanner operation count
Display	Description								
COPY SCAN COUNT	Scanner operation count for copying								
FAX SCAN COUNT	Scanner operation count for fax								
NT SCAN COUNT	Network scanner operation count								

Maintenance item No.	Description												
U993	<p>Outputting a VTC-PG pattern</p> <p>Description Selects and outputs aVTC-PG pattern created in the copier.</p> <p>Purpose When performing respective image printing adjustments, used to check the machine status apart from that of the scanner with a non-scanned output VTC-PG pattern.</p> <p>Method</p> <div><div>1. Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</div><div>2. Select the VTC-PG pattern to be output.</div></div> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>PG pattern to be output</th><th>Purpose</th></tr><tr><td>PG1</td><td></td><td><div>• Center line adjustment</div></td></tr><tr><td>PG2</td><td></td><td><div>• Lateral squareness adjustment</div><div>• Magnification adjustment</div></td></tr><tr><td>PG3</td><td></td><td><div>_____</div></td></tr></table> <div><div>3. Press the interrupt key. The copy mode screen is displayed.</div><div>4. Press the start key. A VTC-PG pattern is output.</div></div> <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key at the screen for selecting an item. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No is displayed.</p>	Display	PG pattern to be output	Purpose	PG1		<div>• Center line adjustment</div>	PG2		<div>• Lateral squareness adjustment</div> <div>• Magnification adjustment</div>	PG3		<div>_____</div>
Display	PG pattern to be output	Purpose											
PG1		<div>• Center line adjustment</div>											
PG2		<div>• Lateral squareness adjustment</div> <div>• Magnification adjustment</div>											
PG3		<div>_____</div>											

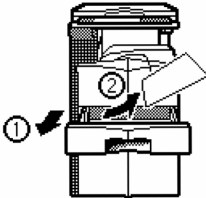
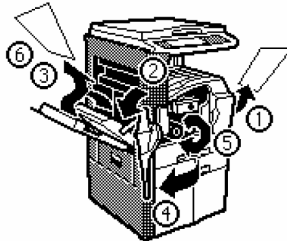
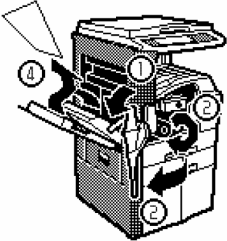
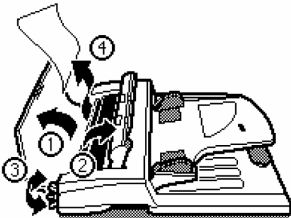
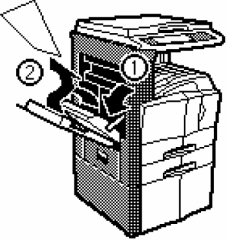
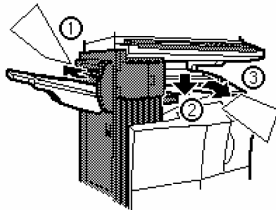
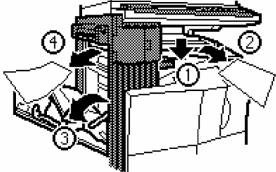
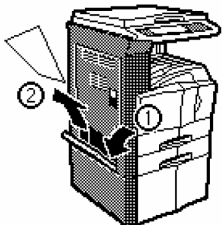
1-5-1 Paper misfeed detection

(1) Paper misfeed indication

When a paper misfeed occurs, the copier immediately stops copying and displays the jam location on the operation panel. Paper misfeed counts sorted by the detection condition can be checked in maintenance item U903.

To remove paper jammed in the copier, open the front cover, conveying cover, side cover or drawer.

Paper misfeed detection can be reset by opening and closing the respective covers to turn safety switch 1 or 2 off and on.

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Misfeed in drawer <p>Jam code 10 Jam code 11 Jam code 12 Jam code 13 Jam code 15 Jam code 16 Jam code 17</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Misfeed in bypass <p>Jam code 14 Jam code 20 Jam code 21 Jam code 23</p> 
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Misfeed inside conveying cover <p>Jam code 18 Jam code 21 Jam code 22</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Misfeed in DP* <p>Jam code 70 Jam code 71 Jam code 72 Jam code 73 Jam code 74 Jam code 75 Jam code 76</p> 
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Misfeed in conveying cover <p>Jam code 30 Jam code 35 Jam codes 40 to 44, 46,47 Jam code 50 Jam code 51 Jam code 52 Jam code 60 Jam code 61</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Misfeed in built-in finisher* <p>Jam code 81 Jam code 82 Jam code 83 Jam code 84</p>  
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Misfeed in side cover <p>Jam code 19</p> 	

(2) Paper misfeed detection conditions

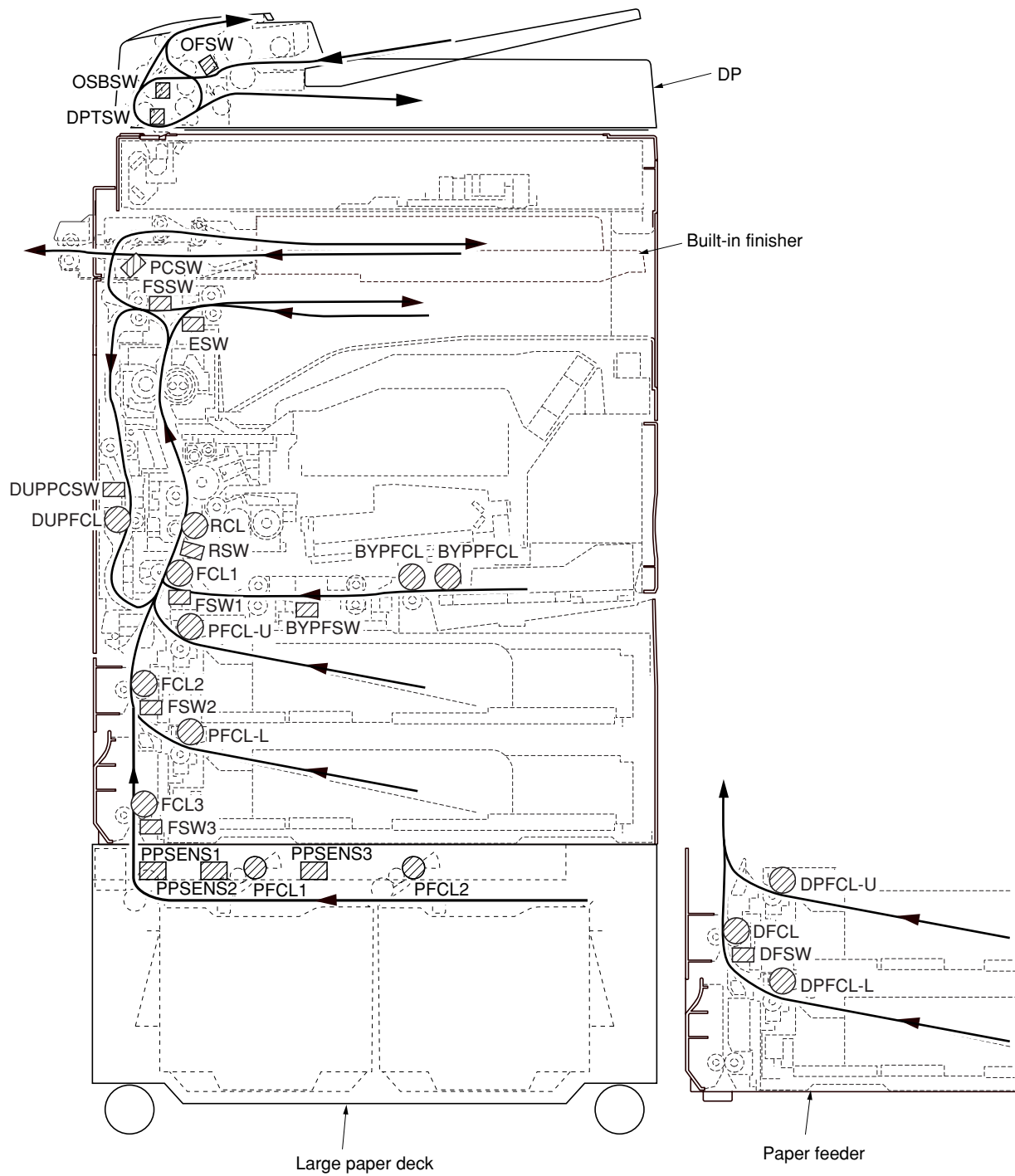


Figure 1-5-1

Section	Jam code	Description	Conditions
Paper feed section	10	No paper feed from the upper drawer	Feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn on within 841 ms of the upper paper feed clutch (PFCL-U) turning on; the clutch is then successively turned off for 1 s and turned back on, but the switch again fails to turn on within 841 ms.
	11	No paper feed from the lower drawer	Feed switch 2 (FSW2) does not turn on within 882 ms of the lower paper feed clutch (PFCL-L) turning on; the clutch is then successively turned off for 1 s and turned back on, but the switch again fails to turn on within 882 ms.
	12	No paper feed from large paper deck	Feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn on within 650 ms of paper feed clutch 1 (PFCL1) turning on.
		No paper feed from paper feeder upper drawer	Feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn on within 880 ms of the desk upper paper feed clutch (DPFCL-U) turning on; the clutch is then successively held off for 1 s and turned back on, but the switch again fails to turn on within 880 ms.
	13	No paper feed from paper feeder lower drawer	Desk feed switch (DFSW) does not turn on within 880 ms of the desk lower paper feed clutch (DPFCL-L) turning on; the clutch is then successively held off for 1 s and turned back on, but the switch again fails to turn on within 880 ms.
	14	No paper feed from bypass	The bypass feed switch (BYPFSW) does not turn on within 1730 ms of the bypass paper feed clutch (BYPPFCL) turning on; the clutch is then successively held off for 1 s and turned back on, but the switch again fails to turn on within 1730 ms.
	15	Jam in large paper deck horizontal paper conveying section 1	Paper path sensor 3 (PPSENS3) does not turn on within 290 ms of the paper feed clutch 2 (PFCL2) turning on.
	16	Jam in large paper deck horizontal paper conveying section 2	Paper path sensor 2 (PPSENS2) does not turn on within 310 ms of the paper path sensor 3 (PPSENS3) turning on.
	17	Jam in large paper deck horizontal paper conveying section 3	Paper path sensor 1 (PPSENS1) does not turn on within 190 ms of the paper path sensor 2 (PPSENS2) turning on.
	18	Misfeed in copier vertical paper conveying section	The registration switch (RSW) does not turn on within 936 ms of feed switch 1 (FSW1) turning on.
			Feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn on within 1079 ms of feed switch 2 (FSW2) turning on.
			Feed switch 2 (FSW2) does not turn on within 1203 ms of feed switch 3 (FSW3) turning on.
	19	Misfeed in paper feed desk vertical paper conveying section	Feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn on within 888 ms of the desk feed switch (DFSW) turning on.
	20	Misfeed in bypass vertical paper conveying section	The registration switch (RSW) does not turn on within 3932 ms of the bypass feed switch (BYPFSW) turning on.
	21	Multiple sheets in copier paper feed section	Feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn off within the time required to convey the length of the used paper size plus 1123 ms of turning on.
			Feed switch 2 (FSW2) does not turn off within the time required to convey the length of the used paper size plus 1123 ms of turning on.

Section	Jam code	Description	Conditions
Paper feed section	21	Multiple sheets in copier paper feed section	Feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn off within the time required to convey the length of the used paper size plus 635 ms of turning on.
			The desk feed switch (DFSW) does not turn off within the time required to convey the length of the used paper size plus 635 ms of turning on.
			The bypass feed switch (BYPFSW) does not turn off within the time required to convey the length of the used paper size plus 1123 ms of turning on.
			Feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn off within 841 ms of the upper paper feed clutch (PFCL-U) turning on.
			Feed switch 2 (FSW2) does not turn off within a specified time of the lower paper feed clutch (PFCL-L) turning on.
			Feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn off within a specified time of paper feed clutch 1 (PFCL1) turning on.
			Feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn off within a specified time of the desk upper paper feed clutch (DPFCL-U) turning on.
			The bypass feed switch (BYPFSW) does not turn off within 1730 ms of the bypass paper feed clutch (BYPPFCL) turning on.
	22	Multiple sheets in copier vertical conveying section	Feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn off within 1910 ms of feed switch 2 (FSW2) turning off.
			Feed switch 2 (FSW2) does not turn off within 1203 ms of feed switch 3 (FSW3) turning off.
			Feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn off within 1910 ms of feed switch 2 (FSW2) turning on.
			Feed switch 2 (FSW2) does not turn off within 1203 ms of feed switch 3 (FSW3) turning on.
	23	Multiple sheets in bypass vertical conveying section	The registration switch (RSW) does not turn off within 1510 ms of the bypass feed switch (BYPFSW) turning off.
			The registration switch (RSW) does not turn off within 1505 ms of the bypass feed switch (BYPFSW) turning on.
Paper conveying section	05	Secondary paper feed does not start.	Secondary paper feed does not start within 30 s of arrival of paper at the registration section.
	30	Misfeed in registration/transfer section	The registration switch (RSW) does not turn off within 1657 ms of feed switch 1 (FSW1) turning off.
			The registration switch (RSW) does not turn off within 1657 ms of feed switch 1 (FSW1) turning on.
Fixing section	40	Misfeed in fixing section (bypass)	The eject switch (ESW) does not turn on within 2898 ms of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.
			The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn on within 2983 ms of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.
	41	Misfeed in fixing section (upper drawer)	The eject switch (ESW) does not turn on within 2898 ms of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.
			The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn on within 2983 ms of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.

Section	Jam code	Description	Conditions
Fixing section	42	Misfeed in fixing section (lower drawer)	The eject switch (ESW) does not turn on within 2898 ms of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.
			The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn on within 2983 ms of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.
	43	Misfeed in fixing section (paper feeder upper drawer)	The eject switch (ESW) does not turn on within 2898 ms of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.
			The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn on within 2983 ms of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.
	44	Misfeed in fixing section (paper feeder lower drawer)	The eject switch (ESW) does not turn on within 2898 ms of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.
			The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn on within 2983 ms of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.
	46	Misfeed in fixing section (large paper deck)	The eject switch (ESW) does not turn on within 2898 ms of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.
			The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn on within 2983 ms of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.
	47	Misfeed in fixing section (duplex section)	The eject switch (ESW) does not turn on within 2898 ms of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.
			The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn on within 2983 ms of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.
Eject section	50	Misfeed in eject section	The eject switch (ESW) does not turn off within 2898 ms of the registration switch (RSW) turning off.
			The eject switch (ESW) does not turn off within 2898 ms of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.
	51	Misfeed in job separator eject section	The job separator eject switch (JBESW) does not turn on within 2050 ms of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning on.
			The job separator eject switch (JBESW) does not turn off within 2050 ms of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning off.
			The job separator eject switch (JBESW) does not turn off within 2050 ms of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning on.
Feedshift section	52	Misfeed in feedshift section	The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn on within 873 ms of the start of eject motor (EM) reverse rotation.
			During paper switchback operation, the feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn off within the time required to convey the length of the used paper size plus 317 ms of turning on.
			The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn off within 2898 ms of the registration switch (RSW) turning off.
			The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn off within 2898 ms of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.
Optional switchback unit	53	Misfeed in switchback section	The switchback eject switch (SBESW) does not turn off within 1421 ms (2797 ms) of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning on.
			The switchback eject switch (SBESW) does not turn on within 1421 ms (2797 ms) of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning on.

Section	Jam code	Description	Conditions
Optional switchback unit	53	Misfeed in switchback section	The switchback eject switch (SBESW) does not turn off within 1421 ms (2797 ms) of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning off.
Duplex section	60	Duplex paper conveying section 1	The duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW) does not turn on within 1285 ms of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning on.
			The duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW) does not turn off within 1285 ms of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning off.
	61	Duplex paper conveying section 2	Feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn on within 1126 ms of the duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW) turning on.
			Feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn off within 1126 ms of the duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW) turning off.
Optional DP	70	No original feed	When the DF START signal is received, switches other than the original set switch (OSSW) and original size length switch (OSLSW) on the contact glass are on.
			During the primary feed of the first original in the single-sided or double-sided original mode, the original feed switch (OFSW) does not turn on within 800 ms of the original feed motor (OFM) turning on.
			During the primary feed of the second or later original in the single-sided or double-sided original mode, the original feed switch (OFSW) does not turn on within 800 ms of the start of forward rotation of the original feed motor (OFM).
	71	An original jam in the original feed/conveying section	During the secondary original feed in the single-sided original mode, the DP timing switch (DPTSW) does not turn on within 967 ms of the start of reverse rotation of the original feed motor (OFM). Alternatively, during continuous original feed in single-sided original mode, the DP timing switch (DPTSW) does not turn on for the second time under the above conditions.
	72	An original jam in the original feed section	During the secondary original feed in the single-sided original mode, the original feed switch (OFSW) does not turn off within 1654 ms of the DP timing switch (DPTSW) turning on.
			During original switchback operation in the double-sided original mode, the original feed switch (OFSW) remains on when the original switchback switch (OSBSW) turns off.
	73	An original jam in the original conveying section	During the secondary original feed in the single-sided or double-sided original mode, the DP timing switch (DPTSW) does not turn off within 2399 ms of turning on.
			In the single-sided or double-sided original mode, the DP timing switch (DPTSW) turns off within 474 ms of turning on.
	74	An original jam remaining after retries	In the single-sided or double-sided original mode, secondary original feed does not start after 5 retries.

Section	Jam code	Description	Conditions
Optional DP	75	An original jam in the switchback section 1	During the switchback operation of an original in the double-sided original mode, the original switchback switch (OSBSW) does not turn off within 7040 ms of turning on.
			During the secondary original feed in the double-sided original mode, the DP timing switch (DPTSW) does not turn on within 433 ms of the original conveying motor (OCM) turning on.
	76	An original jam in the switchback section 2	While scanning the first face (reverse face) of the original in the double-sided original mode, the original switchback switch (OSBSW) does not turn on within 770 ms of the DP timing switch (DPTSW) turning on.
			During the switchback operation of the second or later original in the double-sided original mode, the original switchback switch (OSBSW) remains off when the trailing edge of the preceding original turns the DP timing switch (DPTSW) off.
Optional large paper deck	09	Large paper deck sequence error jam	A communication sequence error occurs between the copier and the large paper deck.
Optional built-in finisher	81	Jam between the finisher and copier	The paper conveying switch does not turn on within 1550 ms of the signal requesting paper ejection is output from the copier.
	82	Intake jam	During paper intake from the copier, the paper conveying switch (PCSW) does not turn off within 1960 to 3480 ms (depending on paper size) of paper conveying switch (PCSW) turning on.
	83	Jam during paper conveying for batch ejection 1	When ejection a stack of paper, the paper conveying switch (PCSW) does not turn on within 1590 ms of the paper conveying motor (PCM) turning on.
	84	Jam during paper conveying for batch ejection 2	When ejection a stack of paper, the paper conveying switch (PCSW) does not turn off within 2260 to 3190 ms (varies depending on the paper size) of the paper conveying motor (PCM) turning on.
Optional 3000-sheet finisher	80	Jam between the finisher and copier	The finisher does not respond 15 s after the eject signal is sent to the finisher.
	81	Jam in paper entry section	See the 3000-sheet finisher service manual.
	82	Jam in eject section of non-sort tray	See the 3000-sheet finisher service manual.
	83	Jam in paper conveying section of internal tray	See the 3000-sheet finisher service manual.
	84	Jam in eject section of sort tray	See the 3000-sheet finisher service manual.

Section	Jam code	Description	Conditions
Optional mailbox	85	Jam between the mailbox and copier	The mailbox does not respond 15 s after the eject signal is sent to the mailbox.
	86	Jam in the mailbox 1	See the mailbox service manual.
	87	Jam in the mailbox 2	See the mailbox service manual.
	88	Jam in the mailbox 3	See the mailbox service manual.
	89	Jam in the mailbox 4	See the mailbox service manual.
Optional booklet stitcher	80	Entrance sensor delay jam	See the booklet stitcher service manual.
	81	Entrance sensor stay jam	See the booklet stitcher service manual.
	82	Early arrival jam	See the booklet stitcher service manual.
	83	Folding position sensor delay jam	See the booklet stitcher service manual.
	84	Folding position sensor conveying stay jam	See the booklet stitcher service manual.
	85	Stapler jam	See the booklet stitcher service manual.
	86	Staple jam	See the booklet stitcher service manual.
	87	Power on jam	See the booklet stitcher service manual.
	88	Door open jam	See the booklet stitcher service manual.
	89	Punch jam	See the booklet stitcher service manual.

(3) Paper misfeeds

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(1) A paper jam in the paper feed, conveying or eject section is indicated as soon as the power switch is turned on.	A piece of paper torn from copy paper is caught around feed switch 1/2/3, registration switch, eject switch or feedshift switch.	Check visually and remove it, if any.
	Defective feed switch 1.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 1 on and off manually. Replace feed switch 1 if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Defective feed switch 2.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 2 on and off manually. Replace feed switch 2 if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Defective feed switch 3.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 3 on and off manually. Replace feed switch 3 if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Defective registration switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the registration switch on and off manually. Replace the registration switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Defective eject switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the eject switch on and off manually. Replace the eject switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Defective feedshift switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the feedshift switch on and off manually. Replace the feedshift switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
(2) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (no paper feed from upper drawer). Jam code 10	Paper in the upper drawer is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the upper paper feed pulley, separation pulley or forwarding pulley of the upper drawer are deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulleys.
	Broken feed switch 1 actuator.	Check visually and replace feed switch 1 if its actuator is broken.
	Defective feed switch 1.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 1 on and off manually. Replace feed switch 1 if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if the upper paper feed clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the upper paper feed clutch on the operation panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the upper paper feed clutch.	Check (see page 1-5-48).

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(3) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (no paper feed from lower drawer). Jam code 11	Paper in the lower drawer is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the lower paper feed pulley, separation pulley or forwarding pulley of the lower drawer are deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulleys.
	Broken feed switch 2 actuator.	Check visually and replace feed switch 2 if its actuator is broken.
	Defective feed switch 2.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 2 on and off manually. Replace feed switch 2 if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if the lower paper feed clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the lower paper feed clutch on the operation panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the lower paper feed clutch.	Check (see page 1-5-48).
(4) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (no paper feed from large paper deck*). Jam code 12	Paper in the large paper deck is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Broken feed switch 3 actuator.	Check visually and replace feed switch 3 if its actuator is broken.
	Defective feed switch 3.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 3 on and off manually. Replace feed switch 3 if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if paper feed clutch 1 and 2 malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select paper feed clutch 1 or 2 on the operation panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with paper feed clutch 1 and 2.	Check.
	Check if the deck feed clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select the deck feed clutch on the operation panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the deck feed clutch.	Check.
(5) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (no paper feed from paper feeder* upper drawer). Jam code 12	Paper in the paper feeder upper drawer is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the paper feed pulley, separation pulley or forwarding pulley of the paper feeder upper drawer are deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulleys.
	Broken feed switch 3 actuator.	Check visually and replace feed switch 3 if its actuator is broken.
	Defective feed switch 3.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 3 on and off manually. Replace feed switch 3 if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.

*Optional.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(5) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (no paper feed from paper feeder* upper drawer). Jam code 12	Check if the desk upper paper feed clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select the desk upper paper feed clutch on the operation panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the desk upper paper feed clutch.	Check.
(6) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (no paper feed from paper feeder* lower drawer). Jam code 13	Paper in the paper feeder lower drawer is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the paper feed pulley, separation pulley or forwarding pulley of the paper feeder lower drawer are deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulleys.
	Broken desk feed switch actuator.	Check visually and replace desk feed switch if its actuator is broken.
	Defective desk feed switch.	With 5 V DC present at CN2-8 on the desk main PCB, check if CN2-7 on the desk main PCB remains low when the desk feed switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the desk feed switch.
	Check if the desk lower paper feed clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select the desk lower paper feed clutch on the operation panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the desk lower paper feed clutch.	Check.
(7) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (no paper feed from bypass). Jam code 14	Paper on the bypass table is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the bypass paper feed pulley, separation pulley or forwarding pulley of the bypass are deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulleys.
	Broken bypass feed switch actuator.	Check visually and replace bypass feed switch if its actuator is broken.
	Defective bypass feed switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the bypass feed switch on and off manually. Replace the bypass feed switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if the bypass paper feed clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the bypass paper feed clutch on the operation panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the bypass paper feed clutch.	Check (see page 1-5-49).

*Optional.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(8) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (jam in large paper deck* horizontal paper conveying section). Jam code 15	Paper in the large paper deck is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the paper side guides are deformed.	Check visually and replace.
	Defective paper path sensor 3.	With 5 V DC present at CN6-12 on the deck main PCB, check if CN6-11 on the deck main PCB remains low when paper path sensor 3 is turned on and off. If it does, replace paper path sensor 3.
	Check if paper feed clutch 2 malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select paper feed clutch 2 on the operation panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with paper feed clutch 2.	Check.
(9) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (jam in large paper deck* horizontal paper conveying section). Jam code 16	Paper in the large paper deck is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the paper side guides are deformed.	Check visually and replace.
	Defective paper path sensor 2.	With 5 V DC present at CN6-9 on the deck main PCB, check if CN6-8 on the deck main PCB remains low when paper path sensor 2 is turned on and off. If it does, replace paper path sensor 2.
	Check if paper feed clutch 1 malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select paper feed clutch 1 on the operation panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with paper feed clutch 1.	Check.
(10) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (jam in large paper deck* horizontal paper conveying section). Jam code 17	Paper in the large paper deck is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the paper side guides are deformed.	Check visually and replace.
	Defective paper path sensor 1.	With 5 V DC present at CN6-6 on the deck main PCB, check if CN6-5 on the deck main PCB remains low when paper path sensor 1 is turned on and off. If it does, replace paper path sensor 1.
	Check if the deck feed clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select the deck feed clutch on the operation panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the deck feed clutch.	Check.
(11) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (jam in copier vertical paper conveying section). Jam code 18	Broken feed switch 1 actuator.	Check visually and replace feed switch 1 if its actuator is broken.
	Defective feed switch 1.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 1 on and off manually. Replace feed switch 1 if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Broken feed switch 2 actuator.	Check visually and replace feed switch 2 if its actuator is broken.

*Optional.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(11) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (jam in copier vertical paper conveying section). Jam code 18	Defective feed switch 2.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 2 on and off manually. Replace feed switch 2 if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Broken feed switch 3 actuator.	Check visually and replace feed switch 3 if its actuator is broken.
	Defective feed switch 3.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 3 on and off manually. Replace feed switch 3 if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Defective registration switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the registration switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if the feed pulleys and feed roller are deformed.	Check and repair if necessary.
(12) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (jam in paper feeder* vertical conveying section). Jam code 19	Broken feed switch 3 actuator.	Check visually and replace feed switch 3 if its actuator is broken.
	Defective feed switch 3.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 3 on and off manually. Replace feed switch 3 if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Broken desk feed switch actuator.	Check visually and replace desk feed switch if its actuator is broken.
	Defective desk feed switch.	With 5 V DC present at CN2-8 on the desk main PCB, check if CN2-7 on the desk main PCB remains low when the desk feed switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the desk feed switch.
(13) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (jam in bypass conveying section). Jam code 20	Broken bypass feed switch actuator.	Check visually and replace the bypass feed switch if its actuator is broken.
	Defective bypass feed switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the bypass feed switch on and off manually. Replace the bypass feed switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Defective registration switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the registration switch on and off manually. Replace the registration switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
(14) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (multiple sheets in copier paper feed section). Jam code 21	Broken feed switch 1 actuator.	Check visually and replace feed switch 1 if its actuator is broken.
	Defective feed switch 1.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 1 on and off manually. Replace feed switch 1 if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Broken feed switch 2 actuator.	Check visually and replace feed switch 2 if its actuator is broken.
	Defective feed switch 2.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 2 on and off manually. Replace feed switch 2 if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Broken feed switch 3 actuator.	Check visually and replace feed switch 3 if its actuator is broken.

*Optional.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(14) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (multiple sheets in copier paper feed section). Jam code 21	Defective feed switch 3.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 3 on and off manually. Replace feed switch 3 if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Broken desk feed switch* actuator.	Check visually and replace the desk feed switch if its actuator is broken.
	Defective desk feed switch*.	With 5 V DC present at CN2-8 on the desk main PCB, check if CN2-7 on the desk main PCB remains low when the desk feed switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the desk feed switch.
	Broken bypass feed switch actuator.	Check visually and replace the bypass feed switch if its actuator is broken.
	Defective bypass feed switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the bypass feed switch on and off manually. Replace the bypass feed switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if the upper paper feed clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the upper paper feed clutch on the operation panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the upper paper feed clutch.	Check (see page 1-5-48).
	Check if the lower paper feed clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the lower paper feed clutch on the operation panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the lower paper feed clutch.	Check (see page 1-5-48).
	Check if the bypass paper feed clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the bypass feed clutch on the operation panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the bypass paper feed clutch.	Check (see page 1-5-49).
	Check if the feed pulleys and feed roller are deformed.	Check and repair if necessary.
(15) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (multiple sheets in copier vertical conveying section). Jam code 22	Broken feed switch 1 actuator.	Check visually and replace feed switch 1 if its actuator is broken.
	Defective feed switch 1.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 1 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Broken feed switch 2 actuator.	Check visually and replace feed switch 2 if its actuator is broken.
	Defective feed switch 2.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 2 on and off manually. Replace feed switch 2 if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Broken feed switch 3 actuator.	Check visually and replace feed switch 3 if its actuator is broken.

*Optional.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(15) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (multiple sheets in copier vertical conveying section). Jam code 22	Defective feed switch 3.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 3 on and off manually. Replace feed switch 3 if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if the feed pulleys and feed roller are deformed.	Check and repair if necessary.
(16) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (multiple sheets in bypass conveying section). Jam code 23	Broken bypass feed switch actuator.	Check visually and replace the bypass feed switch if its actuator is broken.
	Defective bypass feed switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the bypass feed switch on and off manually. Replace the bypass feed switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Defective registration switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the registration switch on and off manually. Replace the registration switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
(17) A paper jam in the paper conveying section is indicated during copying Jam code 05	Defective registration switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the registration switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if the registration clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the registration clutch on the operation panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the registration clutch.	Check (see page 1-5-49).
(18) A paper jam in the paper conveying section is indicated during copying (jam in registration/transfer section). Jam code 30	Broken feed switch 1 actuator.	Check visually and replace feed switch 1 if its actuator is broken.
	Defective feed switch 1.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 1 on and off manually. Replace feed switch 1 if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Defective registration switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the registration switch on and off manually. Replace the registration switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
(19) A paper jam in the fixing section is indicated during copying (jam in fixing section). Jam codes 40 to 44, 46 and 47	Broken eject switch actuator.	Check visually and replace the eject switch if its actuator is broken.
	Defective eject switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the eject switch on and off manually. Replace the eject switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Broken feedshift switch actuator.	Check visually and replace the feedshift switch if its actuator is broken.
	Defective feedshift switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the feedshift switch on and off manually. Replace the feedshift switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(19) A paper jam in the fixing section is indicated during copying (jam in fixing section). Jam codes 40 to 44, 46 and 47	Check if the registration clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the registration clutch on the operation panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the registration clutch.	Check (see page 1-5-49).
(20) A paper jam in the eject section is indicated during copying (jam in eject section). Jam code 50	Broken eject switch actuator.	Check visually and replace the eject switch if its actuator is broken.
	Defective eject switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the eject switch on and off manually. Replace the eject switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
(21) A paper jam in the eject section is indicated during copying (jam in job separator* eject section). Jam code 51	Broken feedshift switch actuator.	Check visually and replace the feedshift switch if its actuator is broken.
	Defective feedshift switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the feedshift switch on and off manually. Replace the feedshift switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Broken job separator eject switch actuator.	Check visually and replace the job separator eject switch if its actuator is broken.
	Defective job separator eject switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the job separator eject switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
(22) A paper jam in the feedshift section is indicated during copying (jam in feedshift section). Jam code 52	Check if the feedshift solenoid malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U033 and select the feedshift solenoid on the operation panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the feedshift solenoid.	Check (see page 1-5-49).
	Broken feedshift switch actuator.	Check visually and replace the feedshift switch if its actuator is broken.
	Defective feedshift switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the feedshift switch on and off manually. Replace the feedshift switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Defective registration switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the registration switch on and off manually. Replace the registration switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if the registration clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the registration clutch on the operation panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the registration clutch.	Check (see page 1-5-49).

*Optional.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(23) A paper jam in the switchback section is indicated during copying (jam in switchback unit*). Jam code 53	Broken feedshift switch actuator.	Check visually and replace the feedshift switch if its actuator is broken.
	Defective feedshift switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the feedshift switch on and off manually. Replace the feedshift switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Broken switchback eject switch actuator.	Check visually and replace the switchback eject switch if its actuator is broken.
	Defective switchback eject switch.	With 5 V DC present at CN5-2 on the switchback unit main PCB, check if CN5-4 on the switchback unit main PCB remains low when the switchback eject switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the switchback eject switch.
(24) A paper jam in the duplex section is indicated during copying (jam in duplex paper conveying section 1). Jam code 60	Broken feedshift switch actuator.	Check visually and replace the feedshift switch if its actuator is broken.
	Defective feedshift switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the feedshift switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Broken duplex paper conveying switch actuator.	Check visually and replace the duplex paper conveying switch if its actuator is broken.
	Defective duplex paper conveying switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the duplex paper conveying switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
(25) A paper jam in the duplex section is indicated during copying (jam in duplex paper conveying section 2). Jam code 61	Broken duplex paper conveying switch actuator.	Check visually and replace the duplex paper conveying switch if its actuator is broken.
	Defective duplex conveying switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the duplex paper conveying switch on and off manually. Replace the duplex paper conveying switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Broken feed switch 1 actuator.	Check visually and replace feed switch 1 if its actuator is broken.
	Defective feed switch 1.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 1 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
(26) An original jams in the DP* is indicated during copying (no original feed). Jam code 70	Defective original feed switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the original feed switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if the original feed motor malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U243 and select the original feed motor on the operation panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.

*Optional.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(27) An original jams in the DP* is indicated during copying (a jam in the original feed/conveying section). Jam code 71	Defective DP timing switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the DP timing switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if the original feed motor malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U243 and select the original feed motor on the operation panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
(28) An original jams in the DP* is indicated during copying (a jam in the original feed section). Jam code 72	Defective DP timing switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the DP timing switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Defective original feed switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the original feed switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Defective original switch-back switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the original switchback switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
(29) An original jams in the DP* is indicated during copying (a jam in the original conveying section). Jam code 73	Defective DP timing switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the DP timing switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
(30) An original jams in the DP* is indicated during copying (a jam in the original switchback section 1). Jam code 75	Defective original switch-back switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the original switchback switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Defective DP timing switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the DP timing switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if the original conveying motor malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U243 and select the original conveying motor on the operation panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
(31) An original jams in the DP* is indicated during copying (a jam in the original switchback section 2). Jam code 76	Defective original switch-back switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the original switchback switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.

*Optional.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(32) Paper jams in the built-in finisher* during copying (intake jam). Jam code 82	Defective paper conveying switch.	With 5 V DC present at CN4-9 on the finisher main PCB, check if CN4-10 on the finisher main PCB remains high or low when the paper conveying switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper conveying switch.
	Check if the feedshift roller or feedshift pulley is deformed.	Check visually and replace the pulley or roller if deformed.
(33) Paper jams in the built-in finisher* during copying (jam during paper conveying for batch ejection 1). Jam code 83	Defective paper conveying switch.	With 5 V DC present at CN4-9 on the finisher main PCB, check if CN4-10 on the finisher main PCB remains high or low when the paper conveying switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper conveying switch.
	Check if the feedshift roller or press roller is deformed.	Check visually and replace the pulley or roller if deformed.
(34) Paper jams in the built-in finisher* during copying (jam during paper conveying for batch ejection 2). Jam code 84	Defective paper conveying switch.	With 5 V DC present at CN4-9 on the finisher main PCB, check if CN4-10 on the finisher main PCB remains high or low when the paper conveying switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper conveying switch.
	Check if the eject roller or eject pulley is deformed.	Check visually and replace the pulley or roller if deformed.

*Optional.

1-5-2 Self-diagnosis

(1) Self-diagnostic function

This unit is equipped with a self-diagnostic function. When a problem is detected, copying is disabled and the problem displayed as a code consisting of "C" followed by a number between 0030 and 8500, indicating the nature of the problem. A message is also displayed requesting the user to call for service.

After removing the problem, the self-diagnostic function can be reset by turning safety switches 1 or 2 off and back on.



Figure 1-5-2 Service call code display

• List of system errors

When an unexpected error is detected for some reason, a system error will be indicated. After a system error is indicated, the error can be cleared by turning the main switch off and then on. If the error is detected continuously, however, perform the operation shown in Table 1-5-1. If a system error occurs frequently, a fault may have occurred. Check the details of the C call to take proper measures.

System error	Contents	Operation
0420	Large paper deck*/paper feeder* communication problem	System error → Normal C call processing
0440	Finisher* communication problem	System error → Normal C call processing
0450	Mailbox* communication problem	System error → Normal C call processing
0470	Switchback unit* communication problem	System error → Normal C call processing
0610	Bitmap problem	System error → Normal C call processing
0630	DMA problem	System error → Normal C call processing
0640	Hard disk drive problem	System error → Normal C call processing
3100	Scanner carriage problem	System error → Normal C call processing
4000	Polygon motor synchronization problem	System error → Normal C call processing
4010	Polygon motor steady-state problem	System error → Normal C call processing

Table 1-5-1 List of system errors

• Partial operation control

If any of the following calls for service is detected, partial operation control will be activated. After taking measures against the cause of trouble, run maintenance item U906 to reset partial operation control.

C0420(Large paper deck*/paper feeder* communication problem), C0440(Finisher* communication problem), C0450(Mailbox* communication problem), C0470(Switchback unit* communication problem), C0640(Hard disk drive problem), C1010(Upper lift motor problem), C1020(Lower lift motor problem), C1030(Desk upper lift motor problem), C1040(Desk lower lift motor problem), C1100(Paper deck motor 1* problem), C1110(Paper deck motor 2* problem), C1120(Deck right lift* position problem), C1130(Deck left lift* position problem), C2600(Deck conveying motor*/desk drive motor* problem), C8010(Finisher* paper conveying motor problem) to C8500(Mailbox* drive motor problem)

*Optional.

(2) Self diagnostic codes

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C0030	Fax control PCB* problem • Problems with data from fax control PCB.	Defective fax control PCB.	Replace the fax control PCB and check for correct operation.
C0070	Abnormal detection of fax control PCB incompatibility • In the initial communication with the fax control PCB, any normal communication command is not transmitted.	Defective fax software.	Install the fax software to Ver. 2.xx or later.
		Defective fax control PCB.	Replace the fax control PCB and check for correct operation.
C0100	Operation unit PCB backup memory read/write error • Reading from or writing to the backup memory cannot be performed.	Defective EEPROM.	Replace EEPROM 3 and 4.
C0110	Operation unit PCB backup memory data problem • Data in the specified area of the backup memory does not match the specified values. (This code is not displayed. The service call counter counts the frequency of occurrence only as for this code.)	Problem with the backup memory data.	Turn safety switch 1 off and back on and run maintenance item U020 to set the contents of the backup memory data again.
		Defective backup RAM.	If the C0110 is displayed after re-setting the backup memory contents, replace the backup RAM.
C0150	Backup memory read/write error 2 • Reading from or writing to the backup memory cannot be performed.	Defective EEPROM.	Replace EEPROM 1 and 2.
C0160	Backup memory data problem • A checksum error in backup data is detected. (This code is not displayed. The service call counter counts the frequency of occurrence only as for this code.)	Data damage of EEPROM.	Contact the Service Administrative Division.
C0170	Accounting count error • A checksum error in backup data of the accounting counter is detected.	Data damage of EEPROM.	Contact the Service Administrative Division.
C0210	MMI communication problem • There is no reply after 20 retries at communication.	Defective main PCB.	Replace the main PCB and check for correct operation.
C0240	Printer board* communication problem • There is no reply after 20 retries at communication.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC43 on the main PCB and the connector on the printer board. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective main PCB or printer board.	Replace the main PCB or printer board and check for correct operation.

*: Optional

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C0250	Scanner network board* communication problem <ul style="list-style-type: none"> There is no reply after 20 retries at communication. 	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC46 on the main PCB and the connector on the memory PCB. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective main PCB or scanner network board.	Replace the main PCB or scanner network board and check for correct operation.
C0280	Fax control PCB* communication problem <ul style="list-style-type: none"> There is no reply after 20 retries at communication. 	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC44 on the main PCB and the connector on the memory PCB. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective main PCB or fax control PCB.	Replace the main PCB or fax control PCB and check for correct operation.
C0320	Energy save communication problem <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Communication errors from the communication microcomputer on the main PCB. <p>No communication: there is no reply after 5 retries.</p> <p>Abnormal communication: a communication error (parity or checksum error) is detected five times in succession.</p>	Defective main PCB.	Replace the main PCB and check for correct operation.
C0420	Large paper deck*/paper feeder* communication problem <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Communication errors from the communication microcomputer on the main PCB. <p>No communication: there is no reply after 5 retries.</p> <p>Abnormal communication: a communication error (parity or checksum error) is detected five times in succession.</p>	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connectors CN3 on the main PCB and the connector on the deck main PCB/desk main PCB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective main PCB.	Replace the main PCB and check for correct operation.
		Defective deck main PCB/desk main PCB.	Replace the deck main PCB/desk main PCB and check for correct operation.
C0440	Finisher* communication problem <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Communication errors from the communication microcomputer on the main PCB. <p>No communication: there is no reply after 5 retries.</p> <p>Abnormal communication: a communication error (parity or checksum error) is detected five times in succession.</p>	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connectors YC4, YC5 on the main PCB and CN2 on the finisher main PCB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective main PCB.	Replace the main PCB and check for correct operation.
		Defective finisher main PCB.	Replace the finisher main PCB and check for correct operation.

*: Optional

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C0450	Mailbox* communication problem <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Communication errors from the communication microcomputer on the main PCB. No communication: there is no reply after 5 retries. Abnormal communication: a communication error (parity or checksum error) is detected five times in succession.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connectors YC3 on the main PCB and CN1 on the mailbox main PCB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective main PCB.	Replace the main PCB and check for correct operation.
		Defective mailbox main PCB.	Replace the mailbox main PCB and check for correct operation.
C0470	Switchback unit* communication problem <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Communication errors from the communication microcomputer on the main PCB. No communication: there is no reply after 5 retries. Abnormal communication: a communication error (parity or checksum error) is detected five times in succession.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connectors YC3 on the main PCB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective main PCB.	Replace the main PCB and check for correct operation.
		Defective switchback unit main PCB.	Replace the switchback unit main PCB and check for correct operation.
C0610	Bitmap problem <ul style="list-style-type: none"> There is a problem with the data or address bus of the bitmap DRAM. The DIMM on the memory PCB does not operate correctly. 	Defective main PCB.	Replace the main PCB and check for correct operation.
		DIMM installed incorrectly.	Check if the DIMM is inserted into the socket on the main PCB correctly.
		Defective DIMM.	Replace the DIMM and check for correct operation.
C0630	DMA problem <ul style="list-style-type: none"> DMA transmission of compressed, decompressed, rotated, relocated or blanked-out image data does not complete within the specified period of time. 	Defective main PCB.	Replace the main PCB and check for correct operation.

*: Optional

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C0640	Hard disk drive problem <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The hard disk drive cannot be accessed. 	Poor contact of the hard disk drive connector terminals.	Check the connection of connectors YC49 on the main PCB and hard disk drive, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective hard disk drive.	Run U024 (HDD formatting) without turning the power off to initialize the hard disk. Replace the hard disk drive and check for correct operation if the problem is still detected after initialization.
		Defective main PCB.	Replace the main PCB and check for correct operation.
C0820	Fax control PCB* CG ROM checksum error <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A checksum error occurred with the CG ROM data of the fax control PCB. 	Defective fax software.	Install the fax software to Ver. 2.xx or later.
		Defective fax control PCB.	Replace the fax control PCB and check for correct operation.
C0830	Fax control PCB* flash program area checksum error <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A checksum error occurred with the program of the fax control PCB. 	Defective fax software.	Install the fax software to Ver. 2.xx or later.
		Defective fax control PCB.	Replace the fax control PCB and check for correct operation.
C0860	Fax control PCB* software switch checksum error <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A checksum error occurred with the software switch value of the fax control PCB. 	Defective fax software.	Install the fax software to Ver. 2.xx or later.
		Defective fax control PCB.	Replace the fax control PCB and check for correct operation.
C0870	Graphics data transfer problem <ul style="list-style-type: none"> High-capacity data transfer between the fax control PCB and the main PCB was not normally performed even if the data transfer was retried the specified times. 	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC44 on the fax control PCB and the main PCB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective main PCB or fax control PCB.	Replace the main PCB or fax control PCB and check for correct operation.
C0880	Program archive problem <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When power is turned on, the compressed program in the Flash ROM on the fax control PCB was not successfully decompressed. 	Defective fax software.	Install the fax software to Ver. 2.xx or later.
		Defective fax control PCB.	Replace the fax control PCB and check for correct operation.
C0890	Fax control PCB* CG FONT archive problem <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When power is turned on, the compressed CG font in the Flash ROM on the fax control PCB was not successfully decompressed. 	Defective fax software.	Install the fax software to Ver. 2.xx or later.
		Defective fax control PCB.	Replace the fax control PCB and check for correct operation.
C0900	Fax control PCB incompatibility detection problem* <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Fax software is not compatible with MMI software. 	Fax software version is earlier.	Check the version of fax software and upgrade it to a version that accommodates the machine.

*: Optional

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C1010	Upper lift motor problem <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the upper drawer is inserted, the upper lift limit switch does not turn on within 6 s of the upper lift motor turning on and the upper lift limit switch does not turn on in a retry operation after turning off the upper lift motor for 200 ms. At this time, removal and insertion of the drawer is prompted. Even after removal and insertion of the drawer, the upper lift limit switch does not turn on. This problem occurs four times continuously. During copying, the upper lift limit switch does not turn on within 200 ms of the upper lift motor turning on. At this time, removal and insertion of the drawer is prompted. Even after removal and insertion of the drawer, the upper lift limit switch does not turn on. This problem occurs four times continuously. 	Broken gears or couplings of the upper lift motor.	Replace the upper lift motor.
		Defective upper lift motor.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the upper lift motor.
		Poor contact of the upper lift motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.
		Defective upper lift limit switch.	Check if YC13-B9 on the main PCB goes low when the upper lift limit switch is turned off. If not, replace the upper lift limit switch.
		Poor contact of the upper lift limit switch connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.
C1020	Lower lift motor problem <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the lower drawer is inserted, the lower lift limit switch does not turn on within 6 s of the lower lift motor turning on and the lower lift limit switch does not turn on in a retry operation after turning off the lower lift motor for 200 ms. At this time, removal and insertion of the drawer is prompted. Even after removal and insertion of the drawer, the lower lift limit switch does not turn on. This problem occurs four times continuously. During copying, the lower lift limit switch does not turn on within 200 ms of the lower lift motor turning on. At this time, removal and insertion of the drawer is prompted. Even after removal and insertion of the drawer, the lower lift limit switch does not turn on. This problem occurs four times continuously. 	Broken gears or couplings of the lower lift motor.	Replace the lower lift motor.
		Defective lower lift motor.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the lower lift motor.
		Poor contact of the lower lift motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.
		Defective lower lift limit switch.	Check if YC13-B15 on the main PCB goes low when the lower lift limit switch is turned off. If not, replace the lower lift limit switch.
		Poor contact of the lower lift limit switch connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C1030	Desk upper lift motor problem <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the upper drawer of the optional paper feeder is inserted, the desk upper lift limit switch does not turn on within 10 s of the desk upper lift motor turning on. At this time, removal and insertion of the drawer is prompted. Even after removal and insertion of the drawer, the upper lift limit switch does not turn on. This problem occurs four times continuously. 	Broken gears or couplings of the desk upper lift motor.	Replace the desk upper lift motor.
		Defective desk upper lift motor.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the desk upper lift motor.
		Poor contact of the desk upper lift motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.
		Defective desk upper lift limit switch.	Check if CN1-5 on the desk main PCB goes low when the desk upper lift limit switch is turned off. If not, replace the desk upper lift limit switch.
		Poor contact of the desk upper lift limit switch connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.
C1040	Desk lower lift motor problem <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the lower drawer of the optional paper feeder is inserted, the desk lower lift limit switch does not turn on within 10 s of the desk lower lift motor turning on. At this time, removal and insertion of the drawer is prompted. Even after removal and insertion of the drawer, the lower lift limit switch does not turn on. This problem occurs four times continuously. 	Broken gears or couplings of the desk lower lift motor.	Replace the desk lower lift motor.
		Defective desk lower lift motor.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the desk lower lift motor.
		Poor contact of the desk lower lift motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.
		Defective desk lower lift limit switch.	Check if CN1-7 on the desk main PCB goes low when the desk lower lift limit switch is turned off. If not, replace the desk lower lift limit switch.
		Poor contact of the desk lower lift limit switch connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.
C1100	Paper deck motor 1* problem <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A motor over-current signal is detected continuously for 1 s or longer. 	Paper deck motor 1 does not rotate correctly (the motor is overloaded).	Check the gears and remedy if necessary.
		Paper deck motor 1 connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.

*: Optional

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C1110	Paper deck motor 2* problem <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A motor over-current signal is detected continuously for 1 s or longer. 	Paper deck motor 2 does not rotate correctly (the motor is overloaded).	Check the gears and remedy if necessary.
		Paper deck motor 2 connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.
C1120	Deck right lift* position problem <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Deck level switch 2 does not turn on within 30 s of paper deck motor 2 turning on. 	Defective deck level switch 2.	Check if CN5-4 on the desk main PCB goes low when desk level switch 2 is turned off. If not, replace desk level switch 2.
		Poor contact of deck level switch 2 connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.
		Defective paper deck motor 2.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace paper desk motor 2.
		Poor contact of paper deck motor 2 connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.
		The deck right lift does not rise properly.	Check the gears and belts, and remedy if necessary.
C1130	Deck left lift* position problem <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Deck level switch 1 does not turn on within 30 s of paper deck motor 1 turning on. 	Defective deck level switch 1.	Check if CN5-7 on the desk main PCB goes low when desk level switch 1 is turned off. If not, replace desk level switch 1.
		Poor contact of deck level switch 1 connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.
		Defective paper deck motor 1.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace paper desk motor 1.
		Poor contact of paper deck motor 1 connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.
		The deck left lift does not rise properly.	Check the gears and belts, and remedy if necessary.

*: Optional

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C2000	Drive motor problem <ul style="list-style-type: none"> LOCK ALM signal remains high for 1 s, 1 s after the drive motor has turned on. 	Poor contact in the drive motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective drive motor rotation control circuit.	Replace the drive motor.
		Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
C2500	Paper feed motor problem <ul style="list-style-type: none"> LOCK ALM signal remains high for 1 s, 1 s after the paper feed motor has turned on. 	Poor contact in the paper feed motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective paper feed motor rotation control circuit.	Replace the paper feed motor.
		Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
C2600	Deck conveying motor*/desk drive motor* problem <ul style="list-style-type: none"> No pulse is input within 500 ms of the start-up. No pulse is input within 100 ms of the previous pulse input. 	Defective deck conveying motor PCB/desk drive motor PCB.	Replace the deck conveying motor PCB/desk drive motor PCB and check for correct operation.
		Deck conveying motor /desk drive motor does not rotate correctly (the motor is overloaded).	Check the gears and remedy if necessary.
		Poor contact in the deck conveying motor/desk drive motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
C3100	Scanner carriage problem <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The home position is not correct when the power is turned on or at the start of copying using the bypass table. 	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC37 on the main PCB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective scanner home position switch.	Replace the scanner home position switch.
		Defective main PCB or scanner drive PCB.	Replace the main PCB or scanner drive PCB and check for correct operation.
		Defective scanner motor.	Replace the scanner motor.

*: Optional

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C3200	Exposure lamp problem <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Non-lighting of the exposure lamp is detected at the beginning of copying. 	Poor contact of the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC34 on the main PCB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective main PCB.	Replace the main PCB and check for correct operation.
		Defective exposure lamp.	Replace the exposure lamp or inverter PCB and check for correct operation.
C3300	Optical system problem <ul style="list-style-type: none"> After AGC, correct input is not obtained at CCD. (This code is not displayed. The service call counter counts the frequency of occurrence only as for this code.)	Poor contact of the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC34 on the main PCB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective main PCB.	Replace the main PCB and check for correct operation.
		Defective exposure lamp.	Replace the exposure lamp or inverter PCB and check for correct operation.
C4000	Polygon motor synchronization problem <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the polygon motor starts, the motor does not become stable even after 20 s. 	Poor contact in the polygon motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective polygon motor.	Replace the LSU (see page 1-6-20).
		Defective power source PCB.	Check if 24 V DC is supplied to YC2-1 on the main PCB. If not, replace the power source PCB.
		Defective main PCB.	Check if 24 V DC is output from YC8-10 on the main PCB. If not, replace the main PCB.
C4010	Polygon motor steady-state problem <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When high-speed rotation from low-speed rotation is requested, the motor does not become stable even after 20 s. 	Poor contact in the polygon motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective polygon motor.	Replace the LSU (see page 1-6-20).
		Defective power source PCB.	Check if 24 V DC is supplied to YC2-1 on the main PCB. If not, replace the power source PCB.
		Defective main PCB.	Check if 24 V DC is output from YC8-10 on the main PCB. If not, replace the main PCB.
C4200	BD steady-state problem <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The VTC detects a BD error for 600 ms after the polygon motor rotation has been stabilized. 	Defective laser diode.	Replace the LSU (see page 1-6-20).
		Defective polygon motor.	Replace the LSU (see page 1-6-20).
		Defective main PCB.	Replace the main PCB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C5300	Broken cleaning lamp wire While the cleaning lamp is on, the broken cleaning lamp wire detection signal is detected for 2 s continuously.	Defective cleaning lamp.	Replace the cleaning lamp.
		Defective main PCB.	Replace the main PCB and check for correct operation.
C6000	Broken fixing heater wire <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the power is turned on or at the start of fixing control from the sleep mode, 10 s after fixing heater M is turned on, the detected temperature of fixing thermistor 2 is lower than 40 °C/104 °F. When the power is turned on or at the start of fixing control from the sleep mode, 7 s after fixing heater S is turned on, the detected temperature of fixing thermistor 1 is lower than 40 °C/104 °F. During standby, the detected temperatures of fixing thermistors 1 and 2 become lower than 60 °C/140 °F. 	Poor contact in the fixing unit thermistor 1 or 2 connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC10 on the main PCB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Fixing unit thermistor 1 or 2 installed incorrectly.	Check and reinstall if necessary.
		Fixing unit thermostat triggered.	Check for continuity. If none, replace the fixing unit thermostat.
		Fixing unit heater M or S installed incorrectly.	Check and reinstall if necessary.
		Broken fixing unit heater M or S wire.	Check for continuity. If none, replace the fixing unit heater M or S (see page 1-6-38).
C6020	Abnormally high fixing unit thermistor temperature <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Fixing thermistor 1 detects temperature 250 °C/482 °F or higher. Fixing thermistor 2 detects temperature 210 °C/410 °F or higher. 	Shorted fixing unit thermistor 1 or 2.	Measure the resistance. If it is 0 Ω, replace the fixing unit thermistor 1 or 2.
		Broken fixing unit heater control circuit on the power source PCB.	Replace the power source PCB.
C6050	Abnormally low fixing unit thermistor temperature <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When only fixing heater M is on, fixing thermistor 2 detects temperature lower than 80 °C/176 °F during copying. When fixing heater M and fixing heater S are on, fixing thermistor 2 detects temperature lower than 80 °C/176 °F or fixing thermistor 1 detects temperature lower than 100 °C/212 °F during copying. 	Poor contact in the fixing unit thermistor connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC10 on the main PCB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Broken fixing unit thermistor wire.	Measure the resistance. If it is ∞ Ω, replace the fixing unit thermistor.
		Fixing unit thermistor installed incorrectly.	Check and reinstall if necessary.
		Fixing unit thermostat triggered.	Check for continuity. If none, replace the fixing unit thermostat.
		Fixing unit heater M or S installed incorrectly.	Check and reinstall if necessary.
		Broken fixing unit heater M or S wire.	Check for continuity. If none, replace the fixing unit heater M or S.

*: Optional

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C6400	Zero-crossing signal problem <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The main PCB does not detect the zero-crossing signal (Z CROSS SIG) for the time specified below. At power-on: 5 s Others: 5 s 	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connectors YC1-3 on the main PCB and YC2-6 on the power source PCB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective power source PCB.	Check if the zero-crossing signal is output from YC2-6 on the power source PCB. If not, replace the power source PCB.
		Defective main PCB.	Replace the main PCB if C6400 is detected while YC2-6 on the power source PCB outputs the zero-crossing signal.
C6410	Fixing unit connector insertion problem <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Absence of the fixing unit is detected. 	Fixing unit connector inserted incorrectly.	Reinsert the fixing unit connector if necessary.
		Defective fixing unit connector.	Replace the fixing unit.
C6420	Fixing unit fuse cut problem <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The fixing temperature remains at 0 °C/32 °F for 30 s continuously when the fixing heater is on. 	Poor contact in the fixing unit thermistor connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC10 on the main PCB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Broken fixing unit thermistor wire.	Measure the resistance. If it is $\infty \Omega$, replace the fixing unit thermistor.
C7300	Toner sensor problem <ul style="list-style-type: none"> While the toner container sensor is on, the toner sensor in the developing unit does not turn on after the toner sensor turns off and toner is replenished from the toner container. (This code is not displayed. The service call counter counts the frequency of occurrence only as for this code.)	Defective toner sensor.	Replace the toner sensor.
		Poor contact in the toner sensor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective toner container sensor.	Replace the toner container sensor.
		Defective toner container.	Replace the toner container.
C7400	Image formation unit connector insertion problem <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Absence of the image formation unit is detected. 	Image formation unit connector inserted incorrectly.	Reinsert the image formation unit connector if necessary.
		Defective image formation unit connector.	Replace the image formation unit.

*: Optional

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C7410	Drum unit connector insertion problem <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Absence of the drum unit is detected. 	Drum unit connector inserted incorrectly.	Reinsert the drum unit connector if necessary.
		Defective drum unit connector.	Replace the drum unit.
C7450	Image formation unit fuse cut problem <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The input voltage is above 4.5 V. 	Image formation unit connector inserted incorrectly.	Reinsert the image formation unit connector if necessary.
		Defective image formation unit connector.	Replace the image formation unit.
C7800	Broken external temperature thermistor wire <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The input voltage is above 4.5 V. 	Poor contact in the humidity sensor PCB connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective external temperature thermistor.	Replace the humidity sensor PCB.
C7810	Short-circuited external temperature thermistor <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The input voltage is below 1.0 V. 	Poor contact in the humidity sensor PCB connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective external temperature thermistor.	Replace the humidity sensor PCB.
C8010	Finisher paper conveying motor problem (3000-sheet finisher*) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The paper conveying motor lockup signal is detected for 0.5 s or longer. 	Poor contact in the paper conveying motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		The paper conveying motor malfunctions.	Replace the paper conveying motor and check for correct operation.
		Defective finisher main PCB.	Replace the finisher main PCB and check for correct operation.

*: Optional

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8030	Finisher paper conveying belt problem (3000-sheet finisher*) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> An on-to-off or off-to-on state change of the paper conveying belt home position sensor is not detected within 2 s of the paper conveying belt clutch turning on. 	The paper conveying belt is out of phase.	Adjust the paper conveying belt so that it is in phase and check for correct operation.
		The paper conveying belt clutch malfunctions.	Replace the paper conveying belt clutch and check for correct operation.
		The paper conveying belt home position sensor malfunctions.	Replace the paper conveying belt home position sensor and check for correct operation.
		The paper conveying belt home position sensor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		The internal tray is incorrectly inserted.	Check whether the internal tray unit or front cover catches are damaged.
C8140	Finisher tray elevation motor problem (3000-sheet finisher*) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The sort tray is not detected in the home position within 30 s of the start of the tray elevation motor rotation. 	Poor contact in the tray elevation motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		The tray elevation motor malfunctions.	Replace the tray elevation motor and check for correct operation.
		Defective finisher main PCB.	Replace the finisher main PCB and check for correct operation.
C8170	Finisher front side registration motor problem (3000-sheet finisher* or built-in finisher*) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the front side registration home position sensor is on in initialization, the sensor does not turn off within 570 ms of starting initialization. If the front side registration home position sensor is off in initialization, the sensor does not turn on within 3180 ms of starting initialization. 	The front side registration motor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		The front side registration motor malfunctions.	Replace the front side registration motor and check for correct operation.
		The front side registration home position sensor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		The front side registration home position sensor malfunctions.	Replace the front side registration home position sensor and check for correct operation.
		Defective finisher main PCB.	Replace the finisher main PCB and check for correct operation.

*: Optional

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8180	Finisher rear side registration motor problem (3000-sheet finisher* or built-in finisher*) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the rear side registration home position sensor is on in initialization, the sensor does not turn off within 570 ms of starting initialization. If the rear side registration home position sensor is off in initialization, the sensor does not turn on within 2880 ms of starting initialization. 	The rear side registration motor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		The rear side registration motor malfunctions.	Replace the rear side registration motor and check for correct operation.
		The rear side registration home position sensor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		The rear side registration home position sensor malfunctions.	Replace the rear side registration home position sensor and check for correct operation.
		Defective finisher main PCB.	Replace the finisher main PCB and check for correct operation.
C8190	Finisher trailing edge registration motor problem (built-in finisher*) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the trailing edge registration home position sensor is on in initialization, the sensor does not turn off within 570 ms of starting initialization. If the trailing edge registration home position sensor is off in initialization, the sensor does not turn on within 4550 ms of starting initialization. 	The trailing edge registration motor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		The trailing edge registration motor malfunctions.	Replace the trailing edge registration motor and check for correct operation.
		The trailing edge registration home position sensor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		The trailing edge registration home position sensor malfunctions.	Replace the trailing edge registration home position sensor and check for correct operation.
		Defective finisher main PCB.	Replace the finisher main PCB and check for correct operation.
C8210	Finisher* front stapler problem <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The front stapler home position sensor does not change state from non-detection to detection within 200 ms of the start of front stapler motor counterclockwise (forward) rotation. During initialization, the front stapler home position sensor does not change state from non-detection to detection within 600 ms of the start of front stapler motor clockwise (reverse) rotation. 	The front stapler connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		The front stapler malfunctions. a) The front stapler is blocked with a staple. b) The front stapler is broken.	a) Remove the front stapler cartridge, and check the cartridge and the stapling section of the stapler. b) Replace the front stapler and check for correct operation.
		Defective finisher main PCB.	Replace the finisher main PCB and check for correct operation.

*: Optional

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8220	Finisher rear stapler problem (3000-sheet finisher*) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The rear stapler home position sensor does not change state from non-detection to detection within 200 ms of the start of rear stapler motor counterclockwise (forward) rotation. During initialization, the rear stapler home position sensor does not change state from non-detection to detection within 600 ms of the start of rear stapler motor clockwise (reverse) rotation. 	The rear stapler connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		The rear stapler malfunctions. a) The rear stapler is blocked with a staple. b) The rear stapler is broken.	a) Remove the front stapler cartridge, and check the cartridge and the stapling section of the stapler. b) Replace the front stapler and check for correct operation.
		Defective finisher main PCB.	Replace the finisher main PCB and check for correct operation.
C8300	Booklet stitcher* paper ejection motor problem	A problem is detected with the paper ejection motor.	See the booklet stitcher service manual.
C8310	Booklet stitcher* elevation motor problem	A problem is detected with the elevation motor.	See the booklet stitcher service manual.
C8320	Booklet stitcher* rear jog motor problem	A problem is detected with the rear jog motor.	See the booklet stitcher service manual.
C8330	Booklet stitcher* front jog motor problem	A problem is detected with the front jog motor.	See the booklet stitcher service manual.
C8340	Booklet stitcher* staple motor problem	A problem is detected with the staple motor.	See the booklet stitcher service manual.
C8350	Booklet stitcher* batch processing motor problem	A problem is detected with the batch processing motor.	See the booklet stitcher service manual.
C8360	Booklet stitcher* stapler shift motor problem	A problem is detected with the stapler shift motor.	See the booklet stitcher service manual.
C8370	Booklet stitcher* paddle motor problem	A problem is detected with the paddle motor.	See the booklet stitcher service manual.
C8380	Booklet stitcher* folding problem	A problem is detected with the folding sensor.	See the booklet stitcher service manual.
C8390	Booklet stitcher* backup RAM data problem	A backup RAM data error is detected.	See the booklet stitcher service manual.
C8410	Booklet stitcher* punch motor problem	A problem is detected with the punch motor.	See the booklet stitcher service manual.

*: Optional

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8420	Booklet stitcher* shift motor problem	A problem is detected with the shift motor.	See the booklet stitcher service manual.
C8430	Booklet stitcher* punch communication problem	A problem is detected with the punch communication.	See the booklet stitcher service manual.
C8440	Booklet stitcher* punch sensor problem	A problem is detected with the punch sensor.	See the booklet stitcher service manual.
C8450	Booklet stitcher* side punch sensor problem	A problem is detected with the side punch sensor.	See the booklet stitcher service manual.
C8460	Booklet stitcher* punch backup RAM data problem	A problem is detected with the punch backup RAM data.	See the booklet stitcher service manual.
C8470	Booklet stitcher* punch dust sensor problem	A problem is detected with the punch dust sensor.	See the booklet stitcher service manual.
C8480	Booklet stitcher* broken punch power source wire problem	A broken punch power source wire problem is detected.	See the booklet stitcher service manual.
C8500	Mailbox* drive motor problem <ul style="list-style-type: none"> While the mailbox drive motor is driving, synchronization signals do not synchronize continually for 464 ms (motor lockup). 	Defective mailbox drive motor or mailbox main PCB.	Run a simulation of the mailbox (communication test mode, see page 3-2-2 of the mailbox service manual). If there is any problem with the communication, replace the mailbox drive motor or the mailbox main PCB and check for correct operation.

*: Optional

1-5-3 Image formation problems

- (1) No image appears (entirely white).



See page 1-5-38

- (2) No image appears (entirely black).



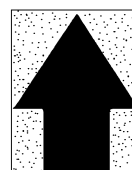
See page 1-5-39

- (3) Image is too light.



See page 1-5-40

- (4) Background is visible.



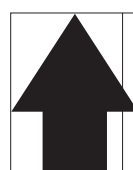
See page 1-5-40

- (5) A white line appears longitudinally.



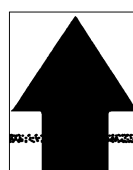
See page 1-5-40

- (6) A black line appears longitudinally.



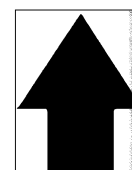
See page 1-5-41

- (7) A black line appears laterally.



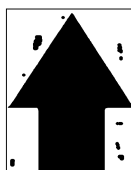
See page 1-5-41

- (8) One side of the copy image is darker than the other.



See page 1-5-41

- (9) Black dots appear on the image.



See page 1-5-42

- (10) Image is blurred.



See page 1-5-42

- (11) The leading edge of the image is consistently misaligned with the original.



See page 1-5-42

- (12) The leading edge of the image is sporadically misaligned with the original.



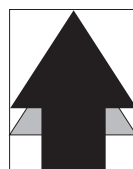
See page 1-5-43

- (13) Paper creases.



See page 1-5-43

- (14) Offset occurs.



See page 1-5-43

- (15) Image is partly missing.



See page 1-5-44

- (16) Fixing is poor.



See page 1-5-44

- (17) Image is out of focus.



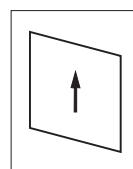
See page 1-5-44

- (18) Image center does not align with the original center.



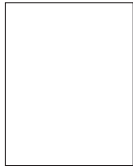
See page 1-5-45

- (19) Image is not square.



See page 1-5-45

- (1) No image appears
(entirely white).

**Causes**

1. No transfer charging.
2. No LSU laser is output.
3. No developing bias is output.

Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
1. No transfer charging.	
A. The connector terminals of the high-voltage transformer PCB make poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
B. Defective main PCB.	Check if YC7-10 on the main PCB goes low when maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the main PCB.
C. Defective high-voltage transformer PCB.	Check if transfer charging takes place when CN1-10 on the high-voltage transformer PCB goes low while maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the high-voltage transformer PCB.
2. No LSU laser is output.	
A. Defective laser scanner unit.	Replace the laser scanner unit.
B. Defective main PCB.	Check if YC8-4 on the main PCB goes low when maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the main PCB.
3. No developing bias is output.	
A. Defective main PCB.	Check if YC7-1 on the main PCB goes low when maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the main PCB.
B. Defective high-voltage transformer PCB.	Check if developing bias voltage is output when the main PCB is normal while maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the high-voltage transformer PCB.

(2) No image appears
(entirely black).



Causes

1. No main charging.
2. Exposure lamp fails to light.

Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
1. No main charging.	
A. Broken main charger wire.	Replace the main charger unit.
B. Leaking main charger housing.	Clean the main charger wire, grid and shield.
C. The connector terminals of the high-voltage transformer PCB make poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
D. Defective main PCB.	Check if YC7-4 on the main PCB goes low when maintenance item U100 is run. If not, replace the main PCB.
E. Defective high-voltage transformer PCB.	Check if main charging takes place when CN1-3 on the high-voltage transformer PCB goes low while maintenance item U100 is run. If not, replace the high-voltage transformer PCB.
2. Exposure lamp fails to light.	
A. The connector terminals of the exposure lamp make poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
B. Defective inverter PCB.	Check if the exposure lamp lights when CN1-1 and 1-2 on the inverter PCB go low while maintenance item U061 is run. If not, replace the inverter PCB.
C. Defective scanner drive PCB.	Check if the exposure lamp lights when YC1-3 on the scanner drive PCB goes low while maintenance item U061 is run. If not, replace the scanner drive PCB.
D. Defective main PCB.	Check if YC37-3 on the main PCB goes low when maintenance item U061 is run. If not, replace the main PCB.

- (3) Image is too light.



Causes

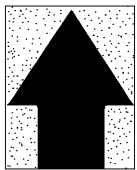
1. Insufficient toner.
2. Deteriorated toner.
3. The transfer voltage is not output properly.
4. Dirty main charger wire.

Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
1. Insufficient toner.	If the display shows the message requesting toner replenishment, replace the cartridge.
2. Deteriorated toner.	Perform the drum refresh operation.
3. The transfer voltage is not output properly.	Clean or check the transfer roller.
4. Dirty main charger.	Clean the main charger or, if it is extremely dirty, replace it.

- (4) Background is visible.

Causes

1. Deteriorated toner.
2. Dirty main charger.



Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
1. Deteriorated toner.	Perform the drum refresh operation.
2. Dirty main charger wire.	Clean the wire or, if it is extremely dirty, replace it.

- (5) A white line appears longitudinally.

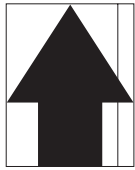
Causes

1. Foreign matter in the developing unit.
2. Dirty shading plate.



Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
1. Foreign matter in the developing unit.	Check if the magnetic brush is formed uniformly. Replace the developing unit if any foreign matter.
2. Dirty shading plate.	Clean the shading plate.

- (6) A black line appears longitudinally.

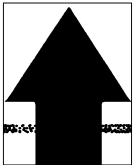


Causes

1. Dirty contact glass.
2. Dirty or flawed drum.
3. Deformed or worn cleaning blade.
4. Dirty scanner mirror.
5. Dirty main charger wire.

Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
1. Dirty contact glass.	Clean the contact glass.
2. Dirty or flawed drum.	Perform the drum refresh operation. If the drum is flawed, replace the drum unit.
3. Deformed or worn cleaning blade.	Replace the cleaning blade.
4. Dirty scanner mirror.	Clean the scanner mirror.
5. Dirty main charger wire.	Clean the main charger wire or, if it is extremely dirty, replace it.

- (7) A black line appears laterally.

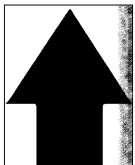


Causes

1. Flawed drum.
2. Dirty developing section.
3. Leaking main charger housing.
4. Leaking separation electrode.

Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
1. Flawed drum.	Replace the drum unit.
2. Dirty developing section.	Clean any part contaminated with toner in the developing section.
3. Leaking main charger housing.	Clean the main charger wire, grid and shield.
4. Leaking separation electrode.	Clean the separation electrode.

- (8) One side of the copy image is darker than the other.

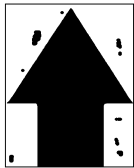


Causes

1. Dirty main charger wire.
2. Defective exposure lamp.

Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
1. Dirty main charger wire.	Clean the wire or, if it is extremely dirty, replace it.
2. Defective exposure lamp.	Check if the exposure lamp light is distributed evenly. If not, replace the exposure lamp (see page 1-6-25).

- (9) Black dots appear on the image.

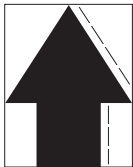


Causes

1. Dirty or flawed drum.
2. Dirty contact glass.
3. Deformed or worn cleaning blade.
4. Dirty drum separation claws.
5. Dirty heat roller separation claws.

Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
1. Dirty or flawed drum.	Perform the drum refresh operation. If the drum is flawed, replace the drum unit.
2. Dirty contact glass.	Clean the contact glass.
3. Deformed or worn cleaning blade.	Replace the cleaning blade.
4. Dirty drum separation claws.	Clean the drum separation claws.
5. Dirty the heat roller separation claws.	Clean the heat roller separation claws.

- (10) Image is blurred.



Causes

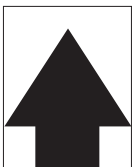
1. Scanner moves erratically.
2. Deformed press roller.
3. Paper conveying section drive problem.

Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
1. Scanner moves erratically.	Check if there is any foreign matter on the front and rear scanner rails. If any, remove it.
2. Deformed press roller.	Replace the press roller (see page 1-6-63).
3. Paper conveying section drive problem.	Check the gears and belts and, if necessary, grease them.

- (11) The leading edge of the image is consistently misaligned with the original.

Causes

1. Misadjusted leading edge registration.
2. Misadjusted scanner leading edge registration.

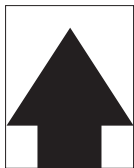


Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
1. Misadjusted leading edge registration.	Readjust the leading edge registration (see pages 1-6-17).
2. Misadjusted scanner leading edge registration.	Readjust the scanner leading edge registration (see page 1-6-17).

- (12) The leading edge of the image is sporadically misaligned with the original.

Causes

1. Feed clutch, paper feed clutch, bypass paper feed clutch or registration clutch installed or operating incorrectly.

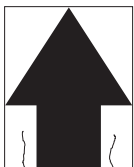


Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
1. Feed clutch, paper feed clutch, bypass paper feed clutch or registration clutch installed or operating incorrectly.	Check the installation position and operation of the feed clutch, paper feed clutch, bypass paper feed clutch and registration clutch. If any of them operates incorrectly, replace it.

- (13) Paper creases.

Causes

1. Paper curled.
2. Paper damp.
3. Defective pressure springs.
4. Defective separation.
5. Defective fans.

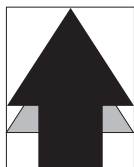


Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
1. Paper curled.	Check the paper storage conditions.
2. Paper damp.	Check the paper storage conditions.
3. Defective pressure springs.	Replace the pressure springs.
4. Defective separation.	Check the drum separation claws and heat roller separation claws.
5. Defective fans.	Replace the fans.

- (14) Offset occurs.

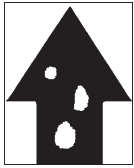
Causes

1. Defective cleaning blade.
2. Defective fixing section.



Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
1. Defective cleaning blade.	Replace the cleaning blade (see page 1-6-46).
2. Defective fixing section.	Replace the heat roller and press roller.

(15) Image is partly missing.

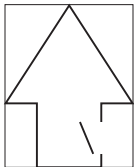


Causes

1. Paper damp.
2. Paper creased.
3. Drum condensation.
4. Flawed drum.

Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
1. Paper damp.	Check the paper storage conditions.
2. Paper creased.	Replace the paper.
3. Drum condensation.	Perform the drum refresh operation.
4. Flawed drum.	Perform the drum refresh operation. If the drum is flawed, replace the drum unit.

(16) Fixing is poor.



Causes

1. Wrong paper.
2. Defective pressure springs.
3. Flawed press roller.
4. Defective fixing heater S.

Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
1. Wrong paper.	Check if the paper meets specifications.
2. Defective pressure springs.	Replace the pressure springs.
3. Flawed press roller.	Replace the press roller (see page 1-6-63).
4. Defective fixing heater S.	Replace the fixing heater S (see page 1-6-63).

(17) Image is out of focus.



Causes

1. Defective image scanning unit.
2. Drum condensation.

Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
1. Defective image scanning unit.	Replace the image scanning unit (see page 1-6-30).
2. Drum condensation.	Perform the drum refresh operation.

(18) Image center does not align with the original center.

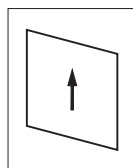


Causes

1. Misadjusted center line of image printing.
2. Misadjusted scanner center line.
3. Original placed incorrectly.

Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
1. Misadjusted center line of image printing.	Readjust the center line of image printing (see page 1-6-19).
2. Misadjusted scanner center line.	Readjust the scanner center line (see page 1-6-37).
3. Original placed incorrectly.	Place the original correctly.

(19) Image is not square.



Causes

1. Laser scanner unit positioned incorrectly.
2. Image scanning unit positioned incorrectly.

Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
1. Laser scanner unit positioned incorrectly.	Adjust the installation position of the laser scanner unit (see page 1-6-30).
2. Image scanning unit positioned incorrectly.	Adjust the installation position of the image scanning unit (see page 1-6-30).

1-5-4 Electrical problems

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(1) The machine does not operate when the power switch is turned on.	No electricity at the power outlet.	Measure the input voltage.
	The power cord is not plugged in properly.	Check the contact between the power plug and the outlet.
	The front cover, conveying cover and/or side cover are/is not closed completely.	Check the front cover, conveying cover and side cover.
	Broken power cord.	Check for continuity. If none, replace the cord.
	Defective power switch.	Check for continuity across the contacts. If none, replace the power switch.
	Blown fuse in the power source PCB.	Check for continuity. If none, remove the cause of blowing and replace the fuse.
	Defective safety switch 1 or 2.	Check for continuity across the contacts of each switch. If none, replace the switch.
(2) The drive motor does not operate (C2000).	Defective power source PCB.	With AC present, check for 24 V DC at YC1-1, 3.4 V DC at YC1-6 and YC1-7, 5.1 V DC at YC1-9 on the power source PCB. If none, replace the power source PCB.
	Poor contact in the drive motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Broken drive motor gear.	Check visually and replace the drive motor if necessary.
	Defective drive motor.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if the drive motor operates when YC11-9 on the main PCB goes low. If not, replace the drive motor.
(3) The paper feed motor does not operate (C2500).	Defective main PCB.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if YC11-9 on the main PCB goes low. If not, replace the main PCB.
	Poor contact in the paper feed motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Broken paper feed motor gear.	Check visually and replace the paper feed motor if necessary.
	Defective paper feed motor.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if the paper feed motor operates when YC11-10 on the main PCB goes low. If not, replace the paper feed motor.
(4) The eject motor does not operate.	Defective main PCB.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if YC11-10 on the main PCB goes low. If not, replace the main PCB.
	Poor contact in the eject motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Broken eject motor gear.	Check visually and replace the eject motor if necessary.
	Defective eject motor.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if the eject motor operates when YC16-B11, YC16-B12, YC16-B13 and YC16-B14 on the main PCB go low. If not, replace the eject motor.
	Defective eject switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the eject switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(4) The eject motor does not operate.	Defective main PCB.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if YC16-B11, YC16-B12, YC16-B13 and YC16-B14 on the main PCB go low. If not, replace the main PCB.
(5) The upper lift motor does not operate (C1010).	Broken upper lift motor coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the upper lift motor.
	Poor contact in the upper lift motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective main PCB.	Check if 24 V DC is output across YC13-A17 on the main PCB right after the upper drawer is installed. If not, replace the main PCB.
(6) The lower lift motor does not operate (C1020).	Broken lower lift motor coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the lower lift motor.
	Poor contact in the lower lift motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective main PCB.	Check if 24 V DC is output across YC13-B7 on the main PCB right after the lower drawer is installed. If not, replace the main PCB.
(7) The scanner motor does not operate.	Broken scanner motor coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the scanner motor.
	Poor contact in the scanner motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
(8) Cooling fan motor 1 does not operate.	Broken cooling fan motor 1 coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace cooling fan motor 1.
	Poor contact in the cooling fan motor 1 connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.
(9) Cooling fan motor 2 does not operate.	Broken cooling fan motor 2 coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace cooling fan motor 2.
	Poor contact in the cooling fan motor 2 connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.
(10) Cooling fan motor 3 does not operate.	Broken cooling fan motor 3 coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace cooling fan motor 3.
	Poor contact in the cooling fan motor 3 connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.
(11) Cooling fan motor 4 does not operate.	Broken cooling fan motor 4 coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace cooling fan motor 4.
	Poor contact in the cooling fan motor 4 connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(12) Cooling fan motor 5 does not operate.	Broken cooling fan motor 5 coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace cooling fan motor 5.
	Poor contact in the cooling fan motor 5 connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.
(13) Cooling fan motor 6 does not operate.	Broken cooling fan motor 6 coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace cooling fan motor 6.
	Poor contact in the cooling fan motor 6 connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.
(14) Cooling fan motor 7 does not operate.	Broken cooling fan motor 7 coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace cooling fan motor 7.
	Poor contact in the cooling fan motor 7 connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.
(15) The upper paper feed clutch does not operate.	Broken upper paper feed clutch coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the upper paper feed clutch.
	Poor contact in the upper paper feed clutch connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective main PCB.	Run maintenance item U032 and check if YC16-B1 on the main PCB goes low. If not, replace the main PCB.
(16) The lower paper feed clutch does not operate.	Broken lower paper feed clutch coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the lower paper feed clutch.
	Poor contact in the lower paper feed clutch connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective main PCB.	Run maintenance item U032 and check if YC16-B4 on the main PCB goes low. If not, replace the main PCB.
(17) Feed clutch 1 does not operate.	Broken feed clutch 1 coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace feed clutch 1.
	Poor contact in feed clutch 1 connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective main PCB.	Run maintenance item U032 and check if YC11-14 on the main PCB goes low. If not, replace the main PCB.
(18) Feed clutch 2 does not operate.	Broken feed clutch 2 coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace feed clutch 2.
	Poor contact in feed clutch 2 connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective main PCB.	Run maintenance item U032 and check if YC13-A12 on the main PCB goes low. If not, replace the main PCB.

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(19) Feed clutch 3 does not operate.	Broken feed clutch 3 coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace feed clutch 3.
	Poor contact in feed clutch 3 connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective main PCB.	Run maintenance item U032 and check if YC13-A5 on the main PCB goes low. If not, replace the main PCB.
(20) The bypass paper feed clutch does not operate.	Broken bypass paper feed clutch coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the bypass paper feed clutch.
	Poor contact in the bypass paper feed clutch connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective main PCB.	Run maintenance item U032 and check if YC6-A9 on the main PCB goes low. If not, replace the main PCB.
(21) The bypass feed clutch does not operate.	Broken bypass feed clutch coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the bypass feed clutch.
	Poor contact in the bypass feed clutch connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective main PCB.	Run maintenance item U032 and check if YC6-A11 on the main PCB goes low. If not, replace the main PCB.
(22) The registration clutch does not operate.	Broken registration clutch coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the registration clutch.
	Poor contact in the registration clutch connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective main PCB.	Run maintenance item U032 and check if YC16-B6 on the main PCB goes low. If not, replace the main PCB.
(23) The duplex feed clutch does not operate.	Broken duplex feed clutch coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the duplex feed clutch.
	Poor contact of the duplex feed clutch connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective main PCB.	Run maintenance item U032 and check if YC10-B2 on the copier main PCB goes low. If not, replace the main PCB.
(24) The feedshift solenoid does not operate.	Broken feedshift solenoid coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the feedshift solenoid.
	Poor contact in the feedshift solenoid connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective main PCB.	Run maintenance item U033 and check if YC16-A1 and YC16-A2 on the main PCB go low. If not, replace the main PCB.

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(25) The toner feed solenoid does not operate.	Broken toner feed solenoid coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the toner feed solenoid.
	Poor contact in the toner feed solenoid connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective main PCB.	Run maintenance item U033 and check if YC9-B2 on the main PCB goes low. If not, replace the main PCB.
(26) The cleaning lamp does not turn on.	Poor contact in the cleaning lamp connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective cleaning lamp.	Check for continuity. If none, replace the cleaning lamp.
	Defective main PCB.	If the cleaning lamp turns on when YC9-B7 on the main PCB is held low, replace the main PCB.
(27) The exposure lamp does not turn on.	Poor contact in the exposure lamp connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective inverter PCB.	Run maintenance item U061 and check if the exposure lamp turns on with CN1-1 and CN1-2 on the inverter PCB go low. If not, replace the inverter PCB.
	Defective scanner drive PCB.	Run maintenance item U061 and check if the exposure lamp turns on with YC1-3 on the scanner drive PCB goes low. If not, replace the scanner drive PCB.
	Defective main PCB.	Run maintenance item U061 and check if YC37-3 on the main PCB goes low. If not, replace the main PCB.
(28) The exposure lamp does not turn off.	Defective inverter PCB.	If the exposure lamp does not turn off with CN1-1 and CN1-2 on the inverter PCB high, replace the inverter PCB.
	Defective scanner drive PCB.	If YC1-3 on the scanner drive PCB are always low, replace the scanner drive PCB.
(29) The fixing heater does not turn on (C6000).	Broken wire in fixing heater M or S.	Check for continuity across each heater. If none, replace the heater M or S.
	Fixing unit thermostat triggered.	Check for continuity across thermostat. If none, remove the cause and replace the thermostat.
(30) The fixing heater does not turn off.	Broken fixing unit thermistor wire.	Measure the resistance. If it is $\infty \Omega$, replace the fixing unit thermistor.
	Dirty sensor part of the fixing unit thermistor.	Check visually and clean the thermistor sensor parts.
(31) Main charging is not performed.	Broken main charger wire.	See page 1-5-39.
	Leaking main charger housing.	
	Poor contact in the high-voltage transformer PCB connector terminals.	
	Defective main PCB.	
	Defective high-voltage transformer PCB.	

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(32) Transfer charging is not performed.	Poor contact in the high-voltage transformer PCB connector terminals.	See page 1-5-38.
	Defective main PCB.	
	Defective high-voltage transformer PCB.	
(33) No developing bias is output.	Defective main PCB.	See page 1-5-38.
	Defective high-voltage transformer PCB.	
(34) The original size is not detected.	Defective original detection switch.	If the level of YC5-2 on the scanner drive PCB does not change when the original detection switch is turned on and off, replace the original detection switch.
(35) The original size is not detected correctly.	Original is not placed correctly.	Check the original and correct if necessary.
	Poor contact in the original size detection sensor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective original size detection sensor.	Check if sensor operates correctly. If not, replace it.
(36) The touch panel keys do not work.	Poor contact in the touch panel connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective touch panel or operation unit PCB.	If any keys do not work after the touch panel has been initialized, replace the touch panel or operation unit PCB.
(37) The message requesting paper to be loaded is shown when paper is present in the upper drawer.	Poor contact in the upper paper switch connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective upper paper switch.	Check if YC13-B12 on the main PCB goes low when the upper paper switch is turned on with 5 V DC present at YC13-B13 on the main PCB. If not, replace the upper paper switch.
(38) The message requesting paper to be loaded is shown when paper is present in the lower drawer.	Poor contact in the lower paper switch connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective lower paper switch.	Check if YC13-B18 on the main PCB goes low when the upper paper switch is turned on with 5 V DC present at YC13-B19 on the main PCB. If not, replace the lower paper switch.
(39) The message requesting paper to be loaded is shown when paper is present on the bypass tray.	Poor contact in the bypass paper switch connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective bypass paper switch.	Check if YC6-A6 on the main PCB goes low when the bypass paper switch is turned on with 5 V DC present at YC6-A5 on the main PCB. If not, replace the bypass paper switch.

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(40) The size of paper in the upper drawer is not displayed correctly.	Poor contact in the upper paper length switch connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective upper paper length switch.	Check if YC13-B2 on the main PCB goes low when the upper paper length switch is turned on. If not, replace the upper paper length switch.
	Poor contact in the upper paper width switch connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective upper paper width switch.	Check if the levels of YC12-3, YC12-4 and YC12-5 on the main PCB change alternately when the width guide in the upper drawer is moved. If not, replace the upper paper width switch.
(41) The size of paper in the lower drawer is not displayed correctly.	Poor contact in the lower paper length switch connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective lower paper length switch.	Check if YC13-A19 on the main PCB goes low when the lower paper length switch is turned on. If not, replace the lower paper length switch.
	Poor contact in the lower paper width switch connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective lower paper width switch.	Check if the levels of YC12-9, YC12-10 and YC12-11 on the main PCB change alternately when the width guide in the lower drawer is moved. If not, replace the lower paper width switch.
(42) The printing width of the paper on the bypass tray is not detected correctly.	Poor contact in the bypass paper length switch connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective bypass paper length switch.	Check if YC6-B11 on the main PCB goes low when the bypass paper length switch is turned on. If not, replace the bypass paper length switch.
	Poor contact in the bypass paper width switch connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective bypass paper width switch.	Check if the levels of YC6-A1, YC6-A2 and YC6-A3 on the main PCB change alternately when the insert guide on the bypass table is moved. If not, replace the bypass paper width switch.

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(43) A paper jam in the paper feed, paper conveying or fixing section is indicated when the power switch is turned on.	A piece of paper torn from copy paper is caught around feed switch 1/2/3, registration switch, feedshift switch or eject switch.	Check and remove if any.
	Defective feed switch 1.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 1 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Defective feed switch 2.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 2 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Defective feed switch 3.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 3 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Defective registration switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the registration switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Defective eject switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the eject switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Defective feedshift switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the feedshift switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
(44) The message requesting covers to be closed is displayed when the front cover and conveying cover are closed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals of safety switch 1 or 2.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective safety switch 1 or 2.	Check for continuity across each switch. If there is no continuity when the switch is on, replace it.
(45) Others.	Wiring is broken, shorted or makes poor contact.	Check for continuity. If none, repair.
	Noise.	Locate the source of noise and remove.

1-5-5 Mechanical problems

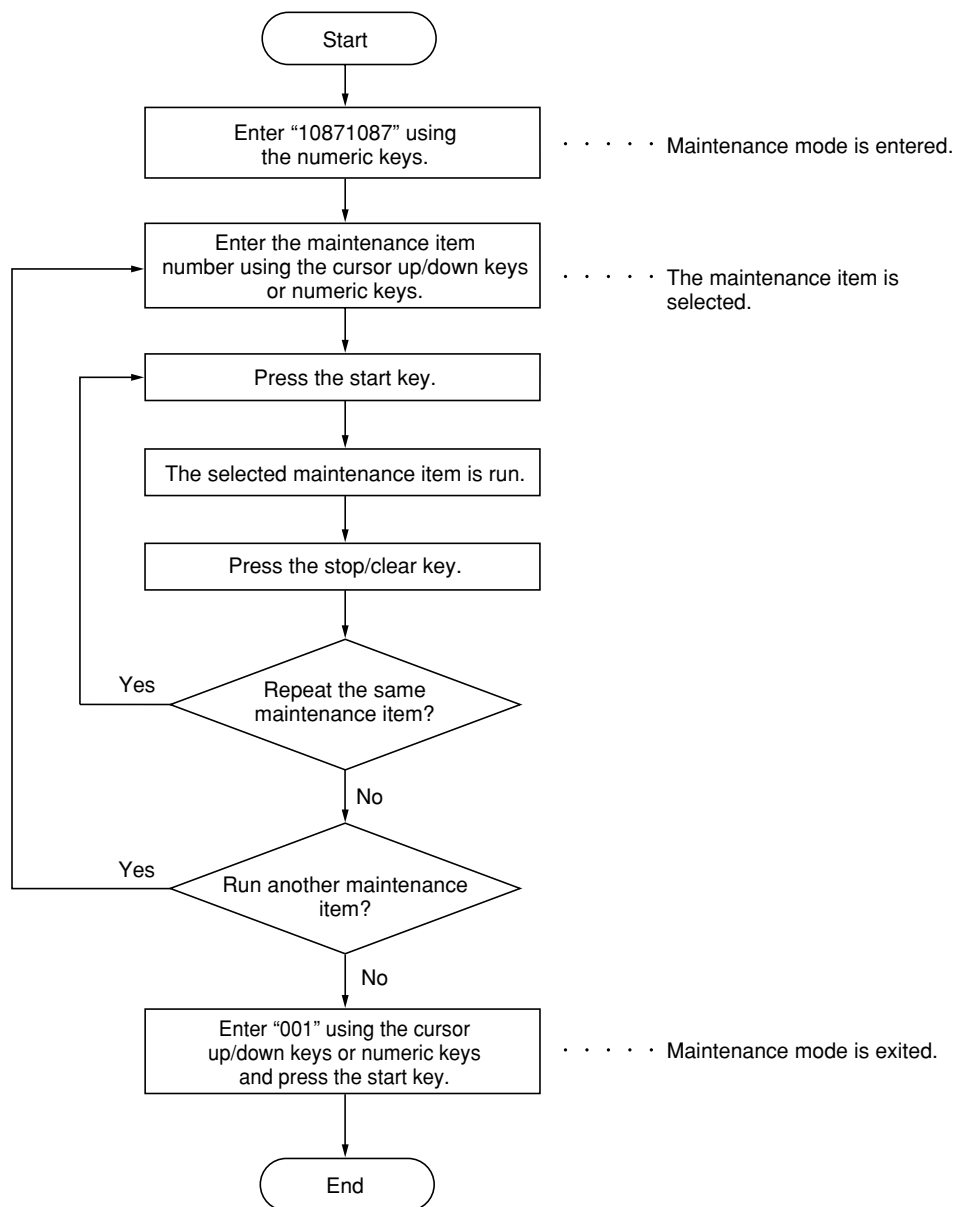
Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(1) No primary paper feed.	Check if the surfaces of the following rollers or pulleys are dirty with paper powder: upper/lower forwarding pulleys, upper/lower paper feed pulleys, upper/lower separation pulleys, feed rollers, registration rollers, bypass forwarding pulleys, bypass paper feed pulleys and bypass separation pulleys.	Clean with isopropyl alcohol.
	Check if the upper/lower forwarding pulleys, upper/lower paper feed pulleys or upper/lower separation pulleys is deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulleys (see page 1-6-3).
	Electrical problem with the following electromagnetic clutches: upper/lower paper feed clutches, feed clutches 1/2/3, bypass paper feed clutch and bypass feed clutch.	See pages 1-5-48 and 49.
(2) No secondary paper feed.	Check if the surfaces of the right and left registration rollers are dirty with paper powder.	Clean with isopropyl alcohol.
	Electrical problem with the registration clutch.	See page 1-5-49.
(3) Skewed paper feed.	Width guide in a drawer installed incorrectly.	Check the width guide visually and correct or replace if necessary.
	Deformed width guide in a drawer.	Repair or replace if necessary .
	Check if a pressure spring along the paper conveying path is deformed or out of place.	Repair or replace.
(4) The scanner does not travel.	Check if the scanner wire is loose.	Reinstall the scanner wire (see page 1-6-16).
	The scanner motor malfunctions.	See page 1-5-47.
(5) Multiple sheets of paper are fed at one time.	Check if the upper or lower separation pulley is worn.	Replace the upper or lower separation pulley if it is worn (see page 1-6-3).
	Check if the paper is curled.	Change the paper.
(6) Paper jams.	Check if the paper is excessively curled.	Change the paper.
	Deformed guides along the paper conveying path.	Repair or replace if necessary.
	Check if the contact between the right and left registration rollers is correct.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
	Check if the contact between the feed roller and feed pulley is correct.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
	Check if the press roller is extremely dirty or deformed.	Clean or replace the press roller.
	Check if the contact between the heat roller and its separation claws is correct.	Repair if any springs are off the separation claws.
	Check if the contact between the eject roller and pulley is correct.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
	The feedshift solenoid malfunctions.	See page 1-5-49.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(6) Paper jams.	Check if the duplex feed pulley, upper duplex feed roller or lower duplex feed roller is deformed.	Check visually and replace the pulley or roller if deformed.
(7) Toner drops on the paper conveying path.	Check if the developing unit is extremely dirty.	Clean the developing unit.
(8) Abnormal noise is heard.	Check if the pulleys, rollers and gears operate smoothly.	Grease the bearings and gears.
	Check if the following electromagnetic clutches are installed correctly: upper/lower paper feed clutches, feed clutches 1/2/3, bypass paper feed clutch and bypass feed clutch.	Correct.

1-6-1 Precautions for assembly and disassembly

(1) Precautions

- Be sure to turn the power switch off and disconnect the power plug before starting disassembly.
- When handling PCBs, do not touch connectors with bare hands or damage the board.
- Do not touch any PCB containing ICs with bare hands or any object prone to static charge.
- Use only the specified parts to replace the fixing unit thermostat. Never substitute electric wires, as the copier may be seriously damaged.
- Use the following testers when measuring voltages:
 - Hioki 3200
 - Sanwa MD-180C
 - Sanwa YX-360TR
 - Beckman TECH300
 - Beckman DM45
 - Beckman 330*
 - Beckman 3030*
 - Beckman DM850*
 - Fuke 8060A*
 - Arlec DMM1050
 - Arlec YF1030C
- * Capable of measuring RMS values.
- Prepare the following as test originals:
 1. NTC (new test chart)
 2. NPTC (newspaper test chart)
- When replacing battery on a PCB, dispose properly according to laws and regulations.

(2) Running a maintenance item

1-6-2 Paper feed section

(1) Detaching and refitting the forwarding, paper feed and separation pulleys

Follow the procedure below to replace the forwarding, paper feed and separation pulleys.

Procedure

- Removing the primary paper feed units
 1. Open the front cover and pull out the upper and lower drawers.
 2. Remove the one screw from each of the primary paper feed units and then the units.

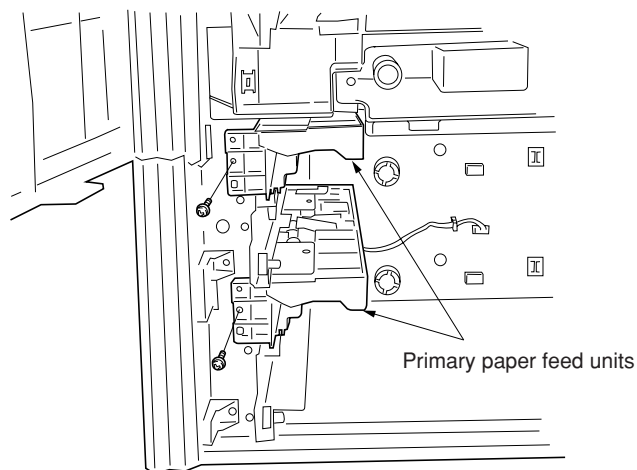


Figure 1-6-1

- Removing the forwarding pulley
 3. Remove the stopper.
 4. Raise the forwarding pulley retainer in the direction the arrow, and remove from the primary paper feed unit.

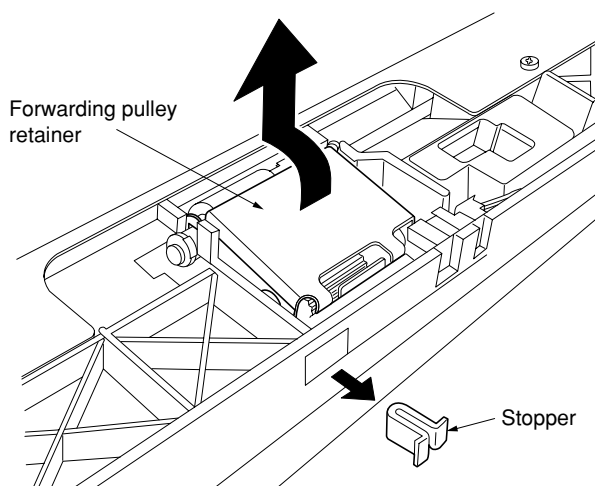


Figure 1-6-2

5. Remove the stop ring, pull the forwarding pulley shaft in the direction of the arrow, and remove the forwarding pulley.

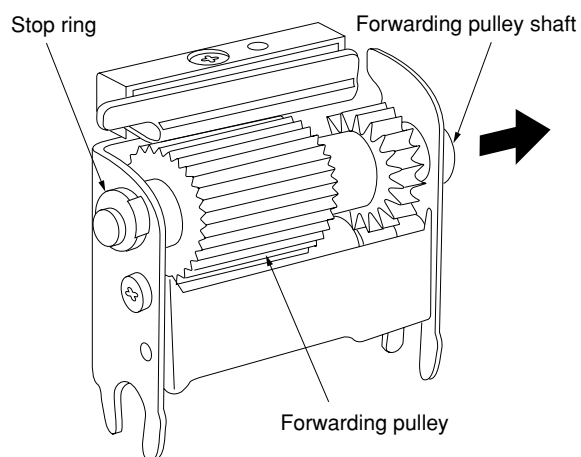


Figure 1-6-3

- Removing the paper feed pulley
6. Remove the two stop rings.
 7. Pull the paper feed shaft toward the rear of the primary paper feed unit (in the direction of the arrow) and remove the paper feed pulley.

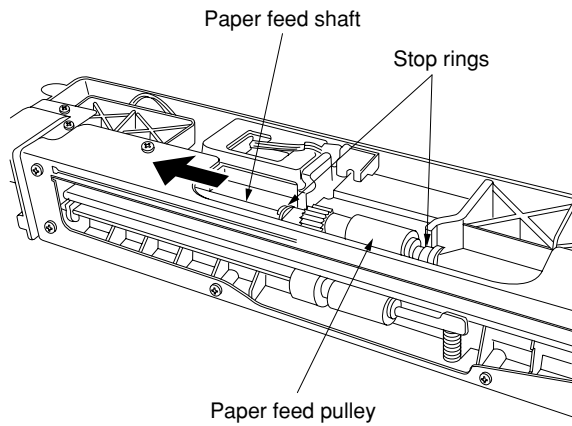


Figure 1-6-4

- Removing the separation pulley
8. Remove the stop ring on the rear of the primary paper feed unit.
 9. Pull the separation shaft toward the machine rear (in the direction of the arrow) and remove the separation pulley.

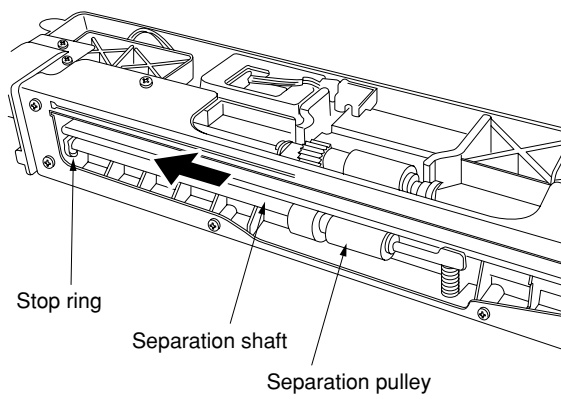


Figure 1-6-5

10. Replace the forwarding, paper feed and separation pulleys.

Caution:

- When fitting the forwarding pulley, orient it correctly as shown in Figure 1-6-6.
- When fitting the separation pulley, keep the blue end of the separation toward the machine rear.

11. Refit all removed parts.

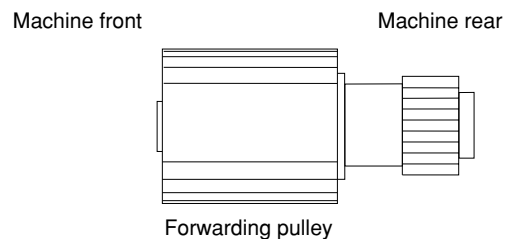


Figure 1-6-6

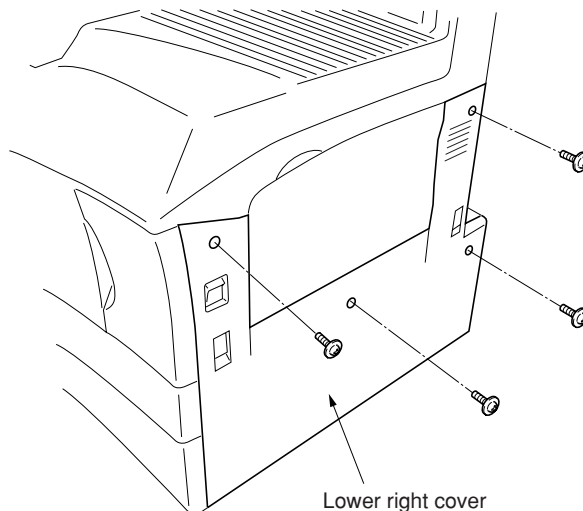
(2) Detaching and refitting the bypass separation, bypass paper feed and bypass forwarding pulleys

Follow the procedure below to replace the bypass separation, bypass paper feed and bypass forwarding pulleys.

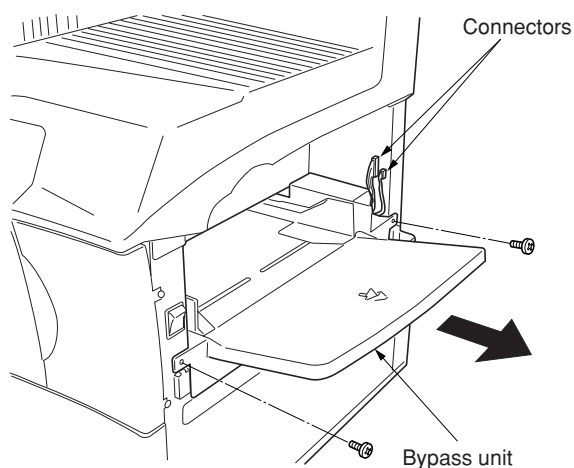
Procedure

- Removing the bypass unit

1. Remove the four screws holding the lower right cover and then the cover.

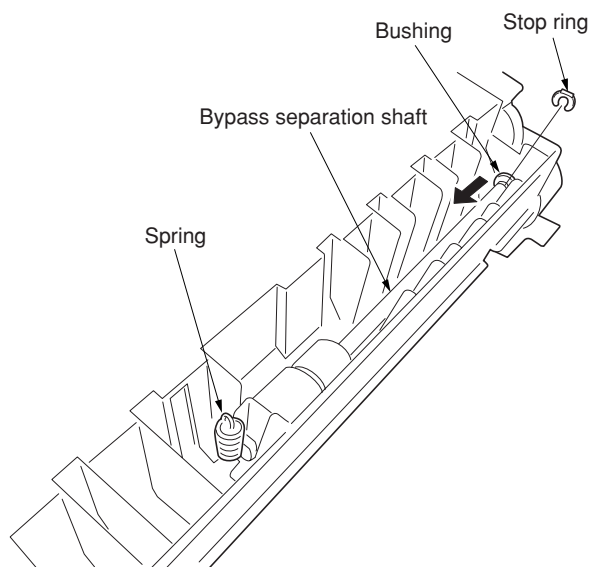
**Figure 1-6-7**

2. Remove the two screws holding the bypass unit and disconnect the two connectors, and then remove the unit.

**Figure 1-6-8**

- Removing the bypass separation pulley

3. Reverse the bypass unit and remove the spring and stop ring from the bypass separation pulley and move the bushing inside.

**Figure 1-6-9**

4. Raise the bypass separation shaft as shown in the diagram, remove the holder plate and the bushing, and then remove the bypass separation pulley.

* Take care not to remove the spring pin of the gear at the rear of the bypass separation shaft. If it is removed, refit it to its original position.

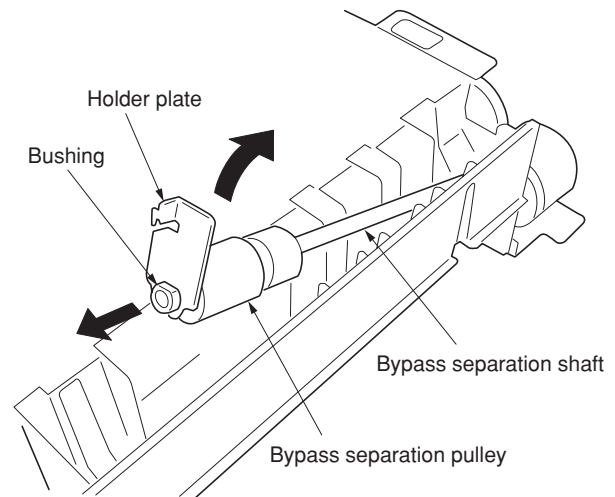


Figure 1-6-10

• Removing the bypass paper feed pulley

5. Detach the connector of the bypass paper switch and remove the wire from the three clamps.
6. Remove the screw holding the bypass unit cover and then the cover.

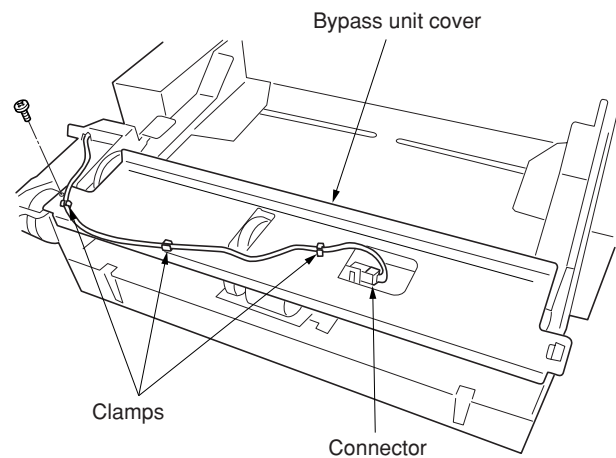


Figure 1-6-11

7. Remove the stop ring and bushing on the front of the bypass paper feed shaft.

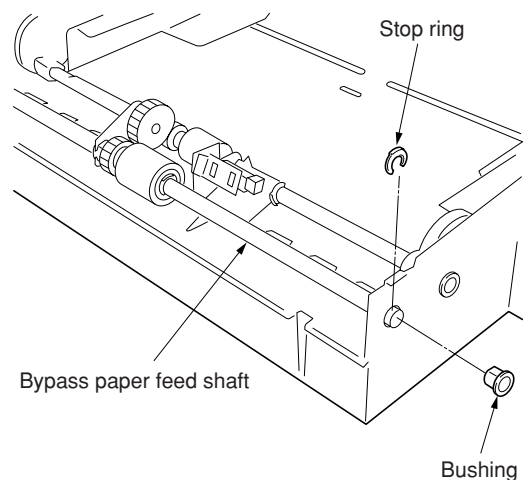


Figure 1-6-12

8. Raise the bypass paper feed shaft as shown in the illustration, remove the stop ring, and then remove the bypass paper feed pulley.

Caution:

- When fitting the bypass paper feed pulley, keep the blue end of the paper feed toward the machine rear.

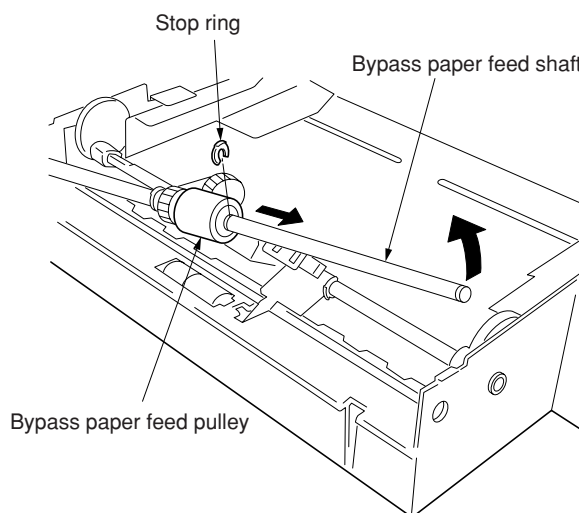


Figure 1-6-13

- Removing the bypass forwarding pulley
9. Remove the wire of the bypass paper feed clutch from the clamp.
 10. Remove the stop ring and bypass paper feed clutch.
- When refitting, insert the cutout in the bypass paper feed clutch over the stopper on the copier.

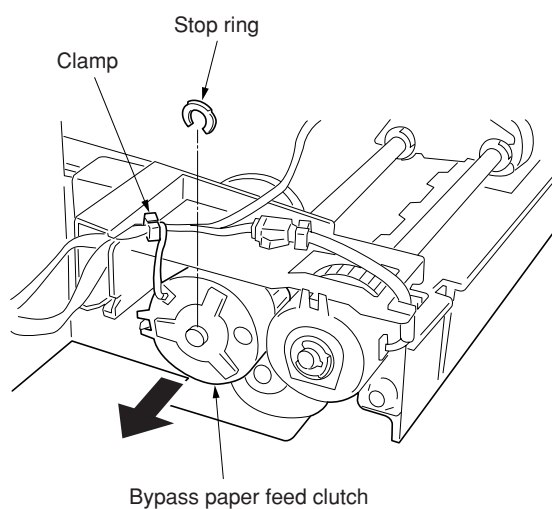


Figure 1-6-14

11. Remove the screw from the cam at the rear of the bypass forwarding pulley shaft and move the cam and the bushing toward the inner side.

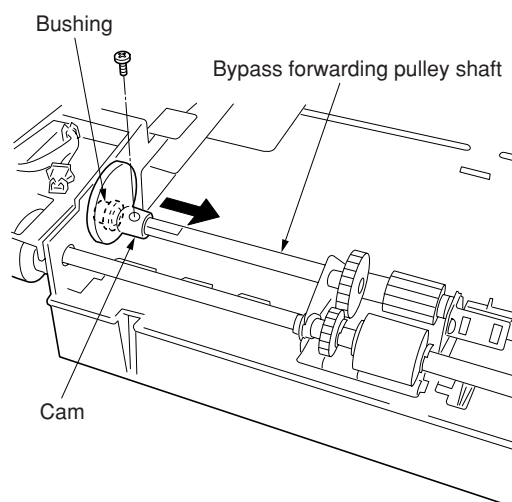


Figure 1-6-15

12. Remove the stop ring of the bypass paper feed shaft and slide the bushing in the direction of the arrow.

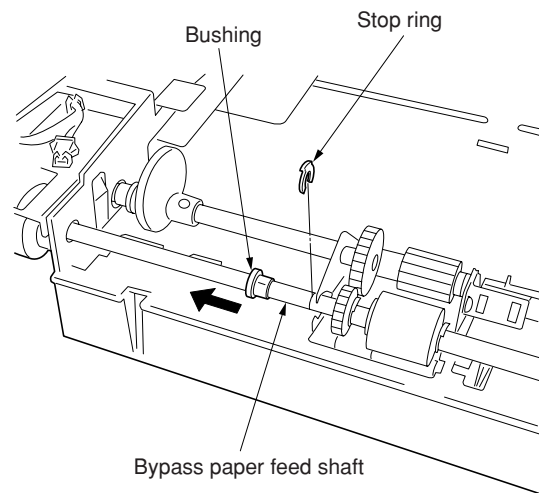


Figure 1-6-16

13. Slide the bypass forwarding pulley shaft temporarily toward the rear side and then raise it to remove from the bypass unit.
* Remove the shaft while raising the actuator of the bypass paper switch.

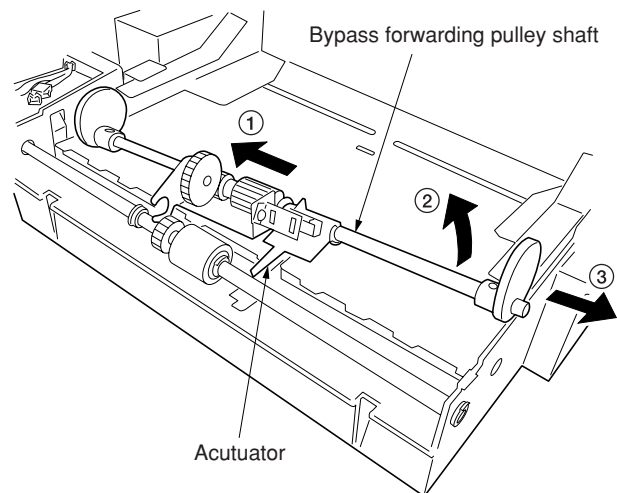


Figure 1-6-17

14. Remove the bushing and cam on the rear of the bypass forwarding pulley shaft.

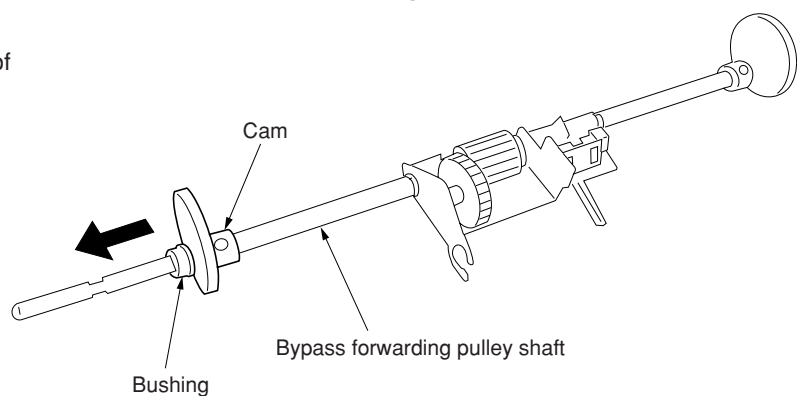
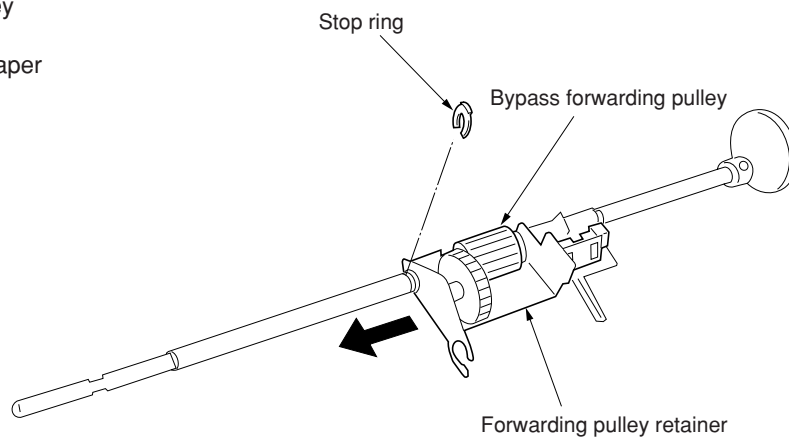
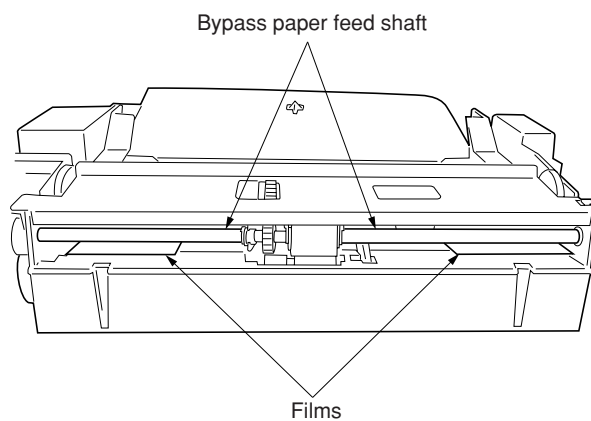


Figure 1-6-18

15. Remove the stop ring and slide the bypass forwarding pulley with the forwarding pulley retainer from the shaft to remove it.
16. Replace the bypass separation, bypass paper feed and bypass forwarding pulleys.

**Figure 1-6-19**

17. Refit all removed parts.
* Fit the bypass unit cover so that the film on the cover is positioned under the bypass paper feed shaft.

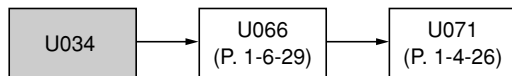
**Figure 1-6-20**

(3) Adjustment after roller and clutch replacement

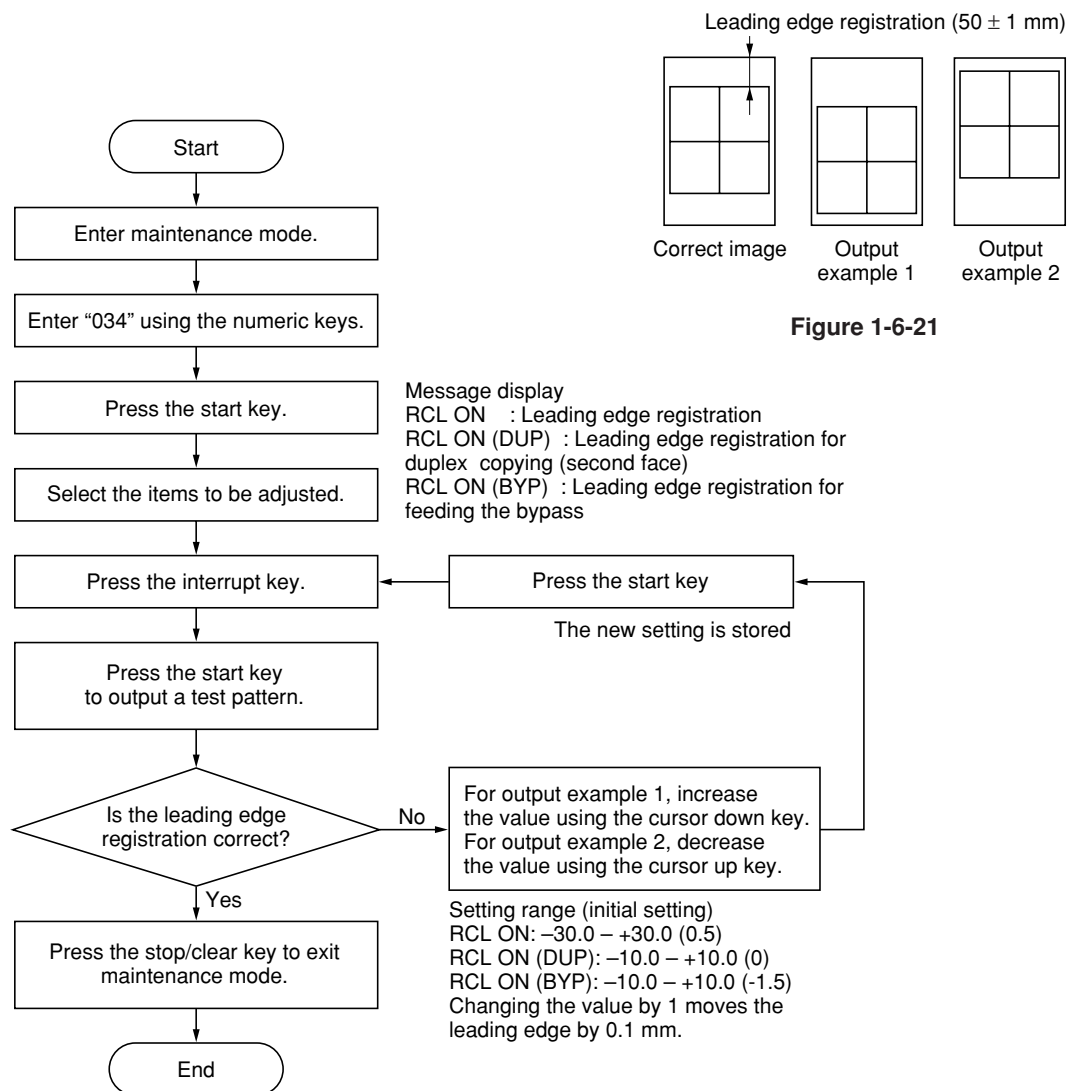
Perform the following adjustment after refitting rollers and clutches.

(3-1) Adjusting the leading edge registration of image printing

Make the following adjustment if there is a regular error between the leading edges of the copy image and original.

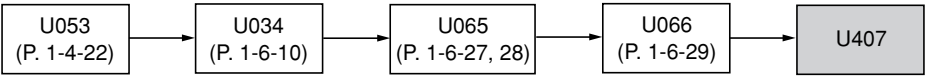
**Caution:**

Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the above adjustments in maintenance mode.

Procedure

(3-2) Adjusting the leading edge registration for memory image printing

Make the following adjustment if there is a regular error between the leading edge of the copy image and the leading edge of the original during memory copying.



Caution:

Before making the following adjustment, ensure the above adjustments have been made in maintenance mode.

Procedure

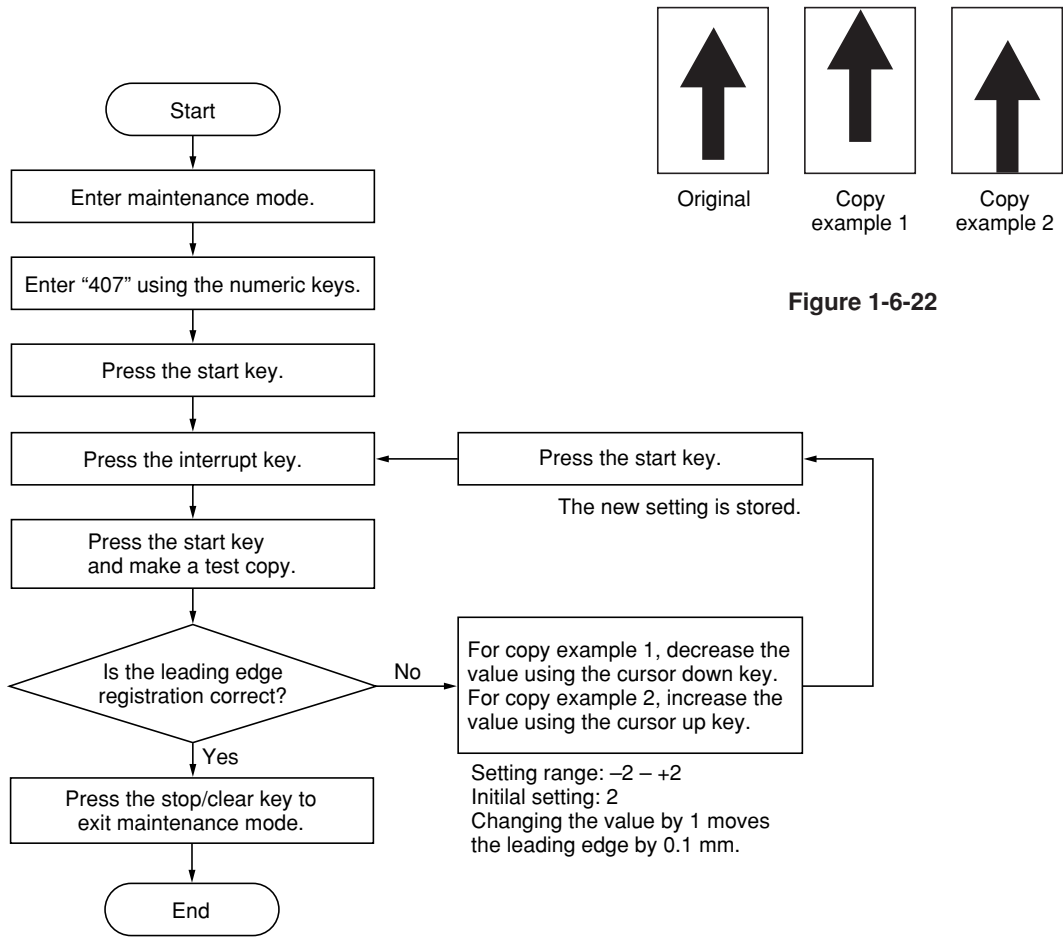
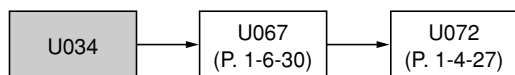


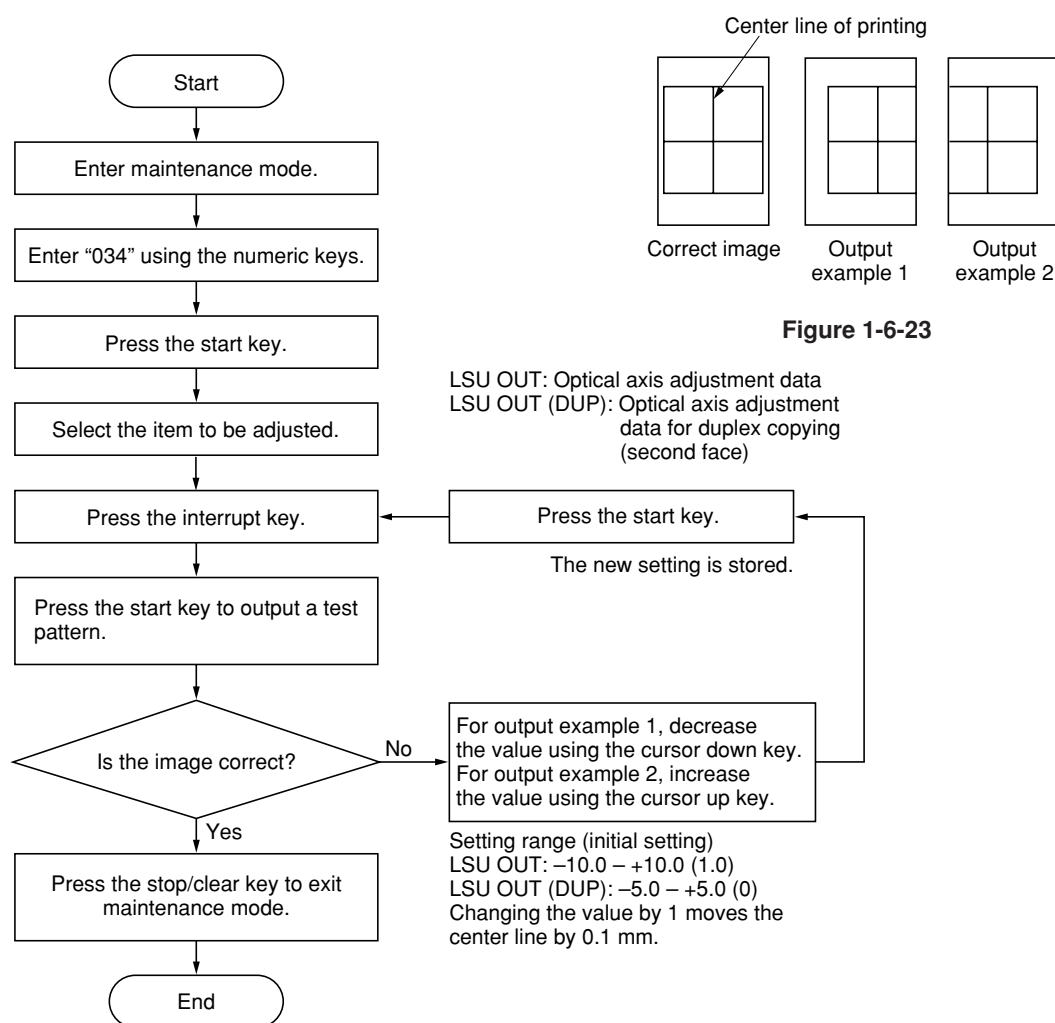
Figure 1-6-22

(3-3) Adjusting the center line of image printing

Make the following adjustment if there is a regular error between the center lines of the copy image and original when paper is fed from the drawer.

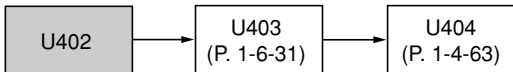
**Caution:**

Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the above adjustments in maintenance mode.

Procedure

(3-4) Adjusting the margins for printing

Make the following adjustment if the margins are not correct.



Caution:

Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the margins are still incorrect, perform the above adjustments in maintenance mode.

Procedure

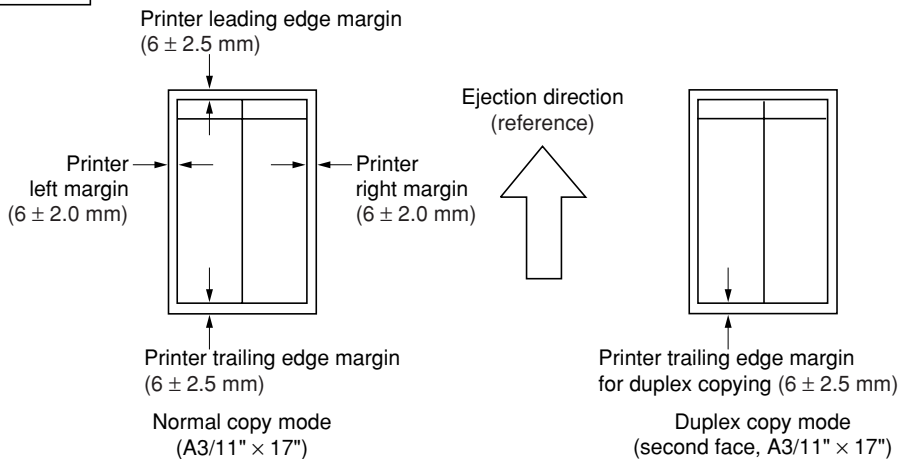
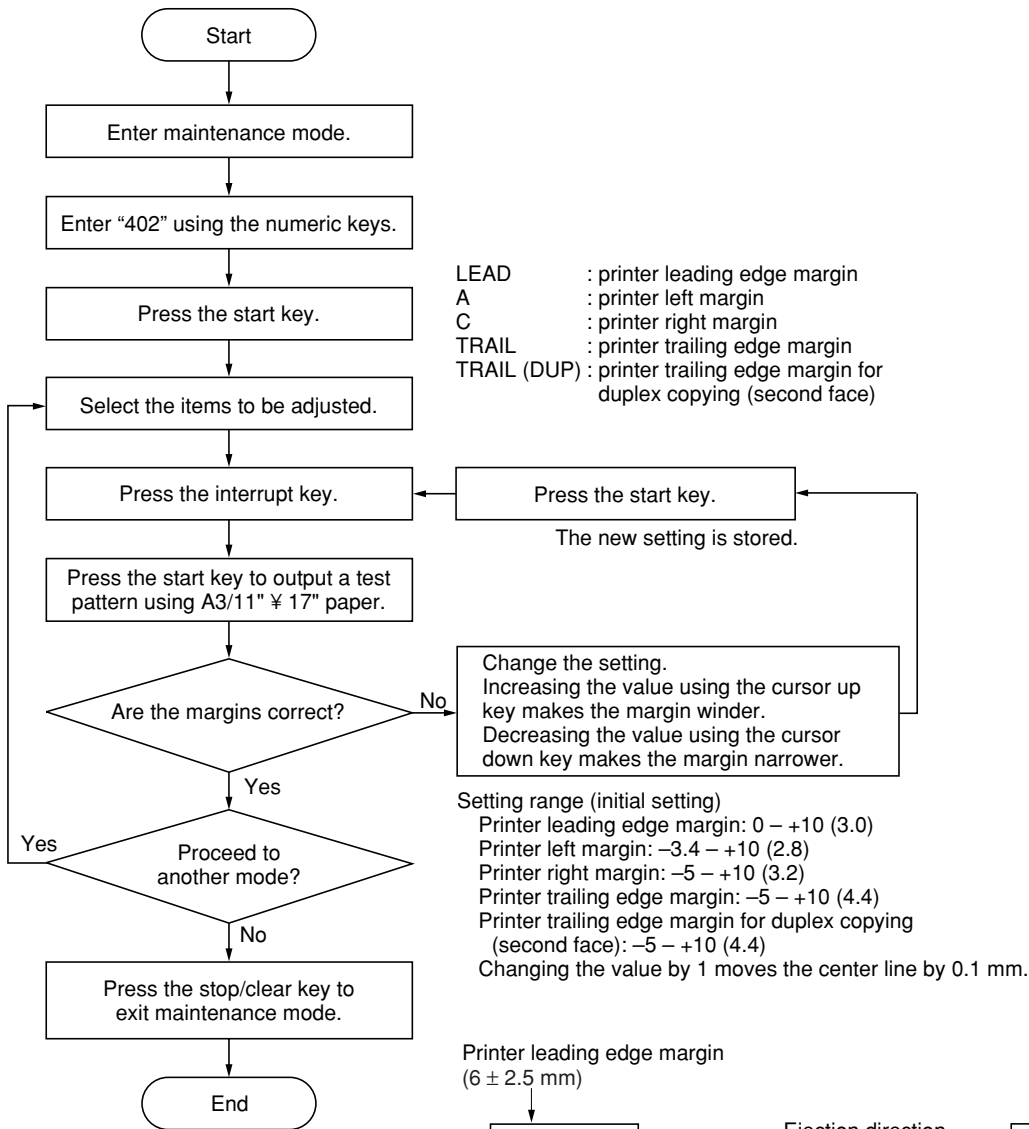
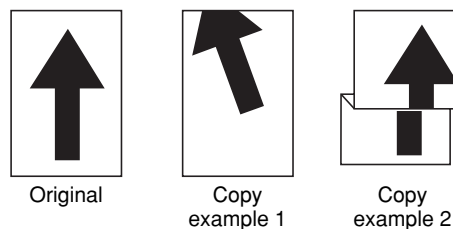
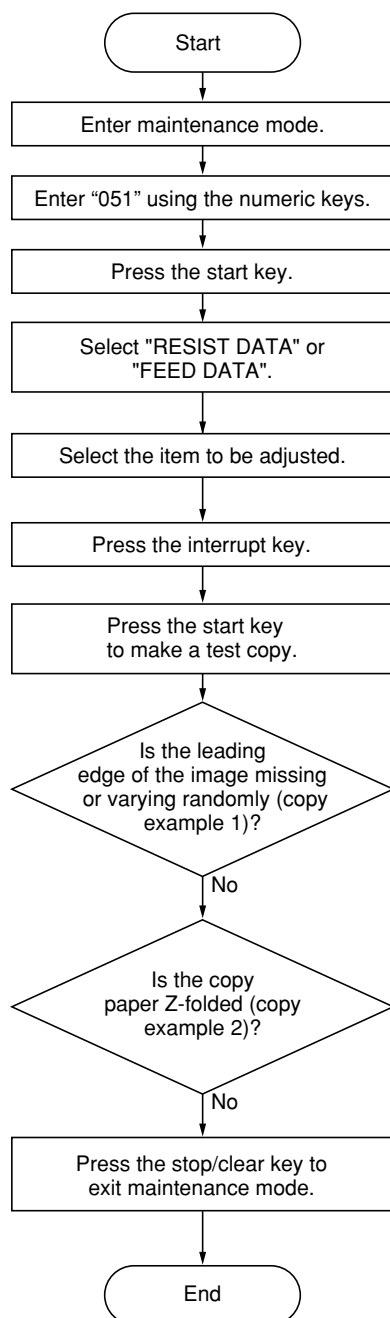


Figure 1-6-24

(3-5) Adjusting the amount of slack in the paper

Make the following adjustment if the leading edge of the copy image is missing or varies randomly, or if the copy paper is Z-folded.

Procedure**Figure 1-6-25**

- Amount of slack in the paper at the registration roller
DECK DATA : Drawers
BYPASS DATA : Bypass tray
DUPLEX DATA : Duplex copying (second face)

- Amount of slack in the paper at the paper feed roller
BYPASS : Bypass tray
1ST DECK : Upper drawer
2ND DECK : Lower drawer
3RD DECK : Optional drawer 1
4TH DECK : Optional drawer 2
LCF : Optional large paper deck

- Setting range (initial setting)
- Amount of slack in the paper at the registration roller
DECK DATA : -30 - +20 (0)
BYPASS DATA : -30 - +20 (0)
DUPLEX DATA : -30 - +20 (0)

- Amount of slack in the paper at the paper feed roller
BYPASS : 0 - +255 (0)
1ST DECK : 0 - +255 (20)
2ND DECK : 0 - +255 (0)
3RD DECK : 0 - +255 (0)
4TH DECK : 0 - +255 (0)
LCF : 0 - +255 (0)

The greater the value,
the larger the amount of slack;
the smaller the value, the smaller
the amount of slack.

1-6-3 Optical section

(1) Detaching and refitting the exposure lamp

Replace the exposure lamp as follows.

Procedure

1. Remove the original cover or the DP.
2. Remove the upper right cover, upper front cover, upper rear cover and contact glass.

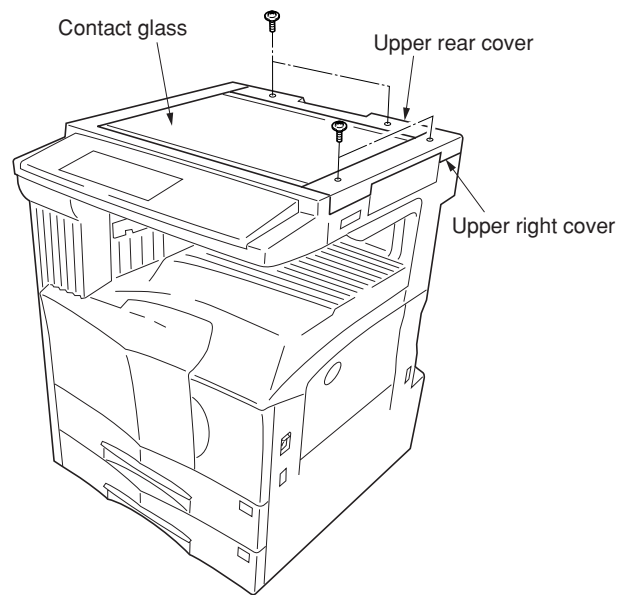


Figure 1-6-26

3. Move the mirror 1 frame to the cutouts of the machine.
Caution: When moving the mirror 1 frame, do not touch the exposure lamp nor the inverter PCB.
4. Remove the two screws holding the metal plate on the rear of the machine and then the plate.

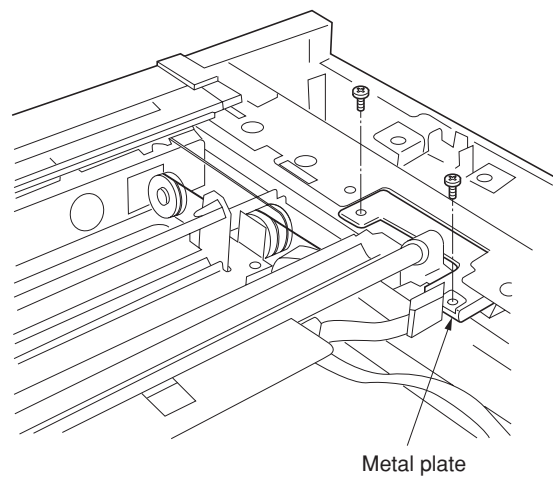


Figure 1-6-27

5. Detach the exposure lamp connector from the inverter PCB.
6. Remove the two screws holding the exposure lamp and then the lamp.
7. Replace the exposure lamp and refit all the removed parts.

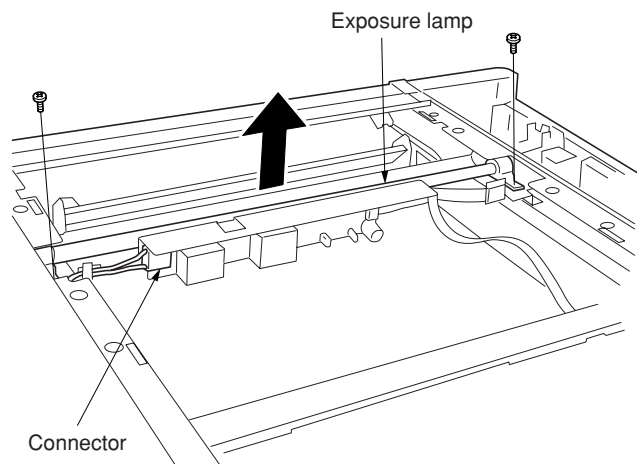


Figure 1-6-28

(2) Detaching and refitting the scanner wires

Take the following procedure when the scanner wires are broken or to be replaced.

Caution:

After replacing the scanner wire, make a test copy and check the copy image. If the image is incorrect, perform the adjustments (see pages 1-6-25 to 31).

(2-1) Detaching the scanner wires

Procedure

1. Remove the exposure lamp (see page 1-6-19).
2. Remove the upper left cover and scanner left cover.

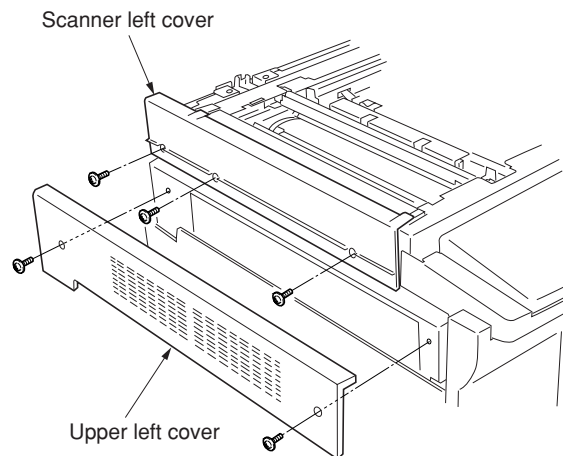


Figure 1-6-29

3. Remove the inverter wire guide plate and then the wire from the inverter PCB.

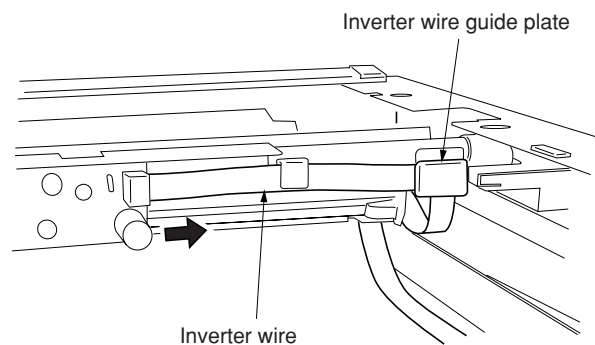


Figure 1-6-30

4. Remove the screw holding each of the front and rear wire retainers and then remove the mirror 1 frame from the scanner unit.

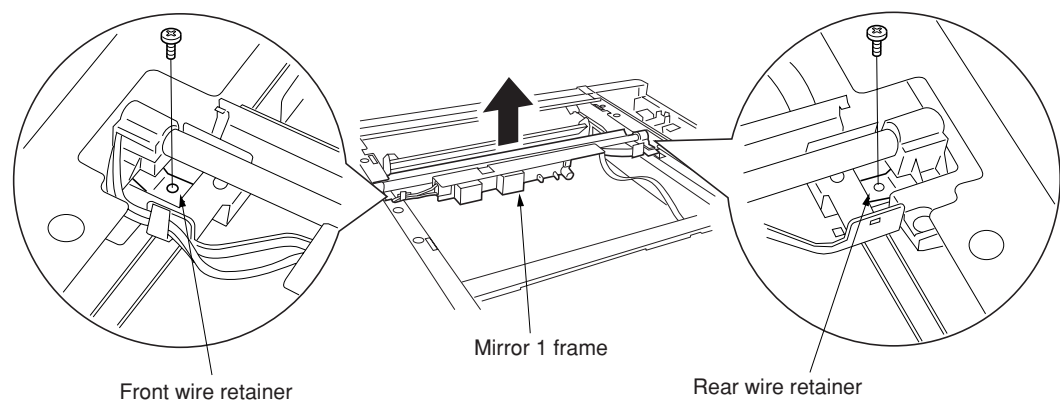


Figure 1-6-31

5. Unhook the round terminal of the scanner wire from the scanner tension spring on the left side of the scanner unit.
6. Remove the scanner wire.

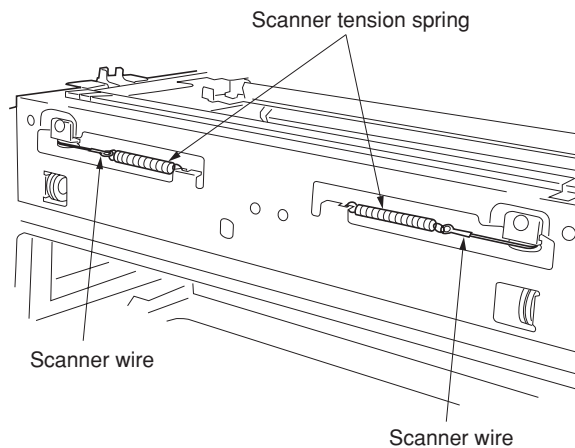


Figure 1-6-32

(2-2) Refitting the scanner wires

Caution:

When fitting the wires, be sure to use those specified below.

Machine front: P/N 2AV1219 (black)

Machine rear: P/N 2AV1220 (gray)

Fitting requires the following tools:

Two frame securing tools (P/N 2AV6808)

Two scanner wire stoppers (P/N 3596811)

Procedure

1. Insert the locating ball on each of the scanner wires into the hole in the respective scanner wire drum and wind the scanner wire three turns inward and four turns outward.
 - With the locating ball as the reference point, wind the shorter end of each of the wires inward.
2. Secure the scanner wires using the scanner wire stoppers.

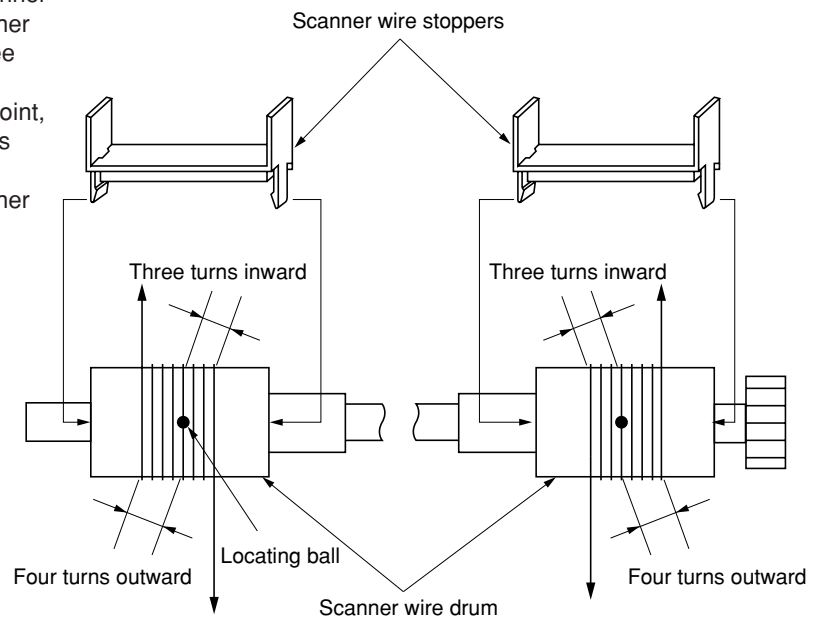


Figure 1-6-33

3. Insert the two frame securing tools into the positioning holes at the front and rear of the scanner unit to pin the mirror 2 frame in position.

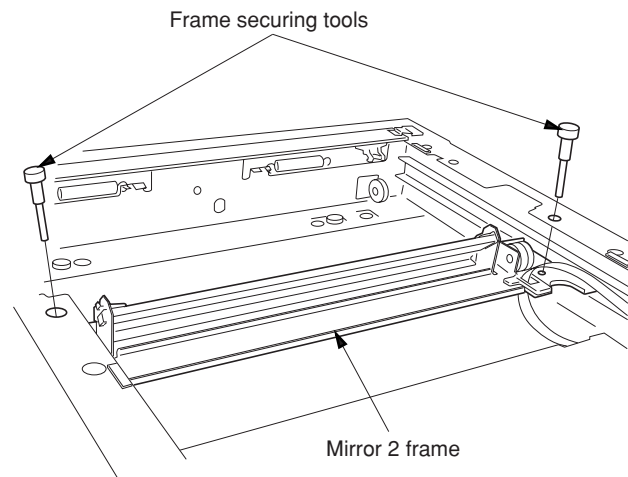


Figure 1-6-34

4. Loop the inner ends of the scanner wires around the grooves in the pulleys at the right of the scanner unit, winding from below to above. ①
5. Loop the scanner wires around the inner grooves in the pulleys on the mirror 2 frame, winding from above to below. ②
6. Hook the round terminals onto the catches inside the scanner unit. ③

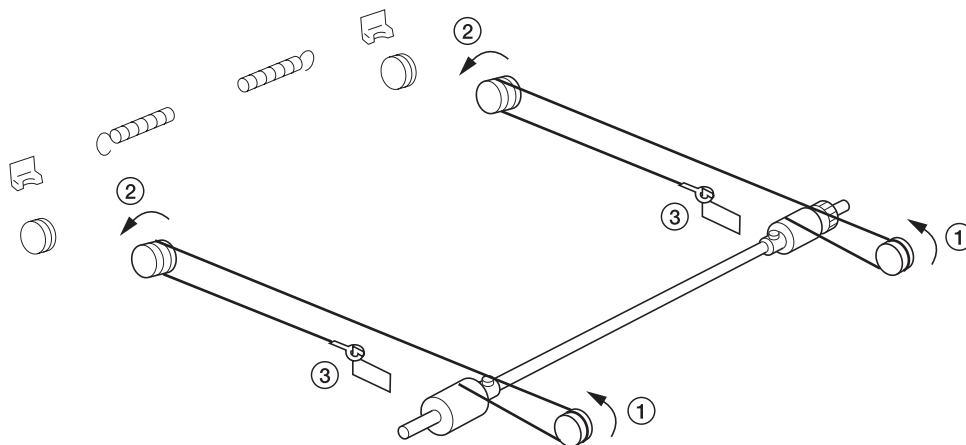


Figure 1-6-35

7. Loop the outer ends of the scanner wires around the grooves in the scanner wire pulleys at the left of the scanner unit, winding from below to above. ④
8. Loop the scanner wires around the outer grooves in the pulleys on the mirror 2 frame, winding from below to above. ⑤
9. Wind the scanner wires around the grooves in the scanner wire guides at the left of the scanner unit. ⑥
10. Hook the round terminals onto the scanner tension springs. ⑦

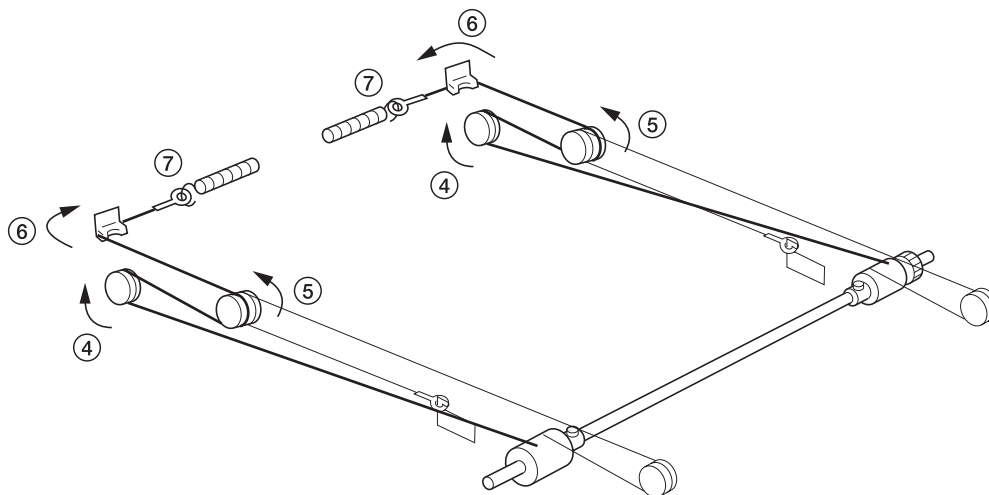


Figure 1-6-36

11. Remove the scanner wire stoppers and frame securing tools.
12. Gather the scanner wires toward the locating balls.
13. Move the mirror 2 frame from side to side to correctly locate the wires in position.
14. Put the mirror 1 frame on the scanner rail and move it toward the left side of the machine.
15. Insert the frame securing tools into the positioning holes (leftmost holes) at the front and the rear of the scanner unit and screw the mirror 1 frame while securing both the mirror 1 frame and the mirror 2 frame.
16. Remove the two frame securing tools
17. Refit all the removed parts.

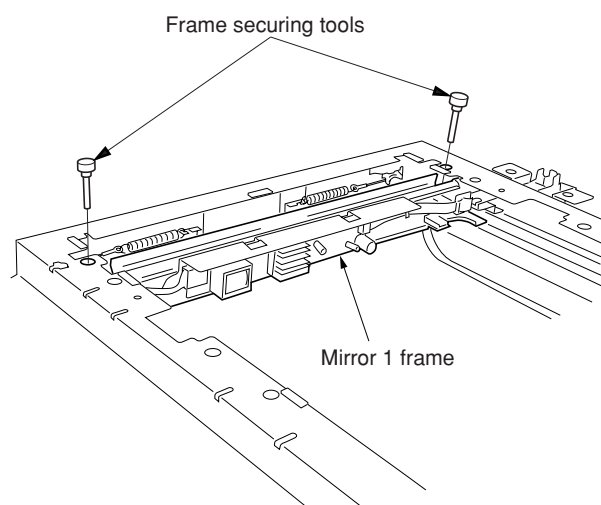


Figure 1-6-37

(3) Detaching and refitting the laser scanner unit

Take the following procedure when the laser scanner unit is to be checked or replaced.

Procedure

1. Remove the developing unit and drum unit (see pages 1-6-32 and 34).
2. Remove the four screws holding the lower right cover and then the cover.
Remove the three screws holding the eject cover and then the cover.

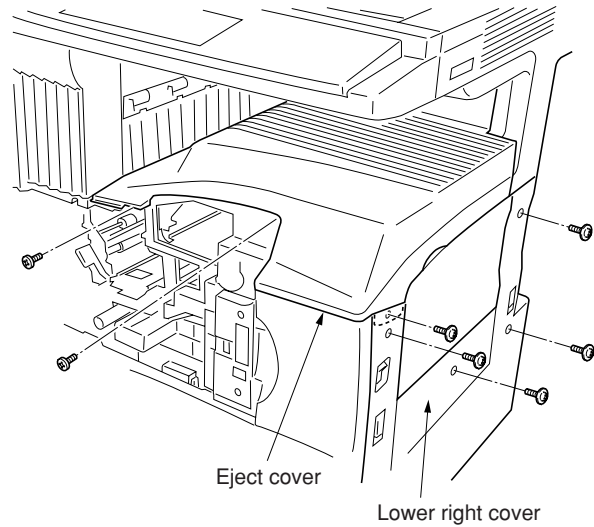


Figure 1-6-38

3. Remove the four screws holding the front right cover and then the cover.

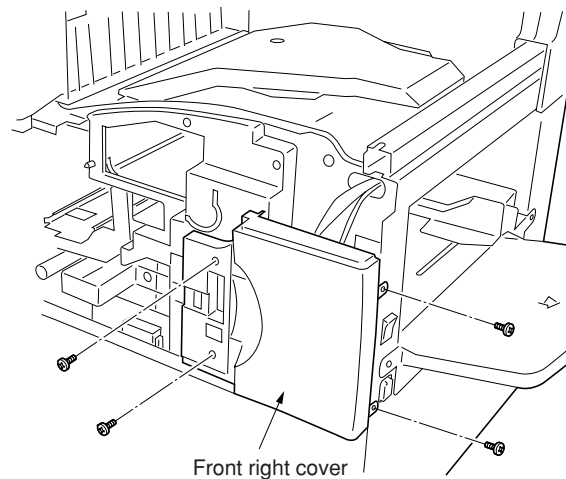


Figure 1-6-39

4. Remove the five screws holding the inner cover and then the cover.

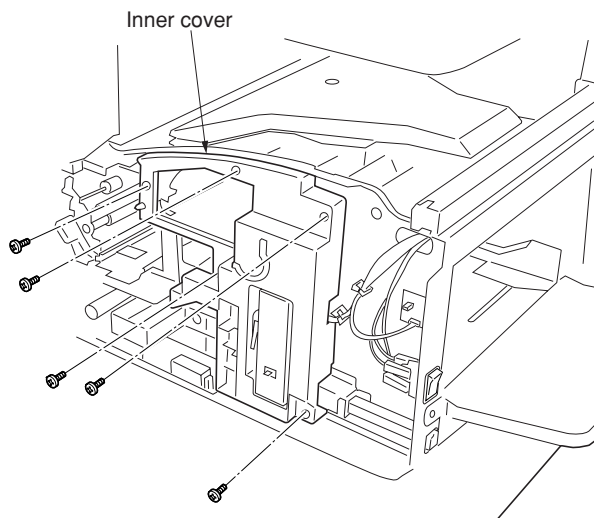


Figure 1-6-40

5. Remove the two screws and detach the connector and then remove the fan duct.

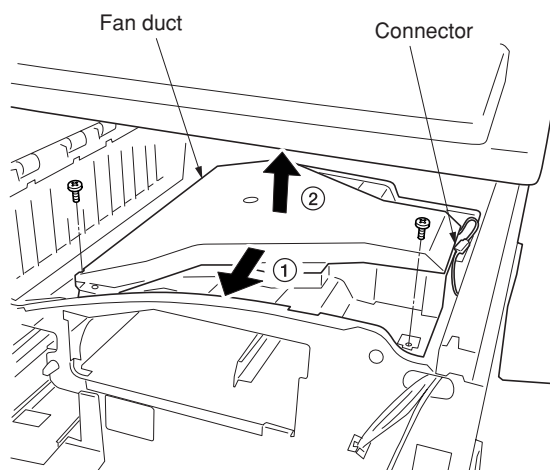


Figure 1-6-41

6. Remove the six screws holding the toner container retainer and then the retainer.

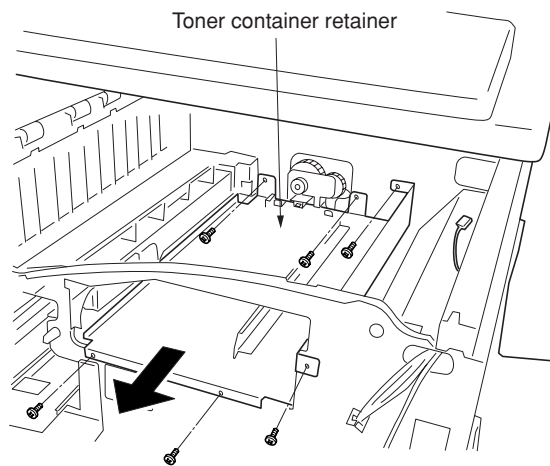


Figure 1-6-42

7. Remove the four screws and detach the connector and then remove the laser scanner unit.
8. Replace the laser scanner unit and refit all the removed parts.

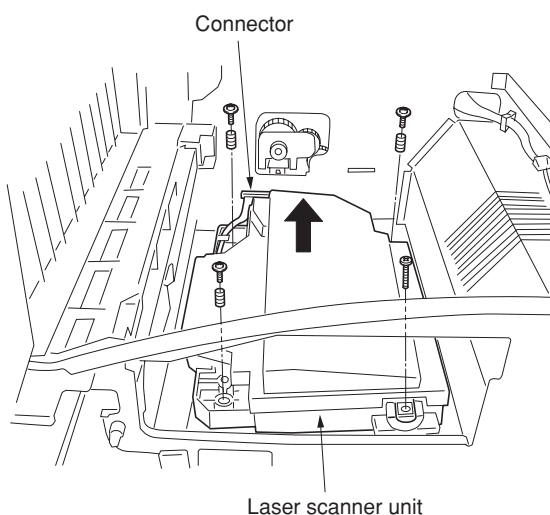


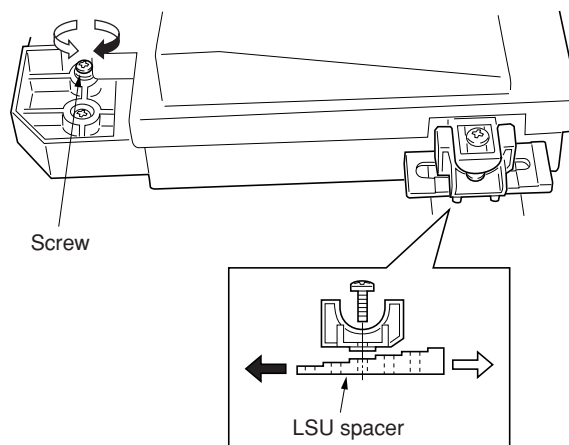
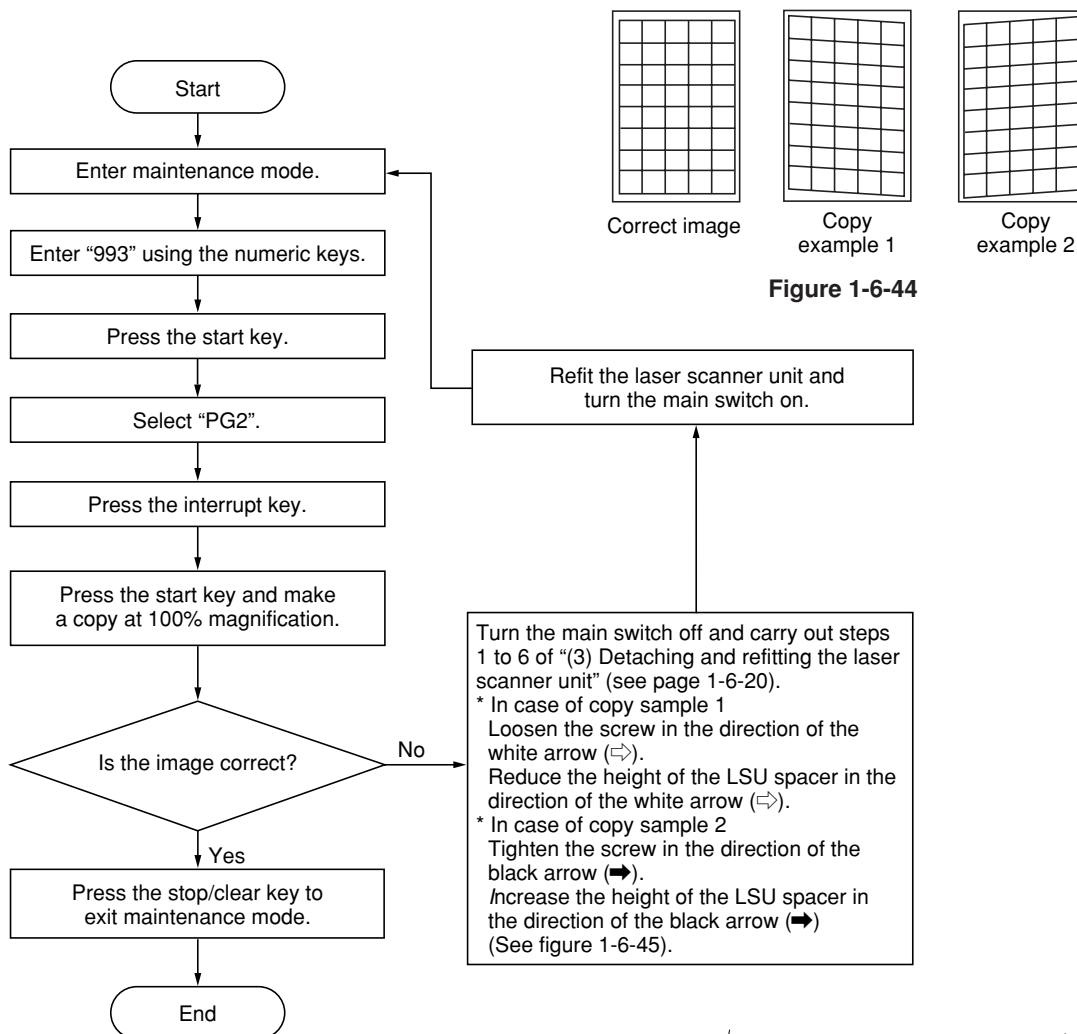
Figure 1-6-43

(4) Adjusting the skew of the laser scanner unit (reference)

Perform the following adjustment if the leading and trailing edges of the copy image are laterally skewed (lateral squareness not obtained).

Caution:

- After adjusting the skew of the laser scanner unit, make a test copy and check the copy image. If lateral squareness is still not obtained, perform "(6) Adjusting the position of the ISU" (see page 1-6-25).

Procedure**Figure 1-6-45**

(5) Detaching and refitting the ISU (reference)

Take the following procedure when the ISU is to be checked or replaced.

Caution:

After replacing the ISU, make a test copy and check the copy image. If the image is incorrect, perform the adjustments (see pages 1-6-25 to 31).

ISU installation requires the following tools:

Two positioning pins (P/N 1856812)

Procedure

- Detaching the ISU

1. Remove the contact glass (see page 1-6-19).
2. Remove the rear and shield covers and detach connector YC34 on the main PCB.

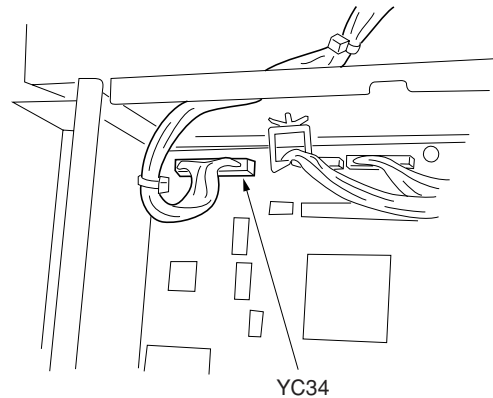


Figure 1-6-46

3. Remove the eight screws holding the ISU cover and then the cover.

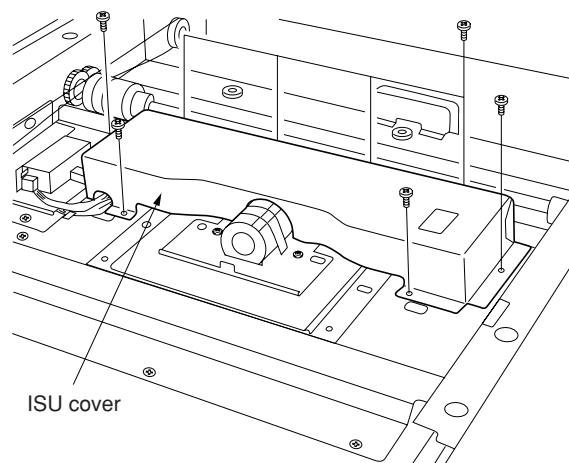


Figure 1-6-47

4. Remove the two screws holding the original size detection sensor retainer and then the retainer.
5. Remove the four screws holding the ISU and then the ISU.
6. Check or replace the ISU.

Original size detection sensor retainer

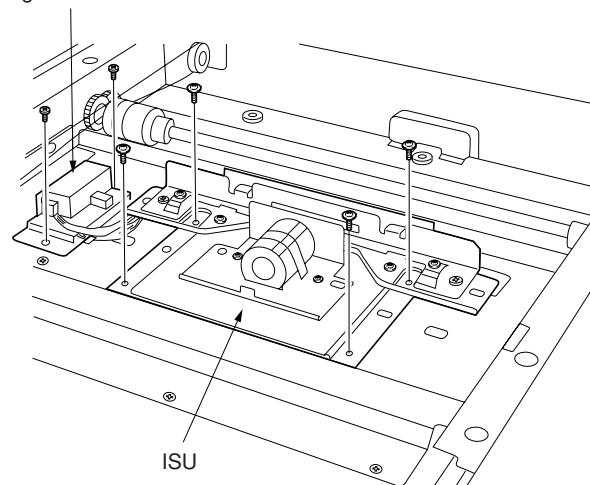


Figure 1-6-48

- Refitting the ISU

1. Fit the ISU using the two positioning pins.
2. Secure the ISU using the four screws.
3. Remove the two positioning pins and refit all the removed parts.

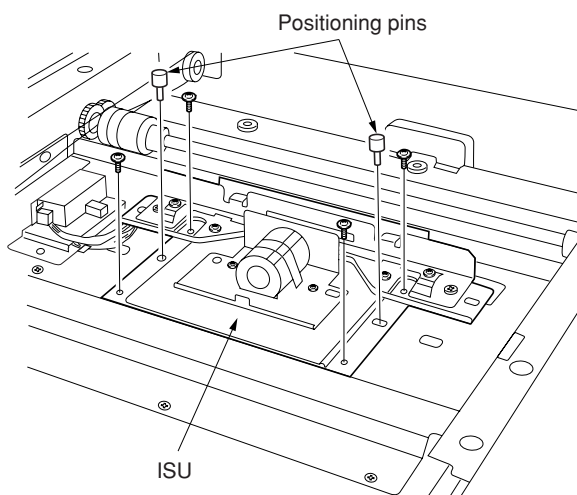


Figure 1-6-49

(6) Adjusting the position of the ISU (reference)

Perform the following adjustment if the leading and trailing edges of the copy image are laterally skewed (lateral squareness not obtained).

Caution:

- Be sure to perform “(4-1) Adjusting the skew of the laser scanner unit” (page 1-6-22) first.
- Before making the following adjustment, output a VTC-PG2 pattern in maintenance item U993 to use as the original for the adjustment.

Procedure

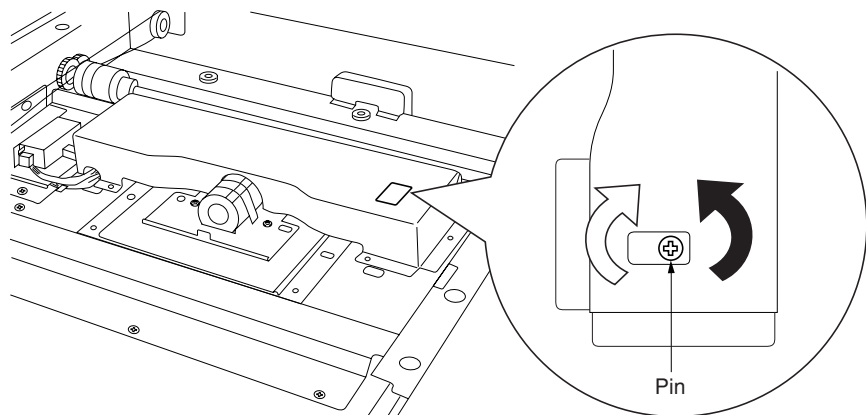
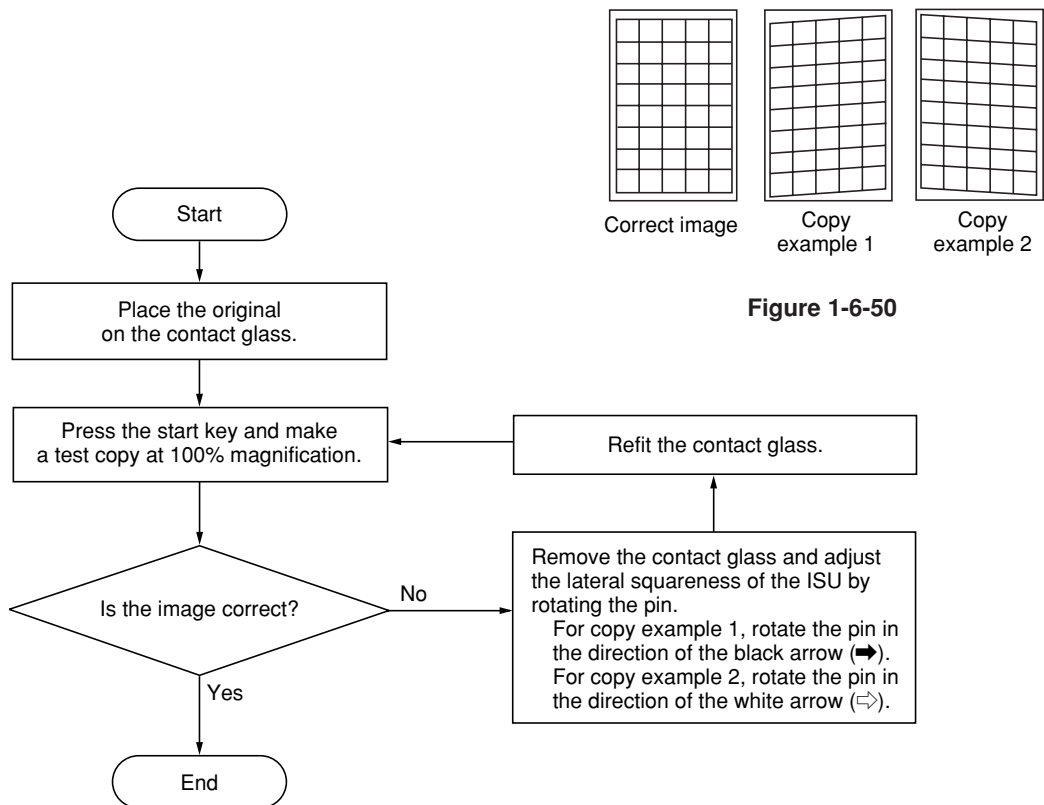


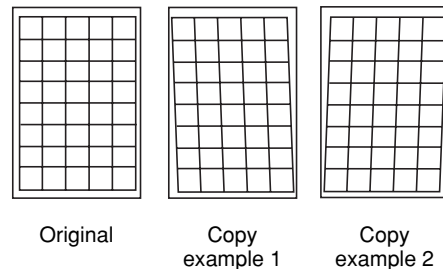
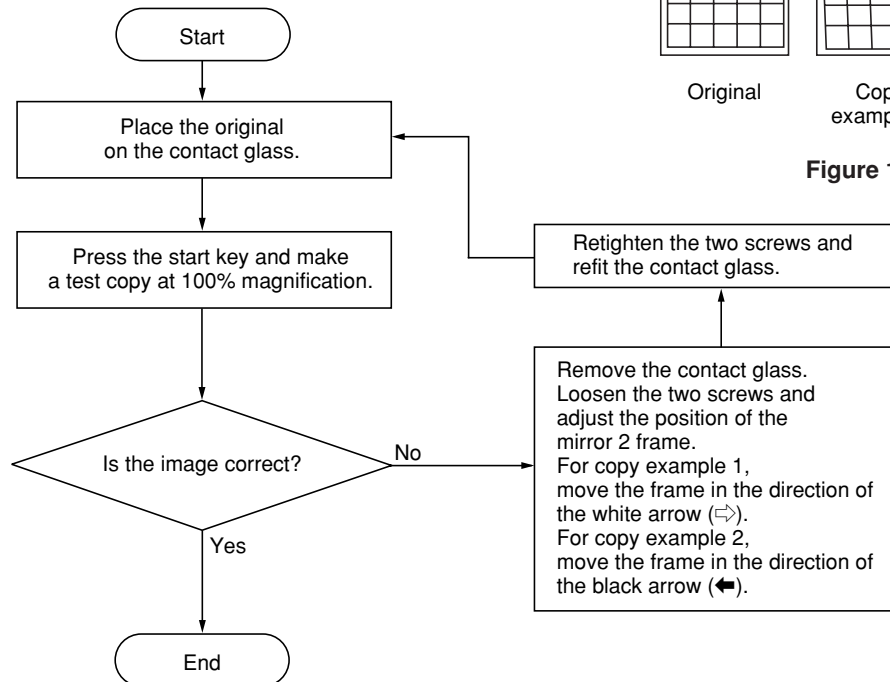
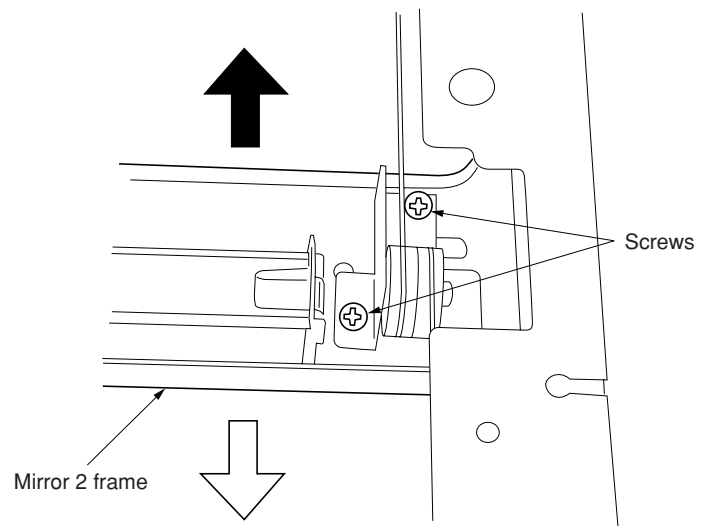
Figure 1-6-51

(7) Adjusting the longitudinal squareness (reference)

Perform the following adjustment if the copy image is longitudinally skewed (longitudinal squareness not obtained).

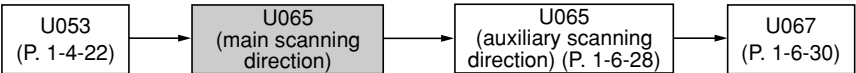
Caution:

- Adjust the amount of slack in the paper (page 1-6-14) first. Check for the longitudinal squareness of the copy image, and if it is not obtained, perform the longitudinal squareness adjustment.
- Before making the following adjustment, output a VTC-PG2 pattern in maintenance item U993 to use as the original for the adjustment.

Procedure**Figure 1-6-52****Figure 1-6-53**

(8) Adjusting magnification of the scanner in the main scanning direction

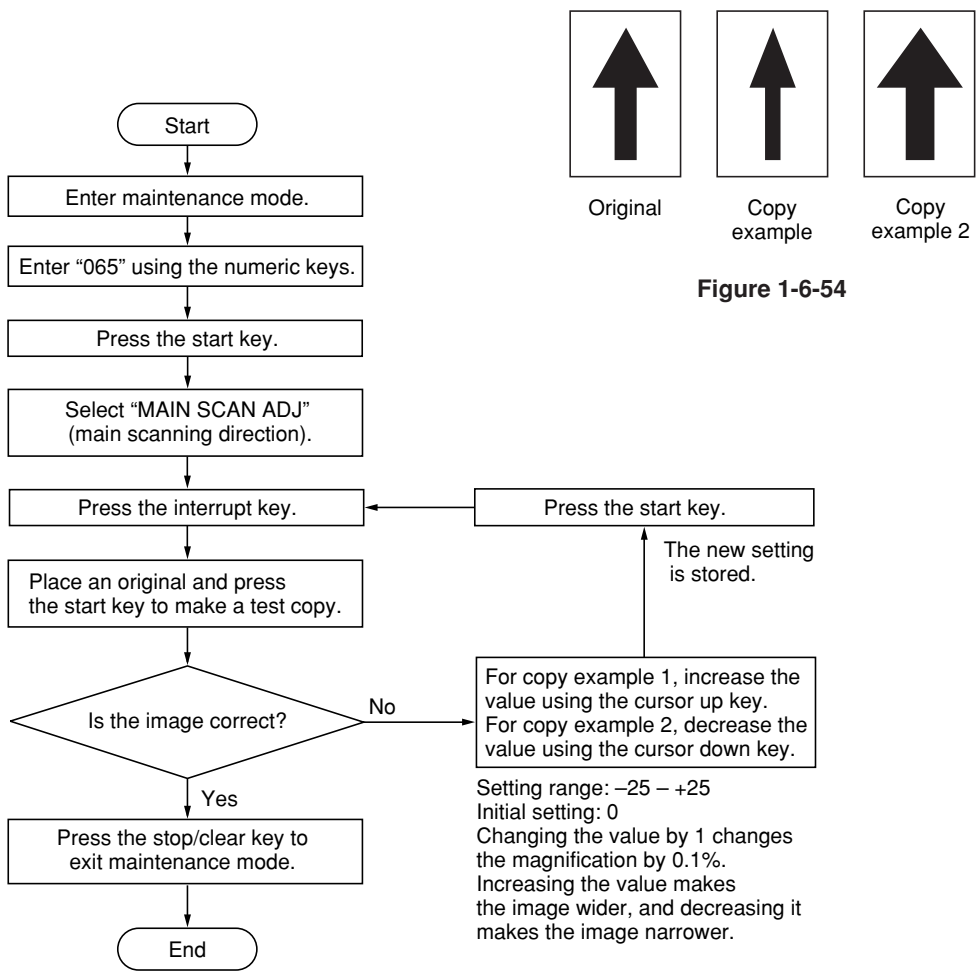
Perform the following adjustment if the magnification in the main scanning direction is not correct.



Caution:

Before making the following adjustment, ensure that the above adjustments have been made in maintenance mode. Also, perform “(9) Adjusting magnification of the scanner in the auxiliary scanning direction” (page 1-6-28) and “(11) Adjusting the scanner center line” (page 1-6-30) after this adjustment.

Procedure

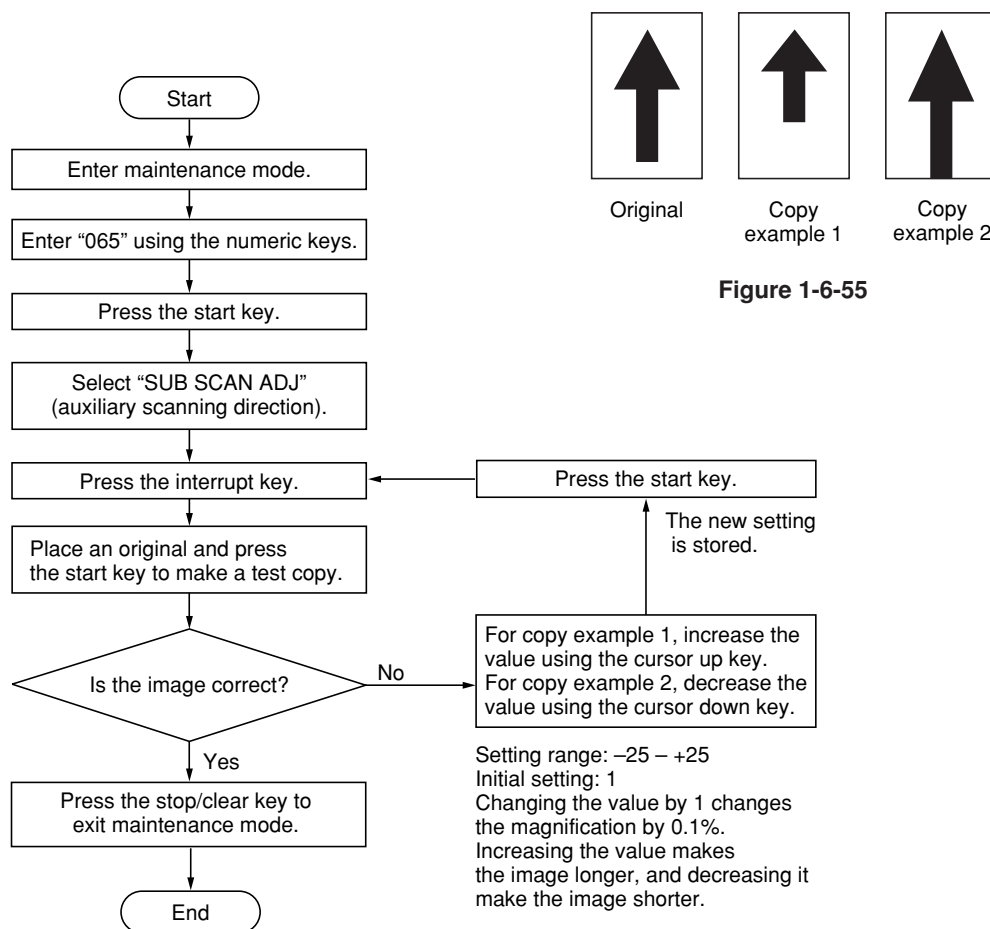


(9) Adjusting magnification of the scanner in the auxiliary scanning direction

Perform the following adjustment if the magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction is not correct.

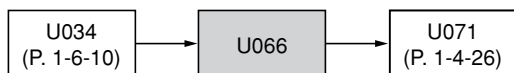
**Caution:**

Before making the following adjustment, ensure that the above adjustments have been made in maintenance mode.

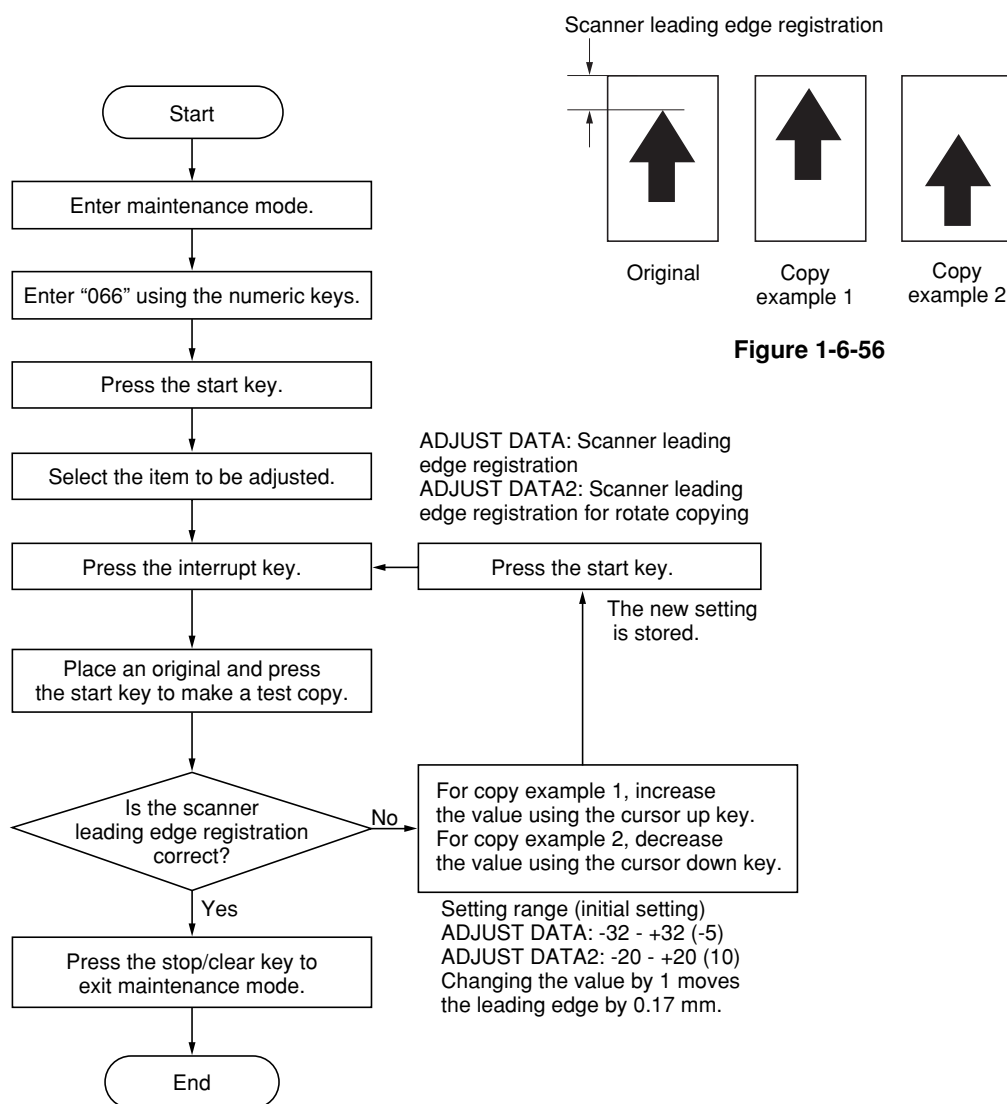
Procedure

(10) Adjusting the scanner leading edge registration

Perform the following adjustment if there is regular error between the leading edges of the copy image and original.

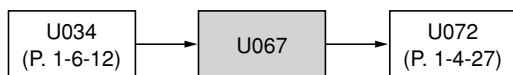
**Caution:**

Before making the following adjustment, ensure that the above adjustments have been made in maintenance mode.

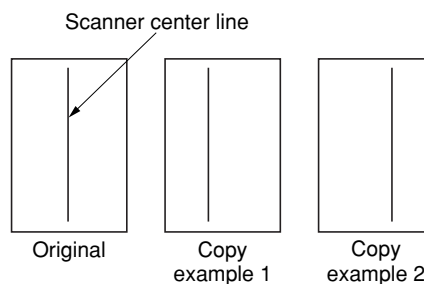
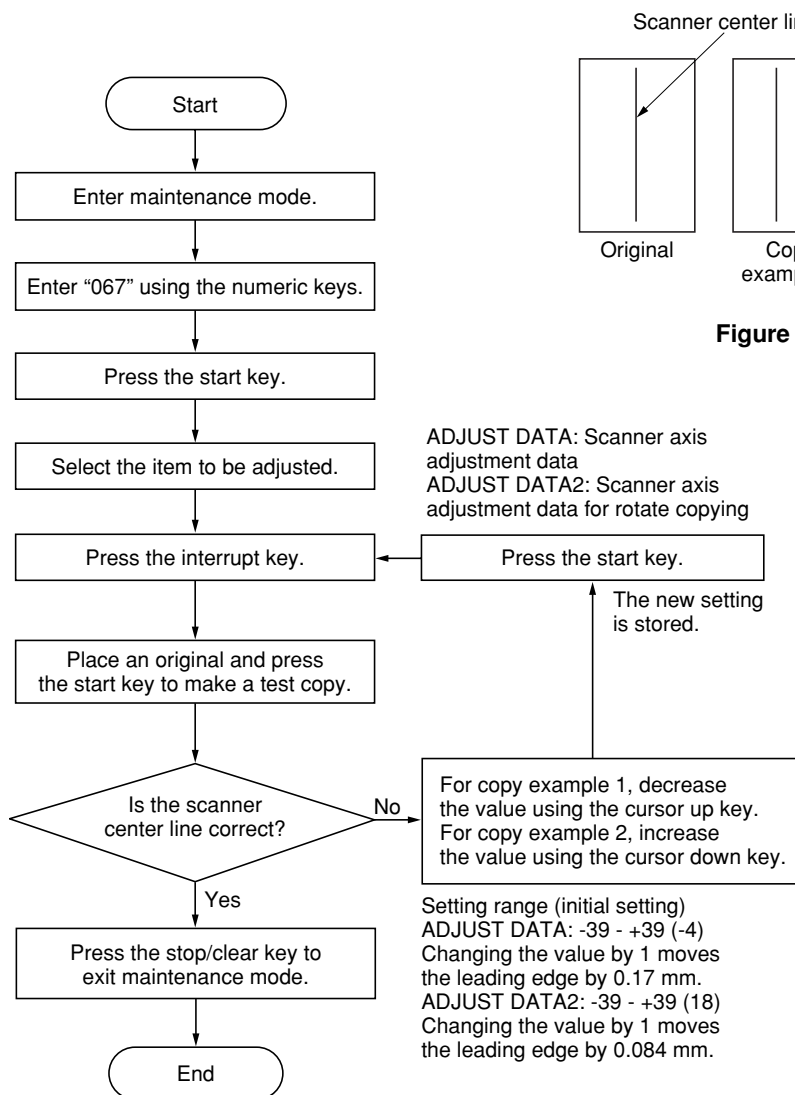
Procedure

(11) Adjusting the scanner center line

Perform the following adjustment if there is a regular error between the center lines of the copy image and original.

**Caution:**

Before making the following adjustment, ensure that the above adjustments have been made in maintenance mode.

Procedure**Figure 1-6-57**

(12) Adjusting the margins for scanning an original on the contact glass

Perform the following adjustment if the margins are not correct.



Caution:

Before making the following adjustment, ensure that the above adjustments have been made in maintenance mode.

Procedure

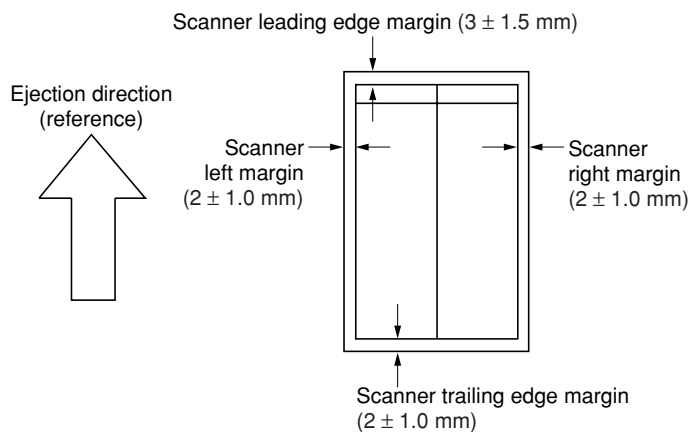
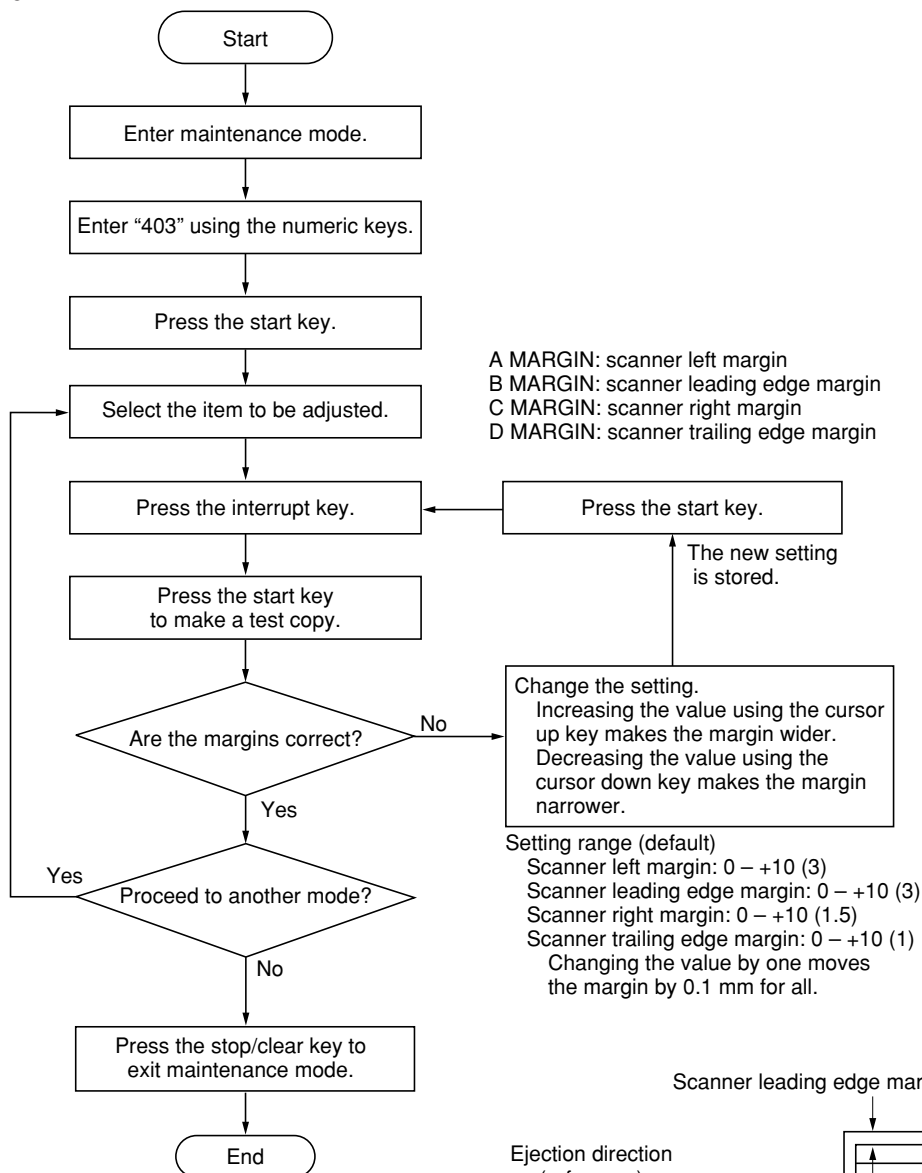


Figure 1-6-58

1-6-4 Drum section

(1) Detaching and refitting the drum unit

Follow the procedure below to replace the drum unit.

Cautions:

- Avoid direct sunlight or strong light when detaching and refitting the drum unit.
- Never touch the drum surface when holding the drum unit.

Procedure

1. Open the conveying cover and remove the developing unit (see page 1-6-34).
2. Remove the screws holding the drum unit and then the unit.
3. Replace the drum unit and refit all the removed parts.

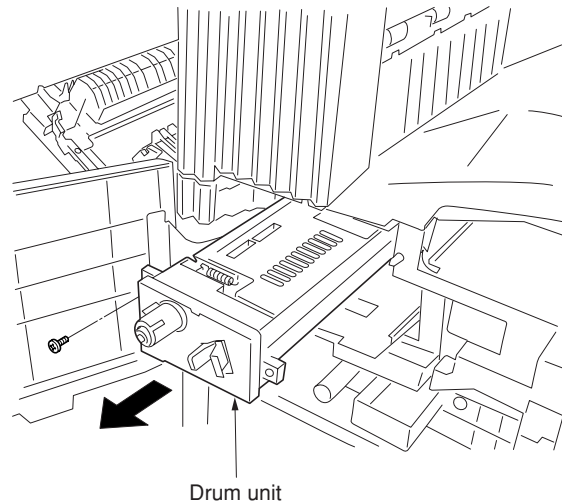


Figure 1-6-59

(2) Detaching and refitting the main charger unit

Follow the procedure below to replace the main charger unit.

Procedure

1. Open the front cover.
2. Pull out the main charger unit holding the knob.
3. While pushing the hole with a sharp-pointed object, remove the main charger unit.
4. Replace the main charger unit and refit all the removed parts.

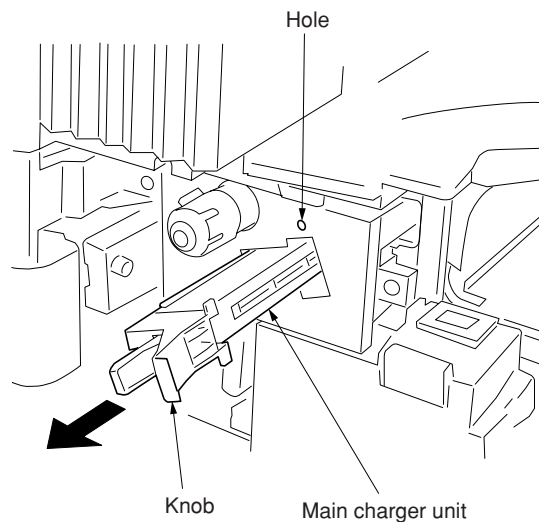


Figure 1-6-60

(3) Detaching and refitting the drum separation claw assemblies

Follow the procedure below to replace the drum separation claw assemblies.

Procedure

1. Remove the drum unit (see page 1-6-32).
2. Push the drum separation claw assemblies with the minus driver from the top of the corner hole and remove the claw assemblies.
3. Replace the drum separation claw assemblies and refit all the removed parts.

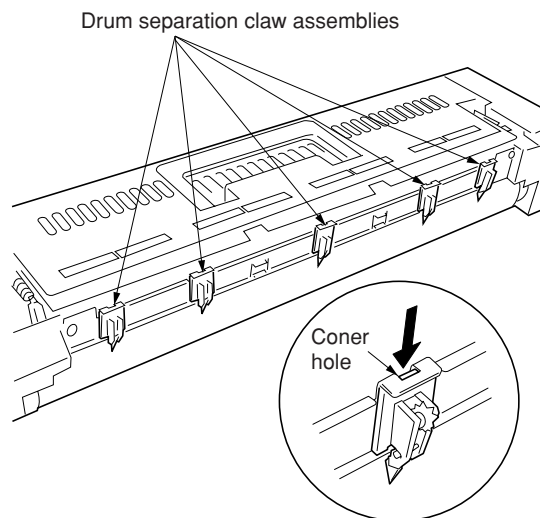


Figure 1-6-61

1-6-5 Developing section

(1) Detaching and refitting the developing unit

Follow the procedure below to replace the developing unit.

Procedure

1. Open the front cover.
2. Remove the toner container and toner disposal tank.
3. Remove the screw and turn the developing release lever in the direction of the arrow.

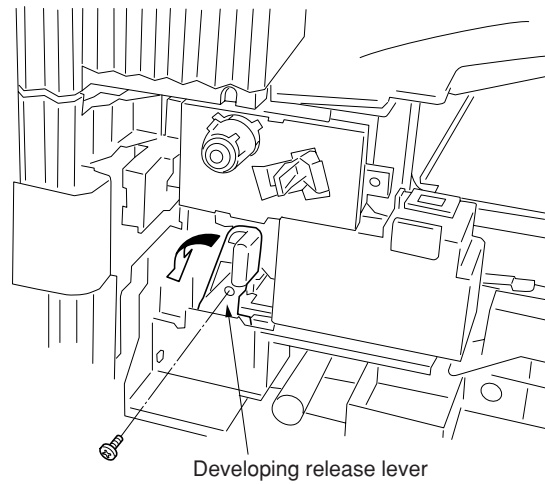


Figure 1-6-62

4. Remove the developing unit.
5. Replace the developing unit and refit all the removed parts.

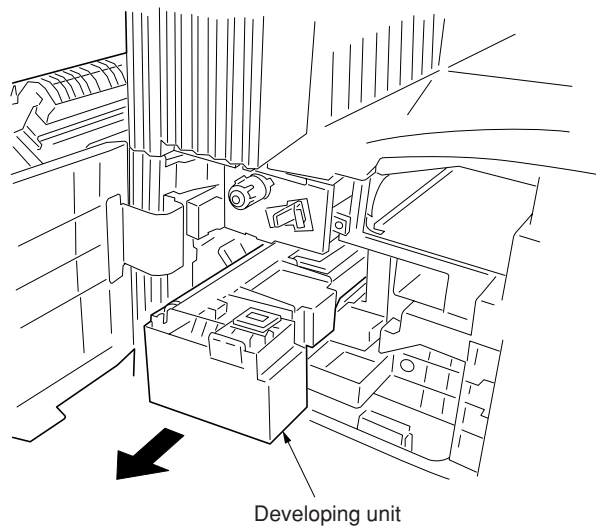


Figure 1-6-63

1-6-6 Transfer section

(1) Detaching and refitting the transfer roller assembly

Follow the procedure below to replace the transfer roller assembly.

Procedure

1. Open the conveying cover.
2. While holding down the projection, slide the transfer roller assembly toward the front to remove it.
3. Replace the transfer roller assembly and refit all the removed parts.

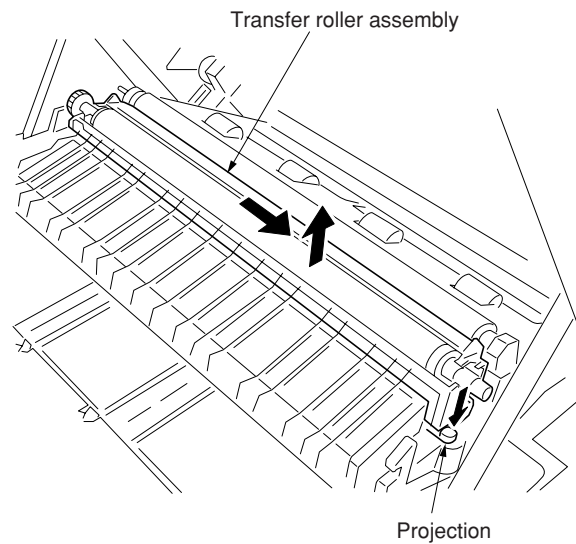


Figure 1-6-64

1-6-7 Fixing section

(1) Detaching and refitting the fixing unit

Follow the procedure below to check or replace the fixing unit.

Procedure

1. Open the front cover and conveying cover.
2. Remove the three screws holding the front left cover and then the cover.

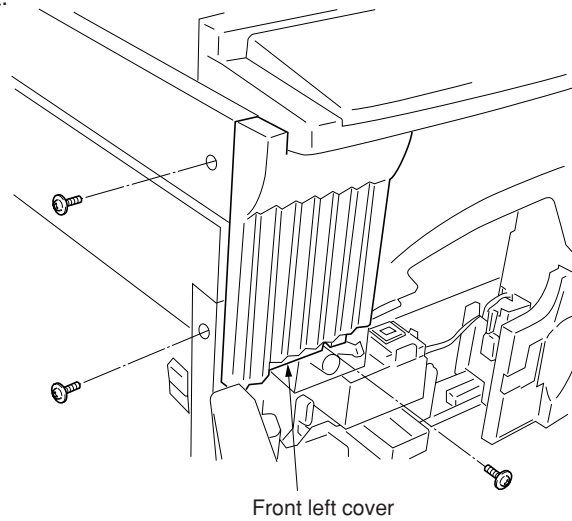


Figure 1-6-65

3. Remove the screw holding the fixing unit and then the unit.
4. Check or replace the transfer roller assembly and refit all the removed parts.

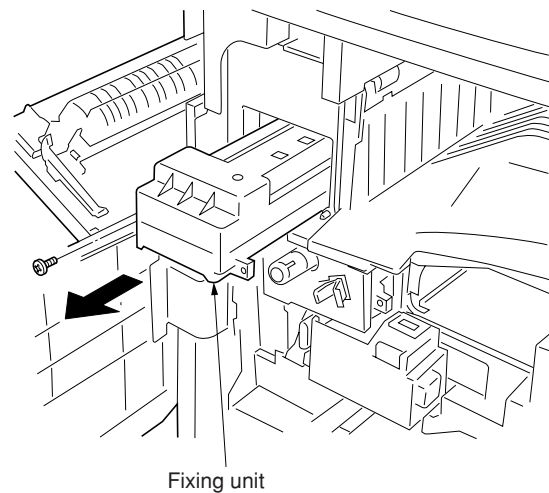


Figure 1-6-66

(2) Detaching and refitting the heat roller separation claws

Follow the procedure below to replace the heat roller separation claws.

Procedure

1. Remove the fixing unit.
2. Remove the two screws and detach the upper fixing cover while holding the four claws.

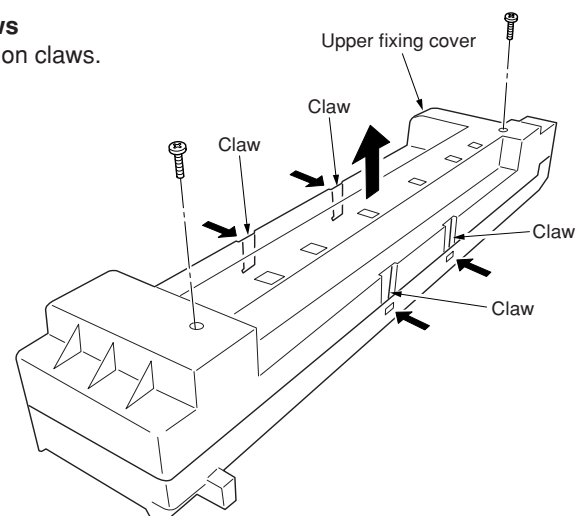


Figure 1-6-67

3. Remove the heat roller separation claws from the upper fixing cover.
4. Replace the heat roller separation claws and refit all the removed parts.

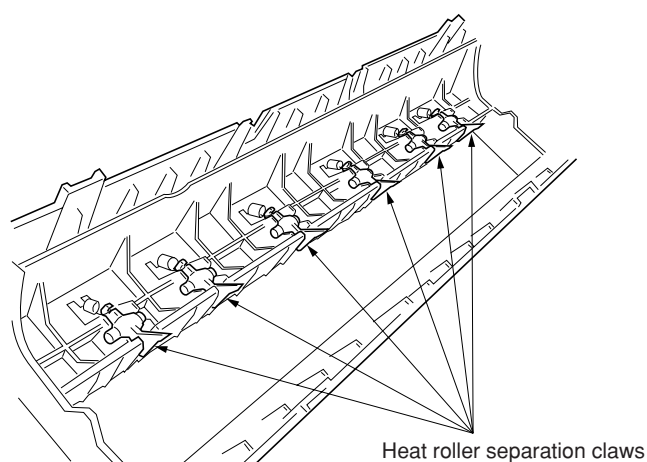


Figure 1-6-68

(3) Detaching and refitting the press roller

Follow the procedure below to replace the press roller.

Procedure

1. Remove the fixing unit (see page 1-6-36).
2. Remove the upper fixing cover (see page 1-6-36).
3. Remove the front and rear press springs.

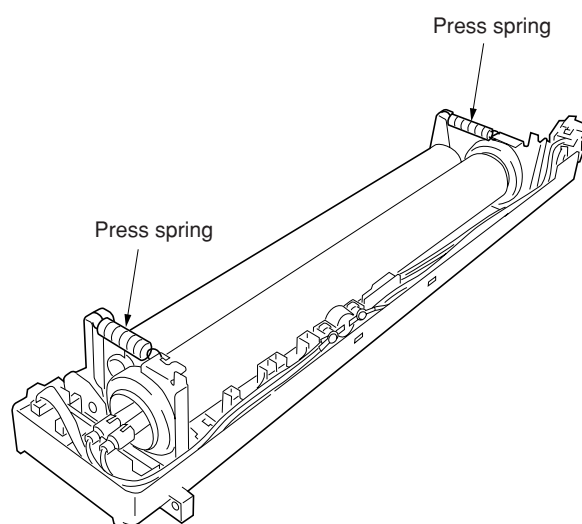


Figure 1-6-69

4. Detach the press roller from the fixing unit.
5. Replace the press roller and refit all the removed parts.

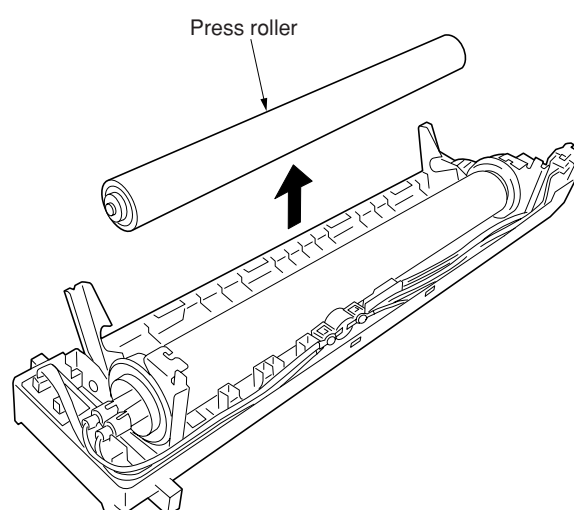


Figure 1-6-70

(4) Detaching and refitting the fixing heater M and S

Follow the procedure below to replace the fixing heater M and S.

Procedure

1. Remove the fixing unit (see page 1-6-36).
2. Remove the upper fixing cover (see page 1-6-36).
3. Remove the screw on the front of the fixing unit thermostat and two screws on the rear of the fixing unit.

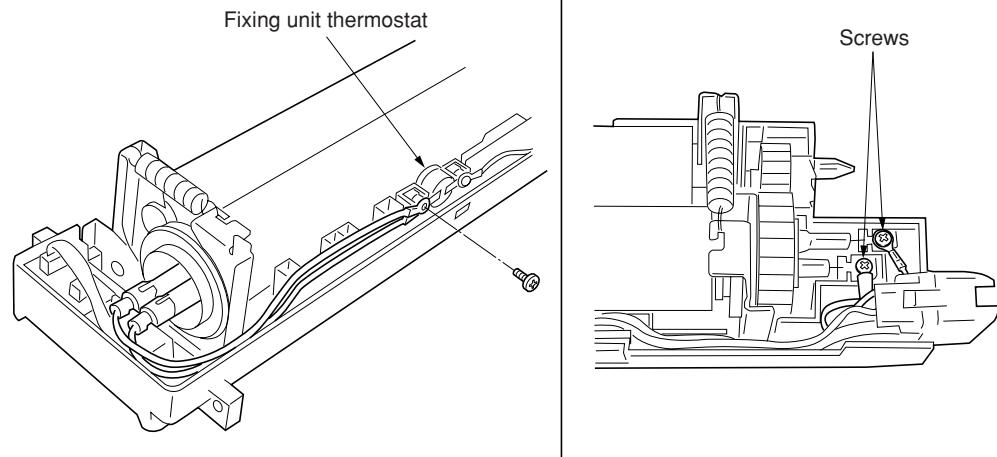


Figure 1-6-71

4. Pull out the fixing heater M and S from the fixing unit.

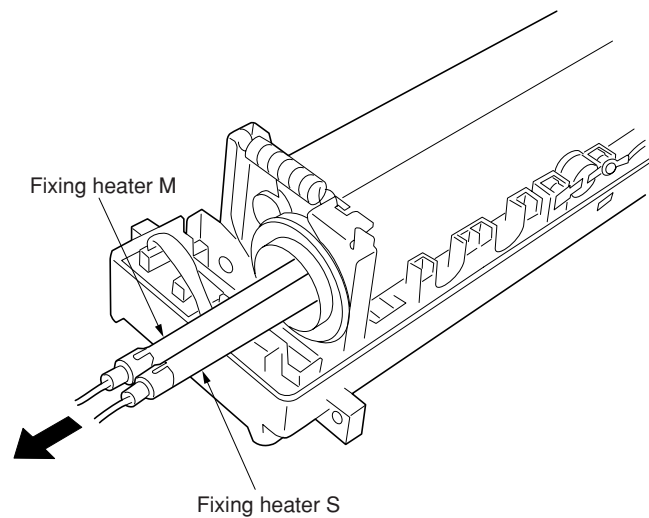


Figure 1-6-72

5. Replace the fixing heater M and S, and refit all the removed parts.
 * When refitting the fixing heaters, take care not to refit fixing heaters M and S to wrong positions. Refit fixing heater M (black wire) to the fixing unit housing with mark B and fixing heater S (white wire) to the housing with mark W.

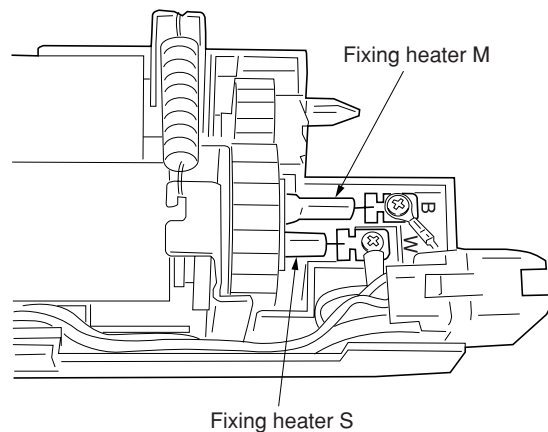


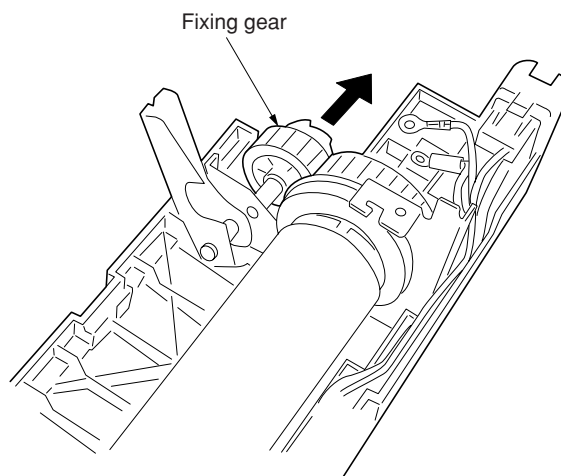
Figure 1-6-73

(5) Detaching and refitting the heat roller

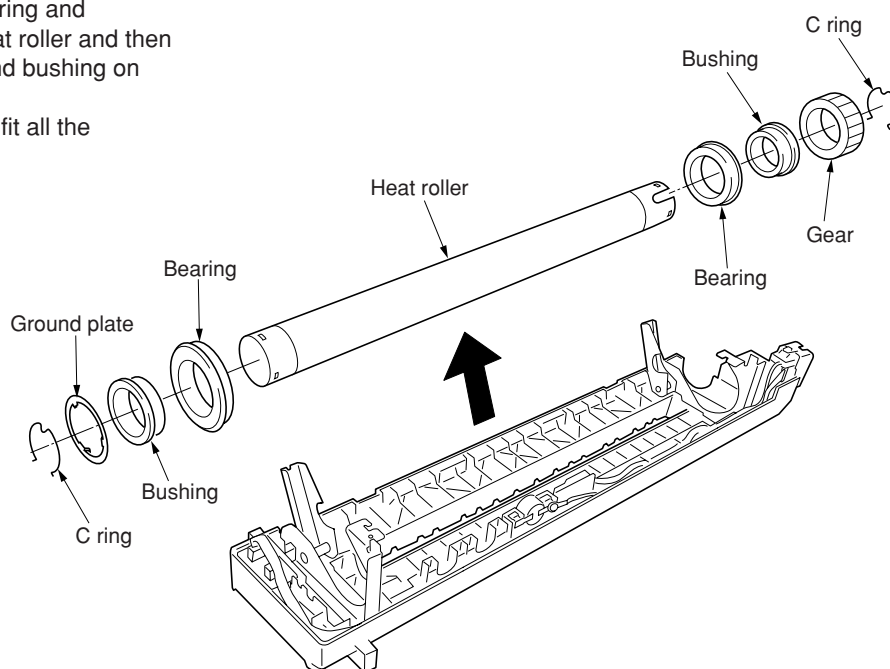
Follow the procedure below to replace the heat roller.

Procedure

1. Remove the fixing unit (see page 1-6-36).
2. Remove the upper fixing cover (see page 1-6-36).
3. Remove the press roller and fixing heater M and S (see pages 1-6-37 and 38).
4. Remove the fixing gear.

**Figure 1-6-74**

5. Detach the heat roller from the fixing unit.
Remove the C ring, gear, bearing and bushing on the rear of the heat roller and then remove the C ring, bearing and bushing on the front.
6. Replace the heat roller and refit all the removed parts.

**Figure 1-6-75**

(6) Detaching and refitting the fixing unit thermistor 1 and 2

Follow the procedure below to replace the fixing unit thermistor 1 and 2.

Procedure

1. Remove the fixing unit (see page 1-6-36).
2. Remove the upper fixing cover (see page 1-6-36).
3. Disconnect the connector of the fixing unit thermistor 1.

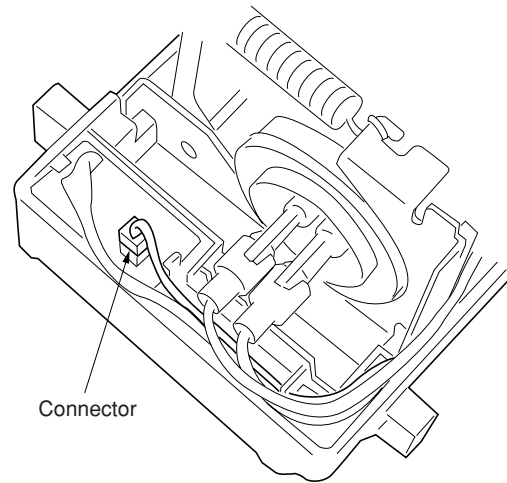


Figure 1-6-76

4. Remove the heat roller (see page 1-6-39).
5. Remove the screw and disconnect the connector, and then remove the fixing unit thermistor 2.

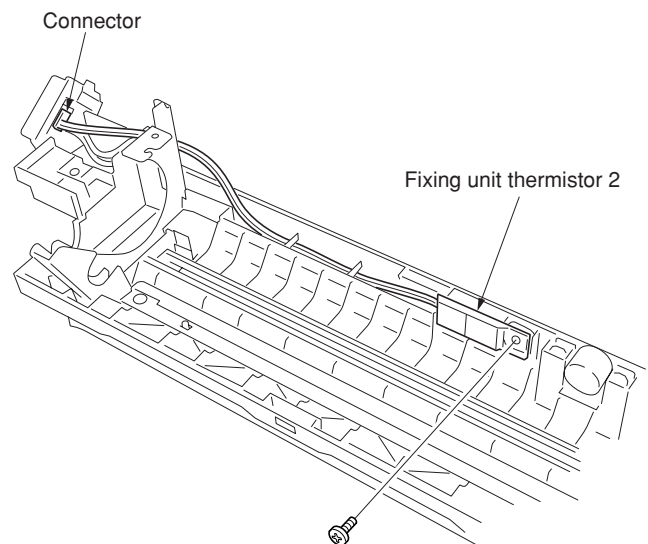


Figure 1-6-77

6. Turn the fixing unit over and remove the screw to remove the fixing unit thermistor 1.

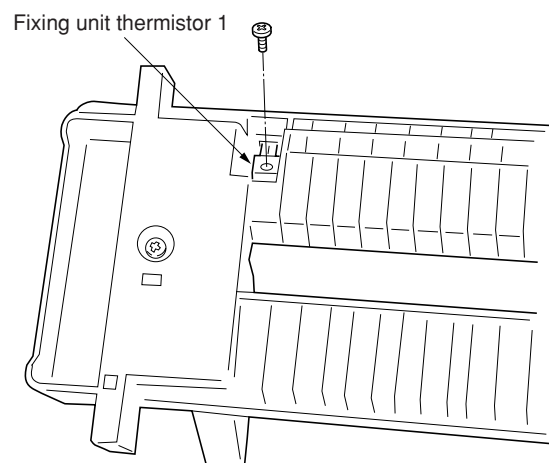
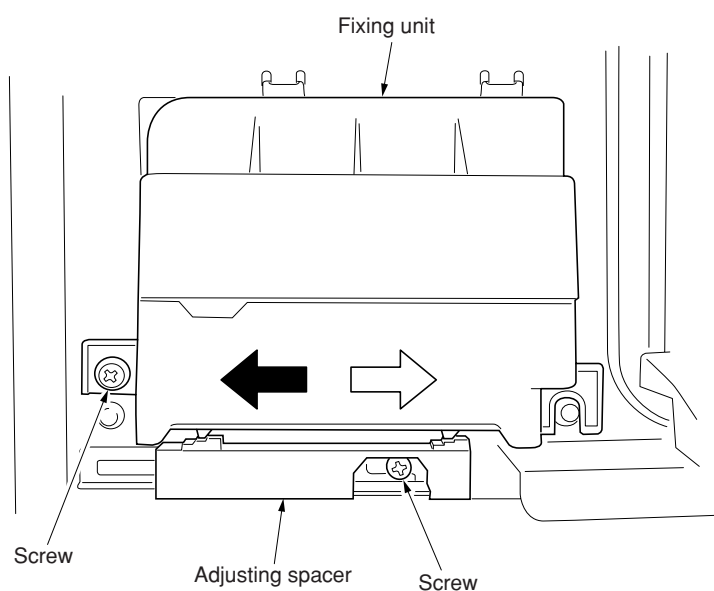
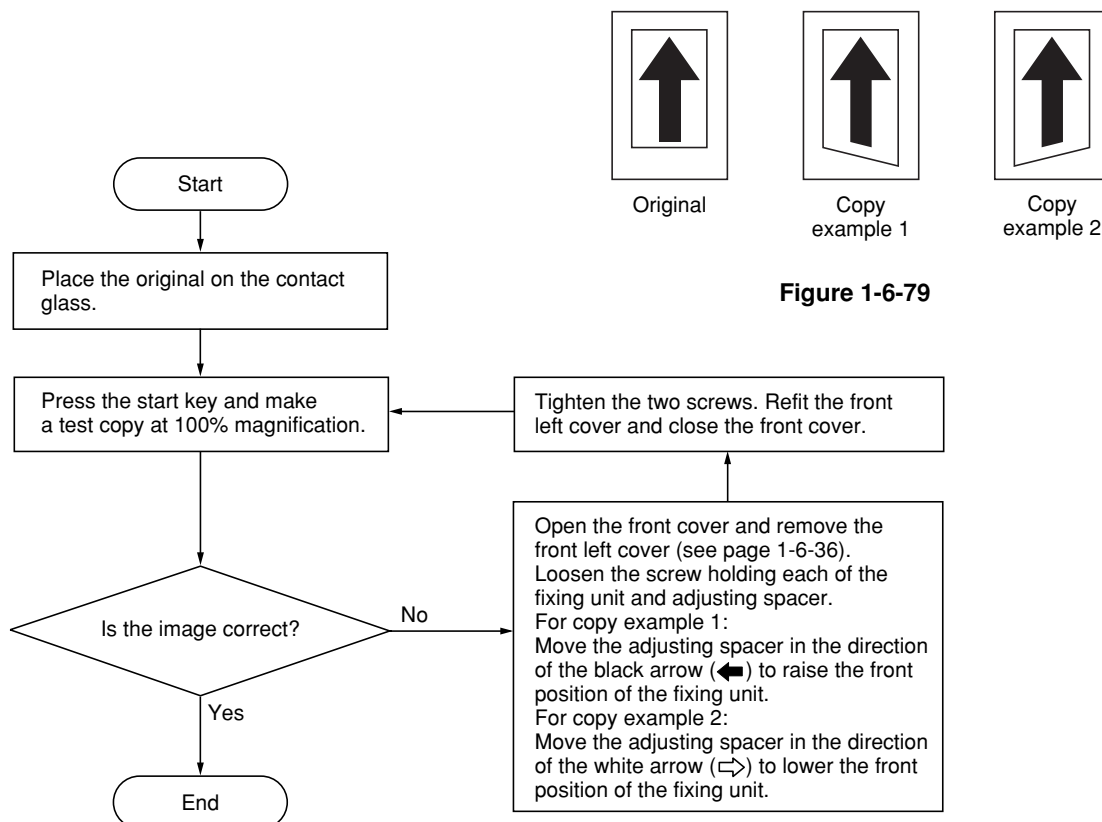


Figure 1-6-78

(7) Adjusting front position of the fixing unit (adjusting lateral squareness)

Follow the procedure below if the drum is not parallel to the fixing unit and therefore paper is not fed straight to the fixing section and the trailing edge of image on either the front or rear side becomes longer

Procedure**Figure 1-6-80**

1-6-8 Others

(1) Detaching and refitting the ozone filters (only for 230 V specifications)

Follow the procedure below to replace the ozone filters.

Procedure

1. Remove the ozone filter A from the conveying cover.

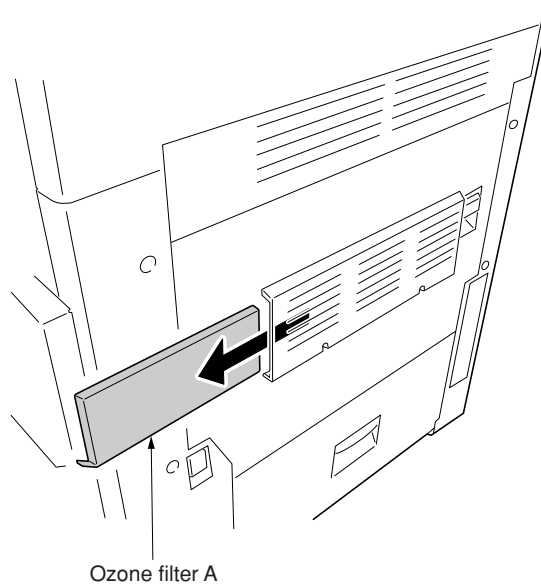


Figure 1-6-81

2. Remove the ozone filter B from the rear cover.
3. Replace the ozone filter A and B, and refit all the removed parts.

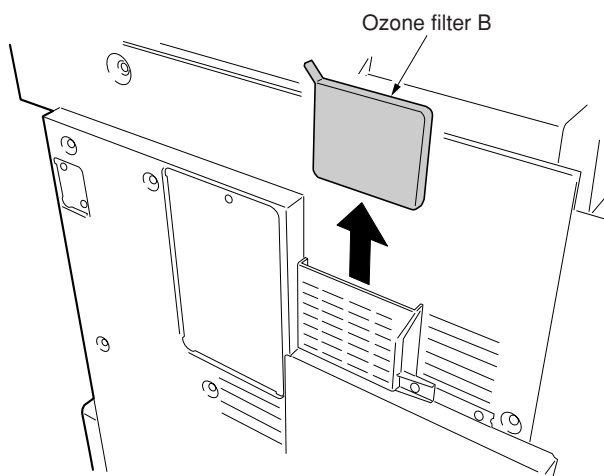


Figure 1-6-82

1-7-1 Upgrading the firmware on the main PCB

Firmware upgrading requires the following tools:

Compact Flash (Products manufactured by SANDISK are recommended.)

NOTE

When writing data to a new Compact Flash from a computer, be sure to format it in advance.

Procedure

1. Turn the power switch off and disconnect the power plug.
2. Remove the middle right cover.
Insert it with its rear side toward the front side of the machine.
3. Insert Compact Flash in a notch hole of the copier.
4. Insert the power plug and turn the power switch on. Upgrading firmware starts for 3 minutes.

Caution:

Never turn the main switch off during upgrading.

5. "Completed" is displayed on the touch panel when upgrading is complete.
6. Turn the power switch off and disconnect the power plug.
7. Remove Compact Flash from the copier and refit the middle right cover.
8. Insert the power plug and turn the power switch on.

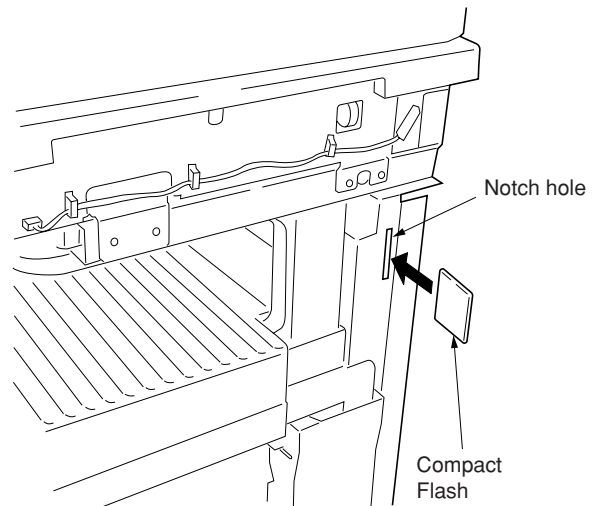


Figure 1-7-1

1-7-2 Adjustment-free variable resistors (VR)

The variable resistors listed below are set at the factory prior to shipping and cannot be adjusted in the field.

- High-voltage transformer PCB: VR42, VR201, VR204, VR205
- Inverter PCB: VR1, VR2

1-7-3 Remarks on main PCB replacement

When replacing the main PCB, remove EEPROM 1 to 4 from the main PCB that has been removed and then reattach it to the new main PCB.

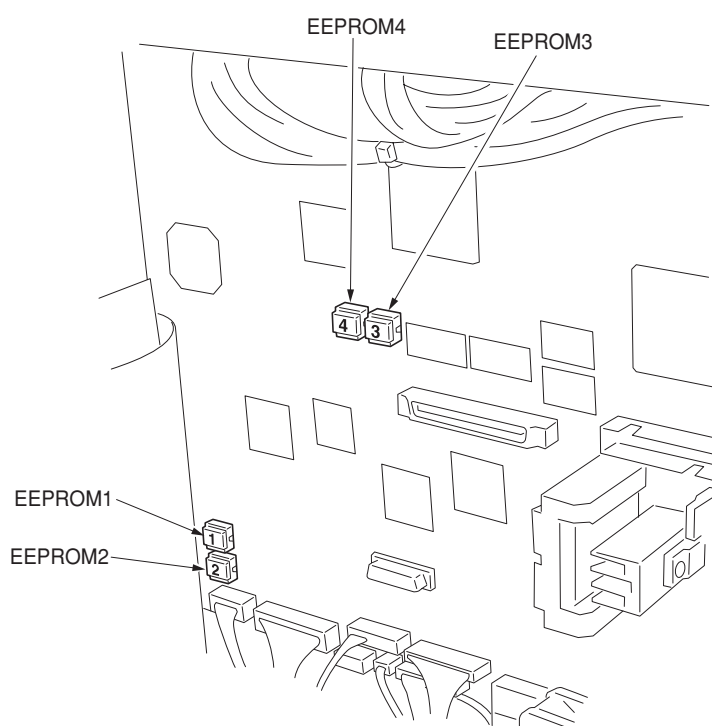


Figure 1-7-2

1-7-4 Upgrading the printer board firmware

Follow the procedure below to upgrade the firmware on the optional printer board.

Firmware upgrading requires the following tools:

Compact Flash (Products manufactured by SANDISK are recommended.)

NOTE

When writing data to a new Compact Flash from a computer, be sure to format it in advance.

Procedure

1. Turn the power switch off and disconnect the power plug.
2. Insert Compact Flash which has firmware in to the printer board.
3. Insert the power plug and turn the power switch on. Upgrading firmware starts.
4. When upgrading the firmware is completed correctly, the display in Figure 1-7-3 will be shown on the operation panel screen.
5. Turn the power switch off at the operation panel screen which shown on Figure 1-7-3 and disconnect the power plug.
6. Remove Compact Flash from the printer board.

Caution:

If pressing the “Reset” button shown on Figure 1-7-3, upgrading the firmware will start again and if turn the power switch off before the download is finished, writing for the program will not finish till the end and [Checksum error F010] will occur.



Figure 1-7-3

2-1-1 Paper feed section

The paper feed section consists of the primary feed and secondary feed subsections. Primary feed conveys paper from the upper drawer, lower drawer or bypass tray to the left and right registration rollers, at which point secondary feed takes place and the paper travels to the transfer section in sync with the printing timing.

Each drawer consists of a lift driven by the lift motor and other components. Each drawer can hold up to 500 sheets of paper. Paper is fed from the drawer by the rotation of the forwarding pulley and paper feed pulley. The separation pulley prevents multiple sheets from being fed at one time, via the torque limiter.

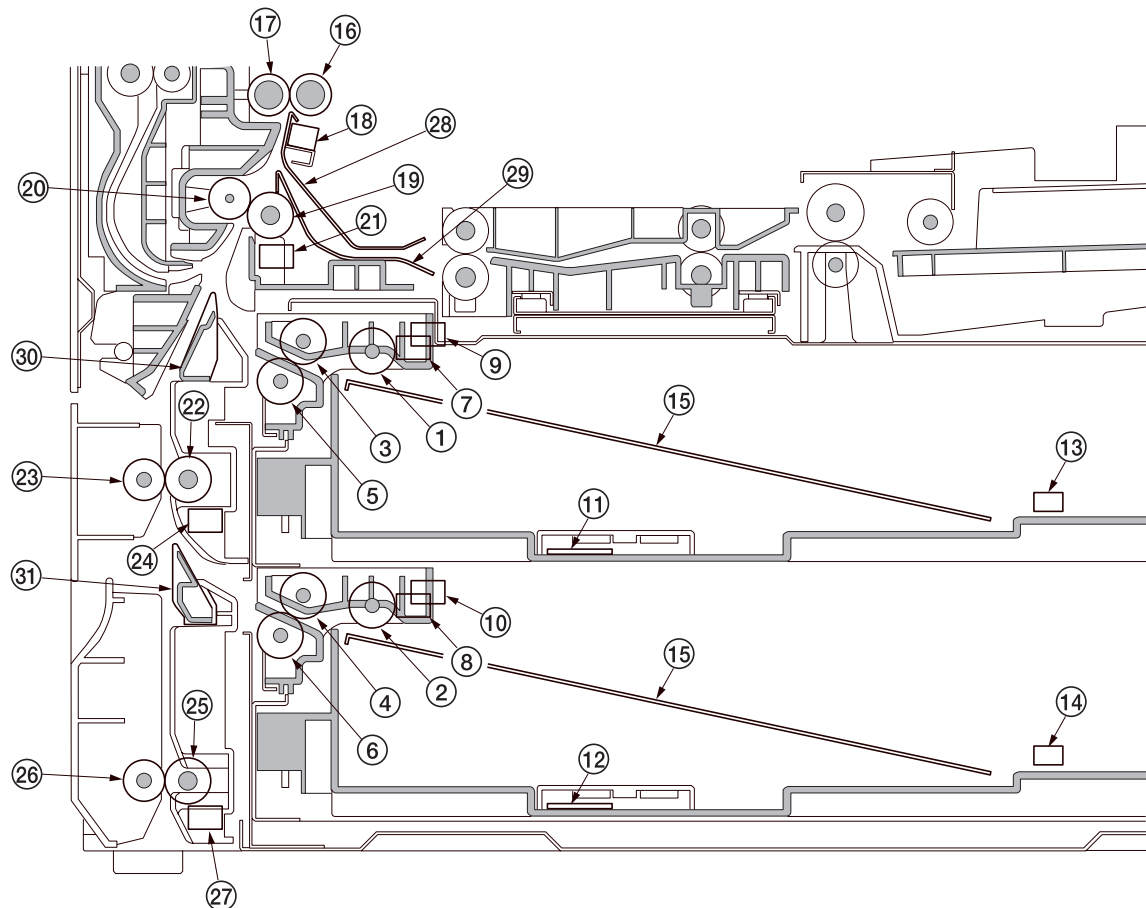


Figure 2-1-1 Paper feed from the upper and lower drawers

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| ① Upper forwarding pulley | ①⑦ Left registration roller |
| ② Lower forwarding pulley | ①⑧ Registration switch (RSW) |
| ③ Upper paper feed pulley | ①⑨ Feed roller 1 |
| ④ Lower paper feed pulley | ②⑩ Feed pulley |
| ⑤ Upper separation pulley | ②⑪ Feed switch 1 (FSW1) |
| ⑥ Lower separation pulley | ②⑫ Feed roller 2 |
| ⑦ Upper paper switch (PPSW-U) | ②⑬ Feed pulley |
| ⑧ Lower paper switch (PPSW-L) | ②⑭ Feed switch 2 (FSW2) |
| ⑨ Upper lift limit switch (LICSU-U) | ②⑮ Feed roller 3 |
| ⑩ Lower lift limit switch (LICSU-L) | ②⑯ Feed pulley |
| ⑪ Upper paper width switch (PWSW-U) | ②⑰ Feed switch 3 (FSW3) |
| ⑫ Lower paper width switch (PWSW-L) | ②⑱ Front registration guide |
| ⑬ Upper paper length switch (PLSW-U) | ②⑲ Paper conveying guide |
| ⑭ Lower paper length switch (PLSW-L) | ③⑰ Vertical paper conveying guide 1 |
| ⑮ Drawer lift | ③⑱ Vertical paper conveying guide 2 |
| ⑯ Right registration roller | |

The bypass table can hold up to 200 sheets of paper at one time. Paper is fed from the bypass table by the rotation of the bypass forwarding pulley and bypass paper feed pulley. Also during paper feed, the bypass separation pulley prevents multiple sheets from being fed at one time by the torque limiter.

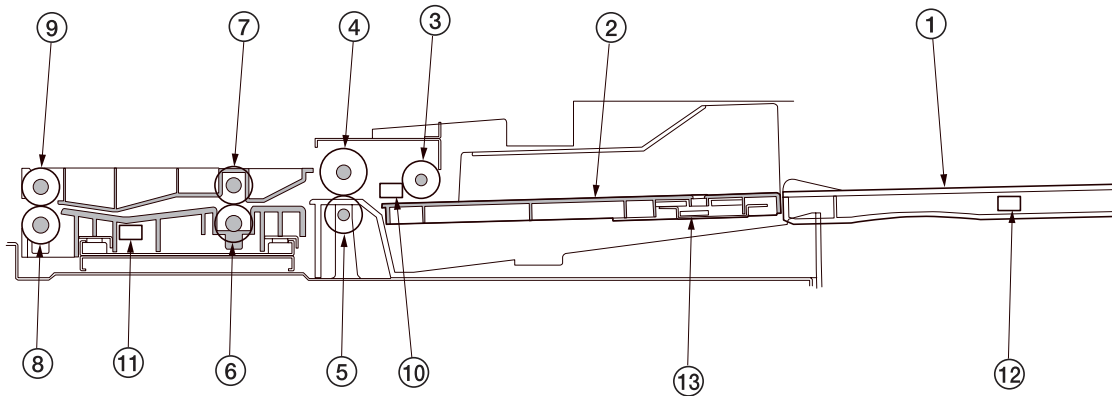


Figure 2-1-2 Paper feed from the bypass table

- ① Bypass table
- ② Bypass lift guide
- ③ Bypass forwarding pulley
- ④ Bypass paper feed pulley
- ⑤ Bypass separation pulley
- ⑥ Bypass feed roller 1
- ⑦ Bypass feed pulley
- ⑧ Bypass feed roller 2
- ⑨ Bypass feed pulley
- ⑩ Bypass paper switch (BYPPSW)
- ⑪ Bypass feed switch (BYPFSW)
- ⑫ Bypass paper length switch (BYPPLSW)
- ⑬ Bypass paper width switch (BYPPWSW)

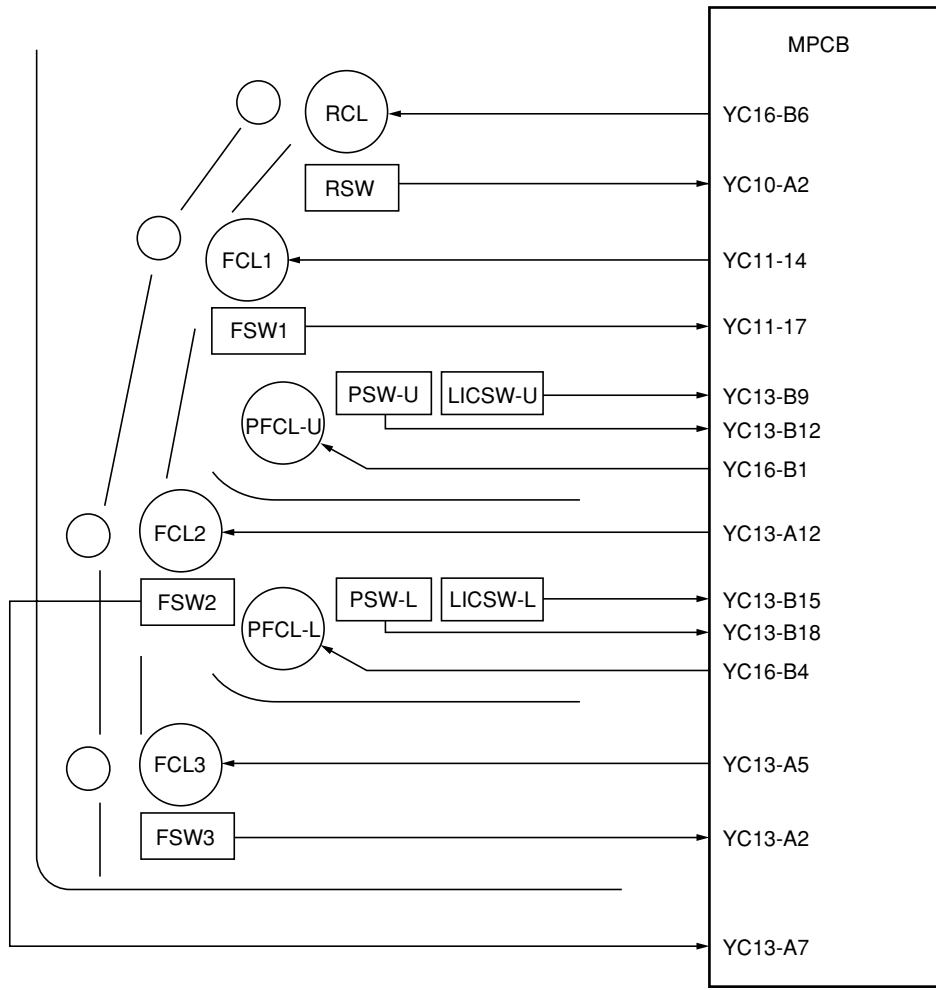


Figure 2-1-3 Paper feed section block diagram (upper and lower drawers)

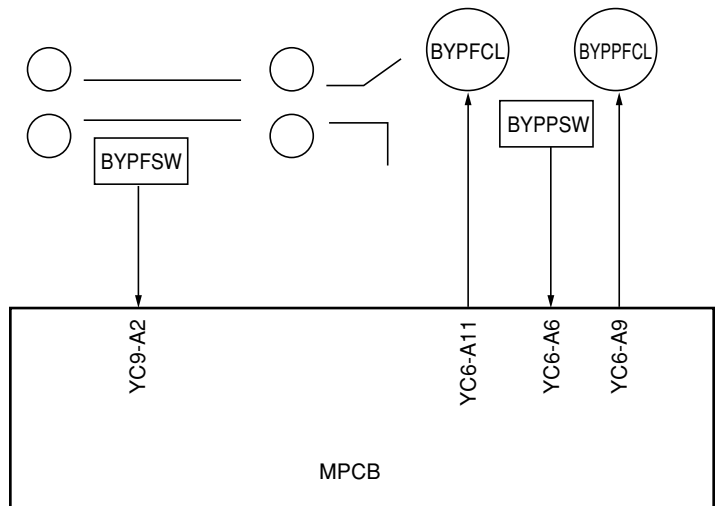
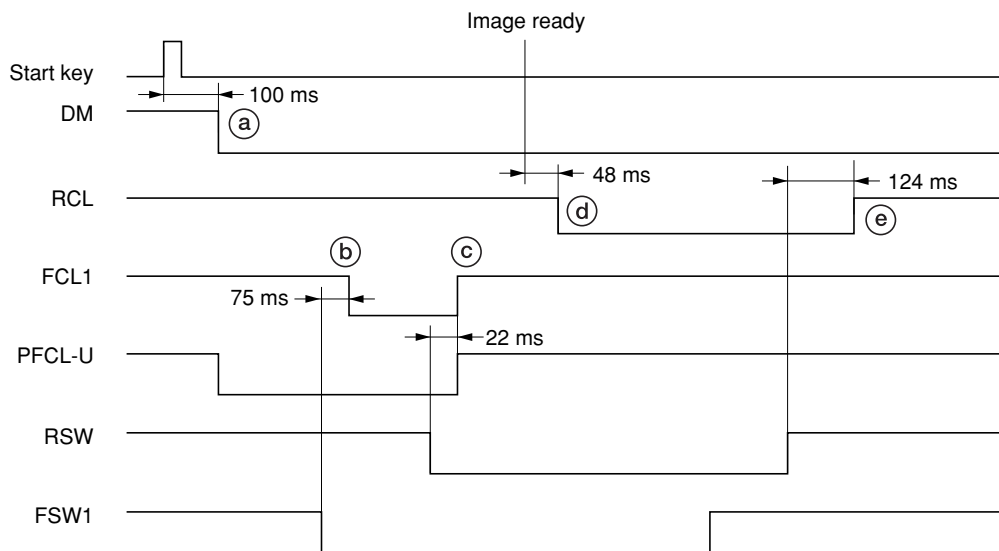
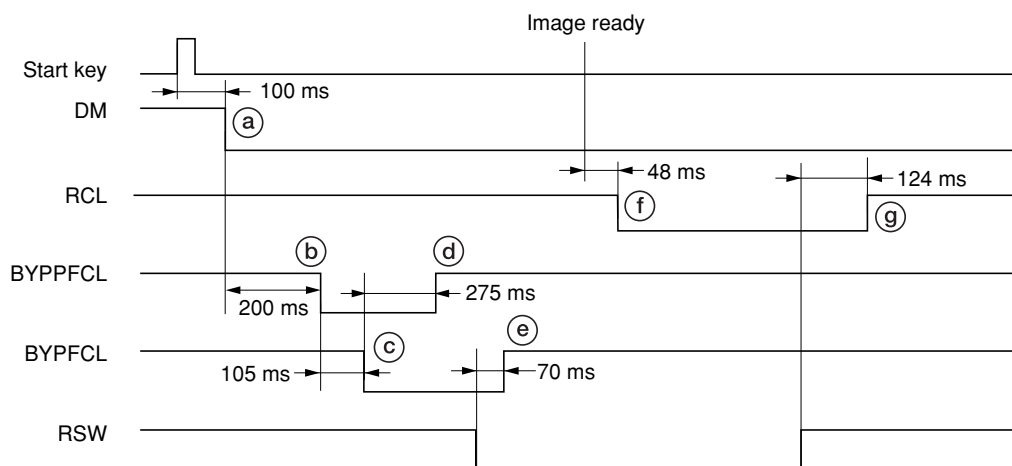


Figure 2-1-4 Paper feed section block diagram (bypass table)



Timing chart 2-1-1 Paper feed from the upper drawer

- Ⓐ: 100 ms after the start key is pressed, the drive motor (DM) turns on to start the drive for the paper feed section. At the same time, the upper paper feed clutch (PFCL-U) turns on, and the forwarding and paper feed pulleys rotate to start primary paper feed.
- Ⓑ: 75 ms after the leading edge of the paper turns the feed switch 1 (FSW1) on, the feed clutch 1 (FCL1) turns on and the feed roller 1 rotates.
- Ⓒ: 22 ms after the leading edge of the paper turns the registration switch (RSW) on, the upper paper feed clutch (PFCL-U) and feed clutch 1 (FCL1) turn off.
- Ⓓ: 48 ms after image ready signal turns on, the registration clutch (RCL) turns on, and the right registration roller rotates to start secondary paper feed.
- Ⓔ: 124 ms after the trailing edge of the paper turns the registration switch (RSW) off, the registration clutch (RCL) turns off.



Timing chart 2-1-2 Paper feed from the bypass tray

- Ⓐ: 100 ms after the start key is pressed, the drive motor (DM) turns on to start the drive for the paper feed section.
- Ⓑ: 200 ms after the drive motor (DM) turns on, the bypass paper feed clutch (BYPPFCL) turns on.
- Ⓒ: 105 ms after the bypass paper feed clutch (BYPPFCL) turns on, the bypass feed clutch (BYPFCL) turns on.
- Ⓓ: 275 ms after the bypass feed clutch (BYPFCL) turns on, the bypass paper feed clutch (BYPPFCL) turns off.
- Ⓔ: 70 ms after the registration switch (RSW) turns on, the bypass feed clutch (BYPFCL) turns off.
- Ⓕ: 48 ms after image ready signal turns on, the registration clutch (RCL) turns on, and the right registration roller rotates to start secondary paper feed.
- Ⓖ: 124 ms after the trailing edge of the paper turns the registration switch (RSW) off, the registration clutch (RCL) turns off.

2-1-2 Main charging section

The main charging section consists of the main charger assembly, drum and so on. The drum is electrically charged uniformly (500 μ A) by means of a grid to form a latent image on the surface. The main charger unit charges the drum so that a latent image is formed on the surface, the shield grid ensuring the charge is applied uniformly.

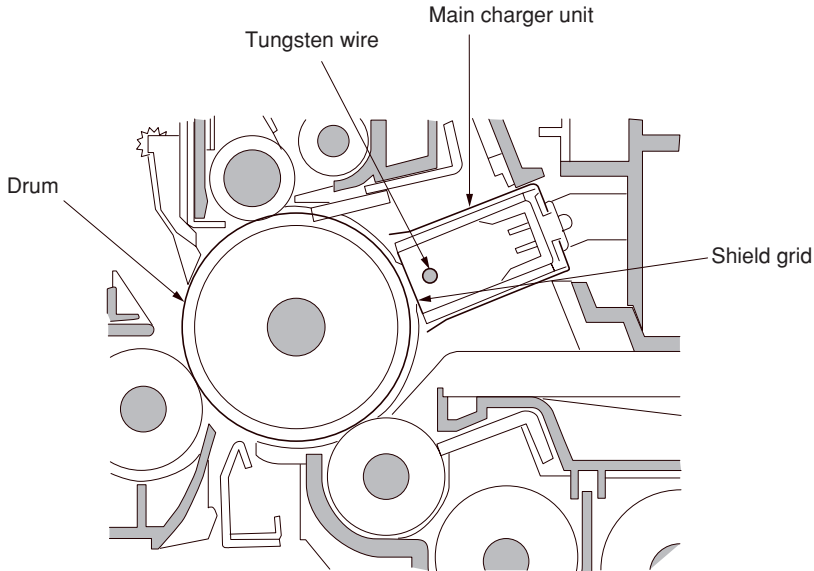


Figure 2-1-5 Main charging section

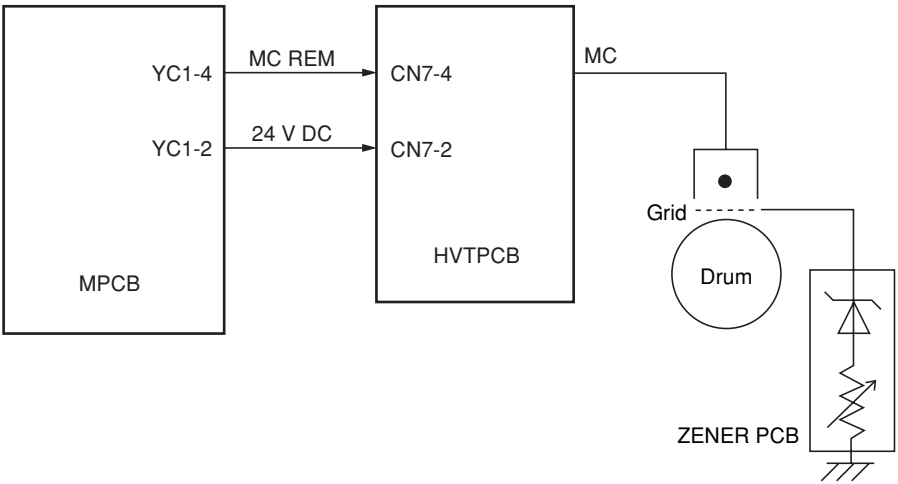
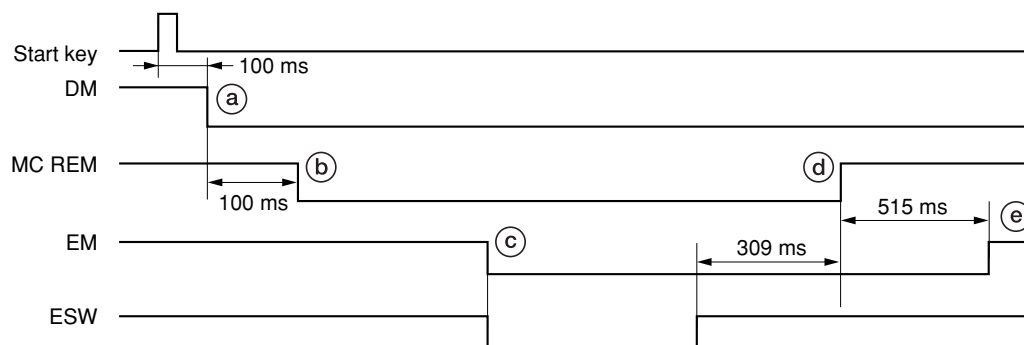


Figure 2-1-6 Main charging section block diagram



Timing chart 2-1-3 Main charging section operation

- Ⓐ: 100 ms after the start key is pressed, the drive motor (DM) turns on.
- Ⓑ: 100 ms after the drive motor (DM) turns on, main charging (MC REM) starts.
- Ⓒ: The leading edge of the paper turns on the eject switch (ESW), and at the same time the eject motor (EM) turns on.
- Ⓓ: 309 ms after the paper is ejected and the eject switch (ESW) turns off, main charging (MC REM) ends.
- Ⓔ: 515 ms after the end of main charging (MC REM), the eject motor (EM) turns off.

2-1-3 Optical section

The optical section consists of the scanner, mirror frame and image scanning unit for scanning and the laser scanner unit for printing.

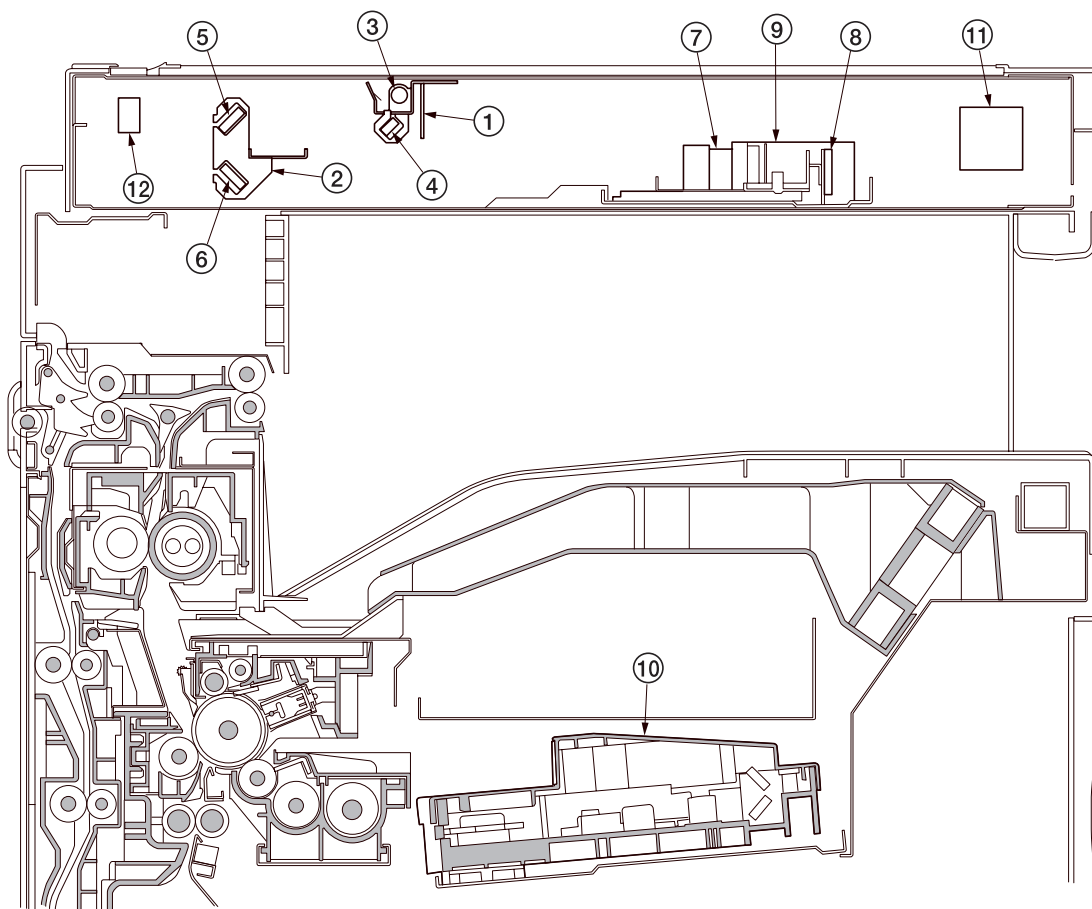


Figure 2-1-7 Optical section

- ① Mirror 1 frame
- ② Mirror 2 frame
- ③ Exposure lamp (EL)
- ④ Mirror 1
- ⑤ Mirror 2
- ⑥ Mirror 3
- ⑦ Lens
- ⑧ CCD PCB (CCDPCB)
- ⑨ Image scanning unit
- ⑩ Laser scanner unit (LSU)
- ⑪ Scanner motor (SM)
- ⑫ Scanner home position switch (SHPSW)

(1) Original scanning

The original image is illuminated by the exposure lamp (EL) and scanned by the CCD PCB (CCDPCB) in the image scanning unit via the three mirrors, the reflected light being converted to an electrical signal.

The scanner and mirror frames travel to scan on the optical rails on the front and rear of the machine to scan from side to side. The speed of the mirror frames is half the speed of the scanner.

When the DF* is used, the scanner and mirror frames stop at the DF original scanning position to start scanning.

* Optional.

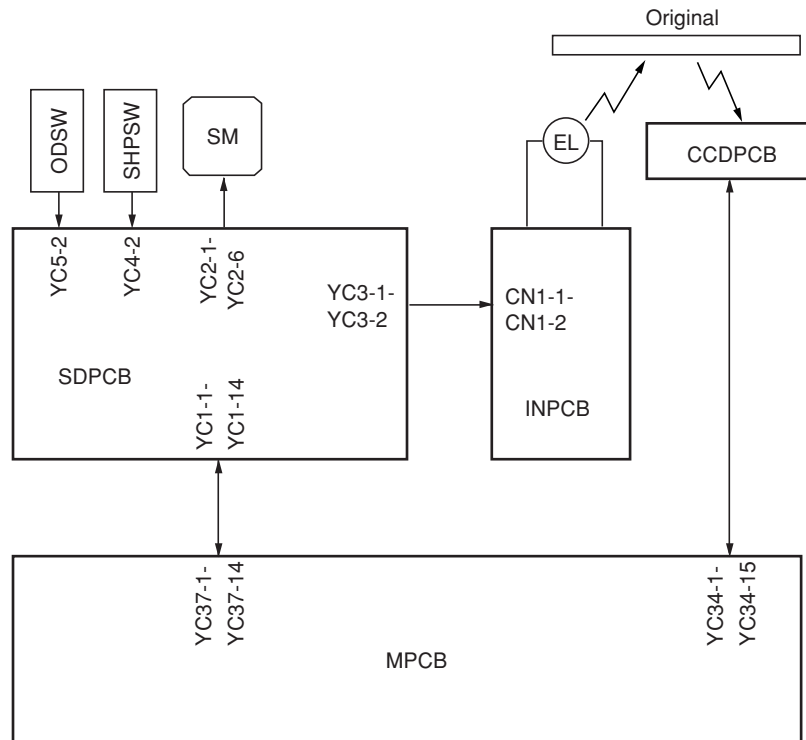
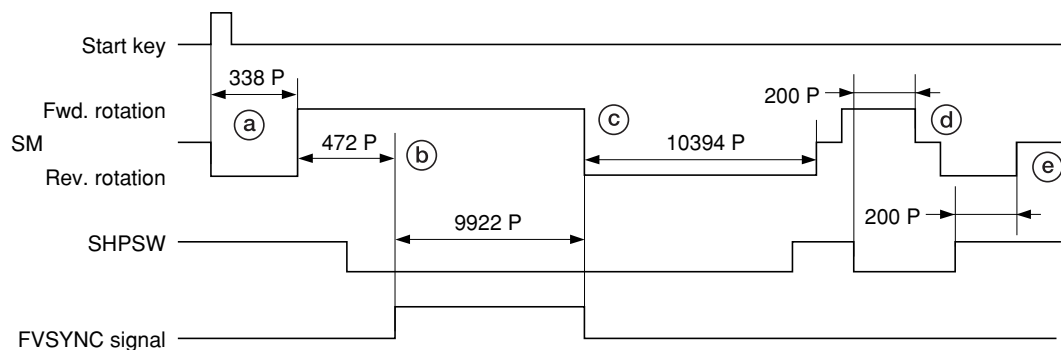


Figure 2-1-8 Optional section block diagram



Timing chart 2-1-4 Scanner operation

- Ⓐ: When the start key is pressed, the scanner motor (SM) reverses for 338 pulses and then rotates forward.
- Ⓑ: 472 pulses after the scanner motor (SM) starts rotating forward, the FVSYNC signal turns on for 9922 pulses for scanning.
- Ⓒ: The scanner motor (SM) reverses for 10394 pulses and then rotates forward.
- Ⓓ: 200 pulses after the scanner home position switch (SHPSW) turns on, the scanner motor (SM) reverses.
- Ⓔ: 200 pulses after the scanner home position switch (SHPSW) turns off, the scanner motor (SM) turns off, and the scanner stops at its home position.

(2) Image printing

The image data scanned by the CCD PCB (CCDPCB) is processed on the main PCB (MPCB) and transmitted as image printing data to the laser scanner unit (LSU). By repeatedly turning the laser on and off, the laser scanner unit forms a latent image on the drum surface.

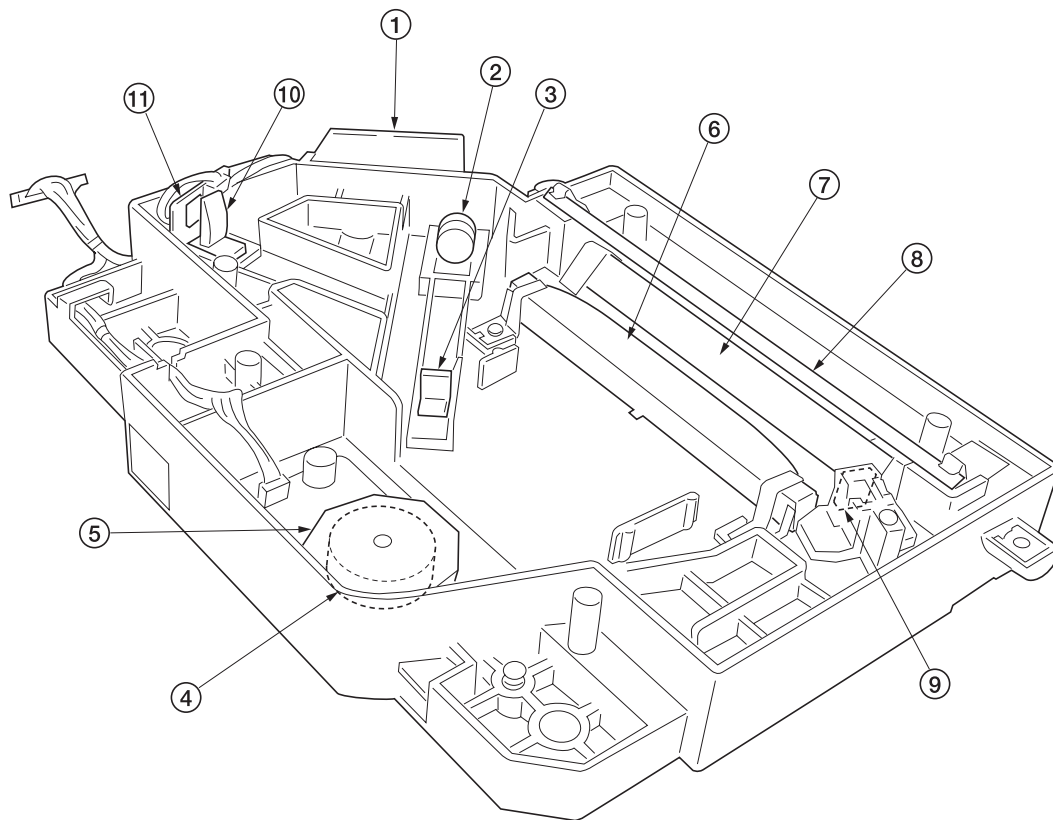


Figure 2-1-9 Laser scanner unit (1)

- ① Laser diode PCB (LDPCB)
- ② Collimator lens
- ③ Cylindrical lens
- ④ Polygon motor (PM)
- ⑤ Polygon mirror
- ⑥ $f\theta$ lens
- ⑦ Mirror
- ⑧ Mirror
- ⑨ BD sensor mirror
- ⑩ Cylindrical correcting lens
- ⑪ BD sensor

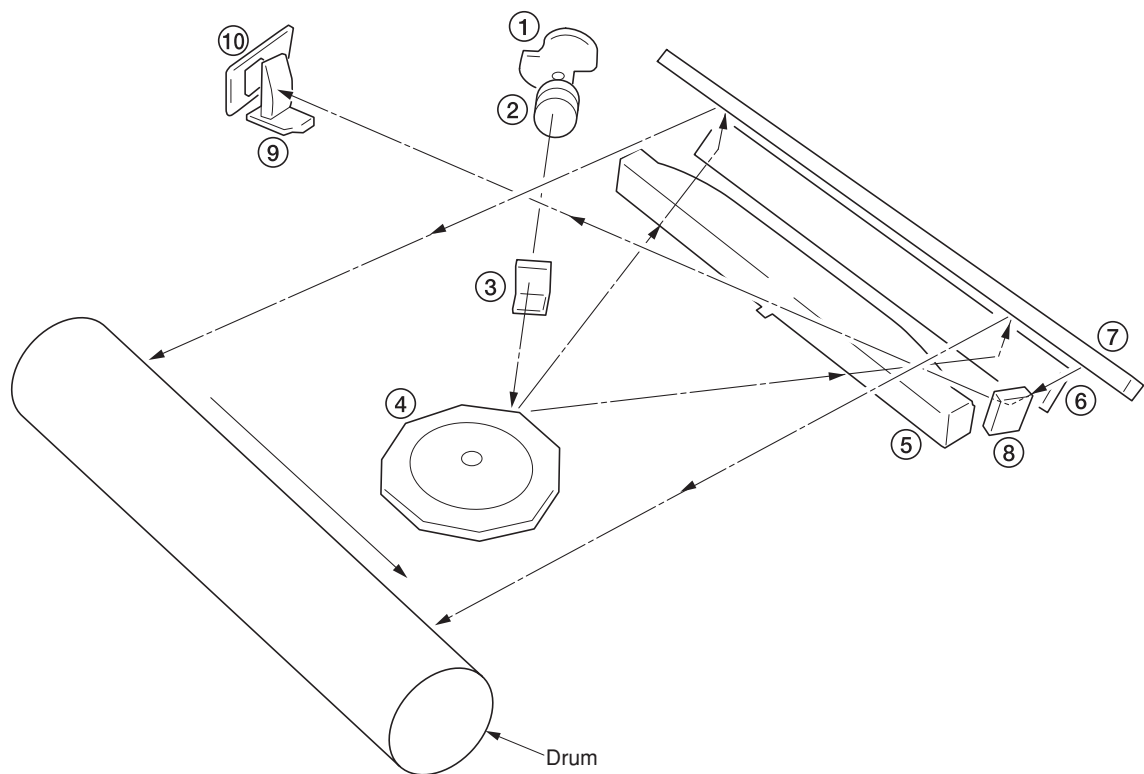


Figure 2-1-10 Laser scanner unit (2)

- ① Laser diode: Generates the laser beam which forms a latent image on the drum.
- ② Collimator lens: Collimates the diffused laser beam emitted from the laser diode to convert it into a cylindrical beam.
- ③ Cylindrical lens: Shapes the collimated laser beam to suit the printing resolution.
- ④ Polygon mirror: Six-facet mirror that rotates at approximately 28031 rpm with each face reflecting the laser beam toward the drum for one main-direction scan.
- ⑤ fθ lens: Corrects for non-linearity of the laser beam scanning speed on the drum surface, keeps the beam diameter constant and corrects for the vertical alignment of the polygon mirror to ensure that the focal plane of the laser beam is on the drum surface.
- ⑥ Mirror: Reflects the laser beam and changes the irradiation direction.
- ⑦ Mirror: Reflects the laser beam and changes the irradiation direction.
- ⑧ BD sensor mirror: Reflects the laser beam to the BD sensor to generate the main-direction (horizontal) sync signal.
- ⑨ Cylindrical correcting lens: Corrects for the deviation of the laser beam reflected by the BD sensor mirror to the BD sensor.
- ⑩ BD sensor: Detects the beam reflected by the BD sensor mirror, outputting a signal to the main PCB (MPCB) to provide timing for the main-direction sync signal.

The dimensions of the laser beam are as shown in Figure 2-1-11.

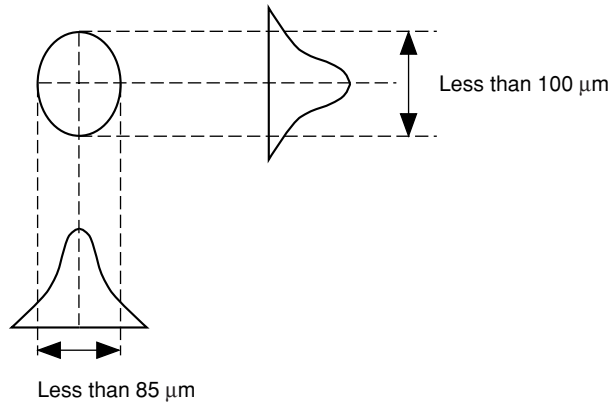


Figure 2-1-11

Scanning in the main direction is provided by the rotating polygon mirror, while scanning in the auxiliary direction is provided by the rotating drum, forming a static latent image on the drum. The static latent image of the letter "A", for example, is formed on the drum surface as shown in Figure 2-1-12. Electrical charge is dissipated on the area of the drum surface irradiated by the laser. The focal point of the laser beam is moved line by line, and adjacent lines slightly overlap each other.

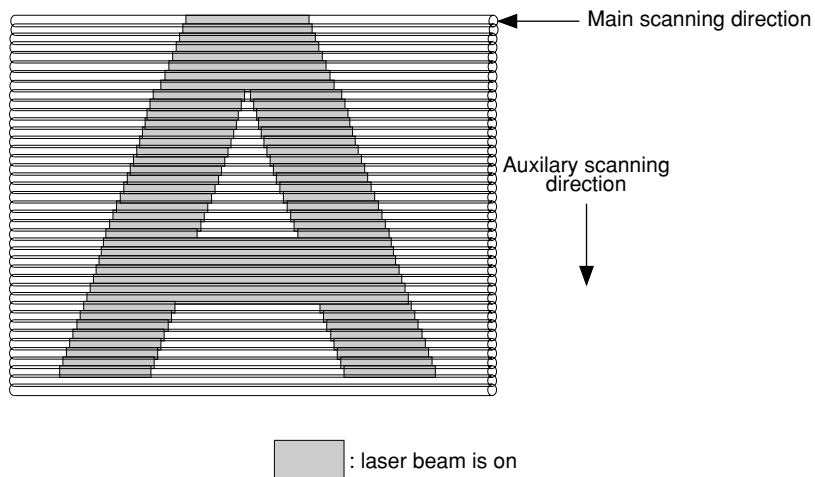


Figure 2-1-12

2-1-4 Developing section

The developing section consists of the developing unit and the toner container.

The developing unit consists of the developing roller where a magnetic brush is formed, the doctor blade and the developing spirals that agitate the toner.

When the toner sensor (TNS) detects a low toner level in the developing unit, the toner replenishment signal is output to the main PCB (MPCB). The main PCB (MPCB) that has received the signal turns on the toner replenishment solenoid (TNFSOL) and replenishes toner from the toner container to the developing unit.

Also, the toner container sensor (TCS) checks whether or not toner remains in the toner container.

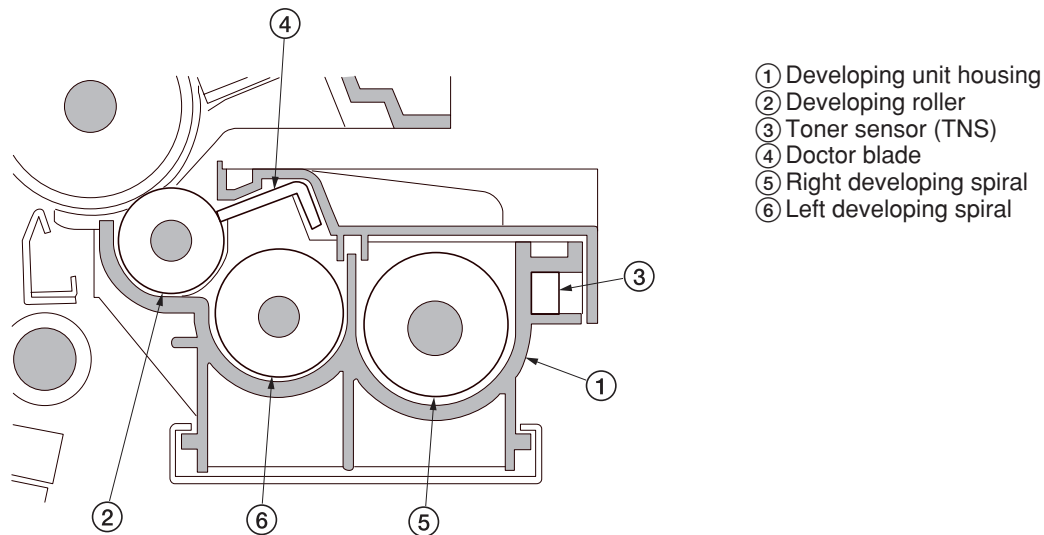


Figure 2-1-13 Developing section

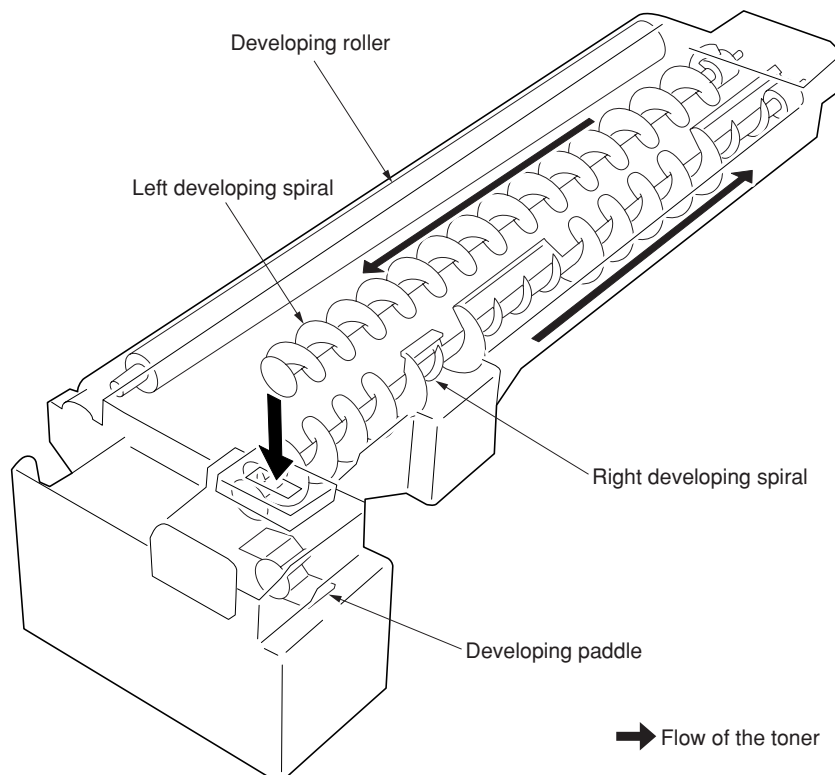
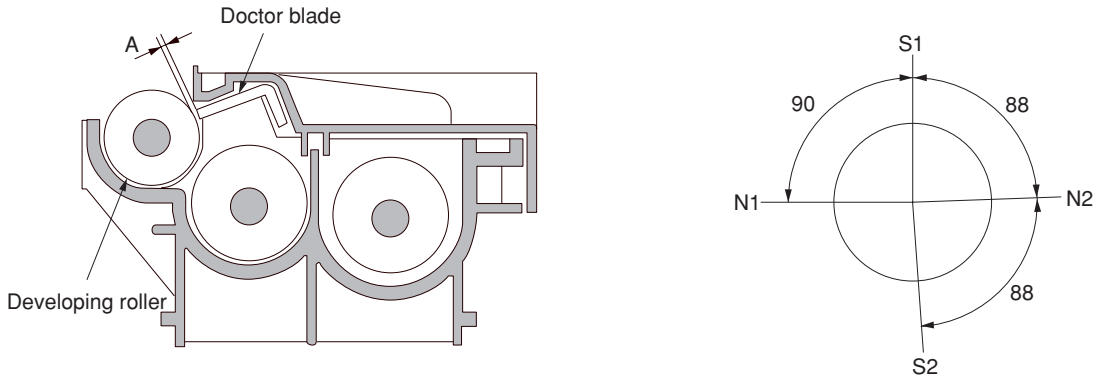


Figure 2-1-14 Flow of the toner

(1) Formation of magnetic brush

The developing roller consists of a magnet roller with four poles and a sleeve roller. Rotation of the sleeve roller around the magnet roller entrains toner, which in turn forms a magnetic brush at pole N1 on the magnet roller. The height of the magnetic brush is regulated by the doctor blade; the developing result is affected by the position of the poles on the magnet roller and the position of the doctor blade.

A developing bias voltage generated by the high-voltage transformer PCB (HVTPCB) is applied to the developing roller to provide image contrast.



A: Distance between the doctor blade and developing roller; 0.23 to 0.35 mm

N1: $870 \times 10^{-4} \text{T}$
 N2: $420 \times 10^{-4} \text{T}$
 S1: $700 \times 10^{-4} \text{T}$
 S2: $910 \times 10^{-4} \text{T}$

Figure 2-1-15 Forming a magnetic brush

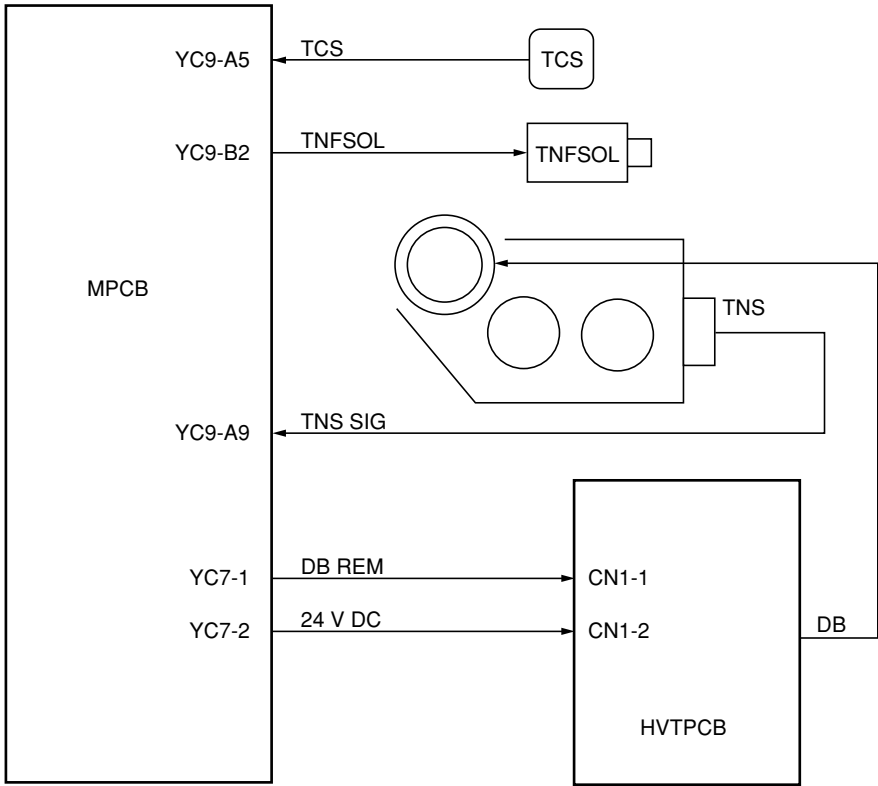


Figure 2-1-16 Developing section block diagram

(2) Computing the absolute humidity

The humidity sensor (HUMSENS) converts the relative humidity detected by the humidity sensing element into a voltage and sends it to the main PCB (MPCB). The main PCB (MPCB) computes the absolute humidity based on this HUMSENS signal and the temperature (ETTH signal) detected by the external temperature thermistor (ETTH).

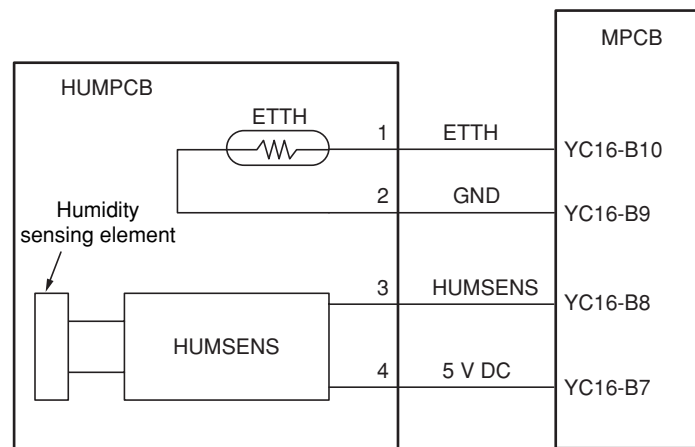


Figure 2-1-17 Absolute humidity computation block diagram

(3) Single component developing system

This machine uses the single component developing system, and reversal processing is performed with a + charged drum (a-Si) and a + charged magnetic toner.

With the single component developing system, toner is electrically charged by friction with the developing sleeve and + charged when it passes through the magnetic doctor blade. The toner that has passed through the magnetic doctor blade forms a uniform layer on the developing sleeve. When the toner layer comes to the location where the developing sleeve is the nearest to the drum, toner moves between the drum and the developing sleeve by an electric field of the magnetic pole. Then, when the developing sleeve rotates and passes through the nearest location to the drum, on the portion of the drum that has been exposed to light, toner is attracted toward the drum by potential difference between the developing bias and the drum surface and development is performed. On the other hand, on the portion of the drum that has not been exposed to light, toner is attracted toward the sleeve and development is not performed. When toner comes to an area where the gap between the drum and the developing sleeve is large, an electric field disappears and toner does not leave the developing sleeve. Development is complete.

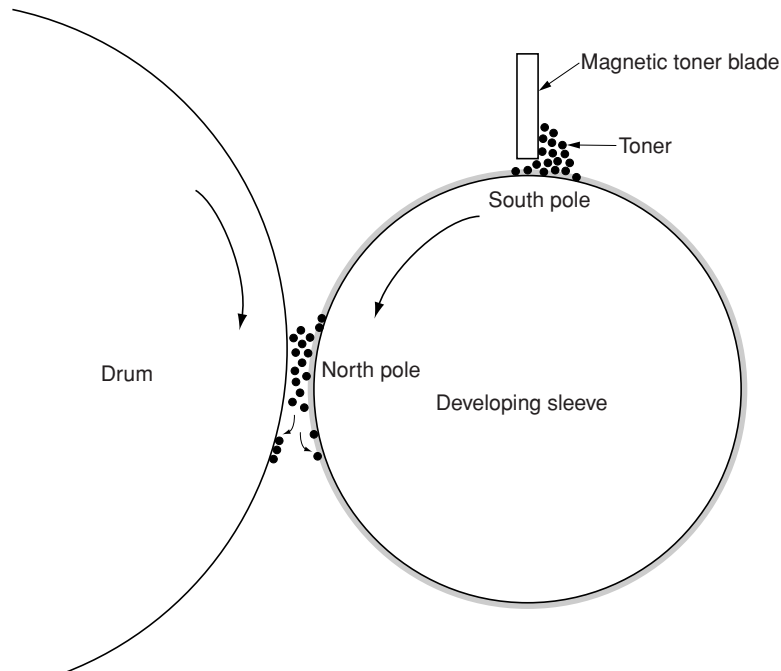


Figure 2-1-18 Single component developing system

Developing bias parameters

For the bias to the developing sleeve, an alternating current (AC) is applied. Parameters for the developing bias are shown below.

Vp-p: Difference between the maximum and the minimum of applied voltage

1.72 kV (fixed)

Vf: Frequency

Typically 2.6 kHz. This value varies depending on the preset value of the drum surface potential and the environmental correction. (Can be adjusted with the maintenance item U101.)

Duty: Ratio of time where + voltage is applied in a cycle

Typically 45%. This value varies depending on the preset value of the drum surface potential and the environmental correction. (Can be adjusted with the maintenance item U101.)

Vde: Developing shift bias potential

160 V (Can be changed to 180 V with the maintenance item U101)

Supplementation

V0: Drum surface potential on non-image area (area not exposed to light)

VL: Drum surface potential on image area (area exposed to light)

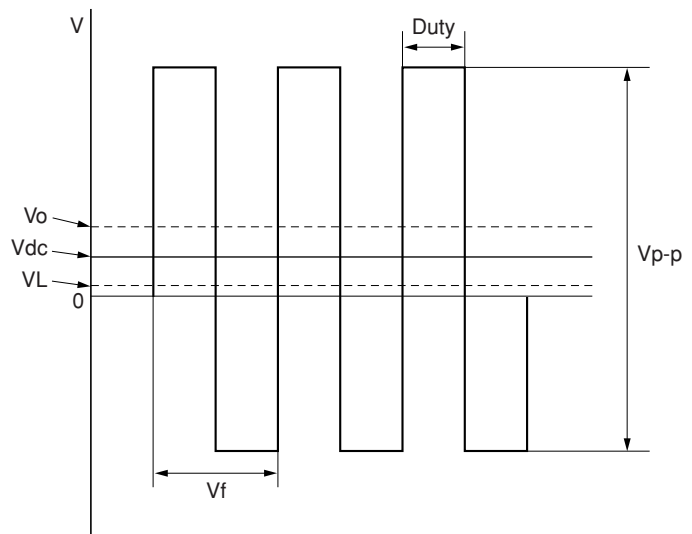


Figure 2-1-19 Developing bias waveform

2-1-5 Transfer and separation sections

The transfer and separation section consists mainly of the transfer roller, separation electrode and drum separation claws.

A high voltage generated by the high-voltage transformer PCB (HVTPCB) is applied to the transfer roller for transfer charging ($100\text{ }\mu\text{A}$).

After transfer is separated from the drum by applying separation bias that is output from the high-voltage transformer PCB (HVTPCB) to the separation electrode ($60\text{ or }10\text{ }\mu\text{A}$ depending on the paper).

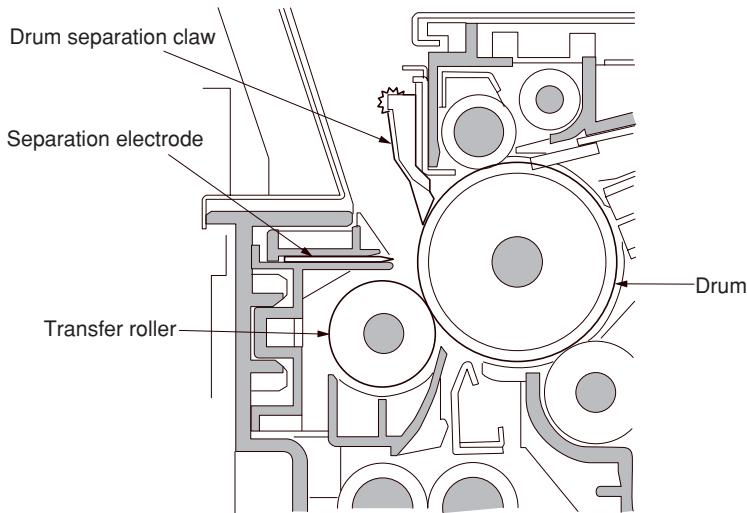


Figure 2-1-20 Transfer and separation sections

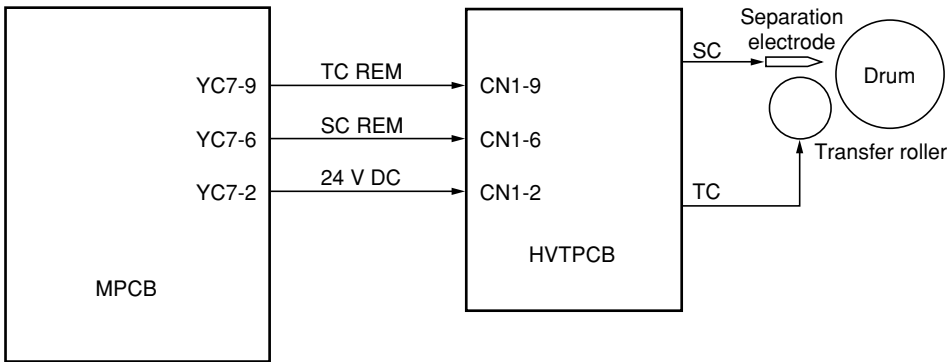
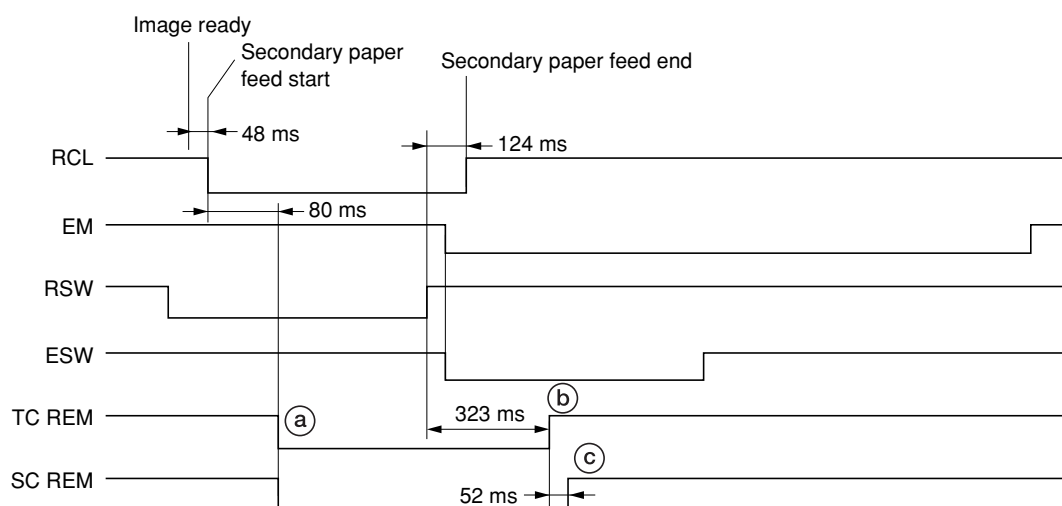


Figure 2-1-21 Transfer and separation sections block diagram



Timing chart 2-1-5 Transfer and separation sections operation

- Ⓐ: 80 ms after the registration clutch (RCL) turns on to start secondary paper feed, transfer charging (TC REM) starts. Also separation bias (SC REM) turns on.
- Ⓑ: 323 ms after the trailing edge of the paper turns the registration switch (RSW) off, transfer charging (TC REM) ends.
- Ⓒ: 52 ms after transfer charging (TC REM) ends, separation bias (SC REM) turns off.

2-1-6 Cleaning and charge erasing sections

The cleaning section consists of the cleaning blade that removes residual toner from the drum surface after the transfer process, and the cleaning spiral that carries the residual toner back to the waste toner tank. The cleaning lamp (CL) consists of LEDs and removes residual charge on the drum before main charging. Also the toner quantity in the waste toner tank is sensed with the overflow sensor (OFS).

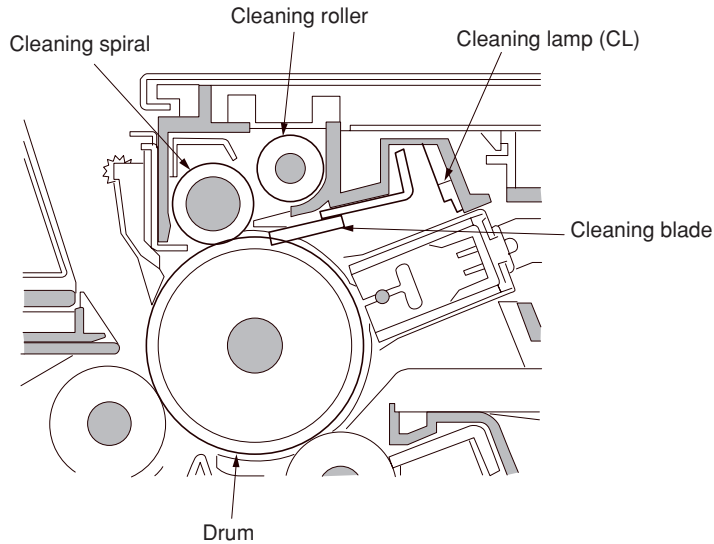


Figure 2-1-22 Cleaning and charge erasing sections

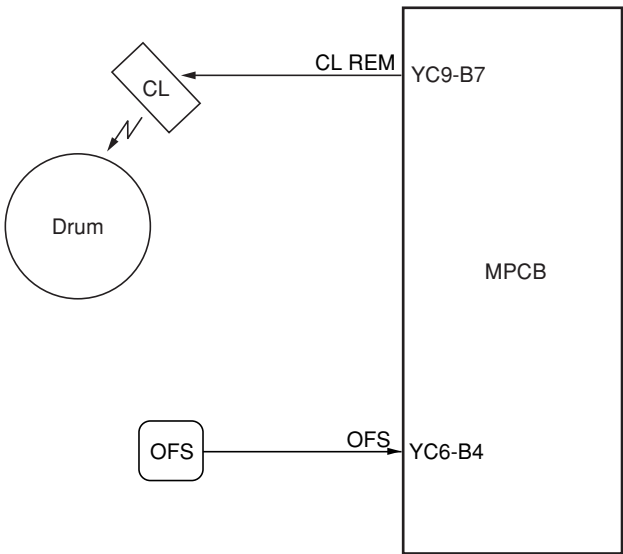


Figure 2-1-23 Cleaning and charge erasing sections block diagram

2-1-7 Fixing section

The fixing section consists of the parts shown in Figure 2-1-24. When paper reaches the fixing section after the transfer process, it passes between the press roller and heat roller, which is heated by fixing heaters M or S (FH-M or FH-S). Pressure is applied by the fixing unit pressure springs so that the toner on the paper is melted, fused and fixed onto the paper. The heat roller is heated by fixing heaters M or S (FH-M or FH-S) inside it; its surface temperature is detected by the fixing unit thermistor 1 and 2 (FTH1,2), and is regulated by the fixing heaters turning on and off.

If the fixing section becomes abnormally hot, fixing unit thermostat (FTS) operates shutting the power to the fixing heaters off. When the fixing process is completed, the paper is separated from the heat roller by its separation claws and is conveyed from the copier to eject and switchback section.

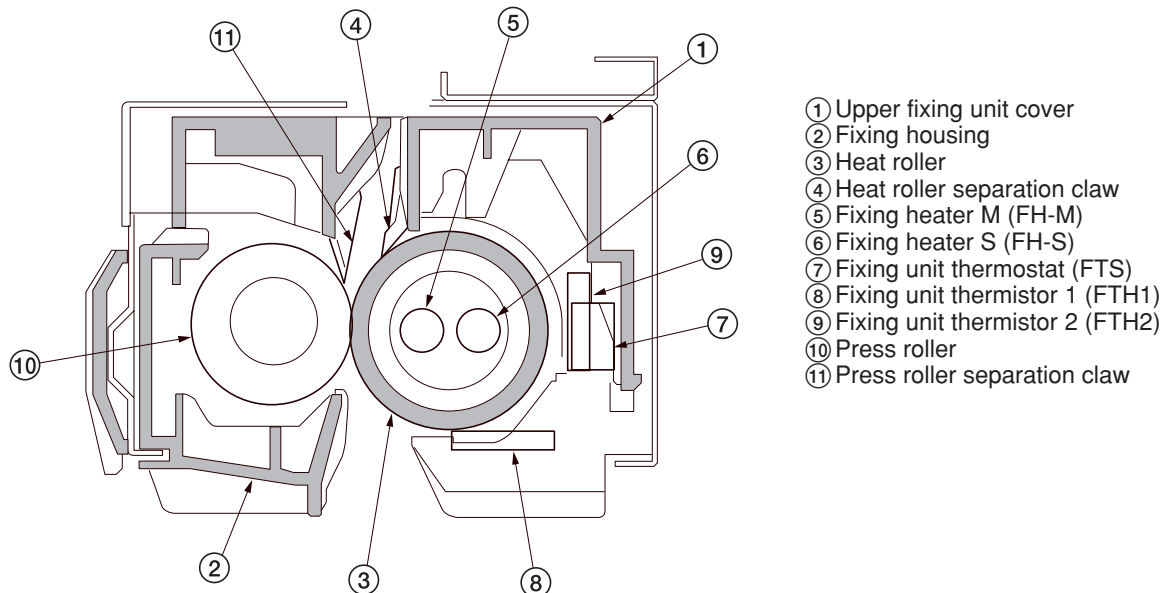


Figure 2-1-24 Fixing section

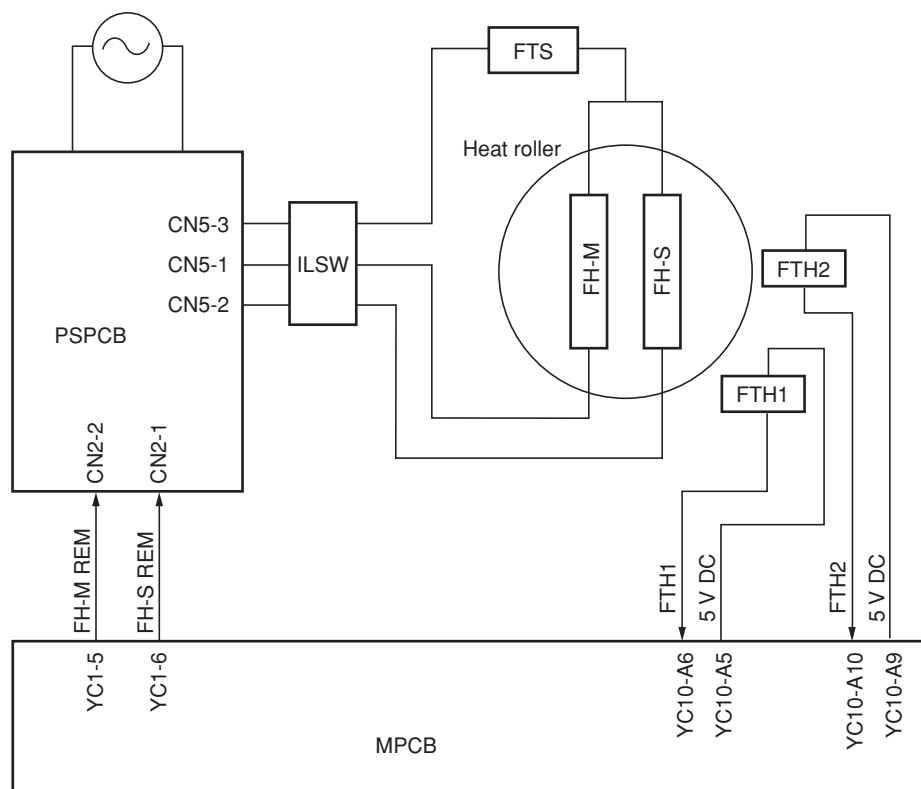
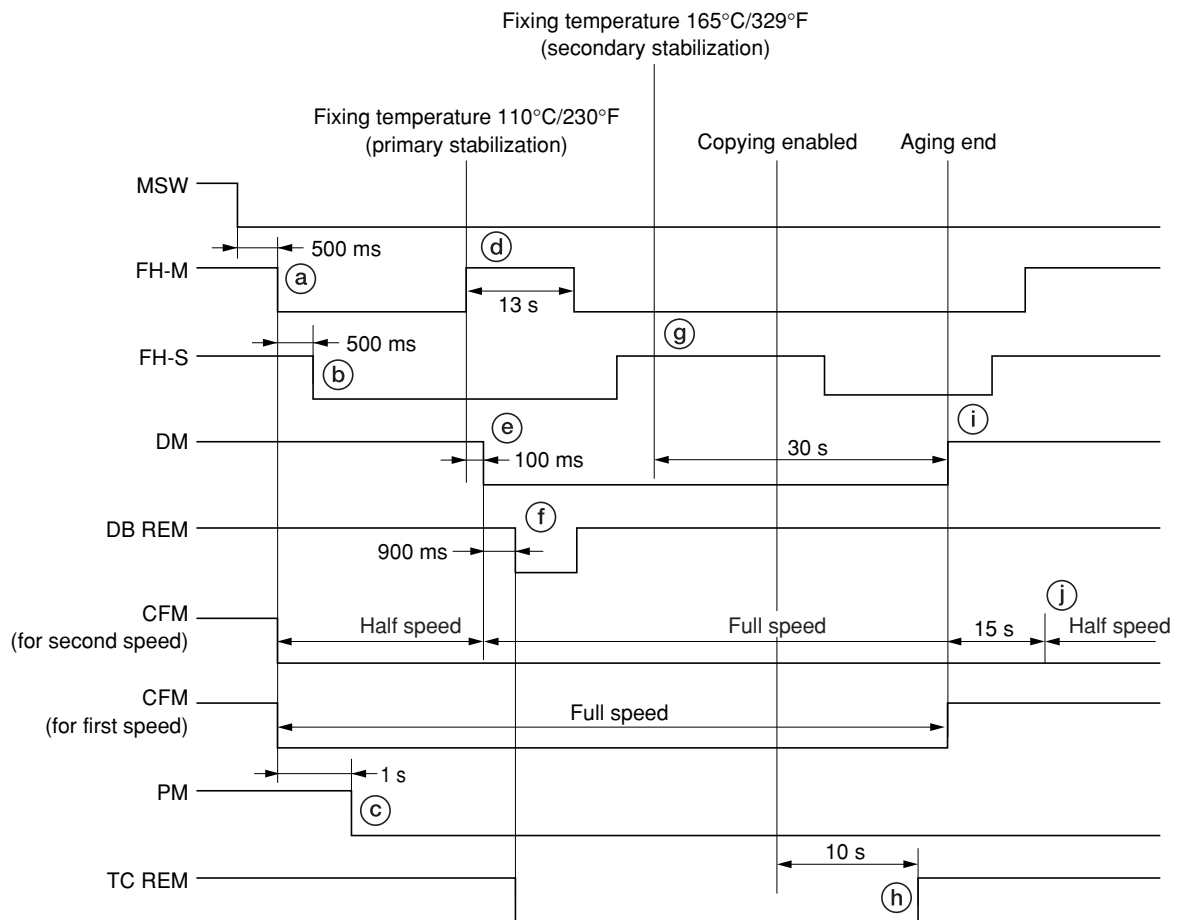


Figure 2-1-25 Fixing section block diagram



Timing chart 2-1-6 Fixing section operation

- Ⓐ: 500 ms after the main switch (MSW) is turned on, fixing heater M (FH-M) turns on to heat the heat roller. At the same time, cooling fan motor (CFM) turns on.
 * The fan motor for second speed rotates at half speed and the motor for first speed rotates at full speed.
- Ⓑ: 500 ms after fixing heater M (FH-M) turns on, fixing heater S (FH-S) turns on.
- Ⓒ: 1 s after fixing heater M (FH-M) turns on, the polygon motor (PM) of the laser scanner unit turns on.
- Ⓓ: When the fixing temperature reaches 110°C/230°F, the copier enters primary stabilization, and fixing heater M (FH-M) turns off temporarily and turns on again after 13 s.
- Ⓔ: 100 ms after the primary stabilization, the drive motor (DM) turns on. Also the cooling fan motor (for second speed) switches to full speed rotation.
- Ⓕ: 900 ms after the drive motor (DM) turns on, the developing bias (DB REM) turns on and at the same time transfer charging (TC REM) starts.
- Ⓖ: When the fixing temperature reaches 165°C/329°F, the copier enters secondary stabilization. Fixing heaters M and S (FH-M and FH-S) are turned on and off to keep the fixing temperature at 165°C/329°F and aging starts.
- Ⓗ: 10 s after copying is enabled, transfer charging (TC REM) ends.
- Ⓘ: 30 s after the secondary stabilization, the drive motor (DM) turns off and the aging ends.
- Ⓙ: 15 s after the drive motor (DM) turns off, the cooling fan motor (for second speed) switches to half speed rotation.

2-1-8 Eject and switchback sections

The eject and switchback sections eject paper on which fixing has ended with the eject roller that is rotated by forward rotation of the eject motor.

In duplex copying, paper is turned over by reverse rotation of the eject motor. When paper is transferred to the job separator or the internal finisher, the feedshift solenoid (FSSOL) is turned on to activate the feedshift guide to switch the paper transfer path.

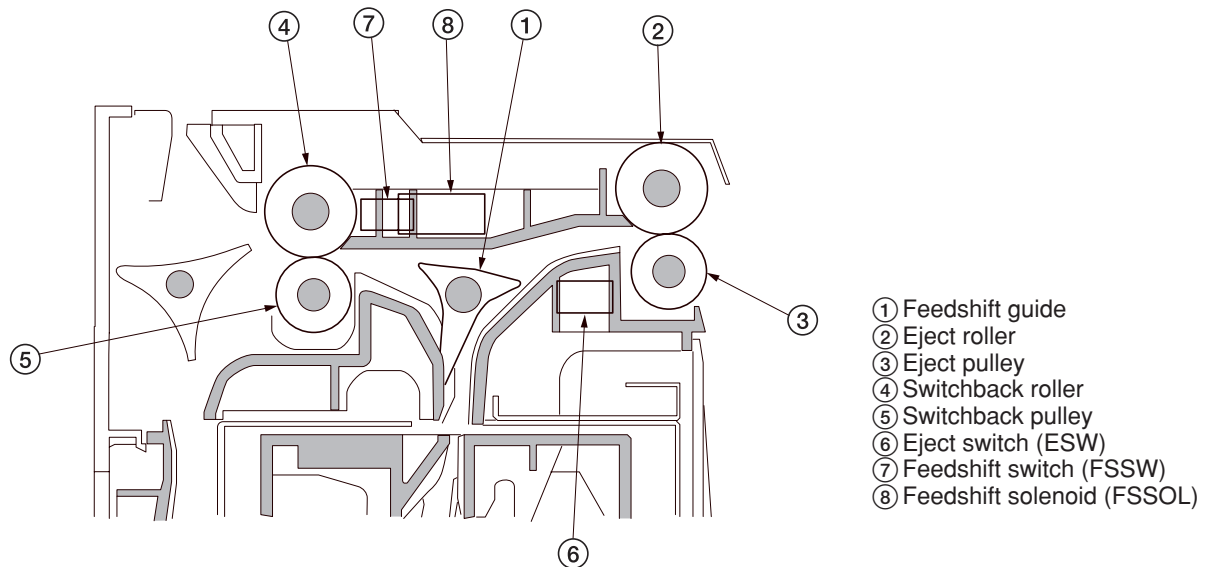


Figure 2-1-26 Eject and switchback sections

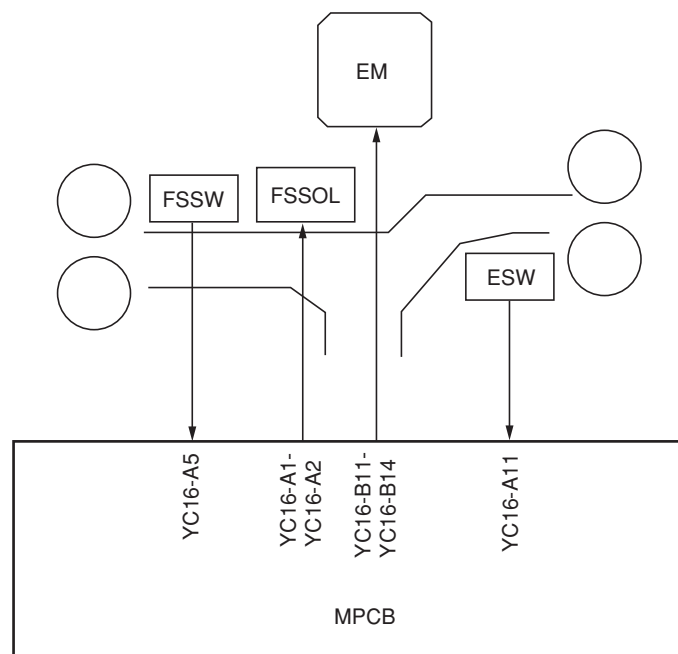
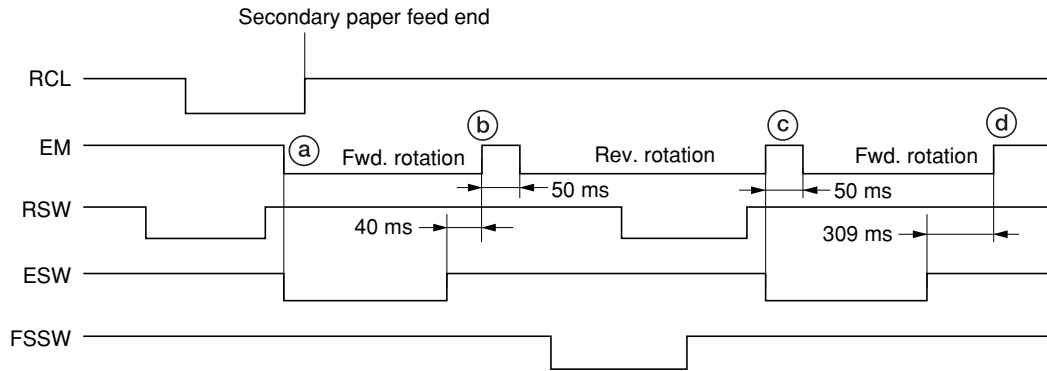


Figure 2-1-27 Eject and switchback sections block diagram



Timing chart 2-1-7 Eject and switchback sections operation

- Ⓐ: The leading edge of paper (front face) turns on the eject switch (ESW), and at the same time the eject motor (EM) starts forward rotation.
- Ⓑ: 40 ms after passing of the trailing edge of paper turns off the eject switch (ESW), the eject motor (EM) turns off for 50 ms and then starts reverse rotation.
- Ⓒ: The leading edge of paper (reverse face) turns on the eject switch (ESW), and at the same time the eject motor (EM) turns off for 50 ms and then starts forward rotation.
- Ⓓ: 309 ms after passing of the trailing edge of the paper turns off the eject switch (ESW), the eject motor (EM) turns off.

2-1-9 Duplex section

The duplex section consists of the components shown in figure. In duplex mode, after copying on to the reverse face of the paper, the paper is reversed in the switchback section and conveyed to the duplex section. The paper is then conveyed to the copier paper feed section by the upper and lower duplex feed rollers.

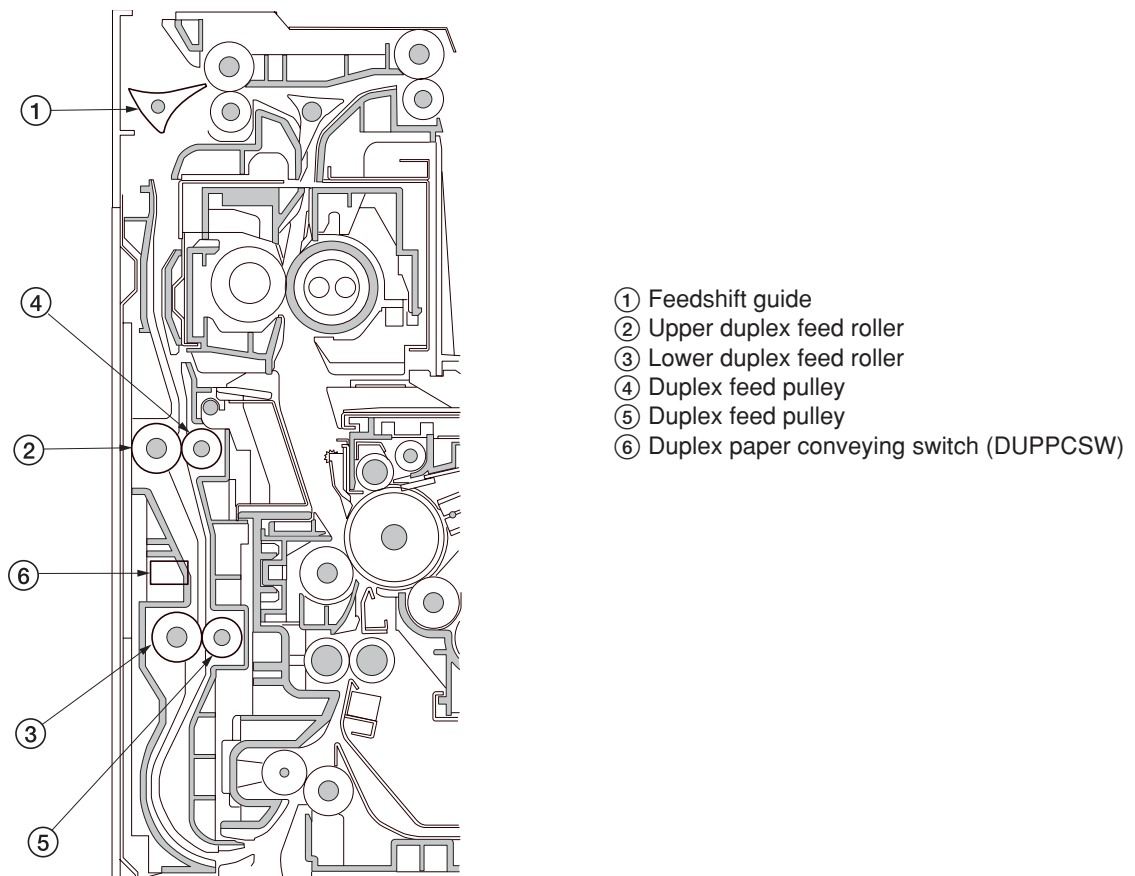


Figure 2-1-28 Duplex section

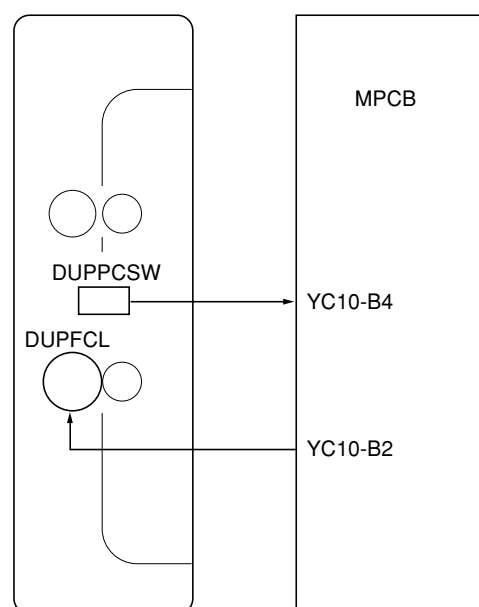
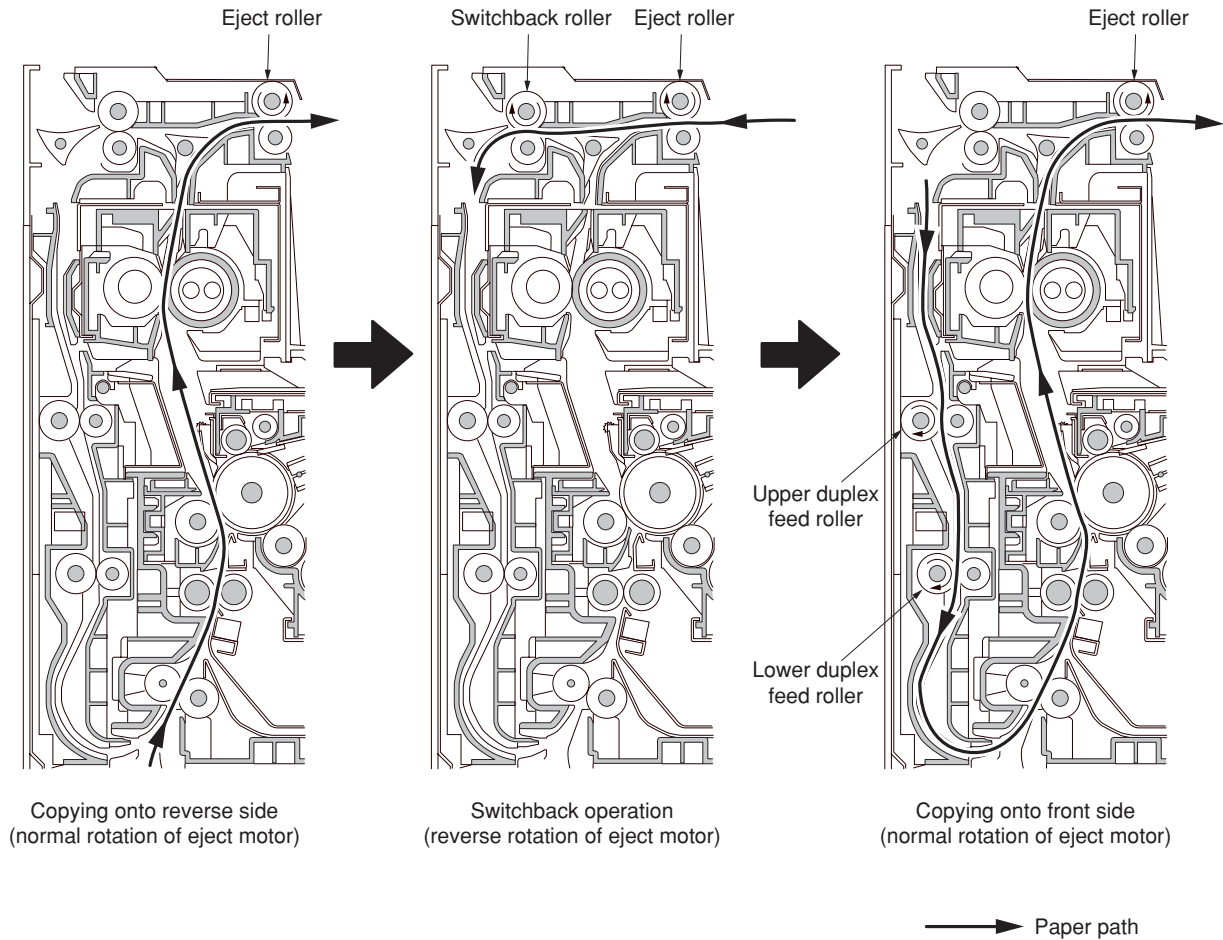


Figure 2-1-29 Duplex section block diagram

(1) Paper conveying operation in duplex copying

Paper of which copying onto the reverse side is complete is conveyed to the switchback section, the eject motor switches from normal rotation to reverse rotation to switch the eject roller to reverse rotation, and the paper conveying direction is reversed. Paper that has been switched back is conveyed to the duplex section via the eject roller and the switchback roller. Paper that has been conveyed to the duplex section is conveyed to the paper feed section again by rotation of the upper duplex feed roller and the lower duplex feed roller and copying onto the front side is performed.

**Figure 2-1-30**

2-2-1 Electrical parts layout

(1) PCBs

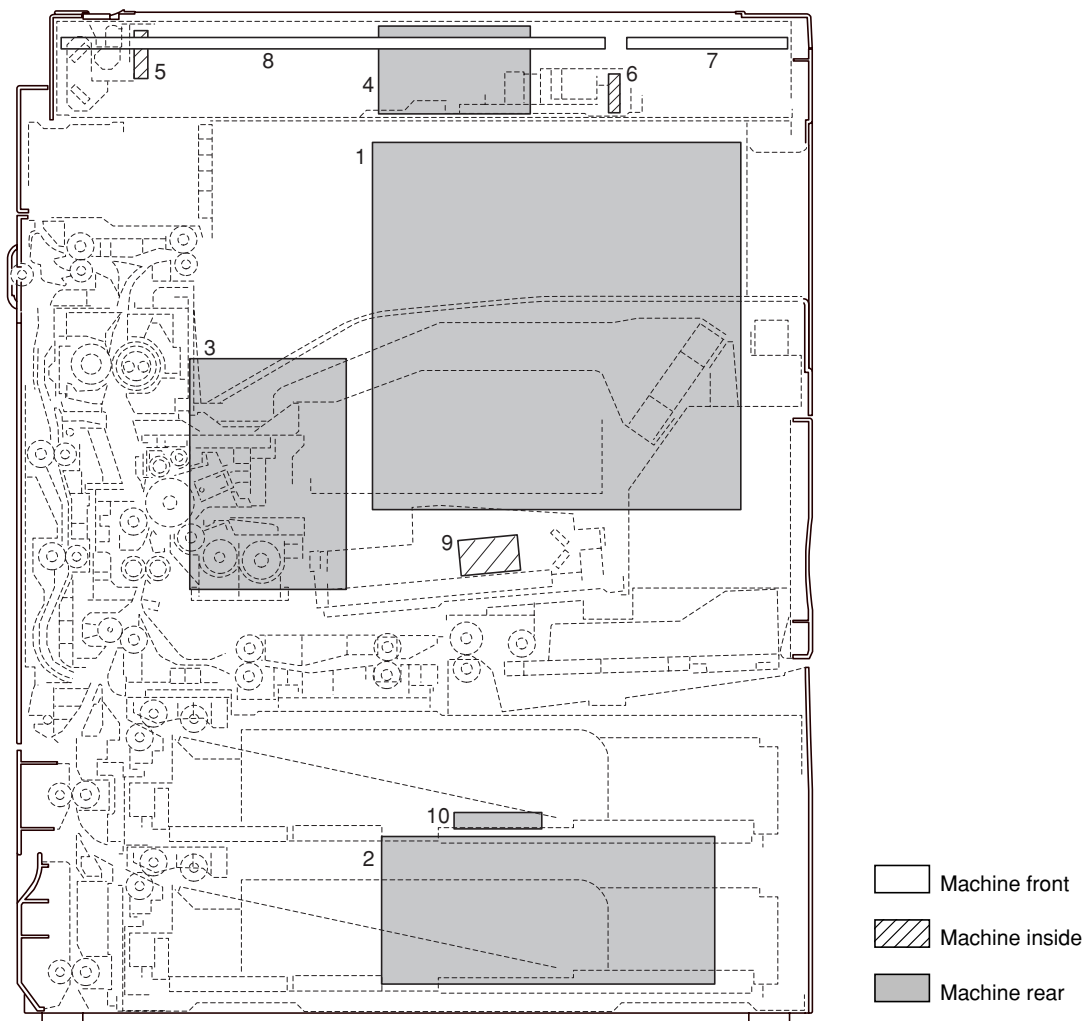
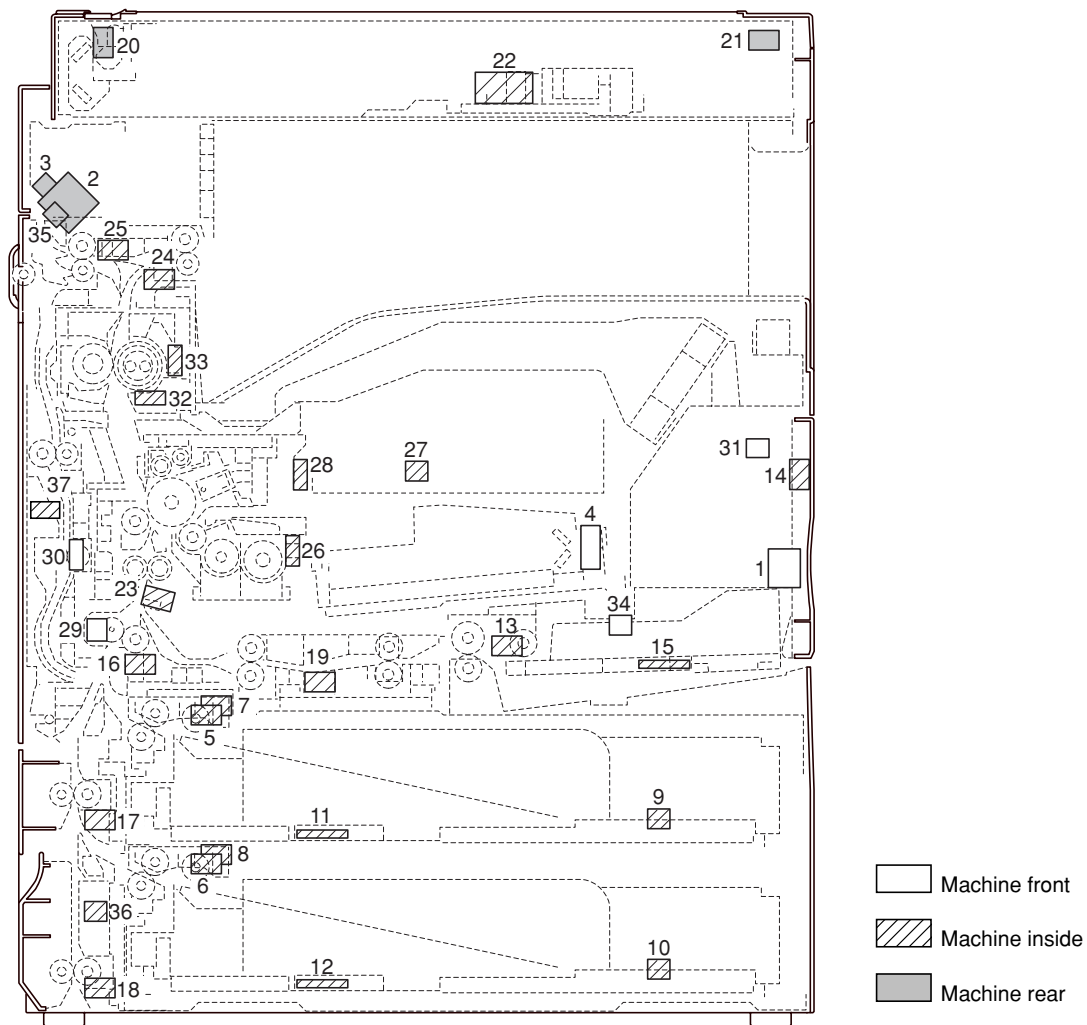


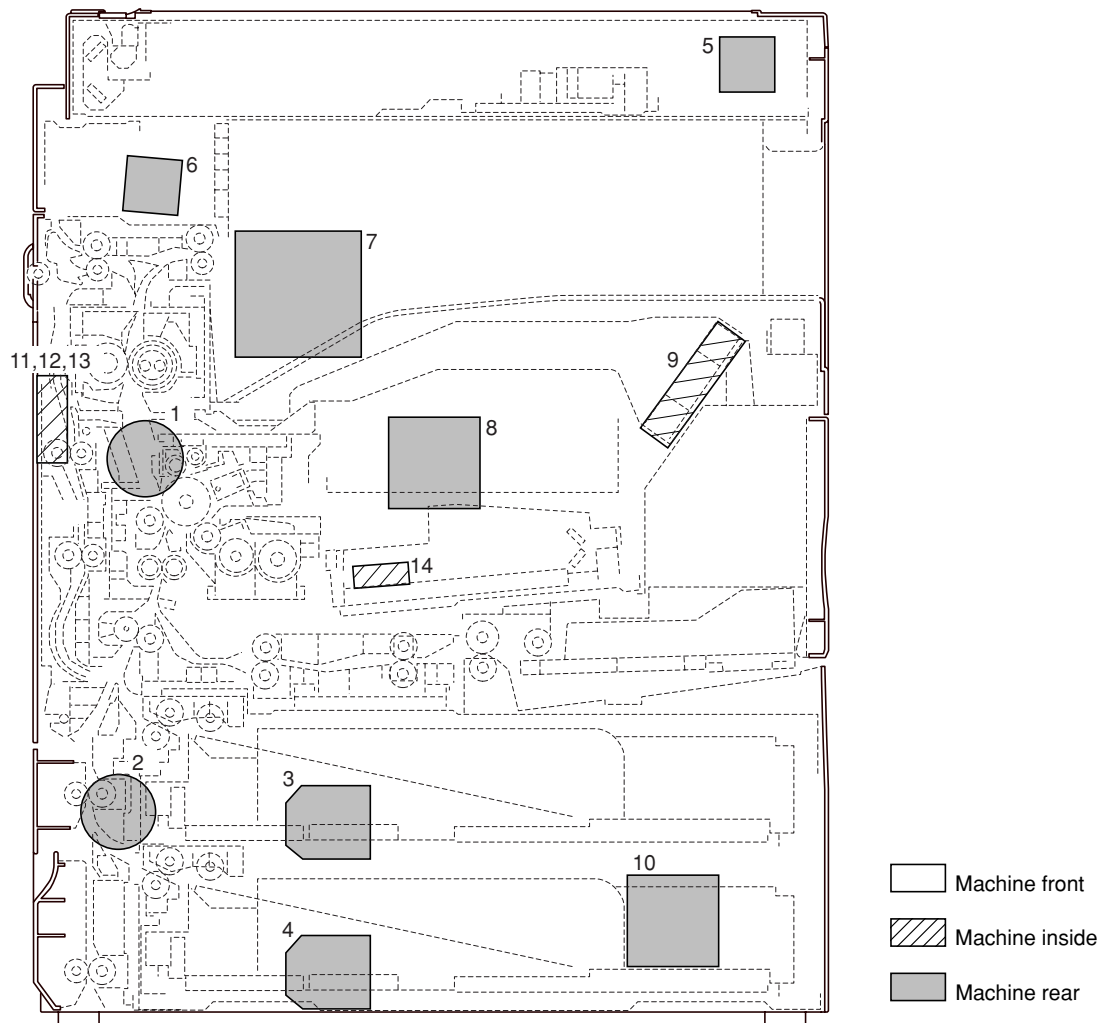
Figure 2-2-1 PCBs

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Main PCB (MPCB) | Controls the other PCBs, electrical components and optional devices. |
| 2. Power source PCB (PSPCB) | Generates +24 V DC, 12 V DC and 5V DC; controls the fixing heater. |
| 3. High-voltage transformer PCB (HVTPCB) | Main charging. Generates developing bias and high voltages for transfer. |
| 4. Scanner drive PCB (SDPCB) | Controls the scanning section. |
| 5. Inverter PCB (INPCB) | Controls the exposure lamp. |
| 6. CCD PCB (CCDPCB) | Reads the image off originals. |
| 7. Right operation unit PCB (OPCB-R) | Consists of the operation keys and display LEDs. |
| 8. Left operation unit PCB (OPCB-L) | Controls touch panel and LCD indication. |
| 9. Laser diode PCB (LDPCB) | Generates and controls the laser light. |
| 10. Noise filter PCB (NFPCB) | Reducts the noise. |

(2) Switches and sensors**Figure 2-2-2 Switches and sensors**

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Power switch (PSW) | Turns the AC power on and off. |
| 2. Interlock switch (ILSW) | Turns the AC power for the fixing heater on and off. |
| 3. Safety switch 1 (SSW1) | Breaks the safety circuit when the conveying unit is opened. |
| 4. Safety switch 2 (SSW2) | Breaks the safety circuit when the front cover is opened. |
| 5. Upper paper switch (PPSW-U) | Detects the presence of paper in the upper drawer. |
| 6. Lower paper switch (PPSW-L) | Detects the presence of paper in the lower drawer. |
| 7. Upper lift limit switch (LICSW-U) | Detects the upper drawer lift reaching the upper limit. |
| 8. Lower lift limit switch (LICSW-L) | Detects the lower drawer lift reaching the upper limit. |
| 9. Upper paper size length switch (PLSW-U) | Detects the length of paper in the upper drawer. |
| 10. Lower paper size length switch (PLSW-L) | Detects the length of paper in the lower drawer. |
| 11. Upper paper size width switch (PWSW-U) | Detects the width of paper in the upper drawer. |
| 12. Lower paper size width switch (PWSW-L) | Detects the width of paper in the lower drawer. |
| 13. Bypass paper switch (BYPPSW) | Detects the presence of paper on the bypass tray. |
| 14. Bypass paper size length switch (BYPPLSW) | Detects the length of paper on the bypass tray. |

15. Bypass paper size width switch
(BYPPWSW) Detects the width of paper on the bypass tray.
16. Feed switch 1 (FSW1) Controls feed clutch 1 drive timing.
17. Feed switch 2 (FSW2) Controls feed clutch 2 drive timing
18. Feed switch 3 (FSW3) Controls feed clutch 3 drive timing
19. Bypass feed switch (BYPFSW) Controls bypass feed clutch drive timing
20. Scanner home position switch (SHPSW) Detects the optical system in the home position.
21. Original detection switch (ODSW) Operates the original size detection sensor.
22. Original size detection sensor (OSDS) Detects the size of the original.
23. Registration switch (RSW) Controls the secondary paper feed start timing.
24. Eject switch (ESW) Detects a paper misfeed in the fixing section.
25. Feedshift switch (FSSW) Detects a paper misfeed in the switchback section in a duplex copy.
26. Toner sensor (TNS) Detects the toner density in the developing unit.
27. Toner container detection switch
(TCDSW) Detects the presence of the toner container.
28. Toner container sensor (TCS) Detects the quantity of toner in a toner container.
29. Toner disposal tank detection switch
(TDDSW) Detects the presence of the toner disposal tank.
30. Overflow sensor (OFS) Detects when the toner disposal tank is full.
31. Humidity sensor (HUMSENS) Detects absolute humidity.
32. Fixing unit thermistor 1 (FTH1) Detects the heat roller temperature.
33. Fixing unit thermistor 2 (FTH2) Detects the heat roller temperature.
34. Front cover switch (FRCSW) Detects the opening and closing of the front cover.
35. Conveying cover switch (CCSW) Detects the opening and closing of the conveying cover.
36. Side cover switch (SCSW) Detects the opening and closing of the side cover.
37. Duplex paper conveying switch
(DUPPCSW) Detects a paper jam in the duplex section.

(3) Motors**Figure 2-2-3 Motors**

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1. Drive motor (DM) | Drives the machine. |
| 2. Paper feed motor (PFM) | Drives paper feed section. |
| 3. Upper lift motor (LM-U) | Drives upper drawer lift. |
| 4. Lower lift motor (LM-L) | Drives lower drawer lift. |
| 5. Scanner motor (SM) | Drives the optical system. |
| 6. Eject motor (EM) | Drives the eject section. |
| 7. Cooling fan motor 1 (CFM1) | Cools the machine interior. |
| 8. Cooling fan motor 2 (CFM2) | Cools the machine interior. |
| 9. Cooling fan motor 3 (CFM3) | Cools the machine interior. |
| 10. Cooling fan motor 4 (CFM4) | Cools the machine interior (around the power supply unit). |
| 11. Cooling fan motor 5 (CFM5) | Cools the machine interior and supports paper transfer for duplex copying. |
| 12. Cooling fan motor 6 (CFM6) | Cools the machine interior and supports paper transfer for duplex copying. |
| 13. Cooling fan motor 7 (CFM7) | Cools the machine interior and supports paper transfer for duplex copying. |
| 14. Polygon motor (PM) | Drives the polygon mirror. |

(4) Other electrical components

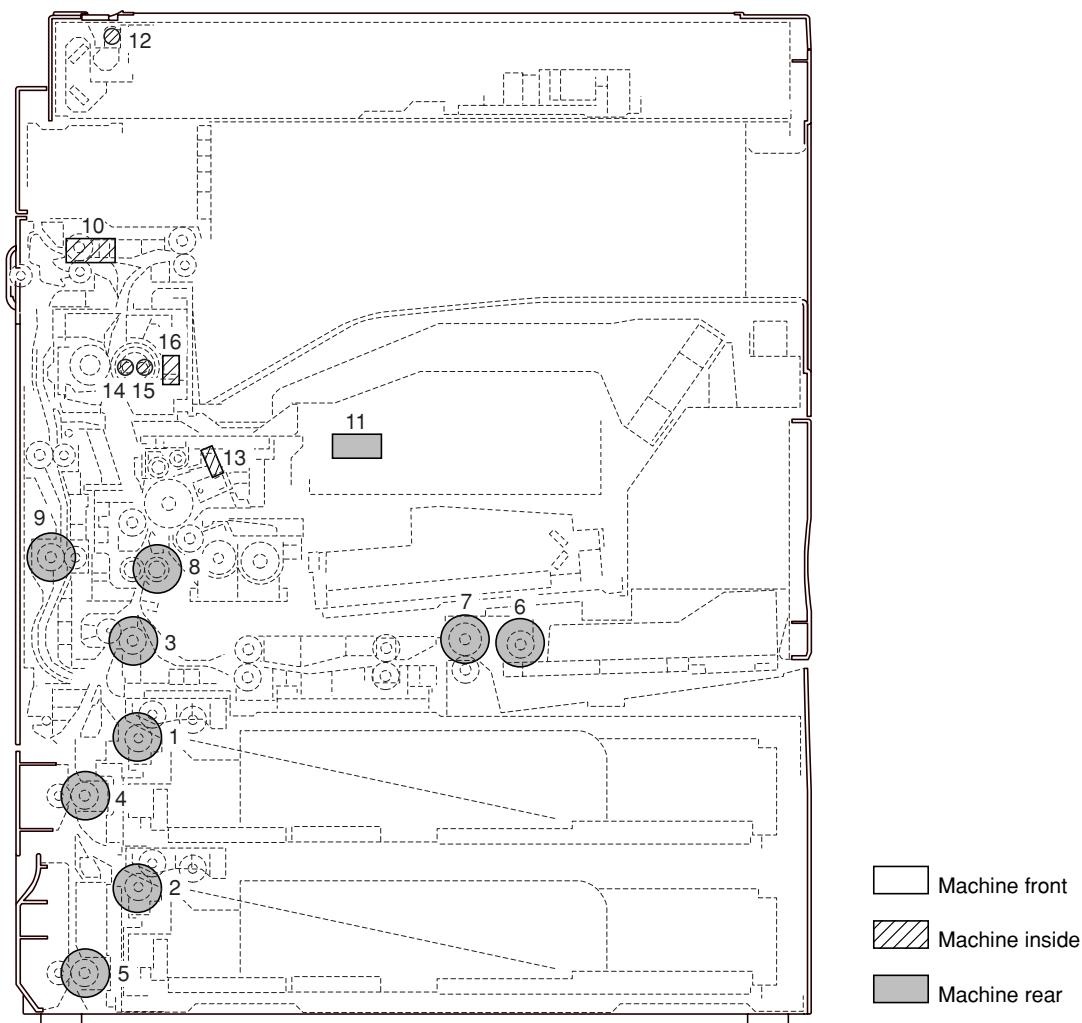


Figure 2-2-4 Other electrical components

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Upper paper feed clutch (PFCL-U) | Primary paper feed from the upper drawer. |
| 2. Lower paper feed clutch (PFCL-L) | Primary paper feed from the lower drawer. |
| 3. Feed clutch 1 (FCL1) | Controls the drive of feed roller. |
| 4. Feed clutch 2 (FCL2) | Controls the drive of feed roller. |
| 5. Feed clutch 3 (FCL3) | Controls the drive of feed roller. |
| 6. Bypass paper feed clutch (BYPPFCL) | Primary paper feed from the bypass tray. |
| 7. Bypass feed clutch (BYPFCL) | Controls the drive of bypass feed roller. |
| 8. Registration clutch (RCL) | Secondary paper feed. |
| 9. Duplex paper feed clutch (DUPFCL) | Controls the drive of the duplex feed roller. |
| 10. Feedshift solenoid (FSSOL) | Operates the feedshift guide. |
| 11. Toner feed solenoid (TNFSOL) | Replenishes toner. |
| 12. Exposure lamp (EL) | Exposes originals. |
| 13. Cleaning lamp (CL) | Removes residual charge from the drum surface. |
| 14. Fixing heater M (FH-M) | Heats the heat roller. |
| 15. Fixing heater S (FH-S) | Heats the heat roller. |
| 16. Fixing unit thermostat (FTS) | Prevents overheating in the fixing section. |

2-3-1 Power source PCB

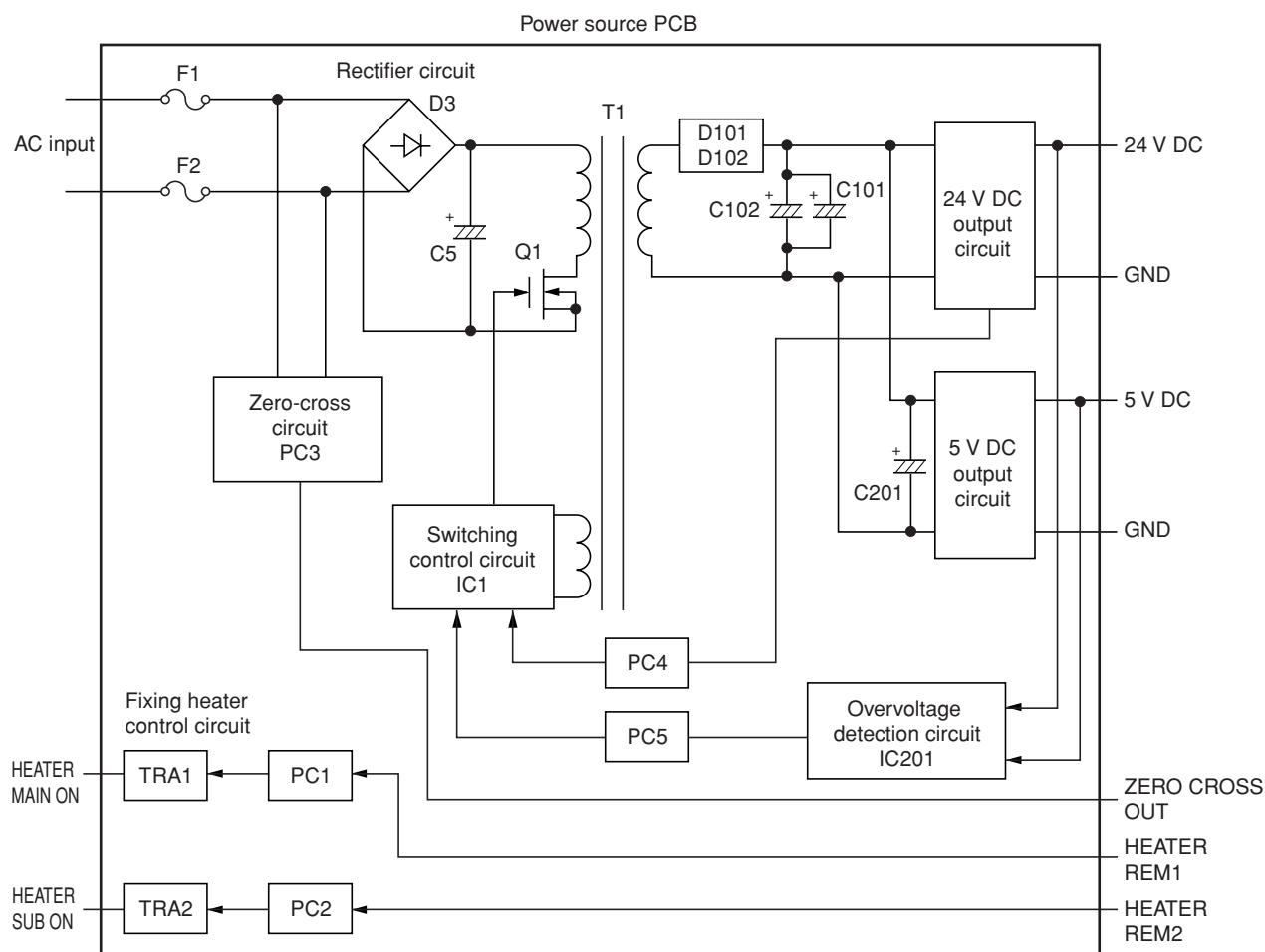


Figure 2-3-1 Power source PCB block diagram

The power source PCB (PSPCB) is a switching regulator that converts an AC input to generate 24 V DC and 5 V DC. It includes a rectifier circuit, a switching regulator circuit, a 24 V DC output circuit, a 5 V DC output circuit and a fixing heater control circuit.

The rectifier circuit full-wave rectifies the AC input using the diode bridge D3. The smoothing capacitor C5 smoothes out the pulsed current from the diode bridge.

In the switching control circuit, PWM controller IC1 turns the power MOSFET Q1 on and off to switch the current induced in the primary coil of the transformer T1.

The 24 V DC output circuit smoothes the current induced in the secondary coil of the transformer T1 via diodes D101 and D102 and smoothing capacitors C101 and C102, and the output is controlled by the overvoltage detection circuit IC201 and the power MOSFET Q201. For 24 V DC output, the PWM controller IC (IC1) of the switching control circuit changes the duty of the switching pulse width of the power MOSFET Q1 via a photo coupler PC4 based on the output voltage status to adjust the 24 V DC output.

The 5 V DC output circuit smoothes the current induced in the secondary coil of the transformer T1 via diodes D101 and D102 and smoothing capacitors C101 and C102, and the output is controlled by the overvoltage detection circuit IC201 and the power MOSFET Q201. For 5 V DC output, the PWM controller IC (IC1) of the switching control circuit changes the duty of the switching pulse width of the power MOSFET Q1 via a photo coupler PC5 based on the output voltage status to adjust the 5 V DC output.

The overvoltage detection circuit IC201 monitors the overvoltage status of 24 V DC and 5 V DC, and when it detects an abnormal status, it gives immediately feedback to the PWM controller IC (IC1) via a photocoupler PC5 to stop control operation and moves the power source to a standby condition.

The fixing heater control circuit sends a waveform of which zero-cross is detected to the main PCB (MPCB), which controls the timing of HEATER REM 1 and 2 based on it to turn on the phototriacs PC1 and PC2. When the phototriacs PC1 and PC2 turn on, AC current flows through the triacs TRA1 and TRA2 to turn the fixing heaters M and S on.

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
TB	TB1	LIVE	I	120 V AC	120 V AC supply
Connected to the AC power plug and power relay.	TB1	LIVE	I	220-240 V AC	220-240 V AC supply
	TB2	COM	I	120 V AC	120 V AC supply
	TB2	COM	I	220-240 V AC	220-240 V AC supply
	TB3	NEUTRAL	O	120 V AC	120 V AC supply
	TB3	NEUTRAL	O	220-240 V AC	220-240 V AC supply
	TB4	LIVE	I	120 V AC	120 V AC supply
	TB4	LIVE	I	220-240 V AC	220-240 V AC supply
	TB5	LIVE	O	120 V AC	120 V AC supply
	TB5	LIVE	O	220-240 V AC	220-240 V AC supply
CN3	1	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC supply
Connected to the 3000-sheet finisher* or booklet stitcher*.	2	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC supply
	3	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC supply
	4	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC supply
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	5.1V	O	5.1 V DC	5.1 V DC supply
YC1	1	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for SSW1
Connected to the safty switch 1, safty switch 2 and main PCB.	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	3.4V	O	3.4 V DC	3.4 V DC supply for MPCB
	6	3.4V	O	3.4 V DC	3.4 V DC supply for MPCB
	7	3.4V	O	3.4 V DC	3.4 V DC supply for MPCB
	8	5.1V	O	5.1 V DC	5.1 V DC supply for MPCB
	9	5.1V	O	5.1 V DC	5.1 V DC supply for MPCB
	10	24V	I	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for MPCB
YC2	1	HEATERON	O	0 to 5 V DC	Heater current monitor signal
Connected to the main PCB.	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	FH-S	I	0/5 V DC	FH-S ON/OFF
	4	FH-M	I	0/5 V DC	FH-M ON/OFF
	5	5.1V	I	5.1 V DC	5.1 V DC supply from MPCB
	6	ZCROSS	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Zero-cross signal
YC3	11	5.1V	I	5.1 V DC	5.1 V DC supply
Connected to the paper feeder*/ large paper deck* and mailbox*/ switchback unit*.	12	GND	-	-	Ground
	13	GND	-	-	Ground
	14	24V	I	24 V DC	24 V DC supply
	15	24V	I	24 V DC	24 V DC supply
	16	24V	I	24 V DC	24 V DC supply
	17	5.1V	I	5.1 V DC	5.1 V DC supply
	18	GND	-	-	Ground
	19	GND	-	-	Ground
	20	GND	-	-	Ground
YC4	1	CFM4 REM	O	DC0V/24V	CFM4 ON/OFF
Connected to the cooling fan motor 4.	2	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for CFM4

*: Optional

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC5 Connected to the fixing heater M and S.	1	FH-M ON	O	120/0 V AC	FH-M ON/OFF
	1	FH-M ON	O	220-240/0 V AC	FH-M ON/OFF
	2	FH-S ON	O	120/0 V AC	FH-S ON/OFF
	2	FH-S ON	O	220-240/0 V AC	FH-S ON/OFF
	3	FH LIVE	O	120 V AC	120 V AC supply
	3	FH LIVE	O	220-240 V AC	220-240 V AC supply
YC6 Connected to the scanner drive PCB, DP* and hard disk*.	1	GND	-	-	Ground
	2	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for SDPCB
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	5V	O	DC5V	5 V DC supply for SDPCB
	5	F2 24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for DP*
	6	F2 24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for DP*
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	F3 5V	O	DC5V	5 V DC supply for DP*
	10	F3 5V	O	DC5V	5 V DC supply for DP*
	11	GND	-	-	Ground
	12	GND	-	-	Ground
	13	GND	-	-	Ground
	14	GND	-	-	Ground
	15	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for hard disk*
	16	5V	O	DC5V	5 V DC supply for hard disk*
CN8 Connected to the main PCB.	1	CFM4	I	0/5 V DC	CFM4 remote signal
	3	POWDOWN	I	0/5 V DC	SLEEP singal

*: Optional
2-3-4

2-3-2 Main PCB

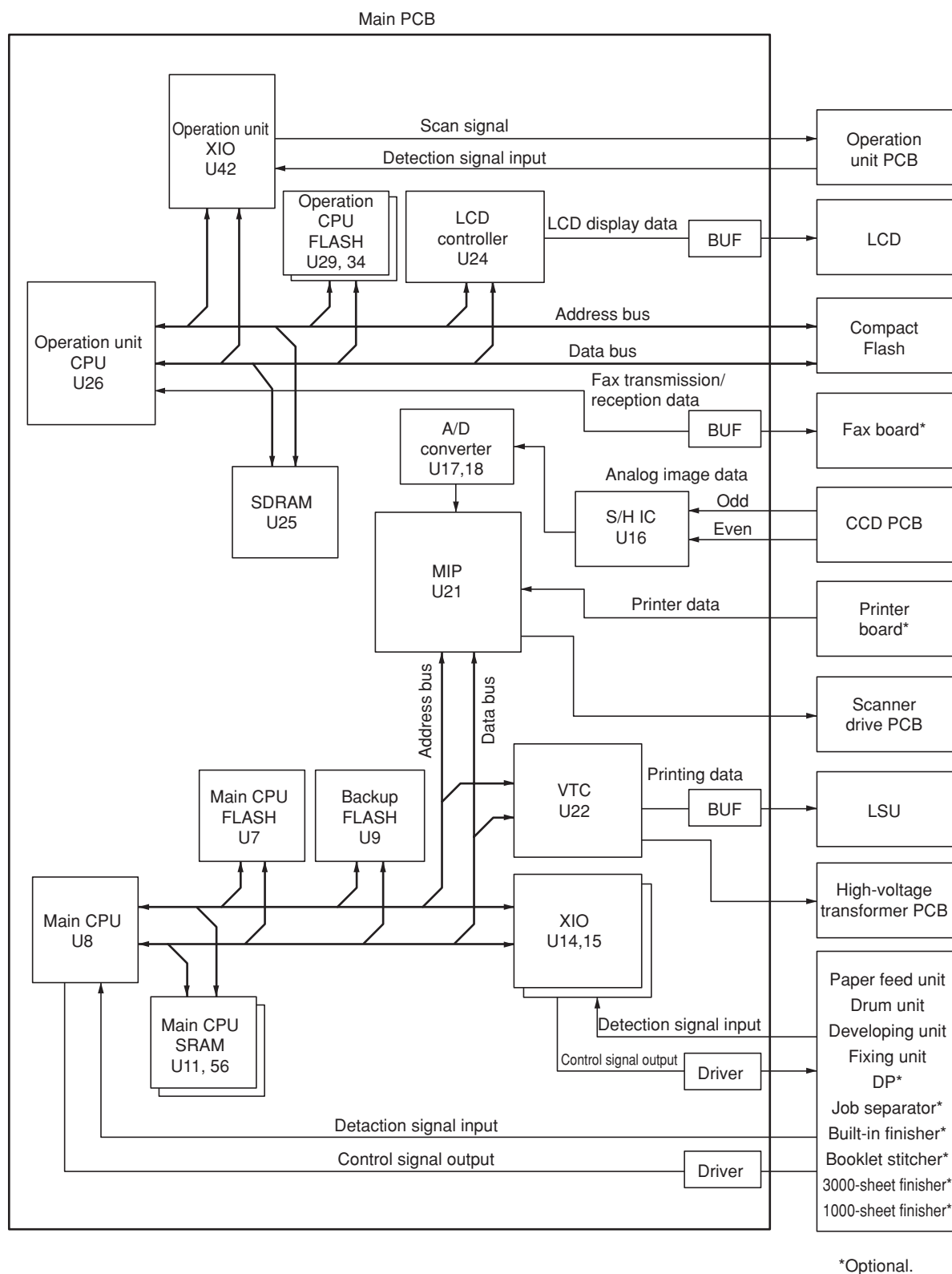


Figure 2-3-3 Main PCB block diagram

2FD/2FF/2FG

The main PCB (MPCB) consists of the main CPU and operation unit CPU. The main CPU U8 communicates with other PCBs, the image processing system and the engine drive system. The operation unit CPU U26 controls the LCD display and the entire operation section.

The main CPU U8 operates on an 8-bit bus. It uses the SRAM U11 and U56 for work memory and FLASH U9 for backup memory. In accordance with the control program in the main CPU FLASH U7, the main CPU U8 communicates with the operation unit CPU and optional devices via the serial communication function in the CPU and XIO U14 and U15. The main CPU U8 controls the CCD PCB (CCDPCB), which is for image input control, and the LSU, which is for image output control via the image processing ASIC MIP U21, and drives the machine, conveys paper and detects abnormalities via XIO U14, U15 and U22.

The operation unit CPU U26 operates on a 32-bit bus. It uses the SRAM U25 for work memory. In accordance with the control program in the main CPU FLASH U29, which also contains LCD display fonts, the operation unit CPU U26 controls key switches and LEDs on the operation unit PCB (OPCB) and controls the LCD display via the LCD controller U24.

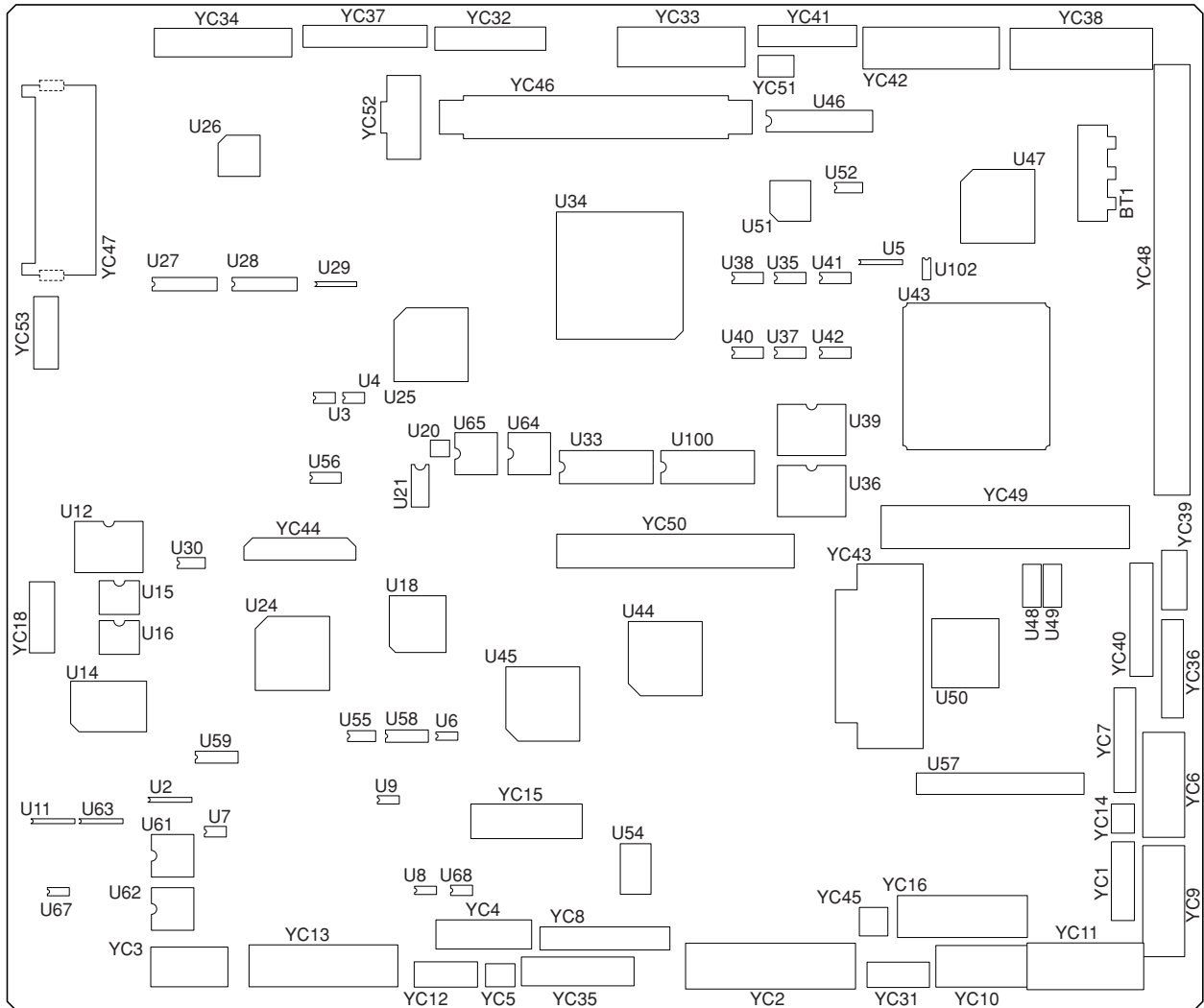


Figure 2-3-4 Main PCB silk-screen diagram

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC1 Connected to the power source PCB.	1	POWDOWN	O	0/5 V DC	SLEEP signal
	2	CFM4	O	0/5 V DC	CFM4 remote signal
	3	ZCROSS	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Zero-cross signal
	4	5.1V	O	5.1 V DC	5.1V DC supply for PSPCB
	5	FH-M	O	0/5 V DC	FH-M ON/OFF
	6	FH-S	O	0/5 V DC	FH-S ON/OFF
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	HEATER ON	I	0 to 5 V DC	Heater current monitor signal
YC2 Connected to the power source PCB.	1	R24V	I	24 V DC	24 V DC supply from SSW2
	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	3.4V	I	3.4 V DC	3.4 V DC supply from PSPCB
	6	3.4V	I	3.4 V DC	3.4 V DC supply from PSPCB
	7	3.4V	I	3.4 V DC	3.4 V DC supply from PSPCB
	8	5.1V	I	5.1 V DC	5.1 V DC supply from PSPCB
	9	5.1V	I	5.1 V DC	5.1 V DC supply from PSPCB
	10	24V	I	24 V DC	24 V DC supply from PSPCB
YC3 Connected to the mailbox*/reverse unit* and large paper deck*/paper feeder.	A1	RXD	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Serial signal from mailbox*/reverse unit*
	A2	GND	-	-	Ground
	A3	TXD	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Serial signal for mailbox*/reverse unit*
	A4	GND	-	-	Ground
	A5	SET SIG	I	0/5 V DC	Mailbox*/reverse unit* connection signal
	A6	RESET	O	0/5 V DC	RESET signal for mailbox*/reverse unit*
	B1	LCF TXD	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Serial signal for large paper deck*/paper feeder*
	B2	GND	-	-	Ground
	B3	LCF RXD	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Serial signal from large paper deck*/paper feeder*
	B4	GND	-	-	Ground
	B5	FEED SW SIG	I	0/5 V DC	FSW on/off signal from large paper deck*/paper feeder*
	B6	RESET	O	0/5 V DC	RESET signal for large paper deck*/paper feeder*
YC4 Connected to the 3000-sheet finisher* or booklet stitcher*.	1	RXD	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Serial signal
	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	TXD	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Serial signal
	5	N.C	-	-	Not used
	6	N.C	-	-	Not used
	7	N.C	-	-	Not used
	8	N.C	-	-	Not used
	9	N.C	-	-	Not used
	10	N.C	-	-	Not used
YC5 Connected to the 3000-sheet finisher* or booklet stitcher*.	1	RESET	O	0/5 V DC	RESET signal
	2	SET SIG	I	0/5 V DC	3000-sheet finisher*/booklet stitcher* connection signal

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC6 Connected to the BYPPWSW, BYPPSW, BYPPFCL, BYPFCL, FRCSW, CFM3 and BYPPLSW.	A1	BYPPWSW0	I	0/5 V DC	BYPPWSW paper width detection signal
	A2	BYPPWSW1	I	0/5 V DC	BYPPWSW paper width detection signal
	A3	BYPPWSW2	I	0/5 V DC	BYPPWSW paper width detection signal
	A4	GND	-	-	Ground
	A5	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for BYPPSW
	A6	BYPPSW	I	0/5 V DC	BYPPSW ON/OFF
	A7	GND	-	-	Ground
	A8	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for BYPPFCL
	A9	BYPPFCL	O	0/24 V DC	BYPPFCL ON/OFF
	A10	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for BYPFCL
	A11	BYPFCL	O	0/24 V DC	BYPFCL ON/OFF
	B1	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for TDDSW
	B2	TDDSW	I	0/5 V DC	TDDSW ON/OFF
	B3	GND	-	-	Ground
	B4	OFS	I	0/5 V DC	OFS ON/OFF
	B5	GND	-	-	Ground
	B6	FRCSW	I	0/5 V DC	FRCSW ON/OFF
	B7	GND	-	-	Ground
	B8	CFM3 24V	O	0/24 V DC	CFM3 ON/OFF
	B9	GND	-	-	Ground
	B10	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for BYPPLSW
	B11	BYPPLSW	I	0/5 V DC	BYPPLSW ON/OFF
	B12	GND	-	-	Ground
YC7 Connected to the high-voltage transformer PCB.	1	BVSEL	O	0 to 5 V DC	Developing bias control voltage
	2	R24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for HVTPCB
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	MHVDR	O	0/5 V DC	Main charging ON/OFF
	5	HVCLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Developing bias CLOCK signal
	6	RHVDR	O	0/5 V DC	Separation charging ON/OFF
	7	RISEL	O	0 to 5 V DC	Separation charging control voltage
	8	TICTL	O	0 to 5 V DC	Transfer charging control voltage
	9	TVSEL	O	0 to 5 V DC	Transfer limit voltage
	10	THVDR	O	0/5 V DC	Transfer charging ON/OFF
	11	THRDR	O	0/5 V DC	Transfer reverse bias remote signal
	12	THFDR	O	0/5 V DC	Transfer forward bias remote signal
	13	TISENS	I	0/5 V DC	Transfer current detection signal
	14	TVSENS	I	0/5 V DC	Transfer current detection signal
YC8 Connected to the laser scanner unit.	1	5V SAFE	O	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for LSU
	2	SAMPLE	O	0/5 V DC	LSU SAMPLE signal
	3	POWCONT	O	0/5 V DC	LSU POWCONT signal
	4	LASER	O	0/5 V DC	LSU LASER signal
	5	VDO+	O	0/5 V DC	LSU VIDEO + signal
	6	VDO-	O	0/5 V DC	LSU VIDEO - signal
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	PD	I	0/5 V DC	LSU PD signal
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	R24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for PM
	11	GND	-	-	Ground
	12	SCAN	O	0/24 V DC	PM SCAN signal
	13	SCRDYN	I	0/5 V DC	PM READY signal
	14	SCCLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	PM CLOCK signal

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC9 Connected to the BYPSW, TCS, TNS, developing unit, TNFSOL, TCDSW and drum unit.	A1	GND	-	-	Ground
	A2	BYPFSW	I	0/5 V DC	BYPFSW ON/OFF
	A3	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for BYPSW
	A4	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for TCS
	A5	TCS	I	0/5 V DC	TCS ON/OFF
	A6	GND	-	-	Ground
	A7	PO	-	-	Ground
	A8	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for TNS
	A9	TNS	I	0/5 V DC	TNS ON/OFF
	A10	GND	-	-	Ground
	A11	DVUNITN	I	0/5 V DC	Developing unit detection signal
	A12	FUSE CUT REM	O	0/5 V DC	Developing unit FUSE CUT signal
	A13	N.C	-	-	Not used
	B1	GND	-	-	Ground
	B2	TNFSOL	O	0/24 V DC	TNFSOL ON/OFF
	B3	TCDSW	I	0/5 V DC	TCDSW ON/OFF
	B4	GND	-	-	Ground
	B5	PO	-	-	Ground
	B6	GND	-	-	Ground
	B7	CL	O	0/5 V DC	CL ON/OFF
	B8	EEDATA	O	0/5 V DC	Drum unit DATA signal
	B9	EESCLK	O	0/5 V DC	Drum unit CLOCK signal
	B10	GND	-	-	Ground
	B11	DRUNITN	I	0/5 V DC	Drum unit detection signal
	B12	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for drum unit
	B13	N.C	-	-	Not used
YC10 Connected to the RSW, fixing unit, DUPFCL, DUPPCSW and CFM 5 to 7.	A1	GND	-	-	Ground
	A2	RSW	I	0/5 V DC	RSW ON/OFF
	A3	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for RSW
	A4	PO	-	-	Ground
	A5	5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC supply from FTH1
	A6	FTH1	I	0 to 5 V DC	FTH1 detection voltage
	A7	FUSE CUT REM	I	0/5 V DC	FTH1 detection voltage
	A8	GND	-	-	Ground
	A9	5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC supply from FTH2
	A10	FTH2	I	0 to 5 V DC	FTH2 detection voltage
	B1	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for DUPFCL
	B2	DUPFCL	O	0/24 V DC	DUPFCL ON/OFF
	B3	GND	-	-	Ground
	B4	DUPPCSW	I	0/5 V DC	DUPPCSW ON/OFF
	B5	5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC supply from DUPPCSW
	B6	GND	-	-	Ground
	B7	SET SIG	I	0/5 V DC	Duplex section connection signal
	B8	DUP PO	-	-	Ground
	B9	R24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for CFM5 to 7
	B10	CFM5,6,7	O	0/24 V DC	CFM5 to 7 ON/OFF
YC11 Connected to the DM, PFM, FCL1 and FSW1.	1	R24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for DM
	3	PG	-	-	Ground
	5	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for DM
	7	SG	-	-	Ground
	9	DM S/S	O	0/24 V DC	DM S/S signal
	11	DM L/D	I	0/24 V DC	DM L/D signal
	13	DM CLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	DM CLOCK signal
	2	R24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for PFM
	4	PG	-	-	Ground
	6	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for PFM
	8	SG	-	-	Ground
	10	PFM S/S	O	0/24 V DC	PFM S/S signal
	12	PFM L/D	I	0/24 V DC	PFM L/D signal
	14	FCL1	O	0/24 V DC	FCL1 ON/OFF

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC11 Connected to the DM, PFM, FCL1 and FSW1.	15	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for FCL1
	16	GND	-	-	Ground
	17	FSW1	I	0/5 V DC	FSW1 ON/OFF
	18	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for FSW1
YC12 Connected to the upper and lower paper size length switches.	1	R24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for PWSW-U
	2	UP24V	I	24 V DC	24 V DC supply from PWSW-U
	3	PWSW-U0	I	0/24 V DC	PWSW-U paper width detection signal
	4	PWSW-U1	I	0/24 V DC	PWSW-U paper width detection signal
	5	PWSW-U2	I	0/24 V DC	PWSW-U paper width detection signal
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	R24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for PWSW-L
	8	LO24V	I	24 V DC	24 V DC supply from PWSW-L
	9	PWSW-L0	I	0/24 V DC	PWSW-L paper width detection signal
	10	PWSW-L1	I	0/24 V DC	PWSW-L paper width detection signal
	11	PWSW-L2	I	0/24 V DC	PWSW-L paper width detection signal
	12	GND	-	-	Ground
YC13 Connected to the FSW2, FSW3, FCL2, FCL3, SCSW, LM- U, LM-L, PLSW-U, PLSW-L, LICSW-U, LICSW-L, PPSW-U and PPSW- L.	A1	GND	-	-	Ground
	A2	FSW3	I	0/5 V DC	FSW3 ON/OFF
	A3	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for FSW3
	A4	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for FCL3
	A5	FCL3	O	0/24 V DC	FCL3 ON/OFF
	A6	GND	-	-	Ground
	A7	FSW2	I	0/5 V DC	FSW2 ON/OFF
	A8	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for FSW2
	A9	GND	-	-	Ground
	A10	SCSW	I	0/5 V DC	SCSW ON/OFF
	A11	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for FCL2
	A12	FCL2	O	0/24 V DC	FCL2 ON/OFF
	A13	LM-U SW2	I	0/5 V DC	LM-U paper level detection switch ON/OFF
	A14	GND	-	-	Ground
	A15	LM-U SW1	I	0/5 V DC	LM-U paper level detection switch ON/OFF
	A16	GND	-	-	Ground
	A17	LM-U REM	O	0/24 V DC	LM-U ON/OFF
	A18	GND	-	-	Ground
	A19	PLSW-L	I	0/5 V DC	PLSW-L ON/OFF
	B1	GND	-	-	Ground
	B2	PLSW-U	I	0/5 V DC	PLSW-U ON/OFF
	B3	LM-L SW2	I	0/5 V DC	LM-L paper level detection switch ON/OFF
	B4	GND	-	-	Ground
	B5	LM-L SW1	I	0/5 V DC	LM-L paper level detection switch ON/OFF
	B6	GND	-	-	Ground
	B7	LM-L REM	O	0/24 V DC	LM-L ON/OFF
	B8	GND	-	-	Ground
	B9	LICSW-U	I	0/5 V DC	LICSW-U ON/OFF
	B10	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for LICSW-U
	B11	GND	-	-	Ground
	B12	PPSW-U	I	0/5 V DC	PPSW-U ON/OFF
	B13	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for PPSW-U
	B14	GND	-	-	Ground
	B15	LICSW-L	I	0/5 V DC	LICSW-L ON/OFF
	B16	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for LICSW-L
	B17	GND	-	-	Ground
	B18	PPSW-L	I	0/5 V DC	PPSW-L ON/OFF
	B19	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for PPSW-L

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC14	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the cooling fan motor 2.	2	CFM2 REM	O		CFM2 ON/OFF
YC16	A1	FSSOL2	O	0/24 V DC	FSSOL release signal
Connected to the FSSOL, FSSW, CFM1, CCSW, PFCL-U, PFCL-L, RCL, HUMSENS and EM.	A2	FSSOL1	O	0/24 V DC	FSSOL acutuate signal
	A3	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for FSSOL
	A4	GND	-	-	Ground
	A5	FSSW	I	0/5 V DC	FSSW ON/OFF
	A6	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for FSSW
	A7	GND	-	-	Ground
	A8	-	-	-	Not used
	A9	5V	-	-	5 V DC supply
	A10	GND	-	-	Ground
	A11	ESW	I	0/5 V DC	ESW ON/OFF
	A12	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for ESW
	A13	CFM1 24V	O	0/24 V DC	CFM1 ON/OFF
	A14	GND	-	-	Ground
	A15	GND	-	-	Ground
	A16	CCSW	I	0/5 V DC	CCSW ON/OFF
	B1	PFCL-U	O	0/24 V DC	PFCL-U ON/OFF
	B2	UP24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for PFCL-U
	B3	LO24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for PFCL-L
	B4	PFCL-L	O	0/24 V DC	PFCL-L ON/OFF
	B5	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for RCL
	B6	RCL	O	0/24 V DC	RCL ON/OFF
	B7	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for HUMSENS
	B8	HUMSENS	I	DC0~5V	HUMSENS detection voltage
	B9	GND	-	-	Ground
B10	ETTH	I	0 to 5 V DC	ETTH detection voltage	
B11	EM B-D	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	EM coil energization pulse (_B)	
B12	EM B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	EM coil energization pulse (B)	
B13	EM A-D	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	EM coil energization pulse (_A)	
B14	EM A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	EM coil energization pulse (A)	
YC31	1	24V	I	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for PSW
Connected to the PSW, total counter* and key counter*.	2	MAIN SW OFF REM	O	0/5 V DC	PSW ON/OFF
	3	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for total counter*
	4	TC REM	O	0/5 V DC	Total counter* signal
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	SET SIG	I	0/5 V DC	Key counter* connection signal
	9	24V	O	24 V DC	24V DC supply for key counter*
	10	K.COUNT REM	O	0/5 V DC	Key counter* count signal
YC32	1	OFM RET	O	0/5 V DC	OFM*RET signal
Connected to the DP*.	2	OFM CLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	OFM*CLOCK signal
	3	OFM CWB	O	0/5 V DC	OFM*CWB signal
	4	OCM ENABLE	O	0/5 V DC	OCM*ENABLE signal
	5	OCM RET	O	0/5 V DC	OCM*RET signal
	6	OCM CLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	OCM*CLOCK signal
	7	OCM CWB	O	0/5 V DC	OCM*CWB signal
	8	OCM VREF	O	0/5 V DC	OCM* current control voltage Vref
	9	OCM M3	O	0/5 V DC	OCM* drive control signal M3
	10	OCM M2	O	0/5 V DC	OCM* drive control signal M2
	11	OCM M1	O	0/5 V DC	OCM* drive control signal M1

*: Optional
2-3-12

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC33	1A	OFM ENABLE	I	0/5 V DC	OFM*ENABLE signal
Connected to the DP*.	2A	OSBSW	I	0/5 V DC	OSBSW*ON/OFF
	3A	OFSW	I	0/5 V DC	OFSW*ON/OFF
	4A	SET SW	I	0/5 V DC	OSSW*ON/OFF
	5A	RESERVE(SW)	I		
	6A	RESERVE(SW)	I		
	7A	DP SHORT	I	0/5 V DC	DP* connection signal
	8A	OSWSW	I	0/5 V DC	OSWSW*ON/OFF
	9A	DFSSW2	I	0/5 V DC	DFSSW2*ON/OFF
	10A	DFSSW1	I	0/5 V DC	DFSSW1*ON/OFF
	11A	OSLSW	I	0/5 V DC	OSLSW*ON/OFF
	12A	DFTSW	I	0/5 V DC	DFTSW*ON/OFF
	1B	OSLED(RED)	O	0/5 V DC	OSLED* (red) on/off
	2B	OSLED(GN)	O	0/5 V DC	OSLED* (green) on/off
	3B	SBPSOL(RET)	O	0/24 V DC	SBPSOL* release signal
	4B	SBPSOL(ACT)	O	0/24 V DC	SBPSOL* actuate signal
	5B	OFCL	O	0/24 V DC	OFCL*ON/OFF
	6B	EFSSOL	O	0/24 V DC	EFSSOL*ON/OFF
	7B	RESERVE(SOL)	O		
	8B	SBFSSOL	O	0/24 V DC	SBFSSOL*ON/OFF
	9B	OFSOL(RET)	O	0/24 V DC	OFSOL* release signal
	10B	FOFSOL(ACT)	O	0/24 V DC	OFSOL* actuate signal
	11B	OFM ENABLE	O	0/5 V DC	OFM*ENABLE signal
YC34	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the CCD PCB.	2	ODD	I	DC4.5V (pulse)	CCDPCB ODD signal (analog)
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	EVEN	I	DC4.5V (pulse)	CCDPCB EVEN signal (analog)
	5	12V	O	12 V DC	12 V DC supply for CCDPCB
	6	5.1V	O	5.1 V DC	5.1 V DC supply for CCDPCB
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	CLP	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	CCDPCB CLP signal
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	SHIFT	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	CCDPCB SHIFT signal
	11	GND	-	-	Ground
	12	CLK-	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	CCDPCB CLOCK - signal
	13	CLK+	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	CCDPCB CLOCK + signal
	14	RS+	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	CCDPCB RS + signal
	15	RS-	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	CCDPCB RS - signal
YC35	1	F2 24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for built-in finisher*
Connected to the built-in finisher*.	2	F2 24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for built-in finisher*
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for built-in finisher*
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	TXD	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Serial signal TXD
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	RXD	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Serial signal RXD
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
	11	SET SIG	I	0/5 V DC	Built-in finisher* connection signal
	12	RESET	O	0/5 V DC	RESET signal
YC36	1	JBESW	I	0/5 V DC	JBESW* ON/OFF
Connected to the job separator*.	2	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for JBESW*
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	SET SIG	I	0/5 V DC	Job separator* connection signal
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	EPDSW	I	0/5 V DC	EPDSW* ON/OFF
	8	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for EPDSW*
	9	LED REM	O	0/5 V DC	LED(JOB)* on/off

*: Optional

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC36	10	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for LED(JOB)*
Connected to the job separator*.	11	FSSOL2	O	0/24 V DC	FSSOL(JOB)* release signal
	12	FSSOL1	O	0/24 V DC	FSSOL(JOB)* actuate signal
	13	R24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for FSSOL(JOB)*
YC37	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the scanner drive PCB and original detection switch.	2	SHPSW	I	0/5 V DC	SHPSW ON/OFF
	3	LAMP ON REM	O	0/5 V DC	EL ON/OFF
	4	SM ENABLE	O	0/5 V DC	SM ENABLE signal
	5	SM RET	O	0/5 V DC	SM RET signal
	6	SM CWB	O	0/5 V DC	SM CWB signal
	7	SM CLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	SM CLOCK signal
	8	SM M5	O	0/5 V DC	SM drive control signal M5
	9	SM M4	O	0/5 V DC	SM drive control signal M4
	10	SM M3	O	0/5 V DC	SM drive control signal M3
	11	SM M2	O	0/5 V DC	SM drive control signal M2
	12	SM M1	O	0/5 V DC	SM drive control signal M1
	13	SM VREF	O	0/5 V DC	SM current control voltage Vref
	14	ODSW	I	0/5 V DC	ODSW ON/OFF
	15	GND	-	-	Ground
	16	OSDS	I	0/5 V DC	OSDS ON/OFF
	17	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for OSDS
YC41	1	DIGLED6	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	OPCB-L DIGLED6 signal
Connected to the left operation unit PCB.	2	DIGLED5	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	OPCB-L DIGLED5 signal
	3	DIGLED4	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	OPCB-L DIGLED4 signal
	4	DIGLED3	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	OPCB-L DIGLED3 signal
	5	DIGLED2	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	OPCB-L DIGLED2 signal
	6	DIGLED1	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	OPCB-L DIGLED1 signal
	7	SCAN4	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	OPCB-L SCAN4 signal
	8	SCAN3	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	OPCB-L SCAN3 signal
	9	SCAN2	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	OPCB-L SCAN2 signal
	10	SCAN1	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	OPCB-L SCAN1 signal
	11	DIGKEY3	I	0/5 V DC	OPCB-L DIGKEY3 signal
	12	DIGKEY2	I	0/5 V DC	OPCB-L DIGKEY2 signal
	13	DIGKEY1	I	0/5 V DC	OPCB-L DIGKEY1 signal
YC42	A1	BUZZER	O	0/5 V DC	OPCB-L BUZZER signal
Connected to the left and right operation unit PCBs.	A2	X1	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Touch panel detection voltage X1
	A3	Y1	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Touch panel detection voltage Y1
	A4	X2	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Touch panel detection voltage X2
	A5	Y2	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Touch panel detection voltage Y2
	A6	LCD FRAME	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	LCD FRAME signal
	A7	LCD LOAD	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	LCD LOAD signal
	A8	LCD CP	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	LCD CP signal
	A9	LCD VSS(SG)	O	-	LCD VSS signal
	A10	LCD VDD(+5V)	O	5 V DC	LCD VDD signal
	A11	LCD VSS(SG)	O	-	LCD VSS signal
	A12	LCD DISP OFF	O	0/5 V DC	LCD DISPLAY signal
	A13	LCD D0	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	LCD D0 data
	A14	LCD D1	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	LCD D1 data
	A15	LCD D2	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	LCD D2 data
	A16	LCD D3	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	LCD D3 data
	A17	VEE OFF	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	LCD VEE signal
	B1	P.GND	-	-	Ground
	B2	R24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for OPCB-R
	B3	LAMP OFF	O	0/5 V DC	OPCB-R LAMP OFF signal
	B4	S.GND	-	-	Ground
	B5	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for OPCB-R
	B6	DIGLED8	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	OPCB-R DIGLED8 signal
	B7	DIGLED7	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	OPCB-R DIGLED7 signal
	B8	SCAN8	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	OPCB-R SCAN8 signal

*: Optional

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC42 Connected to the left and operation unit PCBs.	B9	SCAN7	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	OPCB-R SCAN7 signal
	B10	SCAN6	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	OPCB-R SCAN6 signal
	B11	SCAN5	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	OPCB-R SCAN5 signal
	B12	DIGKEY9	I	0/5 V DC	OPCB-R DIGKEY9 signal
	B13	DIGKEY8	I	0/5 V DC	OPCB-R DIGKEY8 signal
	B14	DIGKEY7	I	0/5 V DC	OPCB-R DIGKEY7 signal
	B15	DIGKEY6	I	0/5 V DC	OPCB-R DIGKEY6 signal
	B16	DIGKEY5	I	0/5 V DC	OPCB-R DIGKEY5 signal
	B17	DIGKEY4	I	0/5 V DC	OPCB-R DIGKEY4 signal
YC43 Connected to the printer board*.	A1	PRINTN	O	5/0 V DC (pulse)	Printer board* PRINTN signal
	A2	GND	-	-	Ground
	A3	SI	O	5/0 V DC (pulse)	Printer board* SI signal
	A4	SCLK	I	5/0 V DC (pulse)	Printer board* SCLK signal
	A5	SBSY	O	5/0 V DC (pulse)	Printer board* SBSY signal
	A6	SO	I	5/0 V DC (pulse)	Printer board* SO signal
	A7	RESET	O	5/0 V DC (pulse)	Printer board* RESET signal
	A8	PDOUT	O	5/0 V DC (pulse)	Printer board* PDOUT signal
	A9	GND	-	-	Ground
	A10	VDATAP	I	5/0 V DC (pulse)	Printer board* VDATAP signal
	A11	GND	-	-	Ground
	A12	VDATAN	I	5/0 V DC (pulse)	Printer board* VDATAN signal
	A13	GND	-	-	Ground
	A14	FPCLK	O	5/0 V DC (pulse)	Printer board* FPCLK signal
	A15	FPDAT	I	5/0 V DC (pulse)	Printer board* FPDAT signal
	A16	GND	-	-	Ground
	A17	VDATA	I	5/0 V DC (pulse)	Printer board* VDATA signal
	A18	GND	-	-	Ground
	A19	GND	-	-	Ground
	A20	GND	-	-	Ground
	B1	5V	O	5 V DC	Printer board* 5 V DC supply
	B2	5V	O	5 V DC	Printer board* 5 V DC supply
	B3	5V	O	5 V DC	Printer board* 5 V DC supply
	B4	SDIR	O	5/0 V DC (pulse)	Printer board* SDIR signal
	B5	ESGIR	O	5/0 V DC (pulse)	Printer board* ESGIR signal
	B6	VDFON	O	5/0 V DC (pulse)	Printer board* VDFON signal
	B7	VSREQN	O	5/0 V DC (pulse)	Printer board* VSREQN signal
	B8	GND	-	-	Ground
	B9	GND	-	-	Ground
	B10	GND	-	-	Ground
	B11	GND	-	-	Ground
	B12	FPDIR	O	5/0 V DC (pulse)	Printer board* FPDIR signal
	B13	FPPOWER	O	5/0 V DC (pulse)	Printer board* FPPOWER signal
	B14	GND	-	-	Ground
	B15	5V	O	5 V DC	Printer board* 5 V DC supply
	B16	5V	O	5 V DC	Printer board* 5 V DC supply
	B17	5V	O	5 V DC	Printer board* 5 V DC supply
	B18	5V	O	5 V DC	Printer board* 5 V DC supply
	B19	5V	O	5 V DC	Printer board* 5 V DC supply
	B20	5V	O	5 V DC	Printer board* 5 V DC supply
YC44 Connected to the fax control PCB*.	1	M3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	Fax control PCB* 3.3 V DC supply
	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	FPVCLK	O	5/0 V DC (pulse)	Fax control PCB* FPVCLK signal
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	FVCLK	I	5/0 V DC (pulse)	Fax control PCB* FVCLK signal
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	FMRE	I	5/0 V DC (pulse)	Fax control PCB* FMRE signal
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	/FPVD	I	5/0 V DC (pulse)	Fax control PCB* /FPVD signal
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
	11	/FPHSYNC	O	5/0 V DC (pulse)	Fax control PCB* /FPHSYNC signal

*: Optional

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC44	12	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the fax control PCB*.	13	/FPVSYNC	O	5/0 V DC (pulse)	Fax control PCB* /FPVSYNC signal
	14	GND	-	-	Ground
	15	FOVSYNC	O	5/0 V DC (pulse)	Fax control PCB* /FOVSYNC signal
	16	GND	-	-	Ground
	17	/FOHSTHIN	O	5/0 V DC (pulse)	Fax control PCB* /FOHSTHIN signal
	18	GND	-	-	Ground
	19	FMIPOUTO	O	5/0 V DC (pulse)	Fax control PCB* FMIPOUTO signal
	20	GND	-	-	Ground
	21	FMREOUT	O	5/0 V DC (pulse)	Fax control PCB* FMREOUT signal
	22	GND	-	-	Ground
	23	FFOCLK	O	5/0 V DC (pulse)	Fax control PCB* FFOCLK signal
	24	GND	-	-	Ground
	25	/MMISTS	O	5/0 V DC (pulse)	Fax control PCB* /MMISTS signal
	26	GND	-	-	Ground
	27	FMMI_TXD2	O	Analog	Fax control PCB* FMMI_TXD2 signal
	28	GND	-	-	Ground
	29	FMMI_RXD2	I	Analog	Fax control PCB* FMMI_RXD2 signal
	30	GND	-	-	Ground
	31	/FAXRESET	O	5/0 V DC (pulse)	Fax control PCB* /FAXRESET signal
	32	/FAXREADY	I	5/0 V DC (pulse)	Fax control PCB* /FAXREADY signal
	33	/PREQ	I	5/0 V DC (pulse)	Fax control PCB* /PREQ signal
	34	/SREQ	I	5/0 V DC (pulse)	Fax control PCB* /SREQ signal
	35	/SETFAX	I	5/0 V DC (pulse)	Fax control PCB* /SETFAX signal
	36	/MAINSTS	O	5/0 V DC (pulse)	Fax control PCB* /MAINSTS signal
	37	GND	-	-	Ground
	38	FMAIN_TXD0	O	Analog	Fax control PCB* FMAIN_TXD0 signal
	39	GND	-	-	Ground
	40	FMAIN_RXD0	I	Analog	Fax control PCB* FMAIN_RXD0 signal
YC45	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the fax control PCB*.	2	+24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC supply
YC51	14	PH KEY	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	PH KEY signal
Connected to the right operation unit PCB.	15	PH LED	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	PH LED signal
	16	S.GND	-	-	Ground

2-3-3 Operation unit PCB

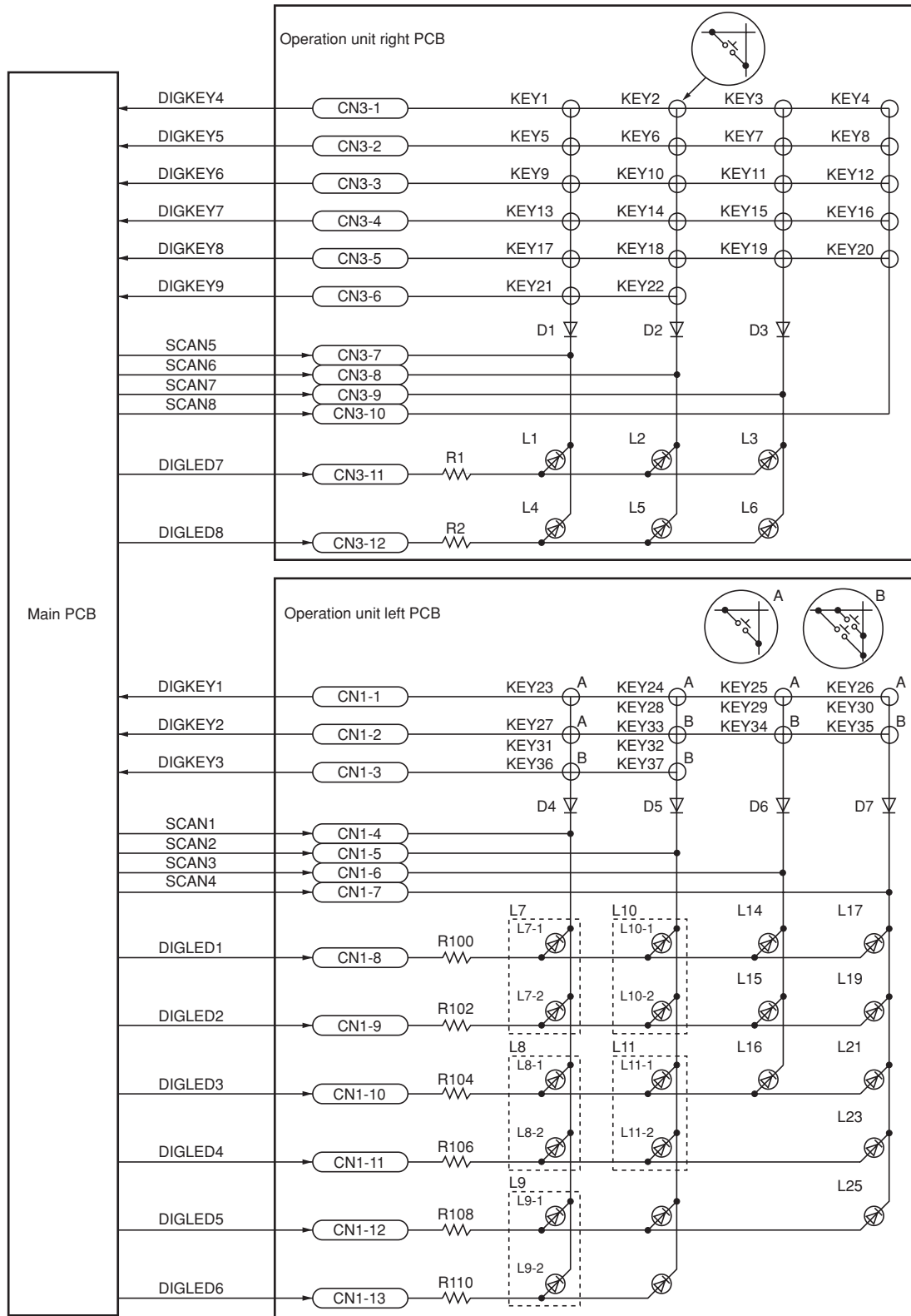


Figure 2-3-5 Operation unit PCB block diagram

The operation unit PCB (OPCB) consists of the operation unit left PCB (OPCB-L) and the operation unit right PCB (OPCB-R).

The operation unit right PCB (OPCB-R) consists of key switches and LEDs. The lighting of LEDs is determined by scan signals (SCAN5 to SCAN8) and LED lighting selection signals (DIGLED7 to DIGLED8) from the main PCB (MPCB). The key switches operated are identified by the scan signals (SCAN5 to SCAN8) and the return signals (DIGKEY4 to DIGKEY9).

As an example, to light LED 1 (L1), the LED lighting selection signal (DIGLED7) should be driven low in synchronization with a low level on the scan signal (SCAN5). LEDs can be lit dynamically by repeating such operations.

As another example, if KEY 1 is pressed, the corresponding key switch is turned on feeding the low level of the scan signal (SCAN5) back to the main PCB (MPCB) via the return signal (DIGKEY4). The main PCB (MPCB) locates the position where the line outputting the scan signal and the line inputting the return signal cross, and thereby determines which key switch was operated.

The operation unit left PCB (OPCB-L) consists of key switches and LEDs. The lighting of LEDs is determined by scan signals (SCAN1 to SCAN4) and LED lighting selection signals (DIGLED1 to DIGLED6) from the main PCB (MPCB). The key switches operated are identified by the scan signals (SCAN1 to SCAN4) and the return signals (DIGKEY1 to DIGKEY3).

As an example, to light LED 7 (L7), the LED lighting selection signal (DIGLED1) should be driven low in synchronization with a low level on the scan signal (SCAN1). LEDs can be lit dynamically by repeating such operations.

As another example, if KEY 23 is pressed, the corresponding key switch is turned on feeding the low level of the scan signal (SCAN1) back to the main PCB (MPCB) via the return signal (DIGKEY1). The main PCB (MPCB) locates the position where the line outputting the scan signal and the line inputting the return signal cross, and thereby determines which key switch was operated.

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
CN1 Connected to the main PCB.	1	DIGKEY1	O	0/5 V DC	OPCB-L DIGKEY1 signal
	2	DIGKEY2	O	0/5 V DC	OPCB-L DIGKEY2 signal
	3	DIGKEY3	O	0/5 V DC	OPCB-L DIGKEY3 signal
	4	SCAN1	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	OPCB-L SCAN1 signal
	5	SCAN2	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	OPCB-L SCAN2 signal
	6	SCAN3	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	OPCB-L SCAN3 signal
	7	SCAN4	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	OPCB-L SCAN4 signal
	8	DIGLED1	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	OPCB-L DIGLED1 signal
	9	DIGLED2	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	OPCB-L DIGLED2 signal
	10	DIGLED3	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	OPCB-L DIGLED3 signal
	11	DIGLED4	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	OPCB-L DIGLED4 signal
	12	DIGLED5	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	OPCB-L DIGLED5 signal
	13	DIGLED6	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	OPCB-L DIGLED6 signal
CN2 Connected to the main PCB.	1	VEE OFF	I	0/5 V DC	LCD VEE signal
	2	LCD D3	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	LCD D3 data
	3	LCD D2	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	LCD D2 data
	4	LCD D1	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	LCD D1 data
	5	LCD D0	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	LCD D0 data
	6	LCD DISP OFF	I	0/5 V DC	LCD DISPLAY signal
	7	LCD VSS(SG)	I	-	LCD VSS signal
	8	LCD VDD(+5V)	I	5 V DC	LCD VDD signal
	9	LCD VSS(SG)	I	-	LCD VSS signal
	10	LCD CP	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	LCD CP signal
	11	LCD LOAD	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	LCD LOAD signal
	12	LCD FRAME	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	LCD FRAME signal
	13	Y2	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Touch panel detection voltage Y2
	14	X2	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Touch panel detection voltage X2
	15	Y1	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Touch panel detection voltage Y1
	16	X1	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Touch panel detection voltage X1
	17	BUZZER	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	OPCB-L BUZZER signal
CN3 Connected to the main PCB.	1	DIGKEY4	O	0/5 V DC	OPCB-R DIGKEY4 signal
	2	DIGKEY5	O	0/5 V DC	OPCB-R DIGKEY5 signal
	3	DIGKEY6	O	0/5 V DC	OPCB-R DIGKEY6 signal
	4	DIGKEY7	O	0/5 V DC	OPCB-R DIGKEY7 signal
	5	DIGKEY8	O	0/5 V DC	OPCB-R DIGKEY8 signal
	6	DIGKEY9	O	0/5 V DC	OPCB-R DIGKEY9 signal
	7	SCAN5	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	OPCB-R SCAN5 signal
	8	SCAN6	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	OPCB-R SCAN6 signal
	9	SCAN7	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	OPCB-R SCAN7 signal
	10	SCAN8	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	OPCB-R SCAN8 signal
	11	DIGLED7	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	OPCB-R DIGLED7 signal
	12	DIGLED8	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	OPCB-R DIGLED8 signal
	13	5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC supply from MPCB
	14	S.GND	-	-	Ground
	15	LAMP OFF	I	0/5 V DC	OPCB-R LAMP OFF signal
	16	R24V	I	24 V DC	24 V DC supply from MPCB
	17	P.GND	-	-	Ground
	18	S.GND	-	-	Ground
	19	PH LED	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	PH LED signal
	20	PH KEY	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	PH KEY signal
CN5 Connected to the touch panel.	1	Y2	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Touch panel detection voltage Y2
	2	X2	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Touch panel detection voltage X2
	3	Y1	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Touch panel detection voltage Y1
	4	X1	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Touch panel detection voltage X1

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
CN5	1	LCD FRAME	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	LCD FRAME signal
Connected to the LCD.	2	LCD LOAD	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	LCD LOAD signal
	3	LCD CP	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	LCD CP signal
	4	LCD VSS(SG)	O	GND	LCD VSS signal
	5	LCD VDD(+5V)	O	5 V DC	LCD VDD signal
	6	LCD VSS(SG)	O	GND	LCD VSS signal
	7	LCD CONT	O	Analog	LCD control signal
	8	LCD DISP OFF	O	0/5 V DC	LCD DISPLAY signal
	9	LCD D0	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	LCD D0 data
	10	LCD D1	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	LCD D1 data
	11	LCD D2	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	LCD D2 data
	12	LCD D3	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	LCD D3 data
CN6	1	CCFT HOT	O	Analog	LCD BACK LIGHT control signal
Connected to the back light.	2	N.C	-	-	Not used
	3	N.C	-	-	Not used
	4	CCFT COLD	O	-	LCD BACK LIGHT control signal

2-3-4 Scanner drive PCB

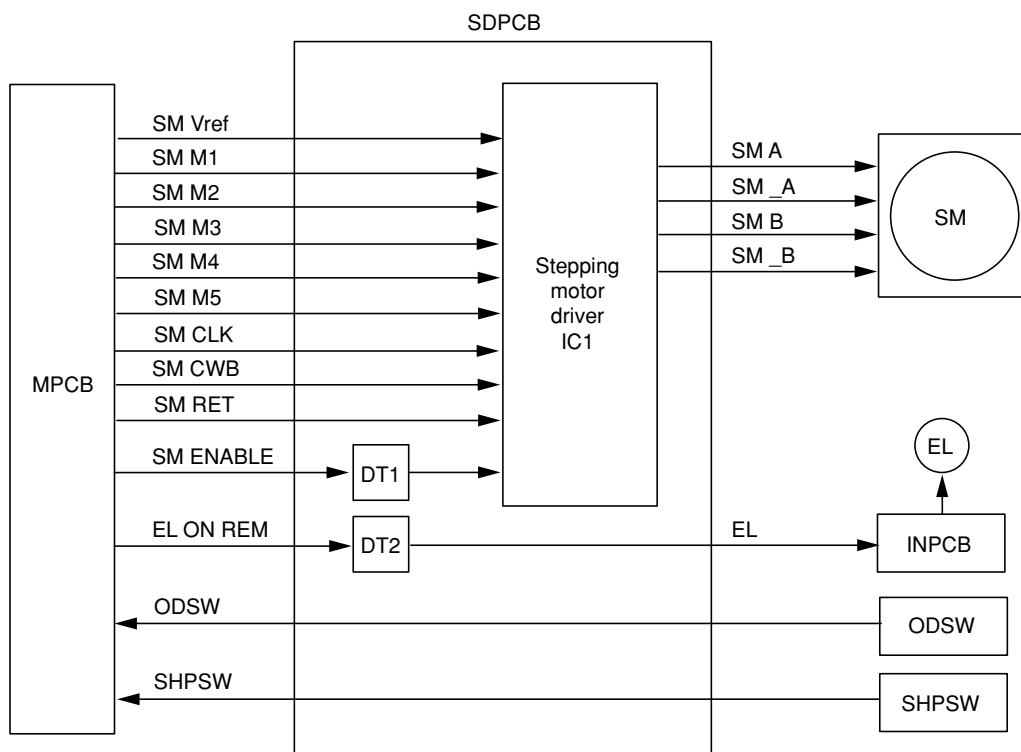


Figure 2-3-8 Scanner drive PCB block diagram

The scanner drive PCB (SDPCB) consists of a stepping motor driver IC (IC1) as the center, digital transistors DT1 and DT2, etc.

Drive of the scanner motor (SM) is controlled by the current setting voltage (SM Vref) that is output from the main PCB (MPCB), the mode signals (SM M1 to M5, SM CWB), the phase switchover clock signal (SM CLK), and the drive/stop signal (SM ENABLE).

Also the main PCB (MPCB) outputs a control signal (EL) through a digital transistor (DT2) to the inverter PCB (INPCB) to turn on or off the exposure lamp (EL).

Also the scanner drive PCB (SDPCB) acts as an interchange circuit of signals for the original detection switch (ODSW) and the scanner home position switch (SHPSW).

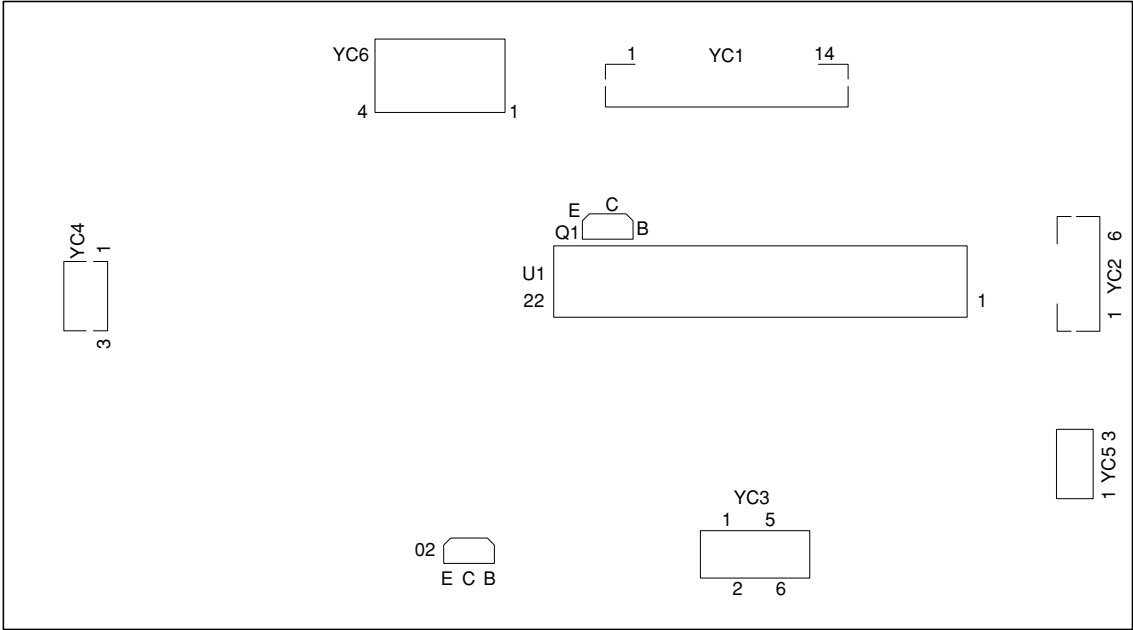


Figure 2-3-9 Scanner drive motor PCB silk-screen diagram

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC1	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the main PCB.	2	SHPSW	O	0/5 V DC	SHPSW ON/OFF
	3	LAMP ON REM	I	0/5 V DC	EL ON/OFF
	4	SM ENABLE	I	0/5 V DC	SM ENABLE signal
	5	SM RET	I	0/5 V DC	SM RET signal
	6	SM CWB	I	0/5 V DC	SM CWB signal
	7	SM CLK	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	SM CLOCK signal
	8	SM M5	I	0/5 V DC	SM drive control voltage M5
	9	SM M4	I	0/5 V DC	SM drive control voltage M4
	10	SM M3	I	0/5 V DC	SM drive control voltage M3
	11	SM M2	I	0/5 V DC	SM drive control voltage M2
	12	SM M1	I	0/5 V DC	SM drive control voltage M1
	13	SM VREF	I	0/5 V DC	SM current control voltage Vref
	14	ODSW	I	0/5 V DC	ODSW ON/OFF
YC2	1	/B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	SM coil energization pulse (_B)
Connected to the scanner motor.	2	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for SM
	3	B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	SM coil energization pulse (B)
	4	A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	SM coil energization pulse (A)
	5	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for SM
	6	/A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	SM SM coil energization pulse (_A)
YC3	1	LAMP ON	O	0/5 V DC	EL ON/OFF
Connected to the inverter PCB.	2	LAMP ON	O	0/5 V DC	EL ON/OFF
	3	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for INPCB
	4	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for INPCB
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
YC4	1	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for SHPSW
Connected to the scanner home position switch.	2	SHPSW	I	0/5 V DC	SHPSW ON/OFF
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
YC5	1	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for ODSW
Connected to the original detection switch.	2	ODSW	I	0/5 V DC	ODSW ON/OFF
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
YC6	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the power source PCB.	2	24V	I	24 V DC	24 V DC supply form PSPCB
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC supply form PSPCB

2-3-5 CCD PCB

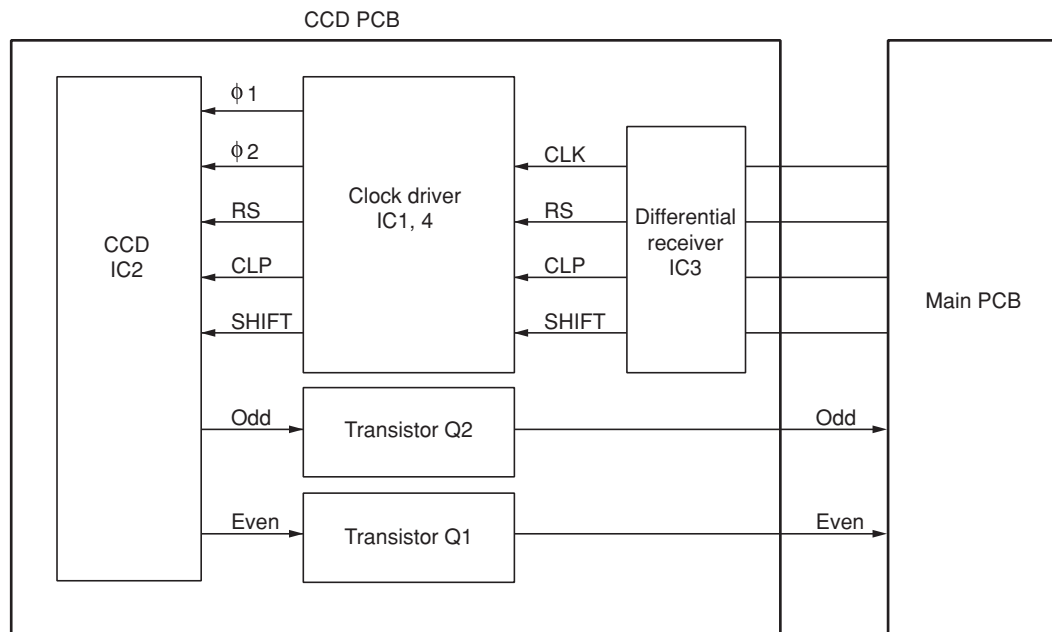


Figure 2-3-10 CCD PCB block diagram

The CCD PCB (CCDPCB) is equipped with a CCD sensor IC2 for original scanning.

The clock signals (CLK, RS, CLP, and SHIFT) for driving the CCD sensor (IC2) are sent as differential signals from the main PCB (MPCB), reconstructed to normal signals by the differential receiver (IC3), and then input to the CCD sensor (IC2) via the clock driver (IC1 and IC4).

Image signals are analog signals. Even- and odd-numbered pixels are output separately. These analog image signals are amplified by emitter followers in the transistors Q1 and Q2 and then transmitted to the analog signal processing circuit in the main PCB (MPCB).

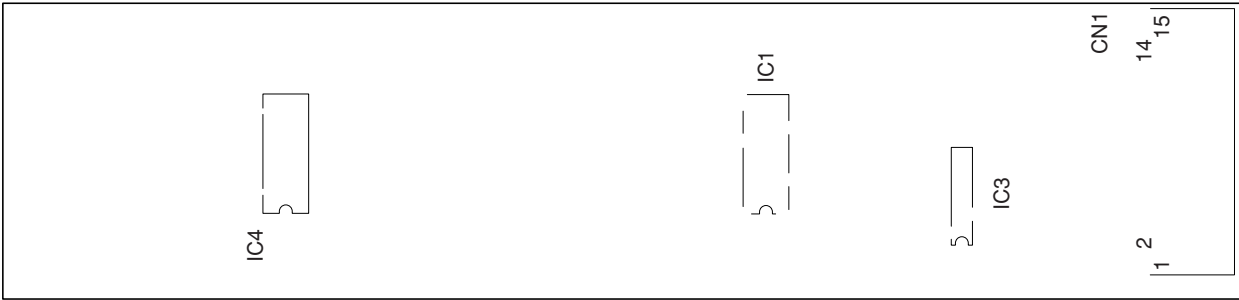
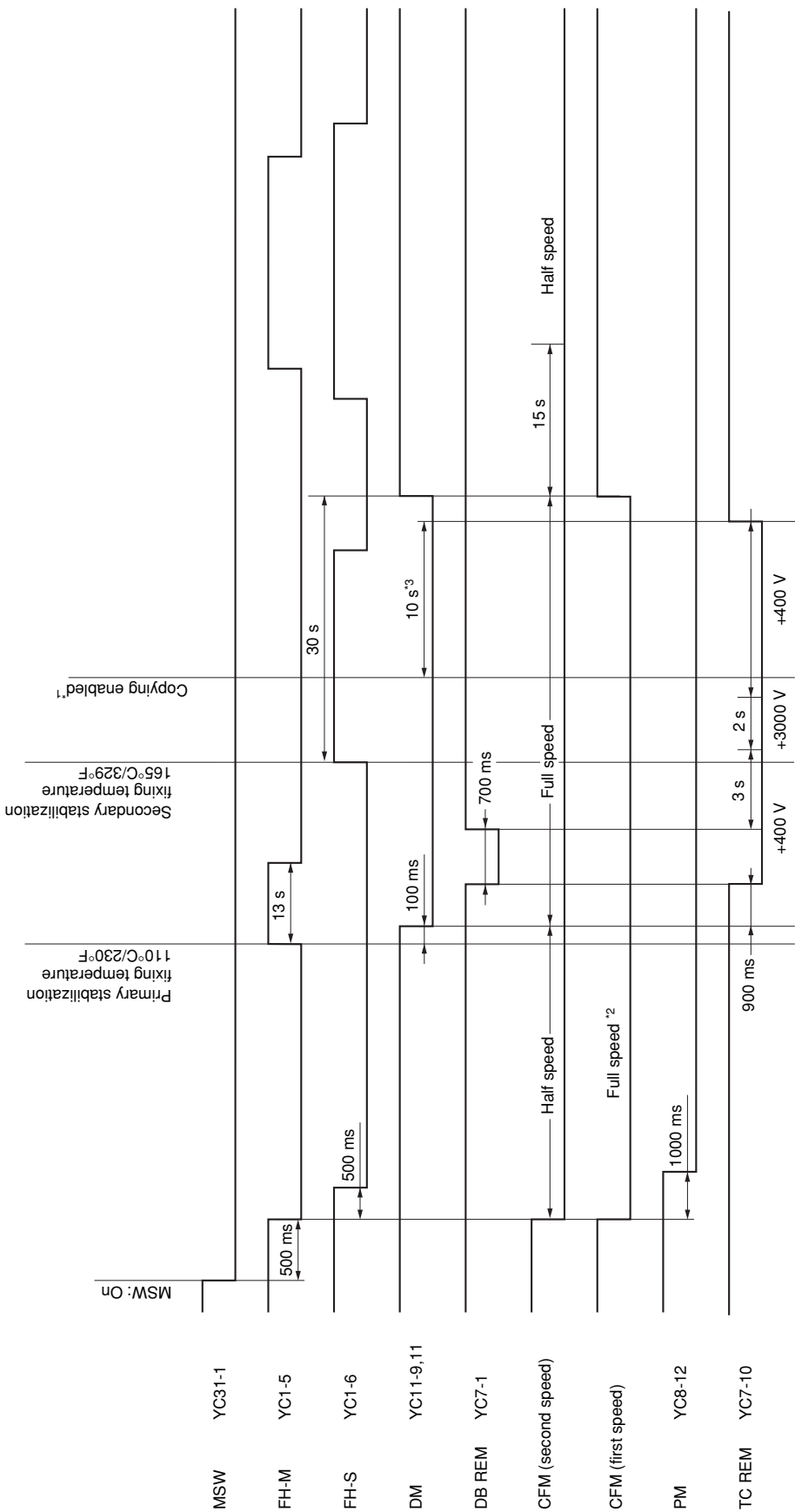


Figure 2-3-11 CCD PCB silk-screen diagram

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
CN1 Connected to the main PCB.	1	RS-	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	RS - signal
	2	RS+	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	RS + signal
	3	CLK+	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	CLOCK + signal
	4	CLK-	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	CLOCK - signal
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	SHIFT	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	SHIFT signal
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	CLP	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	CLP signal
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	5.1V	I	5.1 V DC	5.1 V DC supply from MPCB
	11	12V	I	12 V DC	12 V DC supply from MPCB
	12	EVEN	O	4.5 V DC (pulse)	EVEN signal (analog)
	13	GND	-	-	Ground
	14	ODD	O	4.5 V DC (pulse)	ODD signal (analog)
	15	GND	-	-	Ground

Timing chart No. 1 From the main switch turned on to machine stabilization



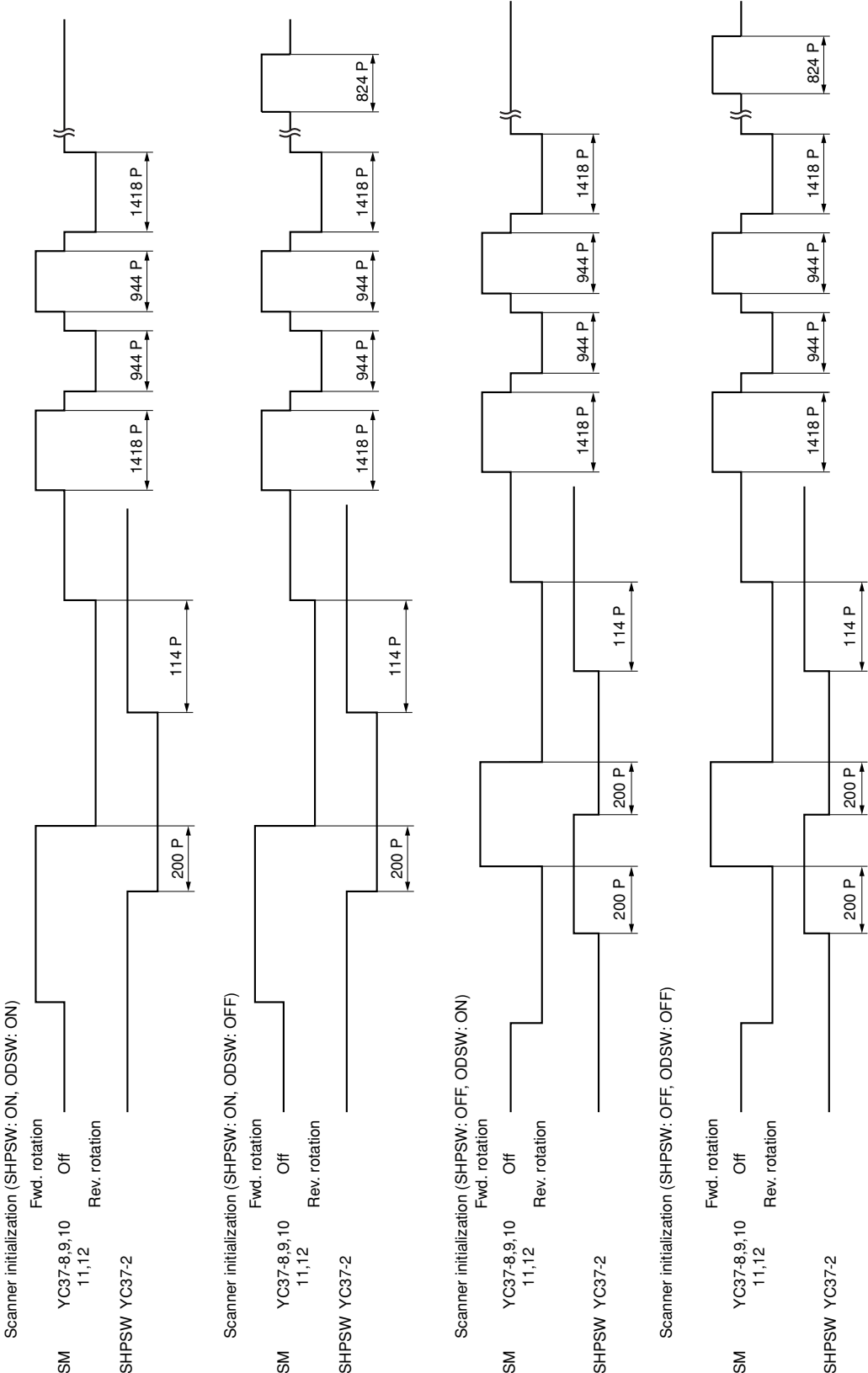
*1: Copying is enabled as follows:
1. When fixing temperature at the main switch turning on is 100°C/212°F or lower
Absolute humidity is 15 g/m³ or higher:
Copying is enabled 120 s after fixing heater M (FH-M) turning on.
2. When fixing temperature at the main switch turning on is 100°C/212°F or lower
The fixing temperature at the main switch turning on is 13°C/55.4°F or higher and the ambient temperature is 18°C/64.4°F or higher:
Copying is enabled at the earlier timing of either 41 s after fixing heater M (FH-M) turning on or when the copier enters secondary stabilization.
Other than the above:
Copying is enabled at the later timing of either 69 s after fixing heater M (FH-M) turning on or when the copier enters secondary stabilization.
3. Other conditions than 1 and 2
Copying is enabled when the copier enters secondary stabilization.

*2: Rotates for 180 s at full speed when the fixing temperature at the main switch turning on is 100°C/212°F or lower, and the absolute humidity is 15 g/m³ or higher.

*3: 60 s when the fixing temperature at main switch turning on is 100°C/212°F or lower, and the absolute humidity is 15 g/m³ or higher.

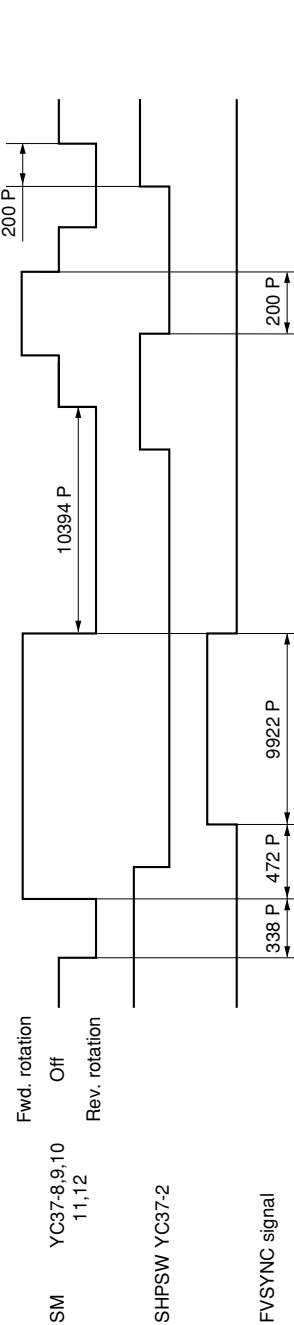
Timing chart No. 2 Scanner initialization

2-4-2

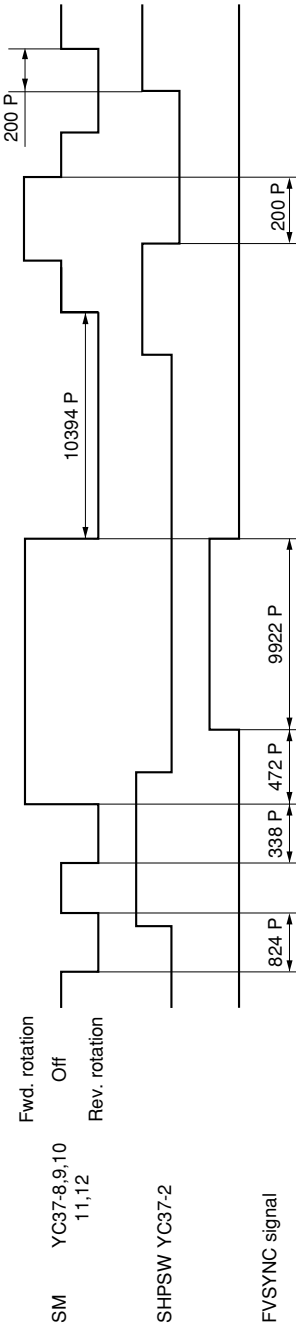


Timing chart No. 3 Original scanning operation

Scanning an A3/11" × 17" original, magnification ratio 100% (ODSW: ON)

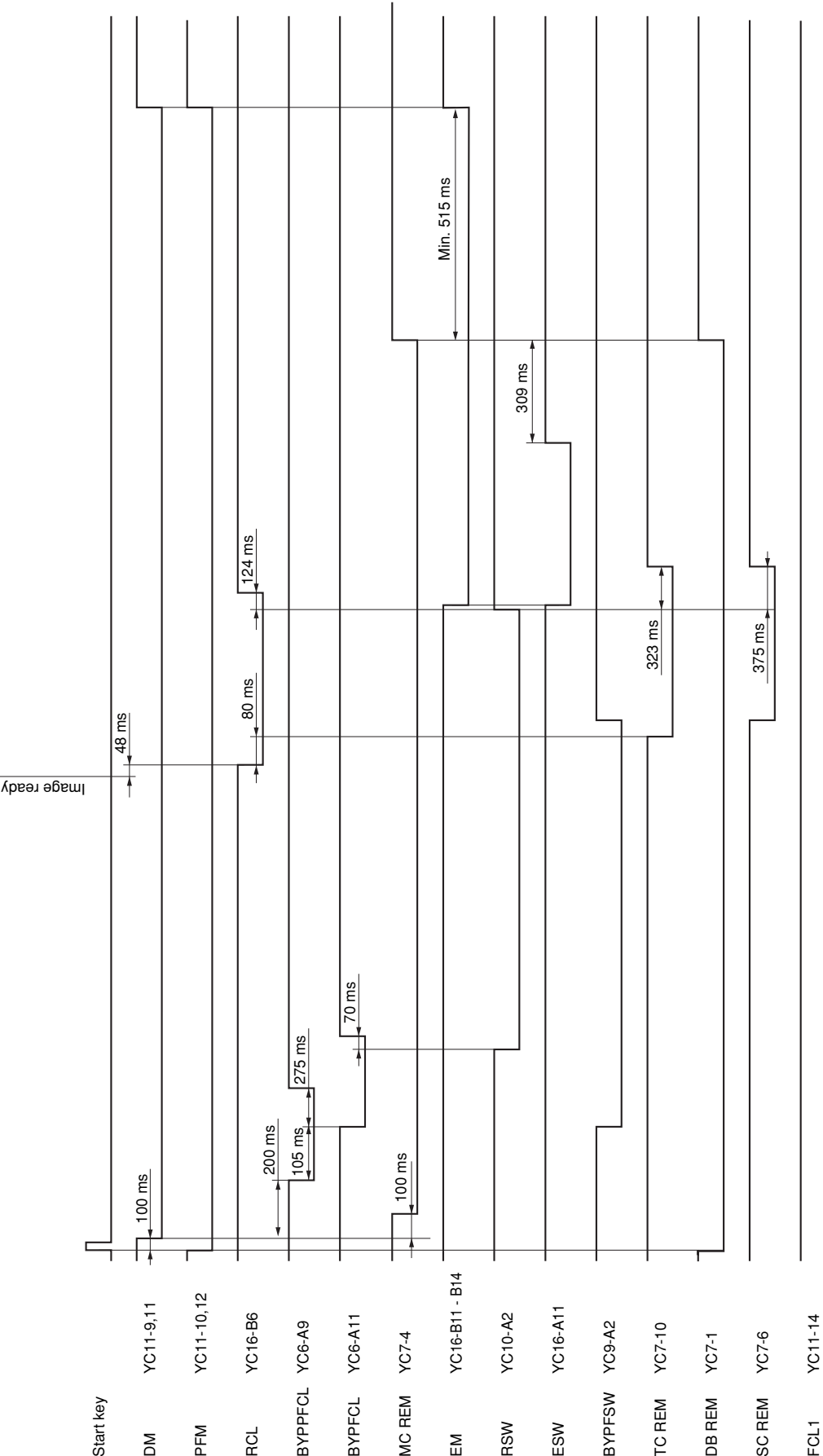


Scanning an A3/11" × 17" original, magnification ratio 100% (ODSW: OFF)

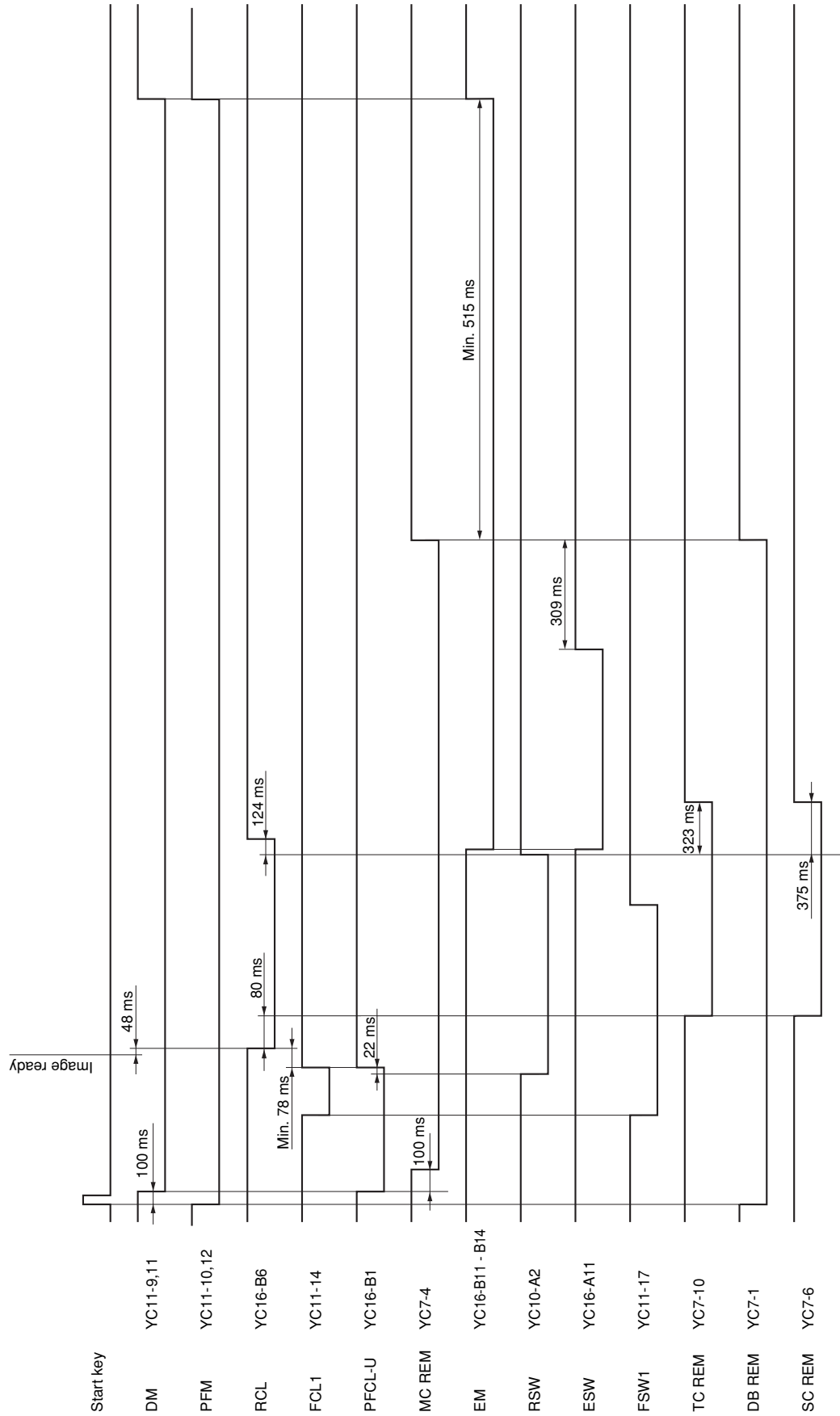


Timing chart No. 4 Copying an A3/11"x17" original onto an A5R/5 1/2"x8 1/2" copy paper from the bypass table, magnification ratio 25%, manual copy density control

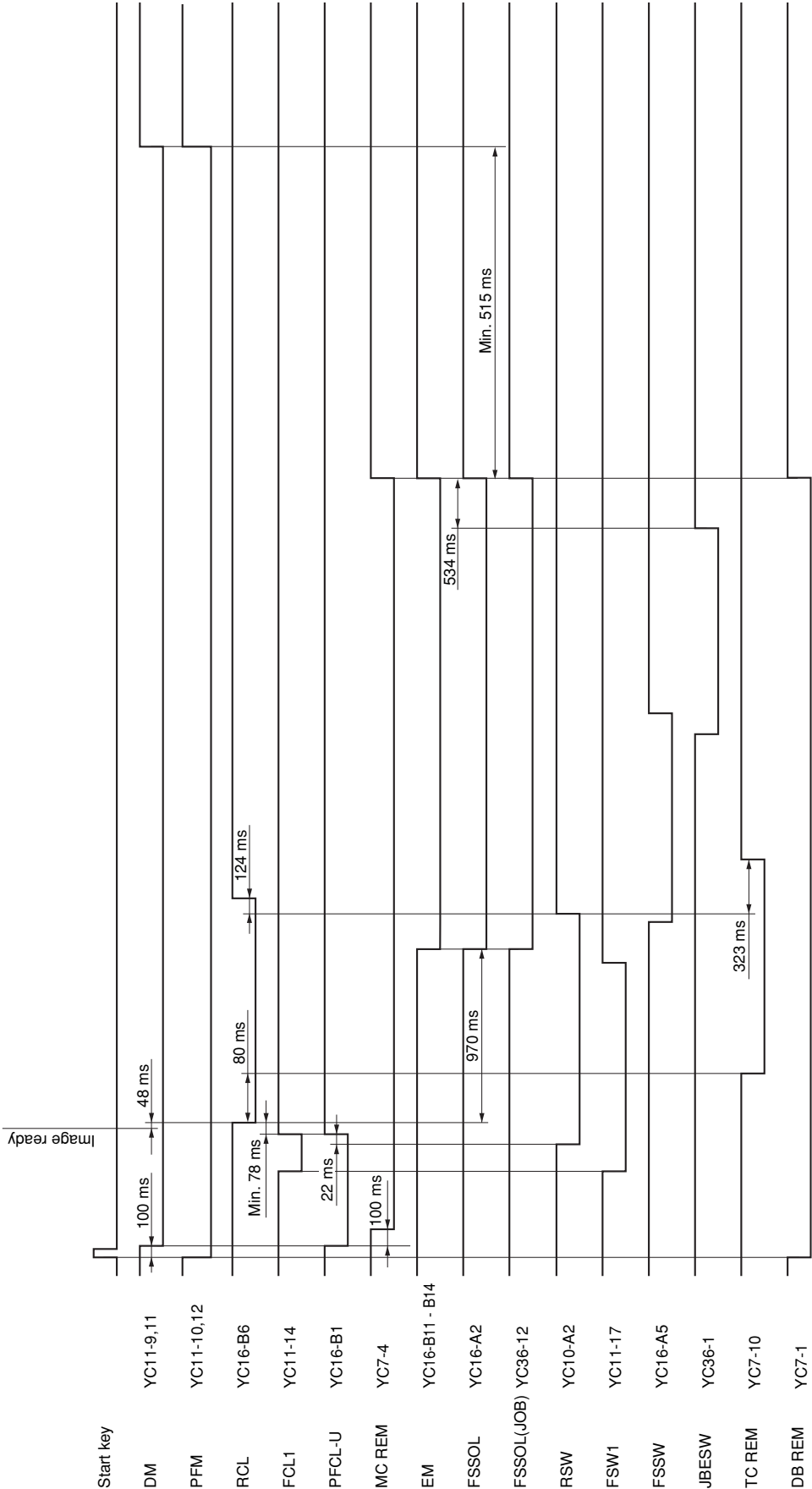
2-4-4



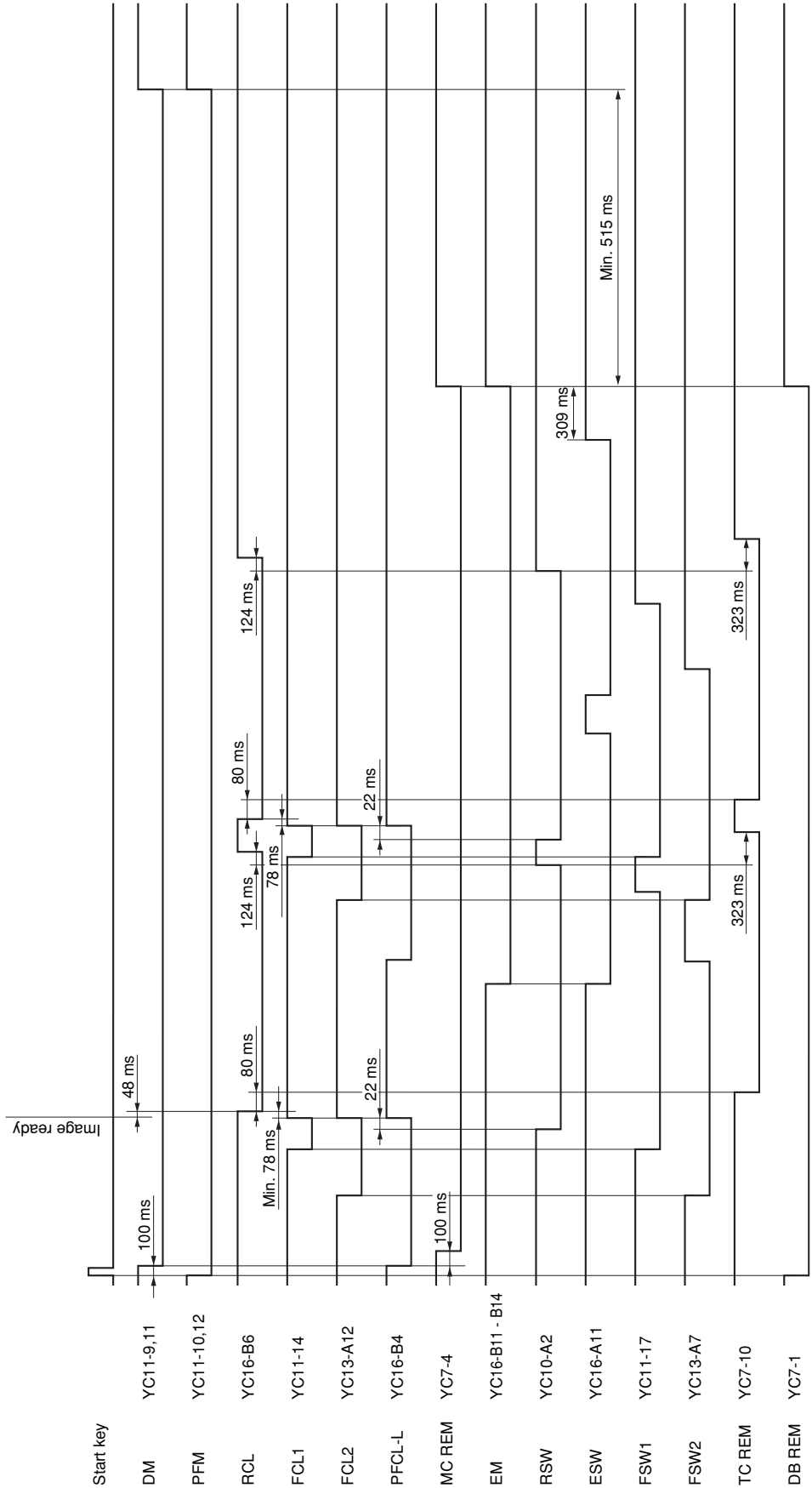
Timing chart No. 5 Copying an A4/11"x8¹/₂" original onto an A4/11"x8¹/₂" copy paper from the copier upper drawer, magnification ratio 100%, auto copy density control



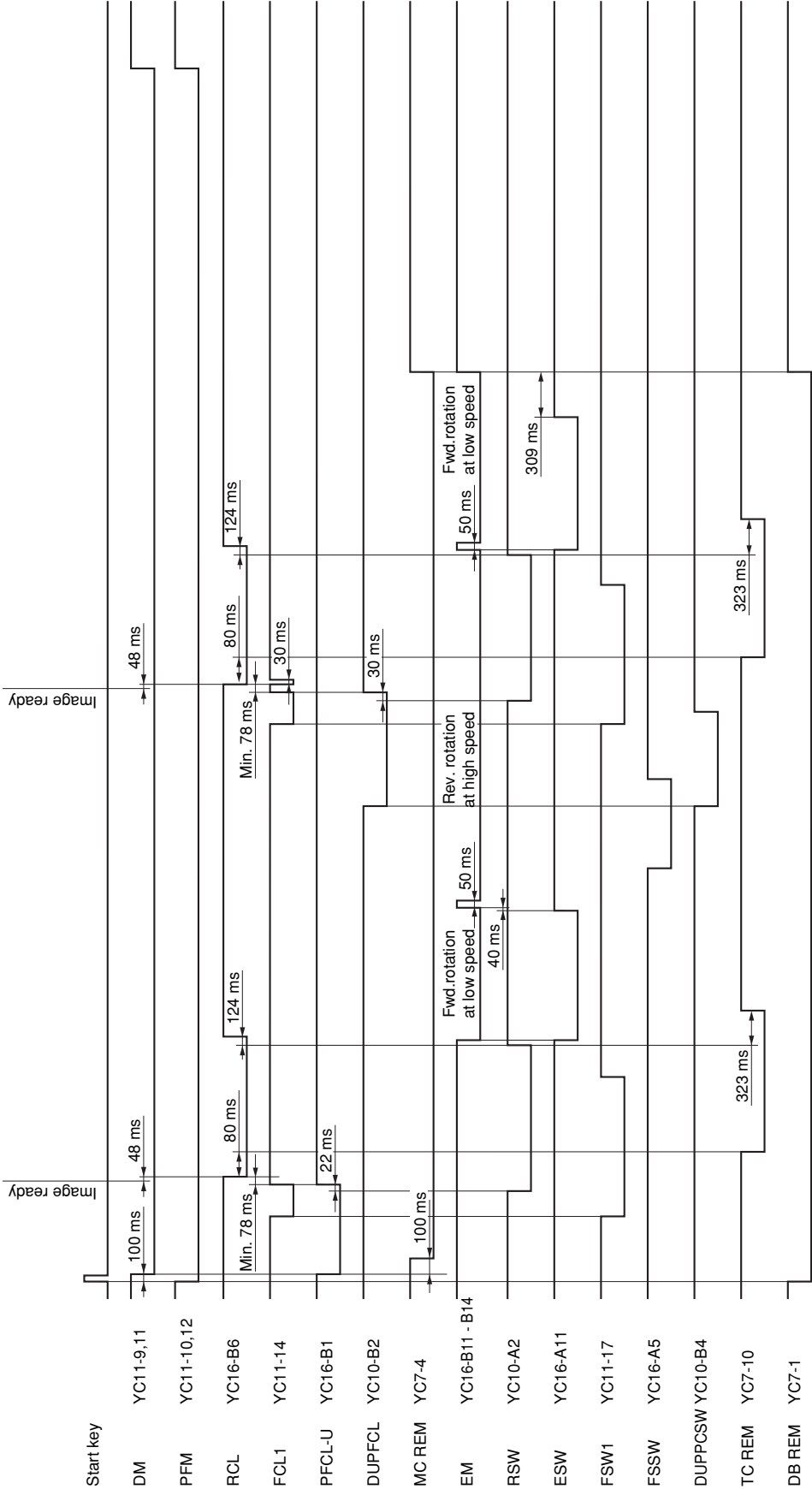
Timing chart No. 6 Copying an A4/11"x8¹/₂" original onto an A4/11"x8¹/₂" copy paper from the copier upper drawer, magnification ratio 100%, auto copy density control, ejection to the job separator



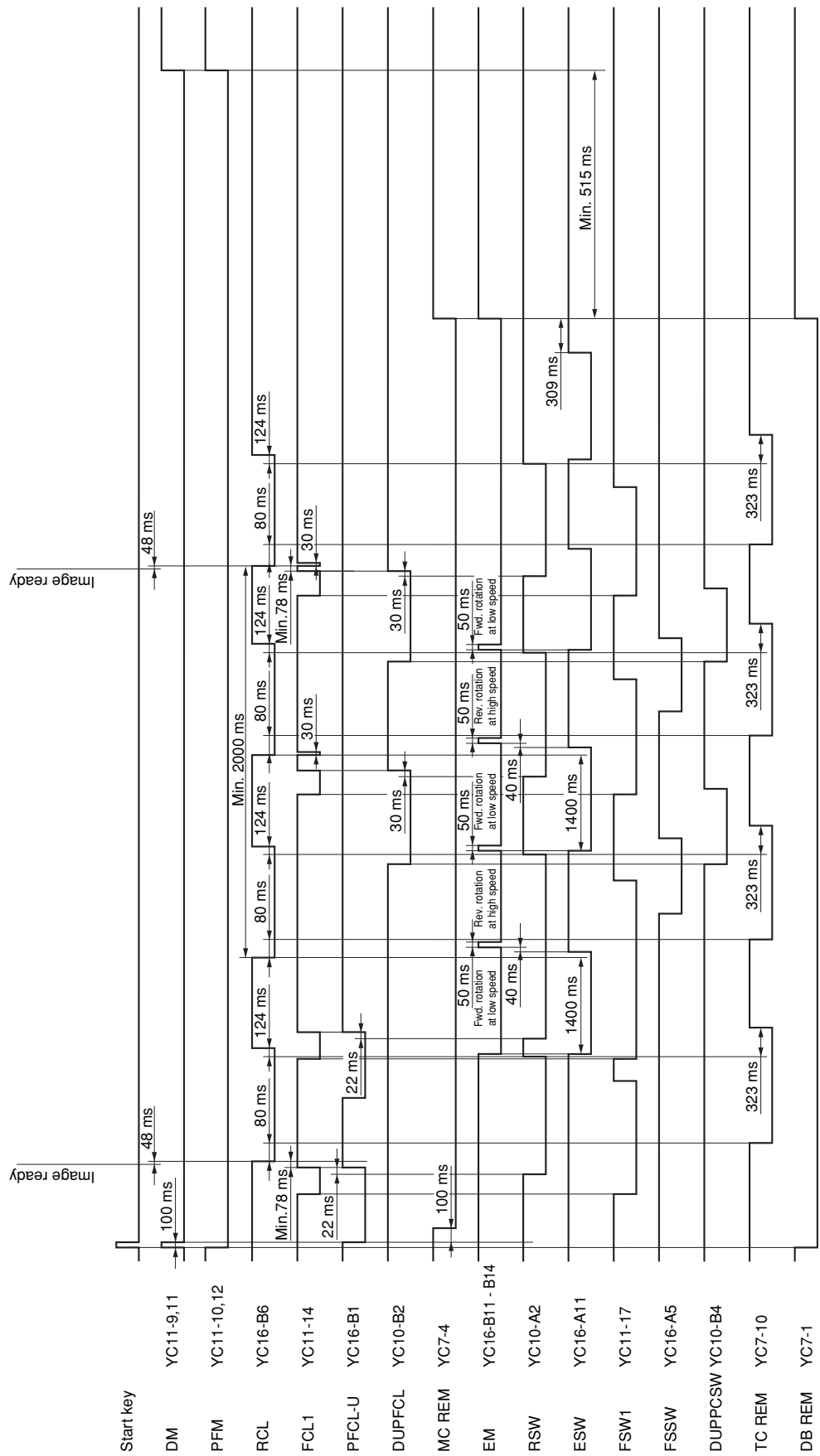
Timing chart No. 7 Continuous copying of an A5R/5¹/₂"x8¹/₂" original onto two sheets of A3/11"x17" copy paper from the copier lower drawer, magnification ratio 400%, manual copy density control



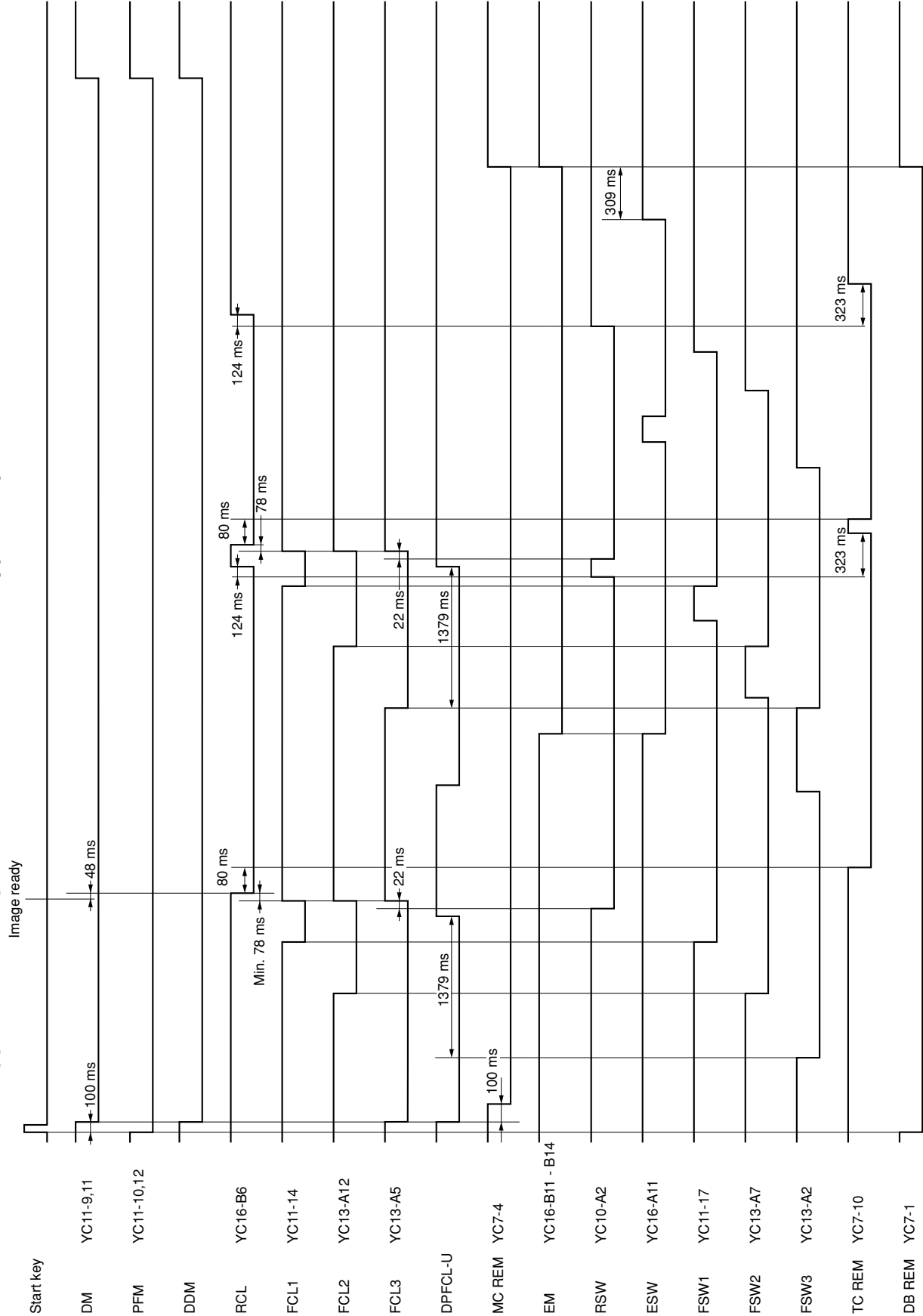
Timing chart No. 8 Duplex copying of an A3/11"x17" book original onto one duplex A4/11"x8¹/₂" copy from the copier upper drawer, magnification ratio 100%, auto copy density control



Timing chart No. 9 Continuous, duplex copying of two single-sided A4/11"x8¹/₂" originals onto two duplex A4/11"x8¹/₂" copies from the copier upper drawer, magnification ratio 100%, auto copy density control



Timing chart No. 10 Continuous copying an A3/11"x17" original onto two sheets of A3/11"x17" copy paper from the paper feed desk upper drawer, magnification ratio 100%, auto copy density control



Timing chart No. 11 Copying an A4/11"x8¹/₂" original onto an A4/11"x8¹/₂" copy paper from the paper feed desk lower drawer, magnification ratio 100%, manual copy density control

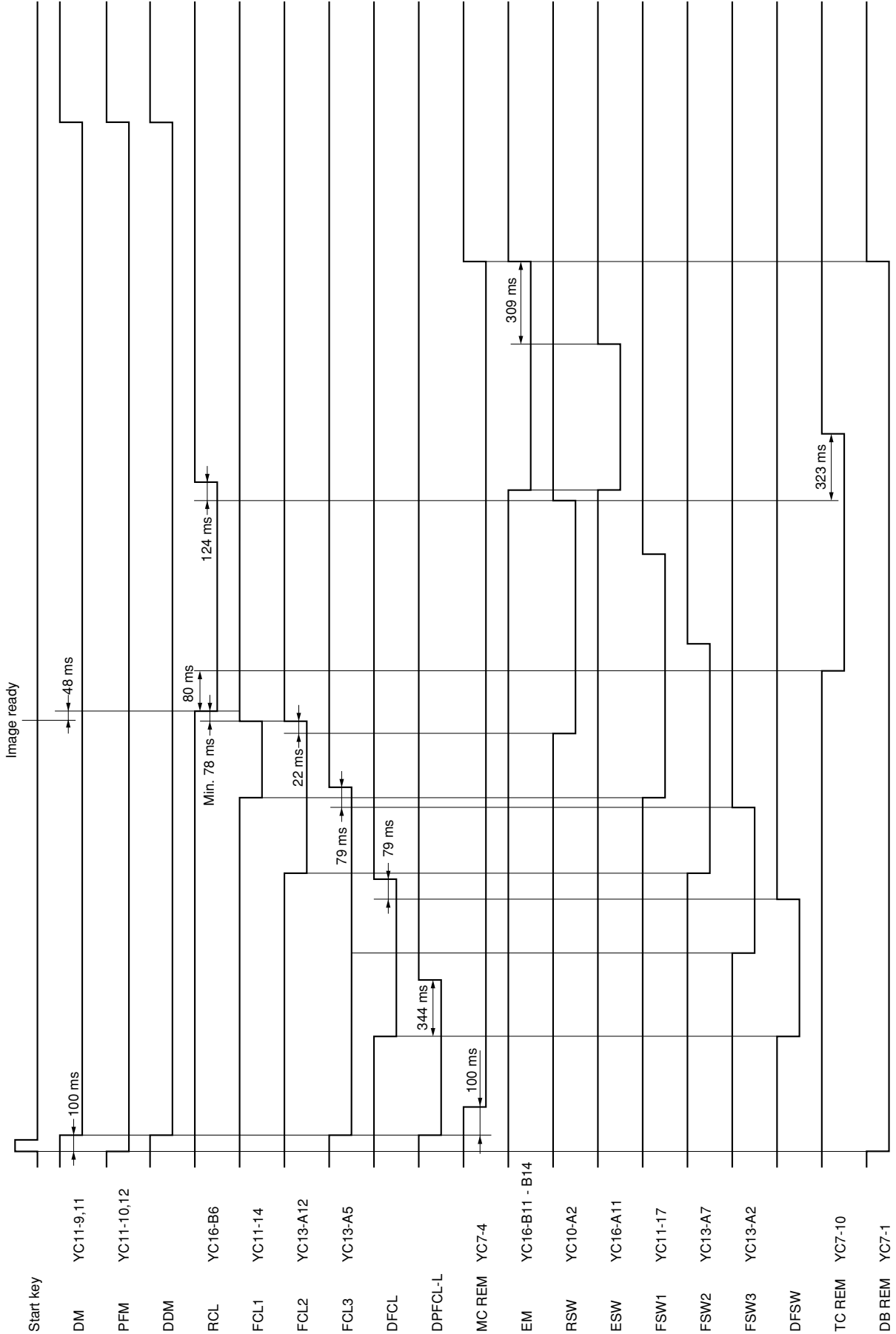
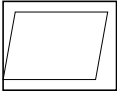
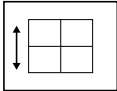
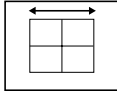
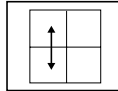
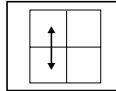
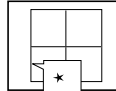
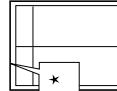
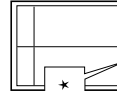
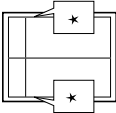
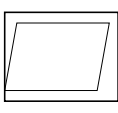
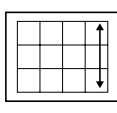
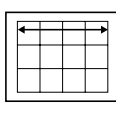
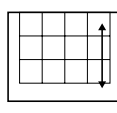
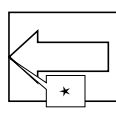
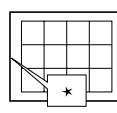
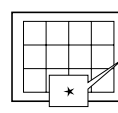
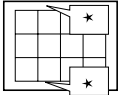


Chart of image adjustment procedures

Adjusting order	Item	Image	Description	Maintenance mode		Original	Page	Remarks
				Item No.	Mode			
①	Adjusting the lateral squareness (printing adjustment)		Adjusting the skew of the laser scanner unit (printing adjustment)	—	—	U993 (PG2) Test chart	1-6-22	
②	Adjusting the magnification in the main scanning direction (printing adjustment)		Polygon motor speed adjustment	U053	POLYGON MOTOR	U053 test pattern	1-4-22	
③	Adjusting the magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction (printing adjustment)		Drive motor speed adjustment	U053	MAIN MOTOR	U053 test pattern	1-4-22	
④	Adjusting the center line of the bypass table (printing adjustment)		Adjusting the LSU print start timing	U034	LSUOUT	U034 test pattern	1-6-12	The center line of the bypass table is used as the reference in the adjustment of the center lines for other paper sources.
⑤	Adjusting the center line of the drawers and large paper deck (printing adjustment)		Adjusting the position of the rack adjuster	—	—	U034 test pattern	—	Adjusts the position of each paper source.
⑥	Adjusting the leading edge registration (printing adjustment)		Registration clutch turning on timing (secondary paper feed start timing)	U034	RCL ON	U034 test pattern	1-6-10	To make an adjustment for duplex copying, select "RCL ON (DUP)".
⑦	Adjusting the leading edge margin (printing adjustment)		LSU illumination start timing	U402	LEAD	U402 test pattern	1-6-13	
⑧	Adjusting the trailing edge margin (printing adjustment)		LSU illumination end timing	U402	TRAIL	U402 test pattern	1-6-13	To make an adjustment for duplex copying, select "TRAIL (DUP)".

Adjusting order	Item	Image	Description	Maintenance mode			Original	Page	Remarks
				Item No.	Mode				
⑨	Adjusting the left and right margins (printing adjustment)		LSU illumination start/end timing	U402	A C		U402 test pattern	1-6-13	
⑩	Adjusting the lateral squareness (scanning adjustment)		Adjusting the position of the LSU (scanning adjustment)	—	—		Test chart	1-6-25	
⑪	Adjusting magnification of the scanner in the main scanning direction (scanning adjustment)		Data processing	U065	MAIN SCAN ADJ		Test chart	1-6-27	No adjustment for copying using the DP.
⑫	Adjusting magnification of the scanner in the auxiliary scanning direction (scanning adjustment)		Original scanning speed	U065 U070	SUB SCAN ADJ ADJUST DATA		Test chart	1-6-28 1-4-25	U065: For copying an original placed on the contact glass. U070: For copying originals from the DP.
⑬	Adjusting the center line (scanning adjustment)		Adjusting the original scan data (image adjustment)	U067 U072	ADJUST DATA 1 sided		Test chart	1-6-30 1-4-27	U067: For copying an original placed on the contact glass. U072: For copying originals from the DP.
⑭	Adjusting the leading edge registration (scanning adjustment)		Original scan start timing	U066 U071	ADJUST DATA LEAD EDGE ADJ		Test chart	1-6-29 1-4-26	U066: For copying an original placed on the contact glass. U071: For copying originals from the DP.
⑮	Adjusting the leading edge margin (scanning adjustment)		Adjusting the original scan data (image adjustment)	U403 U404	B MARGIN B MARGIN		Test chart	1-6-31 1-4-63	U403: For copying an original placed on the contact glass. U404: For copying originals from the DP.
⑯	Adjusting the trailing edge margin (scanning adjustment)		Adjusting the original scan data (image adjustment)	U403 U404	D MARGIN D MARGIN		Test chart	1-6-31 1-4-63	U403: For copying an original placed on the contact glass. U404: For copying originals from the DP.

Adjusting order	Item	Image	Description	Maintenance mode		Original	Page	Remarks
				Item No.	Mode			
⑰	Adjusting the left and right margins (scanning adjustment)		Adjusting the original scan data (image adjustment)	U403	A MARGIN	Test chart	1-6-31	U403: For copying an original placed on the contact glass. U404: For copying originals from the DP.
				U404	C MARGIN			

When maintenance item U092 (Adjusting the scanner automatically) is run using the specified original (P/N 2A068020), the following adjustments are automatically made:

- Adjusting the scanner center line (U067)
- Adjusting the scanner leading edge registration (U066)
- Adjusting the scanner magnification in the main scanning direction (U065)
- Adjusting the scanner magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction (U065)

Image quality

Item	Specifications
100% magnification	Copier: $\pm 0.8\%$ Using DP: $\pm 1.5\%$
Enlargement/reduction	Copier: $\pm 1.0\%$ Using DP: $\pm 1.5\%$
Lateral squareness (copier mode)	Copier: ± 1.5 mm/375 mm Using DP: ± 2.5 mm/375 mm
Lateral squareness (printer mode)	Using DP: ± 2.5 mm/375 mm
Margins (copier mode)	± 1.0 mm/375 mm A: $2.0^{+2.0}_{-1.9}$ mm B: 3.0 ± 2.5 mm C: $2.0^{+2.0}_{-1.9}$ mm D: $3.0^{+2.0}_{-1.9}$ mm
Margins (printer mode)	A: 5.0 ± 2.0 mm B: 5.0 ± 2.5 mm C: 5.0 ± 2.0 mm D: 5.0 ± 2.5 mm
Leading edge registration	Drawer: ± 2.5 mm Bypass: ± 2.5 mm
Skewed paper feed (left-right difference)	Duplex copying: ± 2.5 mm Drawer: 1.5 mm or less Bypass: 1.5 mm or less
Lateral image shifting	Duplex copying: 2.0 mm or less Drawer: ± 2.0 mm or less Bypass: ± 2.0 mm or less
Curling	Duplex copying: ± 3.0 mm or less Drawer: ± 3.0 mm or less Bypass: 10.0 mm or less Duplex copying: 10.0 mm or less

Maintenance parts list

Maintenance part name		Part No.	Fig. No.	Ref. No.
Name used in service manual	Name used in parts list			
Upper/lower paper feed pulley	PULLEY,PAPER FEED	2AR07220	4	4
Upper/lower separation pulley	PULLEY,SEPARATION	2AR07230	4	5
Upper/lower forwarding pulley	PULLEY FEED A	2BJ06010	4	6
Bypass paper feed pulley	UPPER PULLEY,BYPASS	61706770	10	29
Bypass separation pulley	PULLEY,SEPARATION	2AR07230	10	34
Bypass forwarding pulley	PULLEY FEED A	2BJ06010	10	20
Bypass feed roller 1	ROLLER2 BYPASSFEED	2BL06540	11	12
Bypass feed roller 2	ROLLER4 BYPASSFEED	2BL06560	11	11
Left registration roller	ROLLER REGIST	2FG16021	7	11
Right registration roller	RIGHT ROLLER REGIST	2FG06210	5	51
Feed pulley	PULLEY FEED	2BL16080	6,7	37,8
Feed roller 1	PULLEY FEED	2BL06930	5	59
Feed roller 2	ROLLER B FEED	2BL06080	5	5
Feed roller 3	ROLLER C FEED	2BL06090	5	6
Registration switch	SWITCH REGISTRATION	2FG27110	5	83
Lower regist cleaner	UNDER CLEANER REGIST	2BL07950	7	46
Registration switch	GUIDE REGIST F	2BL16130	7	16
Contact glass	CONTACT GLASS	35912010	9	46
Slit glass	CONTACT GLASS ADF	2FG12020	9	19
Mirror 1	MIRROR A	2AV12150	9	9
Mirror 2 and mirror 3	MIRROR B	2AV12160	9	10
Exposure lamp	LAMP,SCANNER	2AV12100	9	4
Original size detection switch	SENSOR ORIGINAL	2C927090	9	53
Transfer roller unit	PARTS,TRANSFER ROLLER	2FG93091	7	25
Developing unit	PARTS,DEVELOPER ASSY	2BJ93010	13	1
Drum unit	PARTS,DRUM ASS'Y,SP	2FG93011	15	1
Drum unit	PARTS,DRUM ASS'Y	2BJ93021	15	1
Main charger unit	PARTS MAIN-C,MC700	2BL93091	15	5
Fixing unit	PARTS,FIXING ASS'Y120,SP	2FG93032	14	1
	PARTS,FIXING ASS'Y230,SP	2FG93042	14	1
Press roller separation claw	CLAW PRESS ROLLER	2BL20350	6	8
Eject roller	ROLLER EXIT	2BL21020	8	4
Switchback roller	ROLLER FEED SHIFT	2BL21030	8	3
Eject pulley	PULLEY EXIT C	2BL21520	8	37
Switchback pulley	PULLEY FEED SHIFT	2BL21330	6	2

Periodic maintenance procedures

Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Test copy and test print	Perform at the maximum copy size	Test copy	Every service		



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Paper feed section	Upper/lower paper feed pulley	Replace	400K (30)/500K (40/50)	Replace.*	1-6-3
	Upper/lower separation pulley	Replace	400K (30)/500K (40/50)	Replace.*	1-6-3
	Upper/lower forwarding pulley	Replace	400K (30)/500K (40/50)	Replace.*	1-6-3
	Bypass paper feed pulley	Replace	400K (30)/500K (40/50)	Replace.*	1-6-5
	Bypass separation pulley	Replace	400K (30)/500K (40/50)	Replace.*	1-6-5
	Bypass forwarding pulley	Replace	400K (30)/500K (40/50)	Replace.*	1-6-5
	Bypass feed roller 1	Clean	400K (30)/500K (40/50)	Clean with alcohol.*	
	Bypass feed roller 2	Clean	400K (30)/500K (40/50)	Clean with alcohol.*	
	Left registration roller	Clean	400K (30)/500K (40/50)	Clean with alcohol.*	
	Right registration roller	Clean	400K (30)/500K (40/50)	Clean with alcohol.*	
	Feed pulley	Clean	400K (30)/500K (40/50)	Clean with alcohol.*	
	Feed roller 1	Clean	400K (30)/500K (40/50)	Clean with alcohol.*	
	Feed roller 2	Clean	400K (30)/500K (40/50)	Clean with alcohol.*	
	Feed roller 3	Clean	400K (30)/500K (40/50)	Clean with alcohol.*	
	Registration switch	Clean	400K (30)/500K (40/50)	Clean with a dry cloth.	
	Lower regist cleaner	Replace	400K (30)/500K (40/50)	Replace.	
	Registration guide	Replace	400K (30)/500K (40/50)	Replace.	



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Optical section	Slit glass	Clean	400K (30)/500K (40/50)	Clean with a dry cloth.	
	Contact glass	Clean	400K (30)/500K (40/50)	Clean with alcohol and then a dry cloth.	
	Mirror 1	Clean	User call	Clean with alcohol and then a dry cloth only if vertical black lines appear on the copy image.	
	Mirror 2 and mirror 3	Clean	User call	Clean with alcohol and then a dry cloth only if vertical black lines appear on the copy image.	
	Lens	Clean	User call	Clean with a dry cloth only if vertical black lines appear on the copy image.	
	Reflector	Clean	User call	Clean with a dry cloth only if vertical black lines appear on the copy image.	
	Exposure lamp	Clean or replace	User call	Replace if an image problem occurs.	
	Optical rail	Grease	User call	Check noise and shifting and then apply scanner rail grease PG671.	
	Original size detection	Clean	User call	Clean the sensor emitter and sensor receiver with alcohol or a dry cloth only if there is a problem.	



*Check and clean with alcohol when user call occurs.

Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Transfer/separation section	Transfer roller unit	Replace	400K (30)/500K (40/50)	Replace. (Clean when user call occurs.)	1-6-35



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Developing section	Developing unit	Replace	400K (30)/500K (40/50)	Replace. (Check and replace when user call occurs.)	1-6-34



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Main charging/drum section	Drum unit	Replace	400K (30)/500K (40/50)	Replace. (Check and replace when user call occurs.)	1-6-32
	Main charger unit	Clean	400K (30)/500K (40/50)	Clean with a wet cloth and then a dry cloth.	



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Fixing section	Fixing unit	Replace	400K (30)/500K (40/50)	Replace.	1-6-36
	Press roller separation	Check, replace	400K (30)/500K (40/50)	Clean with alcohol. (Check and replace when user call occurs.)	



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Eject section	Eject roller	Clean	400K (30)/500K (40/50)	Clean with alcohol.*	
	Eject pulley	Clean	400K (30)/500K (40/50)	Clean with alcohol.*	
	Switchback roller	Clean	400K (30)/500K (40/50)	Clean with alcohol.*	
	Switchback pulley	Clean	400K (30)/500K (40/50)	Clean with alcohol.*	



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Covers	Covers	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Other	Image quality	Check and adjust	Every service		

*Check and clean with alcohol when user call occurs.

Optional devices supplied parts list

Paper feed desk

Name used in service manual	Name used in installation guide	Part No.
Retainer	Retainer	3AT02150
Pin	Pin	74315200
CVM4 × 06 cross-head chromate binding screw	Cross-head chromate binding screw, CVM4 × 06	B1004060
Stay	Stay	3AT02250
M4 × 10 chrome TP screw	Chrome TP screw, M4 × 10	B4104100

Network facsimile System

Name used in service manual	Name used in installation guide	Part No.
Fax board	Fax board	3DB01010
Auxiliary power source PCB assembly (100 V)	Auxiliary power source PCB assembly (100 V)	3CM01030
Auxiliary power source PCB assembly (200 V)	Auxiliary power source PCB assembly (200 V)	3CM01040
Fax kit label sheet	Fax kit label sheet	3CM05010
Certification label (120 V only)	FCC68 label sheet (120 V only)	3CM05040
Certification label (120 V only)	LINE IC label sheet (120 V only)	3CM05030
Modular connector cable (120 V only)	"B" Modular connector cable (120 V only)	76727300
M3 × 06 chrome binding screw	+TP-A chrome binding screw M3 × 06	B4103060
Fax cable	Fax cable	3CM27010
Fax-PCB-Power cable	Fax-PCB-Power cable	3CM27040
NCU board assembly (N.A.)	NCU board assembly (N.A.)	3B101030
NCU board assembly (CTR)	NCU board assembly (CTR)	3B101040
NCU cable	NCU cable	2AW27020

Printing System

Name used in service manual	Name used in installation guide	Part No.
Clamp	Clamp, CKN-05	M2105890
Band	Band	M2307010

Scanning System

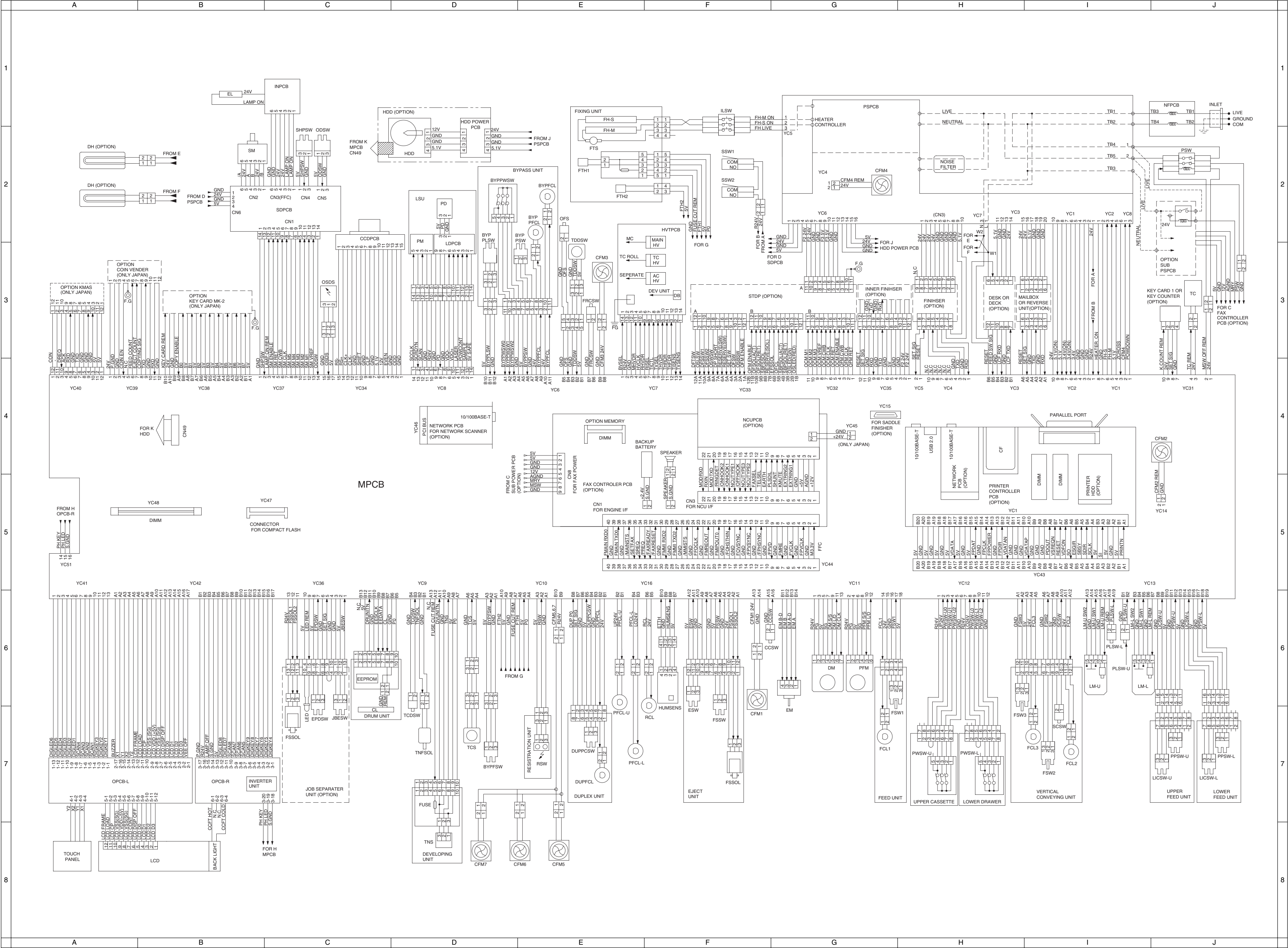
Name used in service manual	Name used in installation guide	Part No.
Scanner board	Scanner board	3B301010
CD-ROM (scanner)	CD-ROM (scanner)	3B327010
CD-ROM (document processing)	CD-ROM (document processing)	3BJ27060

Built-in finisher

Name used in service manual	Name used in installation guide	Part No.
Large ejection cover	Large ejection cover	3B504020
Front ejection cover	Front ejection cover	3B504080
Rear ejection cover	Rear ejection cover	3B504090
Flat spring ejection	Flat spring ejection	3B502050
+TP-A chrome screw M3 × 05	+TP-A chrome screw M3 × 05	B4103050
+TP-A bronze screw M3 × 05	+TP-A bronze screw M3 × 05	B4303050

Job separator

Name used in service manual	Name used in installation guide	Part No.
Job separator tray	Job separator tray	3B620030
Left front cover JS	Left front cover JS	3B604010
+TP-A bronze screw M3 × 05	+TP-A bronze screw M3 × 05	B4303050



AD-63

CONTENTS

1-1 Specifications	
1-1-1 Specifications	1-1-1
1-1-2 Part names	1-1-2
1-1-3 Machine cross section	1-1-3
1-1-4 Drive system	1-1-4
1-2 Installation	
1-2-1 Unpacking	1-2-1
1-3 Troubleshooting	
1-3-1 Paper misfeed detection	1-3-1
(1) Paper misfeed indication	1-3-1
(2) Paper misfeed detection conditions	1-3-2
(3) Paper misfeeds	1-3-3
1-3-2 Electrical problems	1-3-4
(1) The duplex feed clutch does not operate	1-3-4
1-3-3 Mechanical problems	1-3-5
(1) Paper jams.	1-3-5
(2) Abnormal noise is heard.	1-3-5
1-4 Assembly and Disassembly	
1-4-1 Precautions for assembly and disassembly	1-4-1
(1) Precautions	1-4-1
1-4-2 Procedure for assembly and disassembly	1-4-2
(1) Adjusting the margin for printing	1-4-2
(2) Adjusting the amount of slack at the registration roller	1-4-3
(3) Adjusting the center line of image printing	1-4-4
2-1 Mechanical construction	
2-1-1 Construction of each section	2-1-1
(1) Paper conveying operation in duplex copying	2-1-2
2-2 Electrical Parts Layout	
2-2-1 Electrical parts layout	2-2-1
2-3 Appendixes	
Periodic maintenance procedures	2-3-1

1-1-1 Specifications

Type	Enclosed
Paper	Plain paper: 75 – 80 g/m ² Special paper: colored paper
Paper sizes	A3 – A5R, folio/11" × 17" – 5 ¹ / ₂ " × 8 ¹ / ₂ "
Power source	Electrically connected to the copier
Weight	Approximately 4.8 kg/10.56 lbs

3CX

1-1-2 Part names

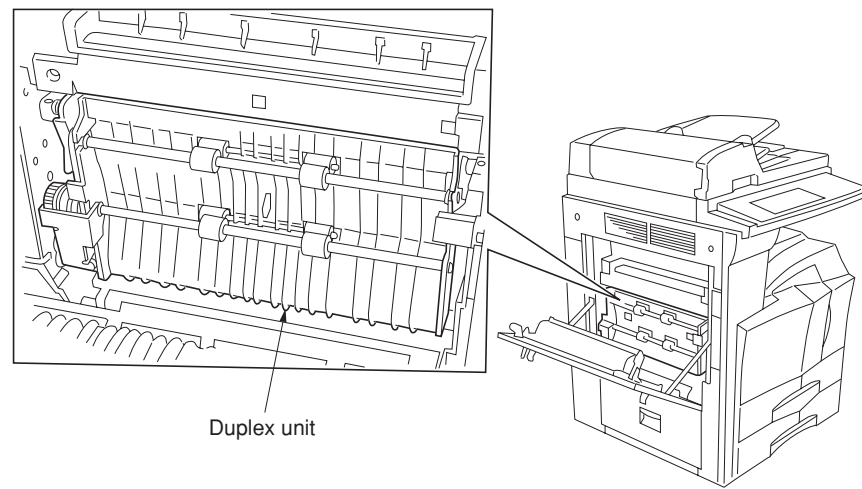
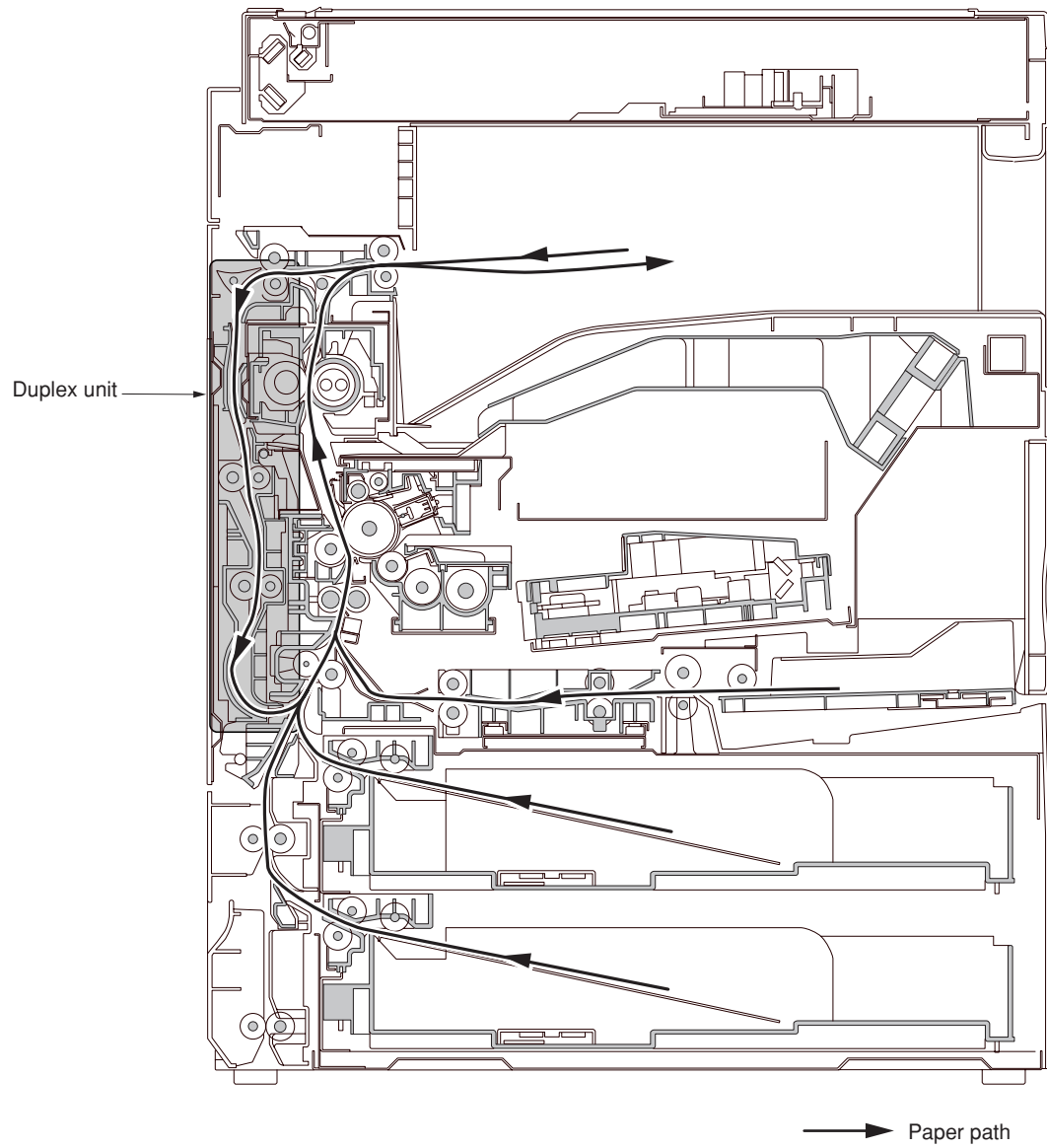


Figure 1-1-1

1-1-3 Machine cross section**Figure 1-1-2**

1-1-4 Drive system

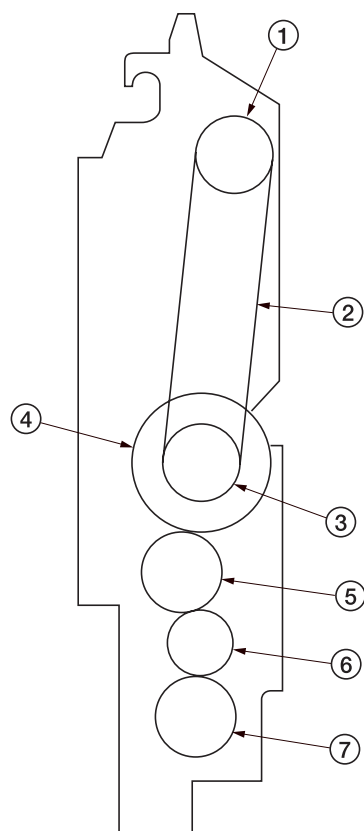


Figure 1-1-3

- ① Pulley T30
- ② Duplex belt
- ③ Pulley T30
- ④ Duplex feed clutch gear
- ⑤ Gear 25
- ⑥ Idle gear 20
- ⑦ Gear 25

1-2-1 Unpacking

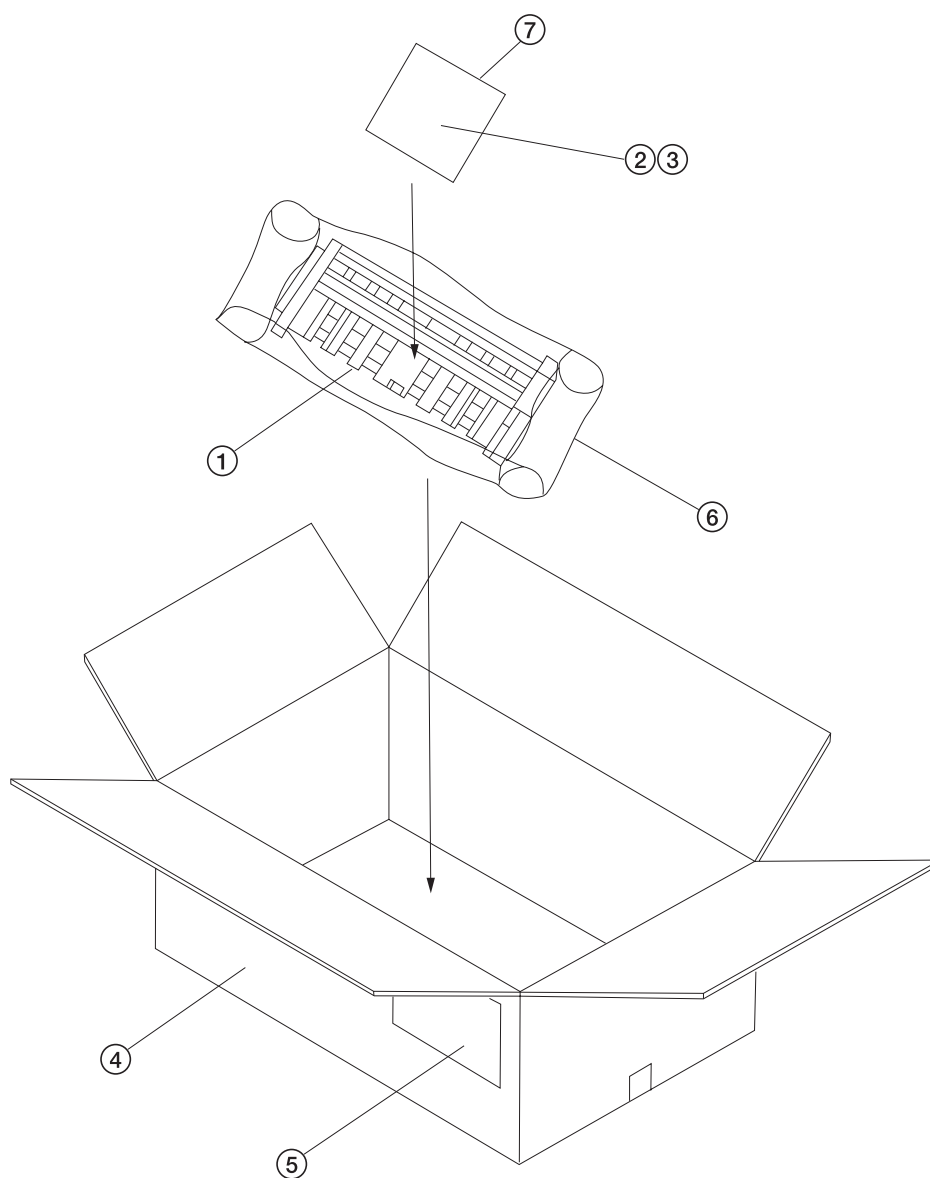


Figure 1-2-1 Unpacking

- ① Duplex unit
- ② Nut plate
- ③ M3 × 10 bronze binding screws
- ④ Outer case
- ⑤ Bar-code label
- ⑥ Air-padded bag
- ⑦ Plastic bag

1-3-1 Paper misfeed detection

(1) Paper misfeed indication

When paper jams, the machine immediately stops operation and the occurrence of a paper jam is indicated on the copier operation panel.

To remove the jammed paper, open the conveying cover.

To reset the paper misfeed detection, open and close the conveying cover to turn safety switch 2 off and on.

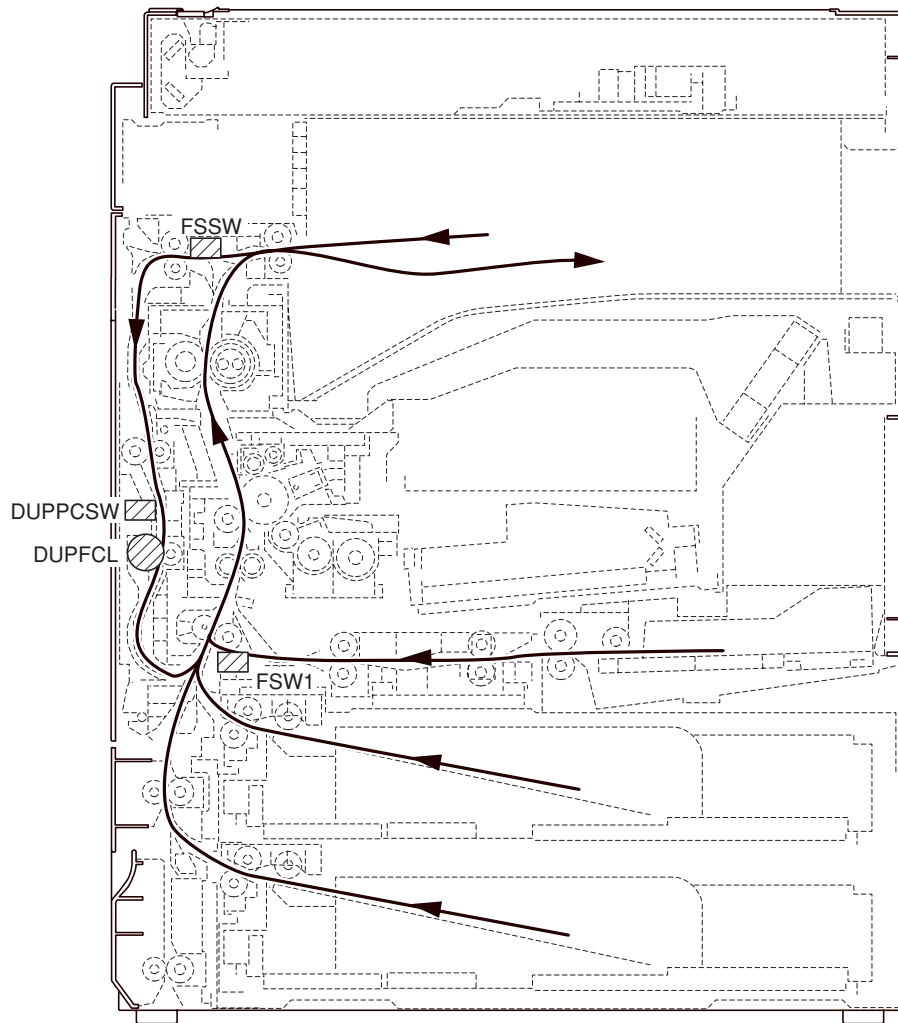
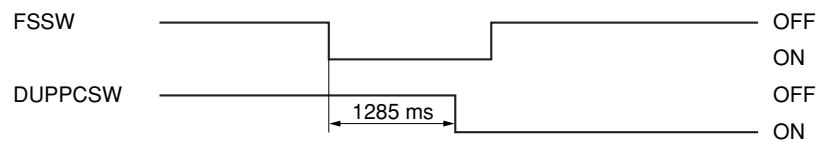


Figure 1-3-1 Paper misfeed detection

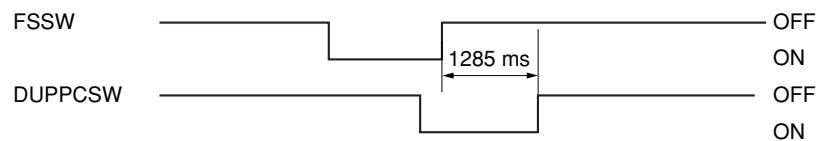
(2) Paper misfeed detection condition

• Duplex paper conveying section 1 (jam code 60)

The duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW) does not turn on within 1285 ms of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning on.

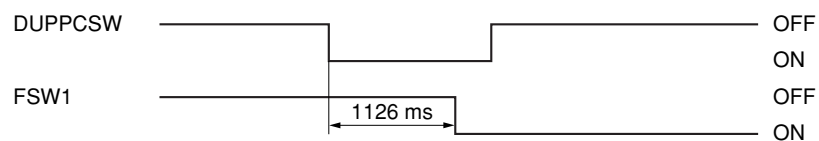
**Timing chart 1-3-1**

The duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW) does not turn off within 1285 ms of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning off.

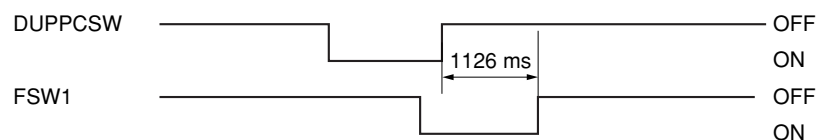
**Timing chart 1-3-2**

• Duplex paper conveying section 2 (jam code 61)

Feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn on within 1126 ms of the duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW) turning on.

**Timing chart 1-3-3**

Feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn off within 1126 ms of the duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW) turning off.

**Timing chart 1-3-4**

(3) Paper misfeeds

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(1) Paper jams in the duplex unit when the main switch is turned on.	A piece of paper torn from copy paper is caught around duplex paper conveying switch.	Remove any found.
	Defective duplex paper conveying switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the duplex paper conveying switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
(2) Paper jams in the duplex unit during copying (jam in duplex paper conveying section 1).	Broken feedshift switch actuator.	Check visually and replace the feedshift switch if its actuator is broken.
	Defective feedshift switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the feedshift switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Broken duplex paper conveying switch actuator.	Check visually and replace the duplex paper conveying switch if its actuator is broken.
	Defective duplex paper conveying switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the duplex paper conveying switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
(3) Paper jams in the duplex unit during copying (jam in duplex paper conveying section 2).	Broken duplex paper conveying switch actuator.	Check visually and replace the duplex paper conveying switch if its actuator is broken.
	Defective duplex conveying switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the duplex paper conveying switch on and off manually. Replace the duplex paper conveying switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Broken feed switch 1 actuator.	Check visually and replace feed switch 1 if its actuator is broken.
	Defective feed switch 1.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 1 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.

1-3-2 Electrical problems

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(1) The duplex feed clutch does not operate.	Broken duplex feed clutch coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the duplex feed clutch.
	Poor contact of the duplex feed clutch connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective main PCB.	Run maintenance item U032 and check if CN10-B2 on the copier main PCB goes low. If not, replace the main PCB.

1-3-3 Mechanical problems

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(1) Paper jams.	Check if the duplex feed pulley, upper duplex feed roller or lower duplex feed roller is deformed.	Check visually and replace the pulley or roller if deformed.
(2) Abnormal noise is heard.	Check if the rollers and gears operate smoothly.	Grease the bushings and gears.

1-4-1 Precautions for assembly and disassembly

(1) Precautions

- Be sure to turn the main switch off and disconnect the power plug before starting disassembly.
- When handling PCBs, do not touch connectors with bare hands or damage the board.
- Do not touch any PCB containing ICs with bare hands or any object prone to static charge.
- Use the following testers when measuring voltages:

Hioki 3200

Sanwa MD-180C

Sanwa YX-360TR

Beckman TECH300

Beckman DM45

Beckman 330*

Beckman 3030*

Beckman DM850*

Fluke 8060A*

Arlec DMM1050

Arlec YF1030C

* Capable of measuring RMS values.

- Prepare the following as test originals:

1. NTC (new test chart)

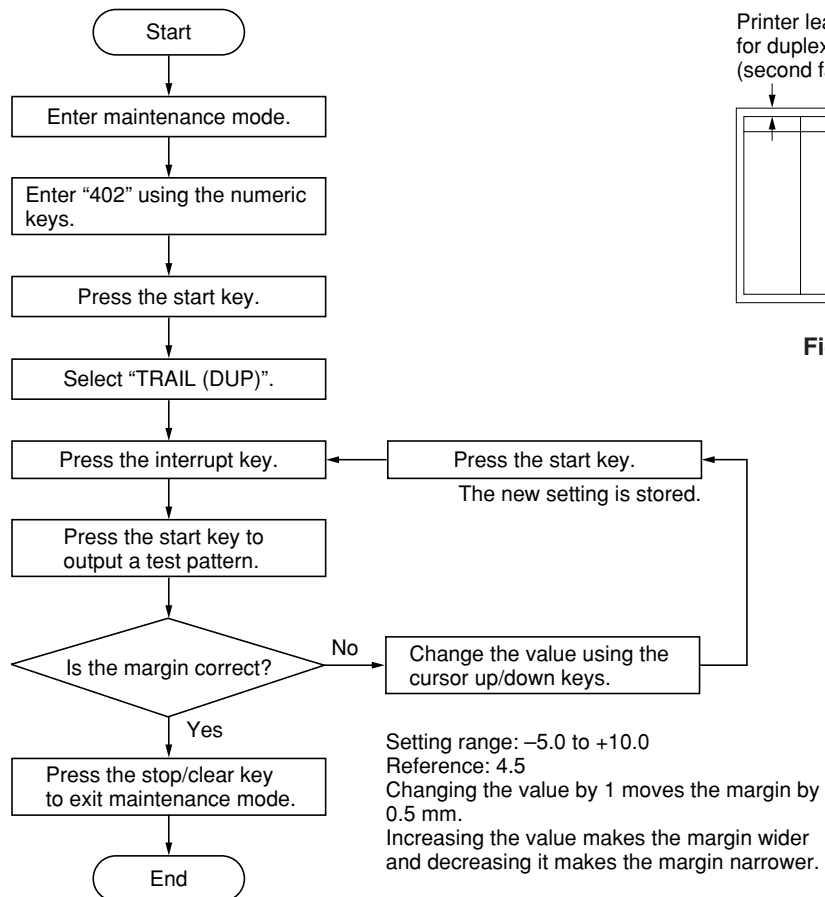
2. NPTC (newspaper test chart)

1-4-2 Procedure for assembly and disassembly

(1) Adjusting the margin for printing

Perform the following adjustment if the printer leading edge margin for duplex copying (second face) is not correct.

Procedure



(2) Adjusting the amount of slack at the registration roller

Perform the following adjustment if the leading edge of the copy image is missing or varies randomly, or if the copy paper is Z-folded during duplex copying.

Procedure

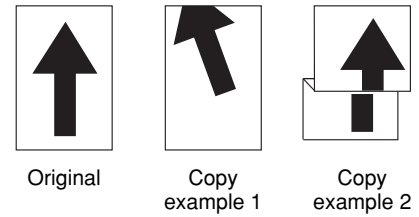
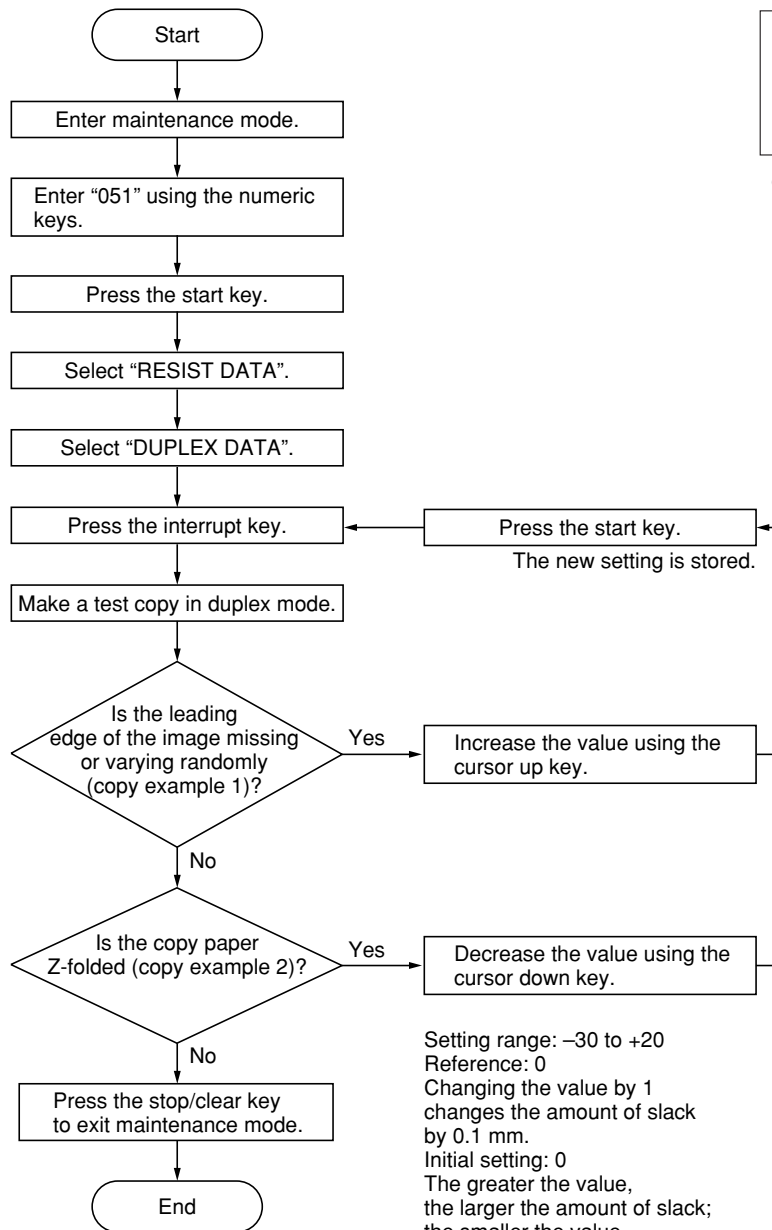
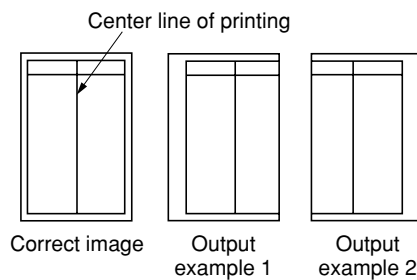
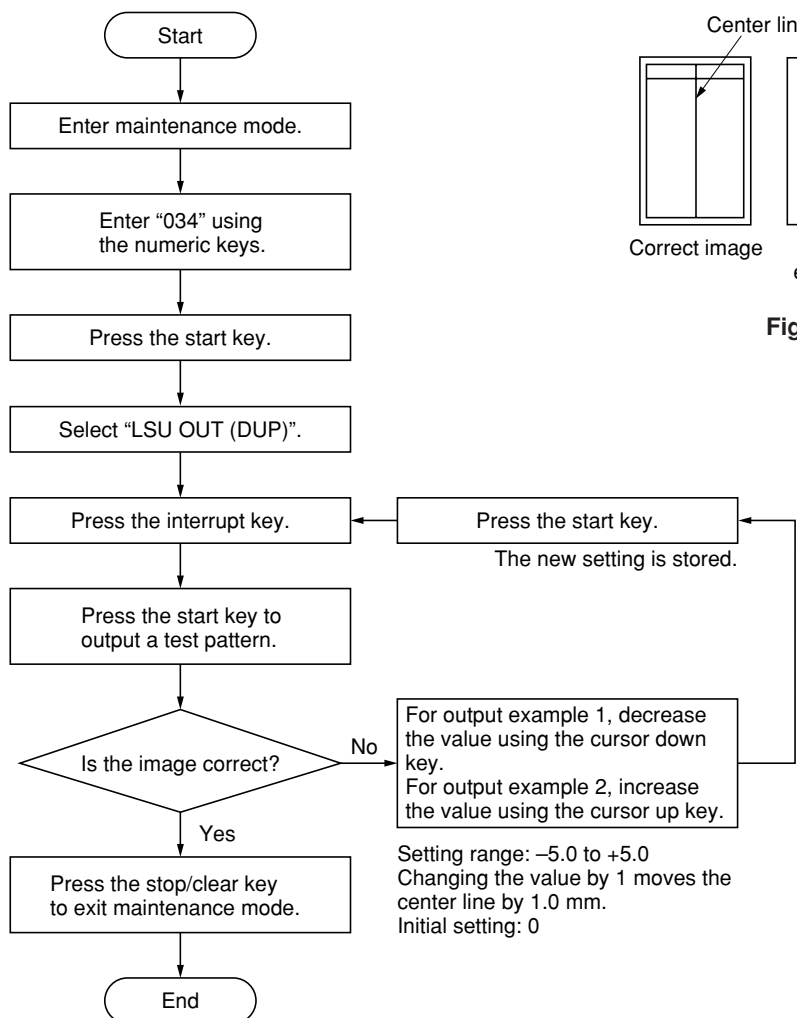


Figure 1-4-2

Setting range: -30 to +20
 Reference: 0
 Changing the value by 1 changes the amount of slack by 0.1 mm.
 Initial setting: 0
 The greater the value, the larger the amount of slack;
 the smaller the value, the smaller the amount of slack

(3) Adjusting the center line of image printing

Make the following adjustment if there is a regular error between the center lines of the copy image and original when copying using the duplex unit.

Procedure**Figure 1-4-3**

2-1-1 Construction of each section

The duplex unit consists of the components shown in Figure 2-1-1. In duplex mode, after copying on to the reverse face of the paper, the paper is reversed in the switchback section and conveyed to the duplex unit. The paper is then conveyed to the copier paper feed section by the upper and lower duplex feed rollers.

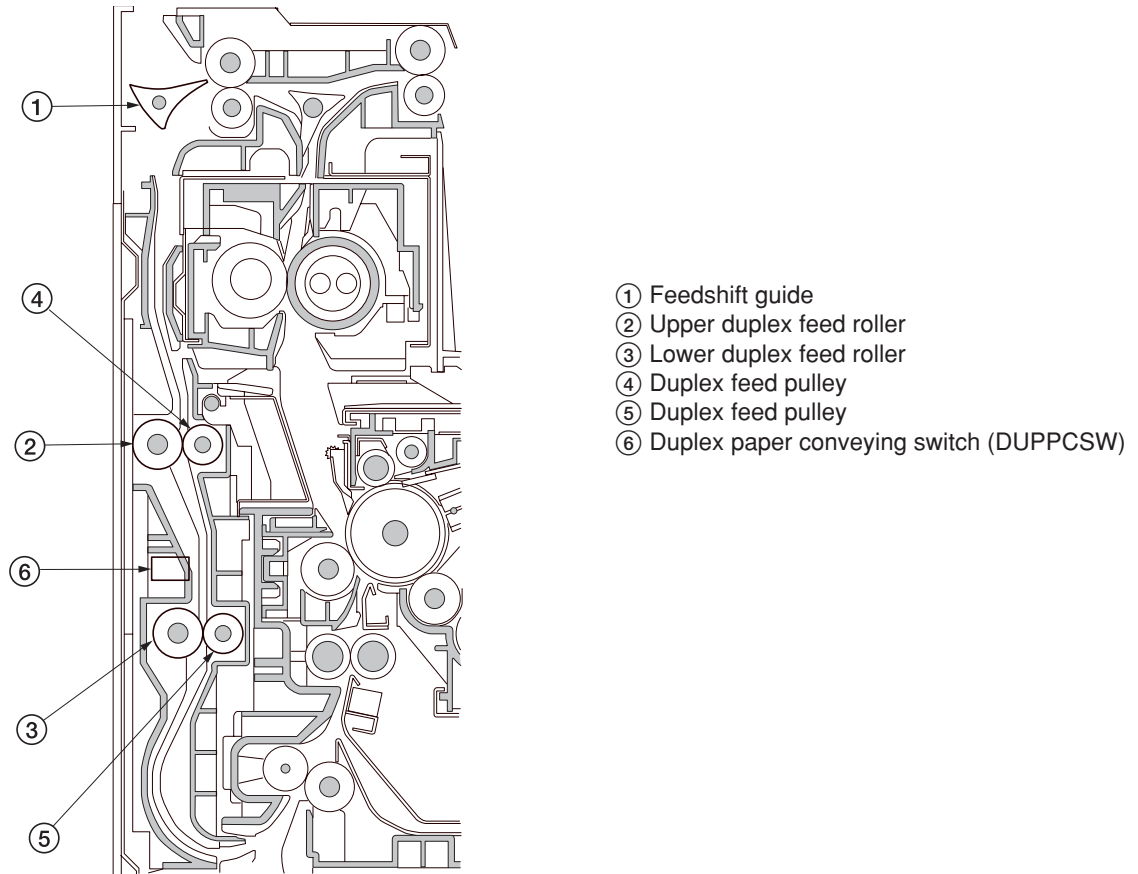


Figure 2-1-1 Duplex unit

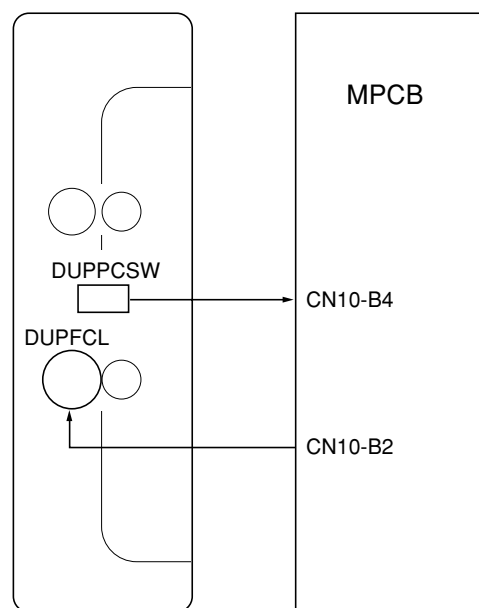
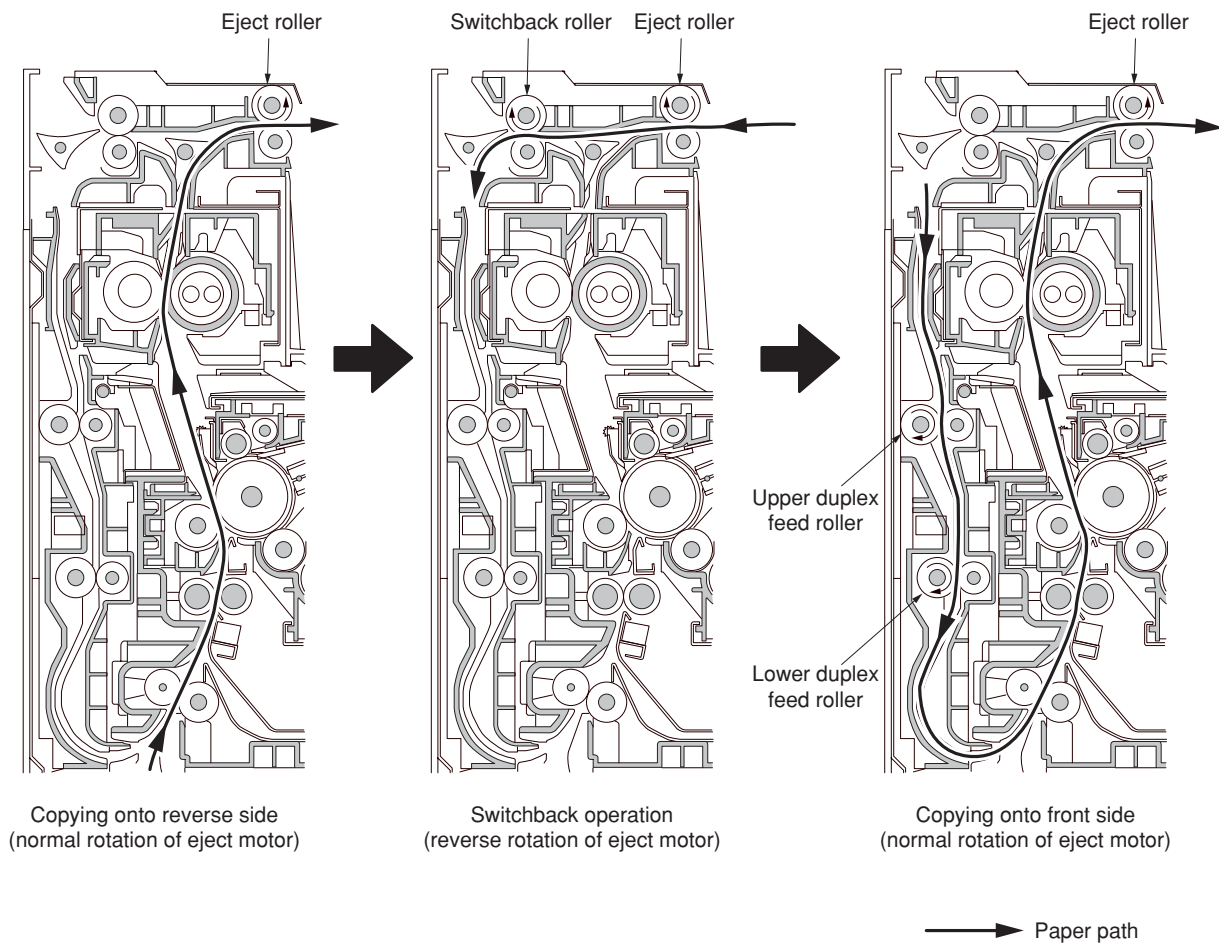


Figure 2-1-2 Duplex unit block diagram

(1) Paper conveying operation in duplex copying

Paper of which copying onto the reverse side is complete is conveyed to the switchback section, the eject motor switches from normal rotation to reverse rotation to switch the eject roller to reverse rotation, and the paper conveying direction is reversed. Paper that has been switched back is conveyed to the duplex unit via the eject roller and the switchback roller. Paper that has been conveyed to the duplex unit is conveyed to the paper feed section again by rotation of the upper duplex feed roller and the lower duplex feed roller and copying onto the front side is performed.

**Figure 2-1-3**

2-2-1 Electrical parts layout

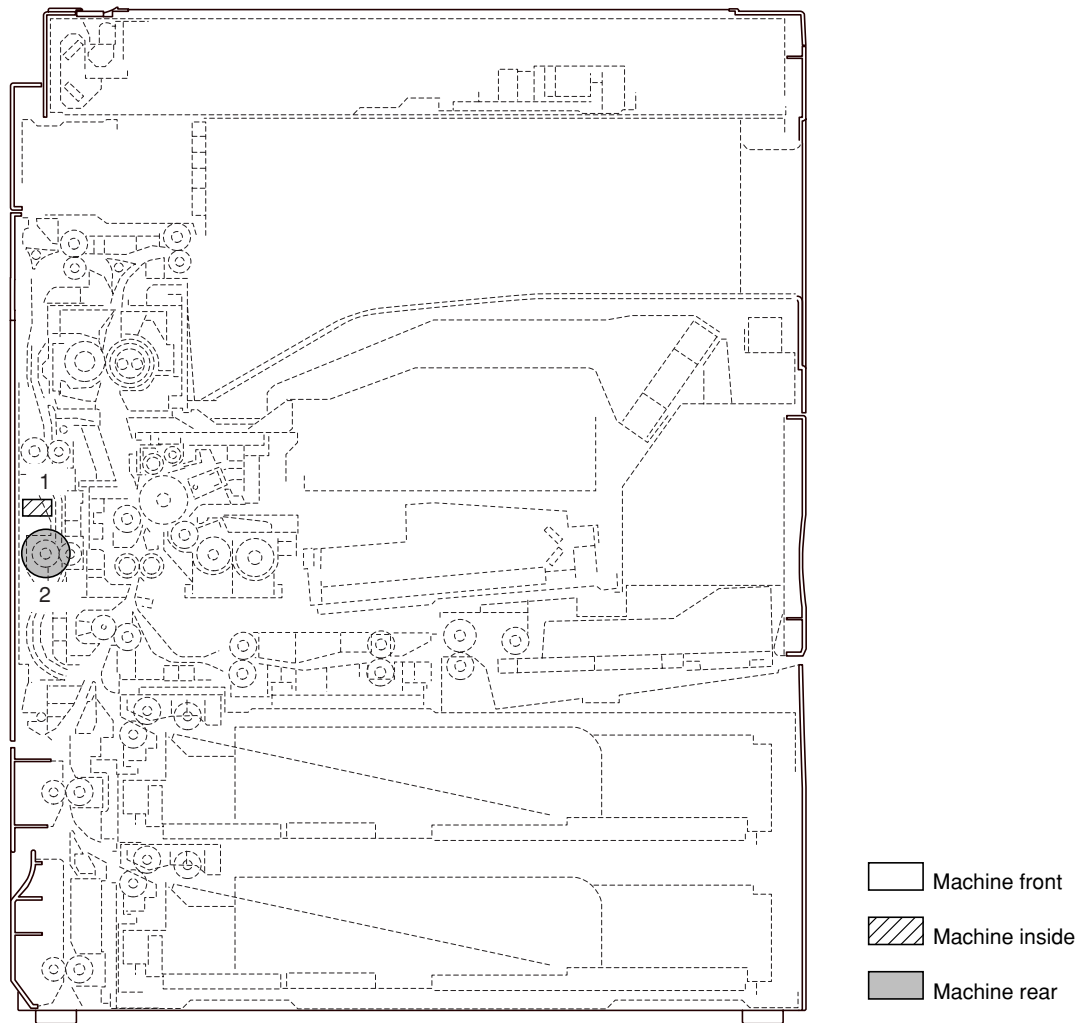


Figure 2-2-1 Duplex unit

1. Duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW) Detects a paper jam in the duplex unit.
2. Duplex paper feed clutch (DUPFCL) Controls the drive of the duplex feed roller.

Periodic maintenance procedures

Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Paper conveying section	Upper duplex feed roller	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Lower duplex feed roller	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	

DF-78

CONTENTS

1-1 Specifications	
1-1-1 Specifications	1-1-1
1-1-2 Part names	1-1-2
1-1-3 Machine cross section	1-1-3
1-1-4 Drive system	1-1-4
1-2 Installation	
1-2-1 Unpacking	1-2-1
1-3 Troubleshooting	
1-3-1 Paper misfeed detection	1-3-1
(1) Paper misfeed indication	1-3-1
(2) Paper misfeed detection condition	1-3-2
(3) Paper misfeeds	1-3-3
1-3-2 Self-diagnosis	1-3-4
(1) Self-diagnostic function	1-3-4
(2) Self-diagnostic codes	1-3-4
1-3-3 Electrical problems	1-3-7
(1) The paper conveying motor does not operate.	1-3-7
(2) The feedshift solenoid does not operate.	1-3-7
(3) The pickup solenoid does not operate.	1-3-7
(4) The front side registration motor does not operate.	1-3-7
(5) The rear side registration motor does not operate.	1-3-7
(6) The trailing edge registration motor does not operate.	1-3-7
(7) The cooling fan motor does not operate.	1-3-8
1-3-4 Mechanical problems	1-3-9
(1) Paper jams.	1-3-9
(2) Abnormal noise is heard.	1-3-9
1-4 Assembly and Disassembly	
1-4-1 Precautions for assembly and disassembly	1-4-1
(1) Precautions	1-4-1
(2) Adjusting the positions of the front side registration cursor, rear side registration cursor and trailing edge registration cursor (reference)	1-4-2
(3) Cleaning the stapler	1-4-3
(4) Adjusting the pressure of curl eliminator mechanism	1-4-4
2-1 Mechanical construction	
2-1-1 Construction of each section	2-1-1
(1) Paper conveying operation in sort mode	2-1-2
2-1-2 Intermediate tray section	2-1-3
(1) Paper registration on the intermediate tray	2-1-4
2-1-3 Stapler section	2-1-5
2-2 Electrical Parts Layout	
2-2-1 Electrical parts layout	2-2-1
(1) Paper conveying section	2-2-1
(2) Intermediate tray section	2-2-2
(3) Stapler section	2-2-3
2-3 Operation of the PCBs	
2-3-1 Main PCB	2-3-1
2-4 Appendixes	
Timing chart No. 1	2-4-1
Timing chart No. 2	2-4-2
Timing chart No. 3	2-4-3
Periodic maintenance procedure	2-4-4
Wiring diagram	2-4-5

1-1-1 Specifications

Type	Built-in
Number of trays	1 (intermediate tray)
Stapling limit	A4/11" × 8 ¹ / ₂ " or smaller: 30 sheets
	Other sizes than above: 20 sheets
Power source	Electrically connected to the copier
Weight	Approximately 11 kg/24.2 lbs

1-1-2 Part names

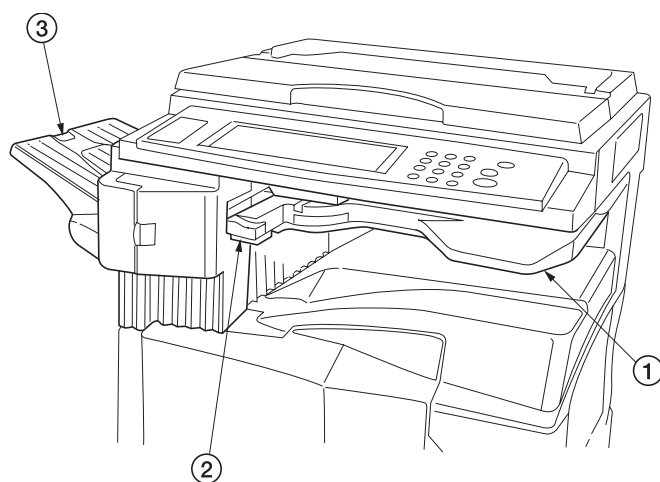
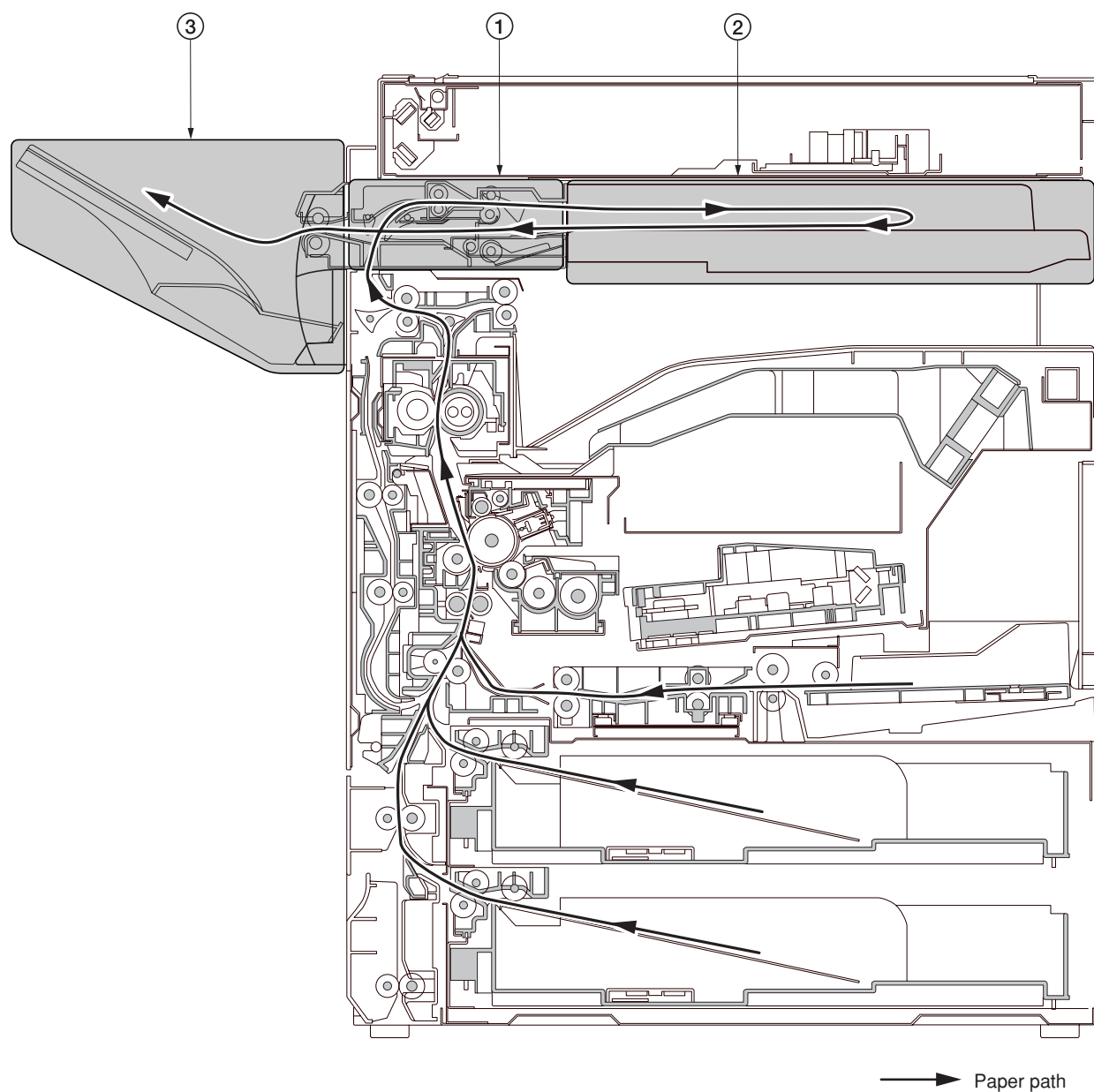


Figure 1-1-1

- ① Intermediate tray
- ② JAM release lever
- ③ Eject tray

1-1-3 Machine cross section**Figure 1-1-2 Machine cross section**

- ① Paper conveying section
- ② Intermediate tray section
- ③ Eject section

1-1-4 Drive system

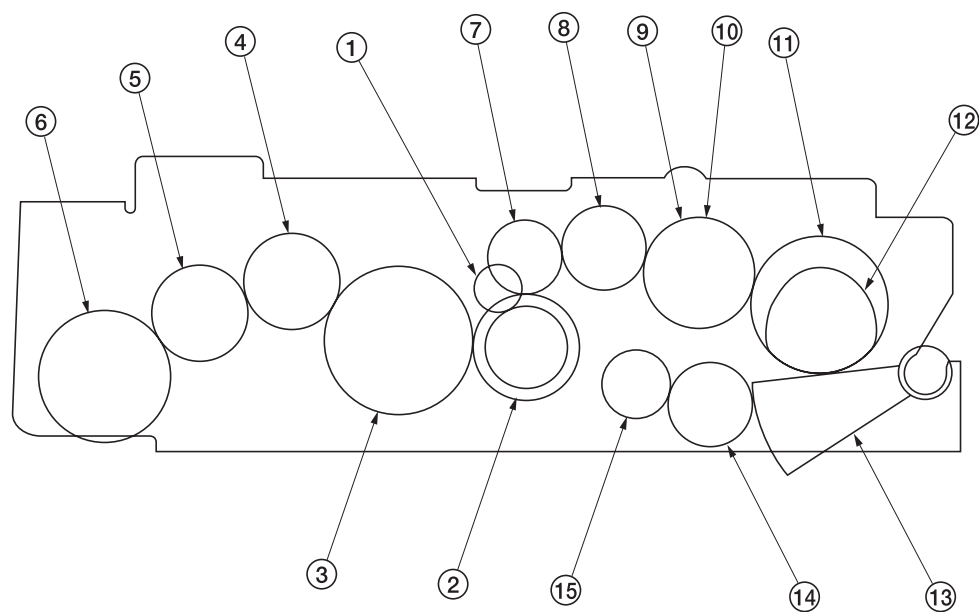


Figure 1-1-3

- | | |
|------------------------------|----------------|
| ① Paper conveying motor gear | ⑨ Central gear |
| ② Gear 31/20 | ⑩ Gear 21 |
| ③ Gear 28 | ⑪ Gear 26 |
| ④ Gear 18 | ⑫ Clutch cam |
| ⑤ Gear 18 | ⑬ Stopper gear |
| ⑥ Gear 25 | ⑭ Gear 32 |
| ⑦ Gear 14 | ⑮ Gear 26 |
| ⑧ Gear 16 | |

1-2-1 Unpacking

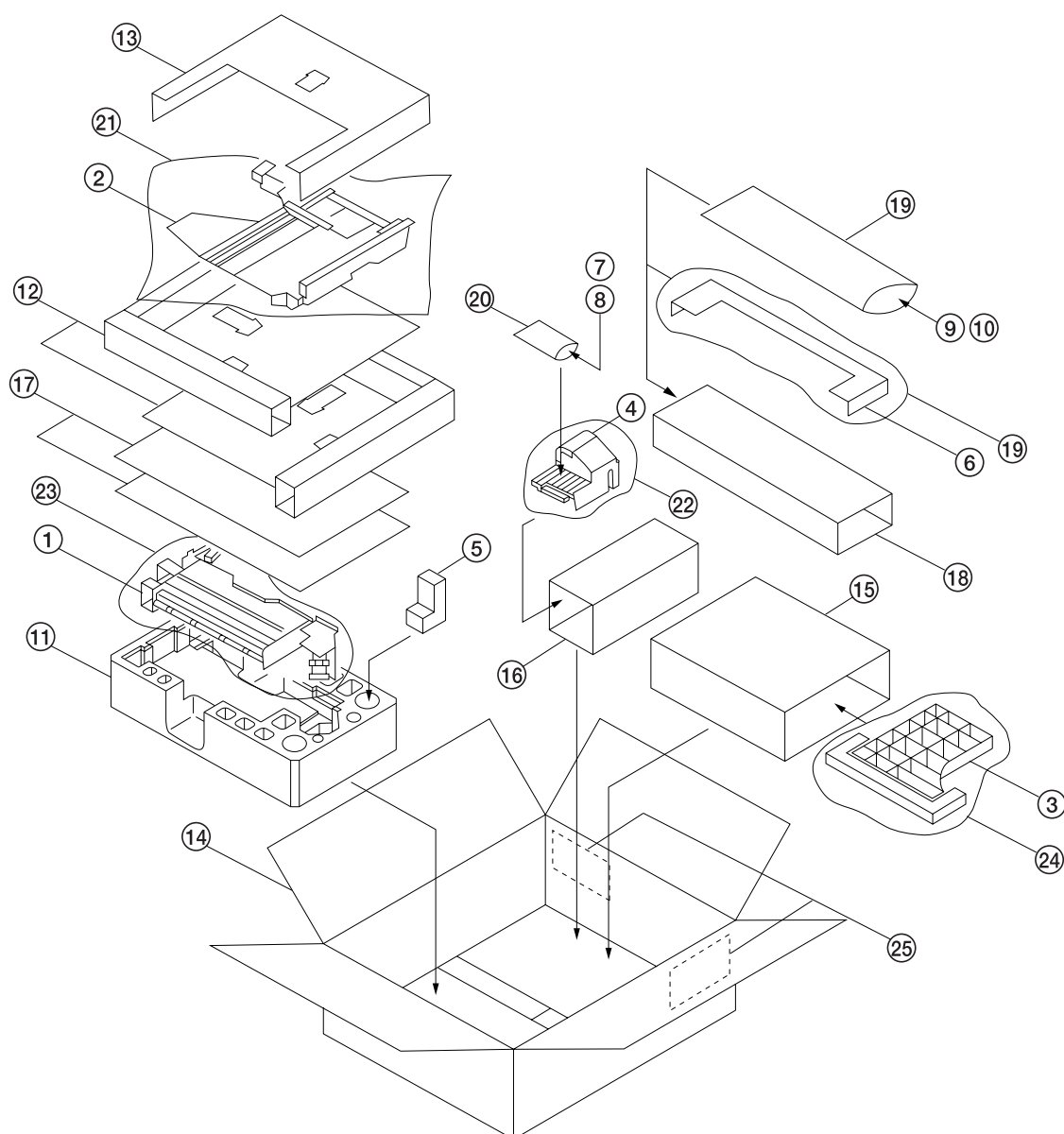


Figure 1-2-1 Unpacking

- | | |
|---|-------------------|
| ① Paper conveying unit | ⑭ Outer case |
| ② Intermediate tray unit | ⑮ Spacer 1 |
| ③ Eject tray | ⑯ Spacer 2 |
| ④ Stapler cover | ⑰ Spacer 3 |
| ⑤ Staple cartridge | ⑱ Spacer 4 |
| ⑥ Large eject cover | ⑲ Plastic bag |
| ⑦ Cross-head chrome TP-A screws M3 × 05 | ⑳ Plastic bag |
| ⑧ Cross-head bronze binding TP-A screws M3 × 05 | ㉑ Plastic sheet |
| ⑨ Front eject cover | ㉒ Plastic bag |
| ⑩ Rear eject cover | ㉓ Plastic bag |
| ⑪ Paper conveying unit pad | ㉔ Air-padded bag |
| ⑫ Upper intermediate tray pad | ㉕ Bar-code labels |
| ⑬ Lower intermediate tray pad | |

1-3-1 Paper misfeed detection

(1) Paper misfeed indication

When paper jams, the machine immediately stops operation and the occurrence of a paper jam is indicated on the copier operation panel.

To remove the jammed paper, lower the intermediate tray.

To reset the paper misfeed detection, detach and refit the intermediate tray to turn the tray open/close switch off and on.

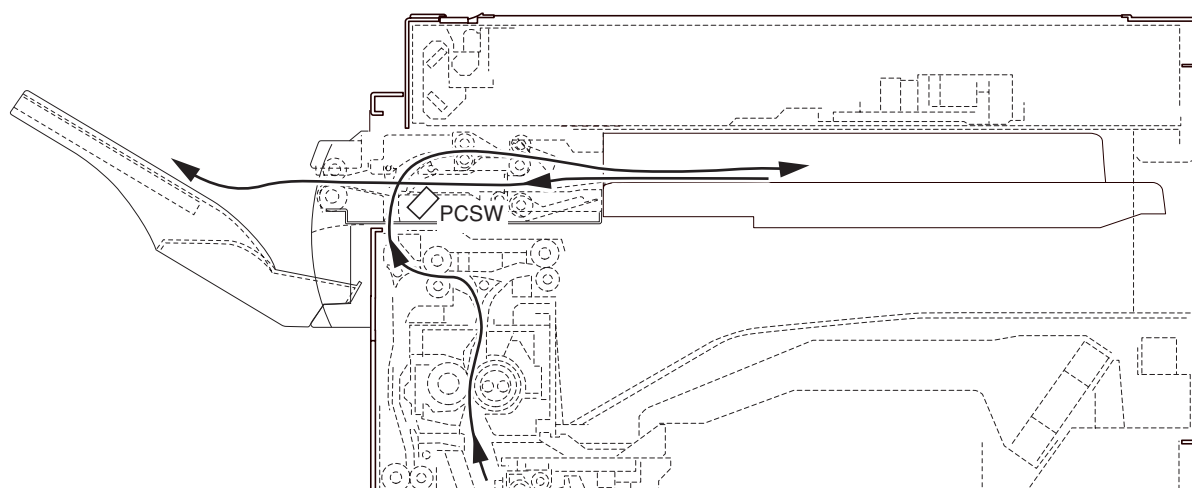


Figure 1-3-1 Paper misfeed detection

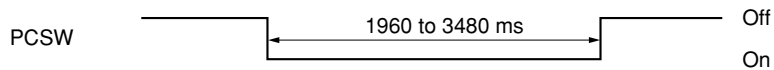
(2) Paper misfeed detection condition

- Jam between the finisher and copier (jam code 81)

The paper conveying switch does not turn on within 1550 ms of the signal requesting paper ejection is output from the copier.

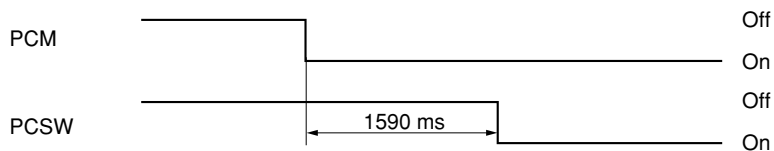
- Intake jam (jam code 82)

During paper intake from the copier, the paper conveying switch (PCSW) does not turn off within 1960 to 3480 ms (depending on paper size) of paper conveying switch (PCSW) turning on.

**Timing chart 1-3-1**

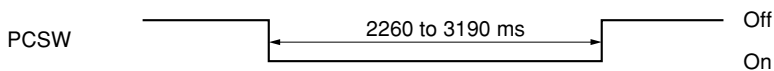
- Jam during paper conveying for batch ejection 1 (jam code 83)

When ejection a stack of paper, the paper conveying switch (PCSW) does not turn on within 1590 ms of the paper conveying motor (PCM) turning on.

**Timing chart 1-3-2**

- Jam during paper conveying for batch ejection 2 (jam code 84)

When ejection a stack of paper, the paper conveying switch (PCSW) does not turn off within 2260 to 3190 ms (depending on the paper size) of the paper conveying motor (PCM) turning on.

**Timing chart 1-3-3**

(3) Paper misfeeds

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(1) Paper jams in the finisher when the main switch is turned on.	A piece of paper torn from copy paper is caught around the paper conveying switch.	Remove any found.
	Defective paper conveying switch.	With 5 V DC present at CN4-9 on the main PCB, check if CN4-10 on the main PCB remains low when the paper conveying switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper conveying switch.
(2) Paper jams in the finisher during copying (intake jam). Jam code 82	Defective paper conveying switch.	With 5 V DC present at CN4-9 on the main PCB, check if CN4-10 on the main PCB remains high or low when the paper conveying switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper conveying switch.
	Check if the feedshift roller or feedshift pulley is deformed.	Check visually and replace the pulley or roller if deformed.
(3) Paper jams in the finisher during copying (jam during paper conveying for batch ejection 1). Jam code 83	Defective paper conveying switch.	With 5 V DC present at CN4-9 on the main PCB, check if CN4-10 on the main PCB remains high or low when the paper conveying switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper conveying switch.
	Check if the feedshift roller or press roller is deformed.	Check visually and replace the pulley or roller if deformed.
(4) Paper jams in the finisher during copying (jam during paper conveying for batch ejection 2). Jam code 84	Defective paper conveying switch.	With 5 V DC present at CN4-9 on the main PCB, check if CN4-10 on the main PCB remains high or low when the paper conveying switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper conveying switch.
	Check if the eject roller or eject pulley is deformed.	Check visually and replace the pulley or roller if deformed.

1-3-2 Self-diagnosis

(1) Self-diagnostic function

This unit is equipped with a self-diagnostic function. When a problem is detected, copying is disabled and the problem displayed as a code consisting of "C" followed by a number between 0440 and 8220, indicating the nature of the problem. A message is also displayed requesting the user to call for service.

After removing the problem, the self-diagnostic function can be reset by turning the tray open/close switch or copier safety switch 1 or 2 off and back on.

(2) Self-diagnostic codes

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedure/corrective measures
C0440	Finisher communication problem An error code from the side deck is detected eight times in succession. No communication: there is no reply after 3 retries. Abnormal communication: a communication error (parity or checksum error) is detected five times in succession.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connectors CN4, CN5 on the copier main PCB and CN2 on the finisher main PCB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective copier main PCB.	Replace the copier main PCB and check for correct operation.
		Defective finisher main PCB.	Replace the finisher main PCB and check for correct operation.
C8170	Finisher front side registration motor problem If the front side registration home position sensor is on in initialization, the sensor does not turn off within 570 ms of starting initialization. If the front side registration home position sensor is off in initialization, the sensor does not turn on within 3180 ms of starting initialization.	The front side registration motor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		The front side registration motor malfunctions.	Replace the front side registration motor and check for correct operation.
		The front side registration home position sensor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		The front side registration home position sensor malfunctions.	Replace the front side registration home position sensor and check for correct operation.
		Defective finisher main PCB.	Replace the finisher main PCB and check for correct operation.
C8180	Finisher rear side registration motor problem If the rear side registration home position sensor is on in initialization, the sensor does not turn off within 570 ms of starting initialization. If the rear side registration home position sensor is off in initialization, the sensor does not turn on within 2880 ms of starting initialization.	The rear side registration motor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		The rear side registration motor malfunctions.	Replace the rear side registration motor and check for correct operation.
		The rear side registration home position sensor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		The rear side registration home position sensor malfunctions.	Replace the rear side registration home position sensor and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedure/corrective measures
C8180	Finisher rear side registration motor problem If the rear side registration home position sensor is on in initialization, the sensor does not turn off within 570 ms of starting initialization. If the rear side registration home position sensor is off in initialization, the sensor does not turn on within 2880 ms of starting initialization.	Defective finisher main PCB.	Replace the finisher main PCB and check for correct operation.
C8190	Finisher trailing edge registration motor problem If the trailing edge registration home position sensor is on in initialization, the sensor does not turn off within 570 ms of starting initialization. If the trailing edge registration home position sensor is off in initialization, the sensor does not turn on within 4550 ms of starting initialization.	The trailing edge registration motor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		The trailing edge registration motor malfunctions.	Replace the trailing edge registration motor and check for correct operation.
		The trailing edge registration home position sensor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		The trailing edge registration home position sensor malfunctions.	Replace the trailing edge registration home position sensor and check for correct operation.
		Defective finisher main PCB.	Replace the finisher main PCB and check for correct operation.
C8210	Finisher front stapler problem The front stapler home position sensor does not change state from non-detection to detection within 200 ms of the start of front stapler motor counterclockwise (forward) rotation. During initialization, the front stapler home position sensor does not change state from non-detection to detection within 600 ms of the start of front stapler motor clockwise (reverse) rotation.	The front stapler connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		The front stapler malfunctions. a) The front stapler is blocked with a staple. b) The front stapler is broken.	a) Remove the front stapler cartridge, and check the cartridge and the stapling section of the stapler. b) Replace the front stapler and check for correct operation.
		Defective finisher main PCB.	Replace the finisher main PCB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedure/corrective measures
C8220	Finisher rear stapler problem The rear stapler home position sensor does not change state from non-detection to detection within 200 ms of the start of rear stapler motor counterclockwise (forward) rotation. During initialization, the rear stapler home position sensor does not change state from non-detection to detection within 600 ms of the start of rear stapler motor clockwise (reverse) rotation.	The rear stapler connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		The rear stapler malfunctions. a) The rear stapler is blocked with a staple. b) The rear stapler is broken.	a) Remove the front stapler cartridge, and check the cartridge and the stapling section of the stapler. b) Replace the front stapler and check for correct operation.
		Defective finisher main PCB.	Replace the finisher main PCB and check for correct operation.

1-3-3 Electrical problems

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(1) The paper conveying motor does not operate.	Broken paper conveying motor coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the paper conveying motor.
	Poor contact of the paper conveying motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective finisher main PCB.	Check if a motor drive coil energization signal is output at CN9-9, CN9-10, CN9-11 and CN9-12 on the finisher main PCB. If not, replace the finisher main PCB.
(2) The feedshift solenoid does not operate.	Broken feedshift solenoid coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the feedshift solenoid.
	Poor contact of the feedshift solenoid connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective finisher main PCB.	Check if CN4-2 and CN4-4 on the finisher main PCB go low. If not, replace the finisher main PCB.
(3) The pickup solenoid does not operate.	Broken pickup solenoid coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the pickup solenoid.
	Poor contact of the pickup solenoid connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective finisher main PCB.	Check if CN4-7 on the finisher main PCB goes low. If not, replace the finisher main PCB.
(4) The front side registration motor does not operate.	Broken front side registration motor coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the front side registration motor.
	Poor contact of the front side registration motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective finisher main PCB.	Check if a motor drive coil energization signal is output at CN5-1, CN5-3, CN5-4 and CN5-5 on the finisher main PCB. If not, replace the finisher main PCB.
(5) The rear side registration motor does not operate.	Broken rear side registration motor coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the rear side registration motor.
	Poor contact of the rear side registration motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective finisher main PCB.	Check if a motor drive coil energization signal is output at CN5-6, CN5-8, CN5-9 and CN5-10 on the finisher main PCB. If not, replace the finisher main PCB.
(6) The trailing edge registration motor does not operate.	Broken trailing edge registration motor coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the trailing edge registration motor.
	Poor contact of the trailing edge registration motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective finisher main PCB.	Check if a motor drive coil energization signal is output at CN6-1, CN6-2, CN6-3 and CN6-4 on the finisher main PCB. If not, replace the finisher main PCB.

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(7) The cooling fan motor does not operate.	Broken cooling fan motor coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the cooling fan motor.
	Poor contact of the cooling fan motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective finisher main PCB.	Check if CN4-6 on the finisher main PCB goes low. If not, replace the finisher main PCB.

1-3-4 Mechanical problems

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(1) Paper jams.	Check if the contact between the feedshift roller and feedshift pulley is correct.	Check and remedy.
	Check if the contact between the feedshift roller and press roller is correct.	Check and remedy.
	Check if the contact between the eject roller and eject pulley is correct.	Check and remedy.
(2) Abnormal noise is heard.	Check if the rollers and gears operate smoothly.	Grease the bushings and gears.

1-4-1 Precautions for assembly and disassembly

(1) Precautions

- Be sure to turn the main switch off and disconnect the power plug before starting disassembly.
 - When handling PCBs, do not touch connectors with bare hands or damage the board.
 - Do not touch any PCB containing ICs with bare hands or any object prone to static charge.
 - Use the following testers when measuring voltages:
 - Hioki 3200
 - Sanwa MD-180C
 - Sanwa YX-360TR
 - Beckman TECH300
 - Beckman DM45
 - Beckman 330*
 - Beckman 3030*
 - Beckman DM850*
 - Fluke 8060A*
 - Arlec DMM1050
 - Arlec YF1030C
- * Capable of measuring RMS values.
- Prepare the following as test originals:
 1. NTC (new test chart)
 2. NPTC (newspaper test chart)

(2) Adjusting the positions of the front side registration cursor, rear side registration cursor and trailing edge registration cursor (reference)

Perform the following adjustment if paper registration is poor or stapling is made outside the specified area.

Procedure

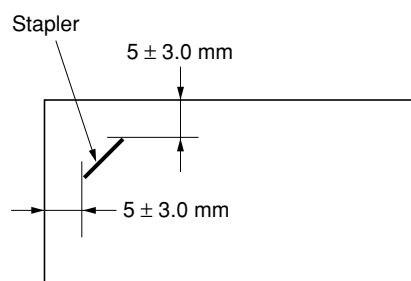
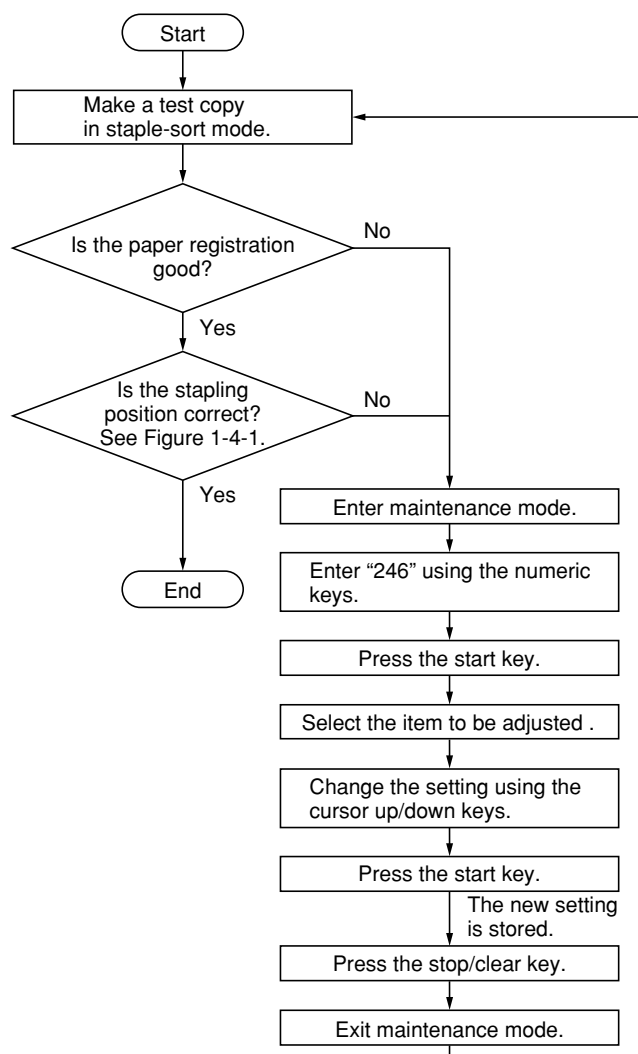


Figure 1-4-1 Stapling position

ADJUST FRONT JOGGER: Stop position of the front side registration cursor
 ADJUST REAR JOGGER: Stop position of the rear side registration cursor
 ADJUST END JOGGER: Stop position of the trailing edge registration cursor

Setting range: 0 to 8
 Reference: 4
 Changing the value by 1 changes the position by 0.5 mm.
 Increasing the value moves the front or rear side registration cursor or trailing edge registration cursor outward (➡); decreasing the value moves each cursor inward (⇐). See Figure 1-4-2.

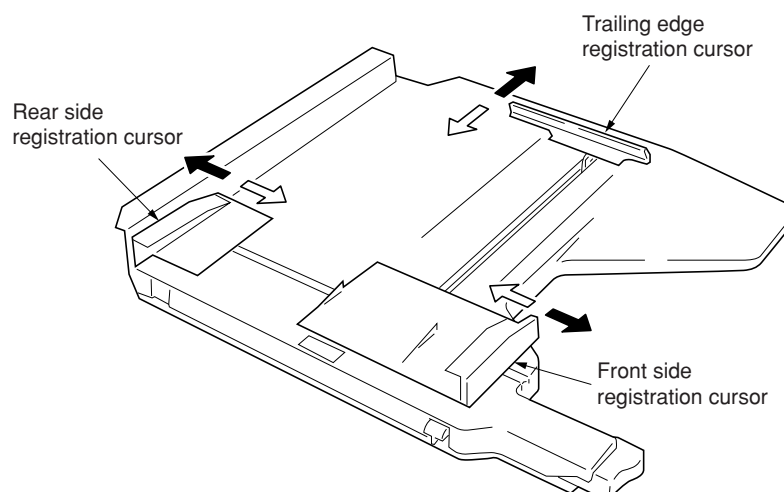


Figure 1-4-2

(3) Cleaning the stapler

During periodic maintenance, remove all the staples remaining inside the machine due to failure of stapling.

Procedure

1. Open the front and conveying covers of the copier.
2. Remove the staple cartridge.
3. Remove the four screws securing the stapler cover and then the cover.
4. Remove the staples attracted to the magnet on the inside of the stapler cover.
5. Refit all the removed parts.

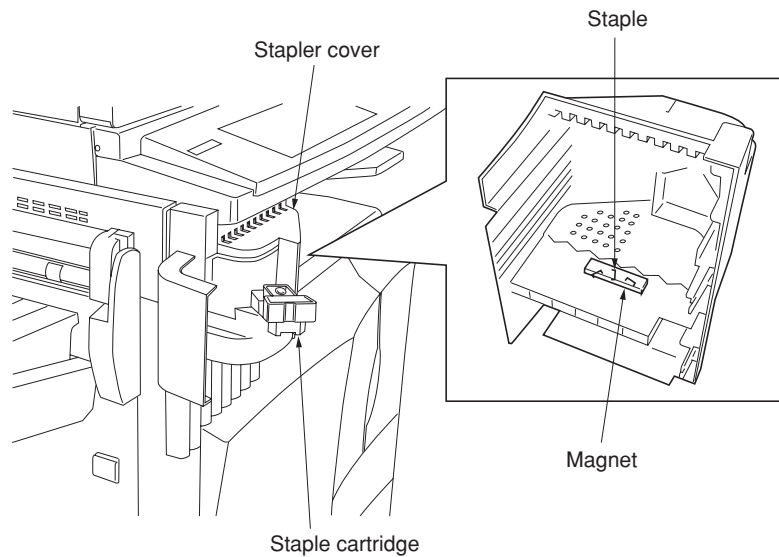


Figure 1-4-3

(4) Adjusting the pressure of curl eliminator mechanism

Increase the pressure of the curl eliminator mechanism to reduce upward curling of paper stacked on the intermediate tray if a paper jam occurs when batch ejection is performed because of strong upward curling.

Procedure

1. Remove the paper conveying unit from the copier.
2. Loosen the two screws from the front and rear curl eliminator pressure adjusting plates respectively and then remove the plates.
3. Refit the all removed parts.

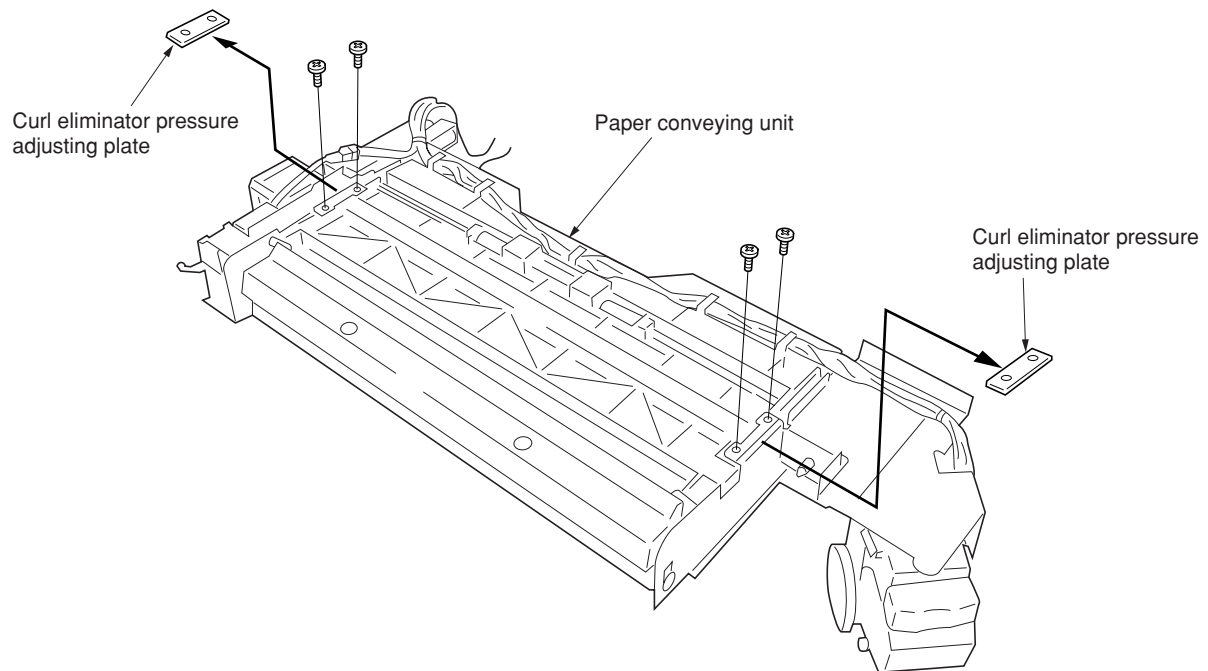


Figure 1-4-4

2-1-1 Construction of each section

The paper conveying section consists of the components shown in Figure 2-1-1. It switches the path for the paper conveyed from the copier in sort mode. Also the paper conveying section contains a curl eliminator mechanism, which reduces curling of paper with curl eliminator rollers.

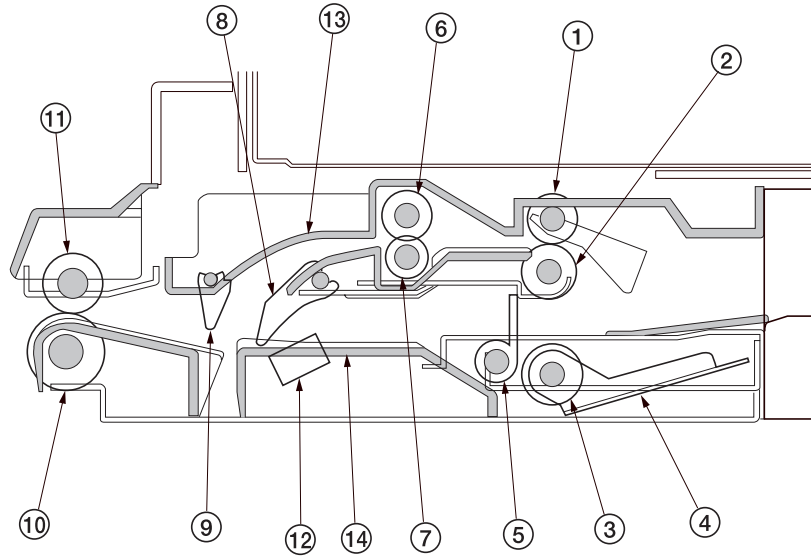


Figure 2-1-1 Paper conveying section

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| ① Feedshift pulley | ⑧ Feedshift claw |
| ② Feedshift roller | ⑨ Small feedshift claw |
| ③ Press roller | ⑩ Eject roller |
| ④ Press roller lift | ⑪ Eject pulley |
| ⑤ Stopper | ⑫ Paper conveying switch (PCSW) |
| ⑥ Upper curl eliminator roller | ⑬ Upper guide plate |
| ⑦ Lower curl eliminator roller | ⑭ Lower guide plate |

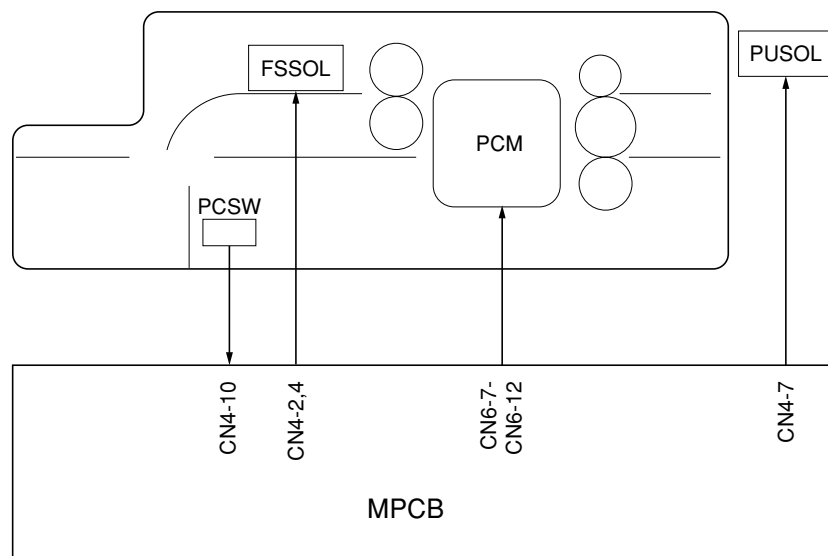


Figure 2-1-2 Paper conveying section block diagram

(1) Paper conveying operation in sort mode

When a copy is made in the sort mode, the feedshift solenoid (FSSOL) turns on and the feedshift guide of the copier operates to switch the paper path to the paper conveying unit. After curling of the conveyed paper is eliminated by the curl eliminator rollers, the paper is conveyed to the intermediate tray by the feedshift roller. When the trailing edge registration cursor of the intermediate tray shifts the paper stocked in the intermediate tray to the stopper, the pickup solenoid (PUSOL) turns on to lift the press roller and release the stopper. The stack of paper on the intermediate tray is ejected to the eject tray by the feedshift roller and eject roller.

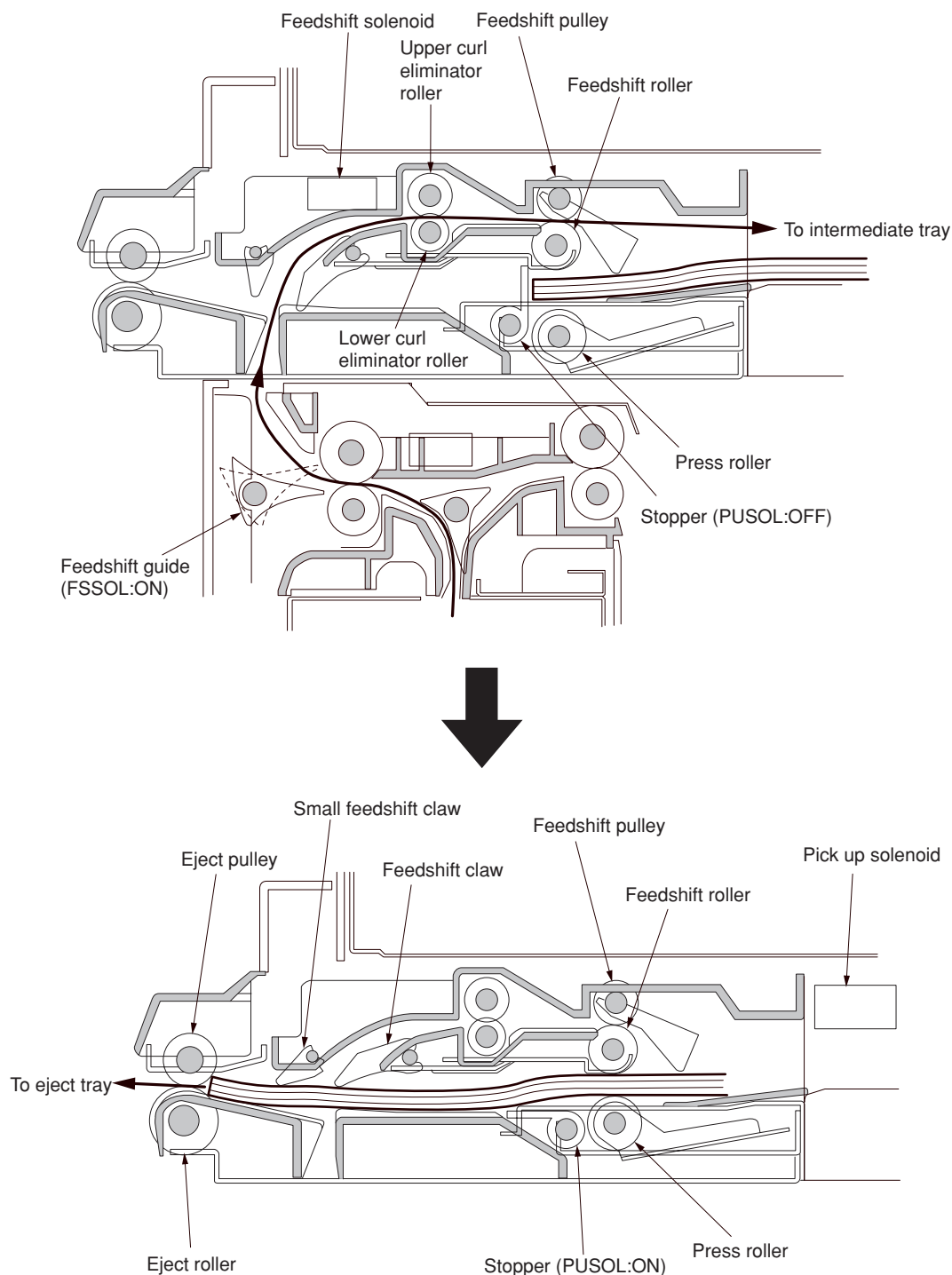


Figure 2-1-3

2-1-2 Intermediate tray section

The intermediate tray section consists of the components shown in Figure 2-1-4. It stores and evens up the paper conveyed from the paper conveying section and returns the stack of paper to the paper conveying section.

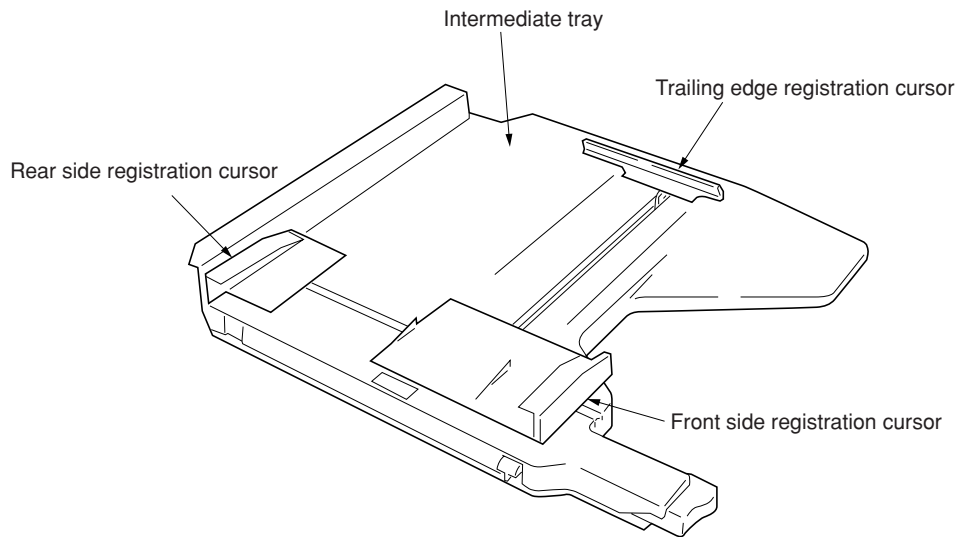


Figure 2-1-4 Intermediate tray section

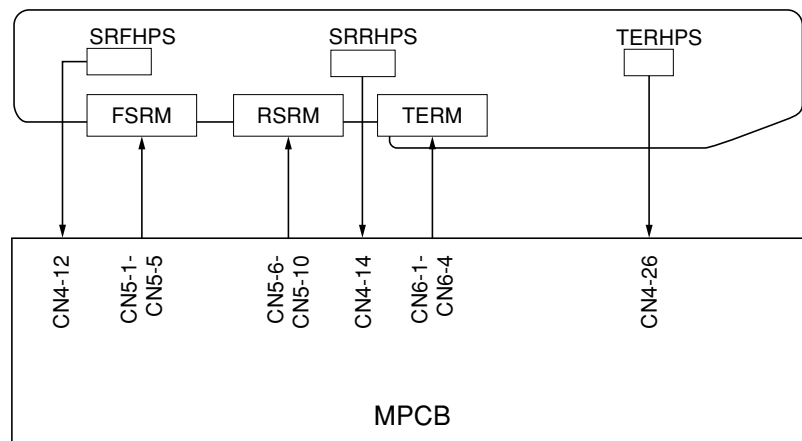


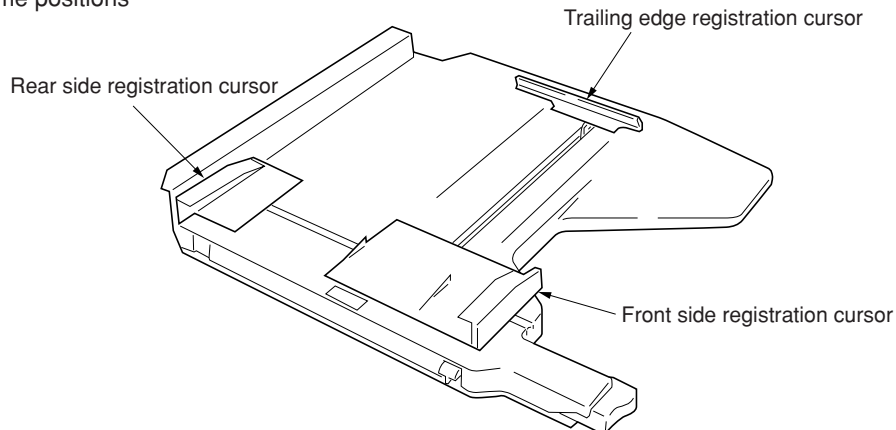
Figure 2-1-5 Intermediate tray section block diagram

(1) Paper registration on the intermediate tray

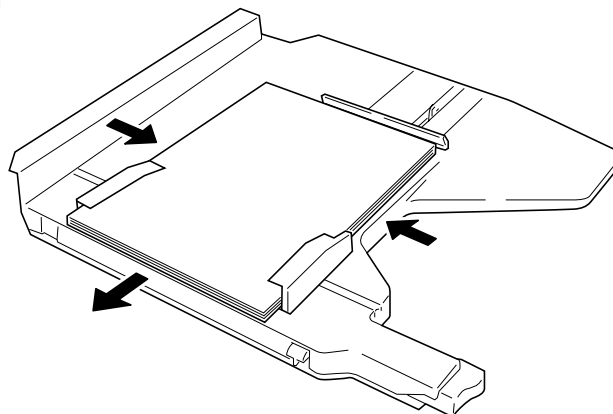
In sort mode, the front and rear side registration cursors move to the size of the paper used to even up the sides of the stack of paper and the trailing edge registration cursor shifts the paper to the paper conveying section.

In staple-sort mode, the front and rear side registration cursors even up the sides of the stack of paper and shift the stack toward the machine front, and then the trailing edge registration cursor shifts the stack to the stapling position.

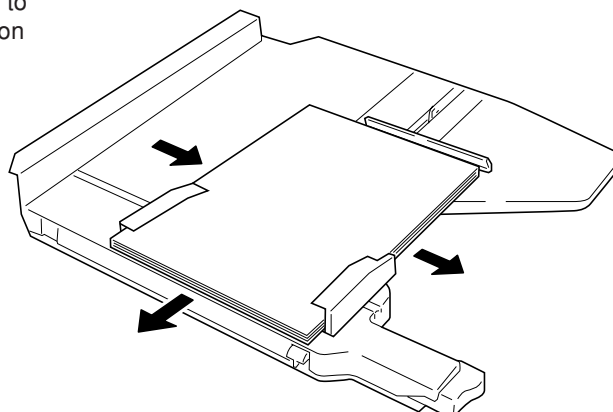
Home positions



Paper registration



Shifting the paper to the stapling position

**Figure 2-1-6**

2-1-3 Stapler section

In staple-sort mode, paper stocked on the intermediate tray is stapled by the stapler. The stapler motor (STM) drives the stapler cam via the stapler drive gear to staple paper.

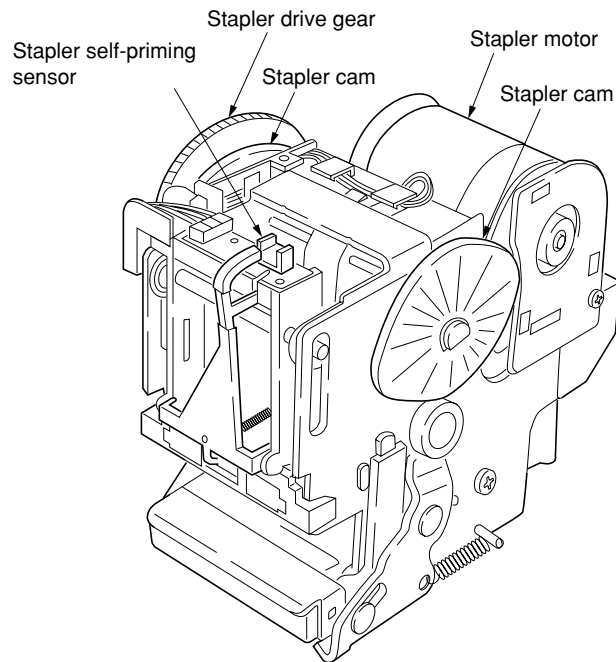


Figure 2-1-7 Stapler section

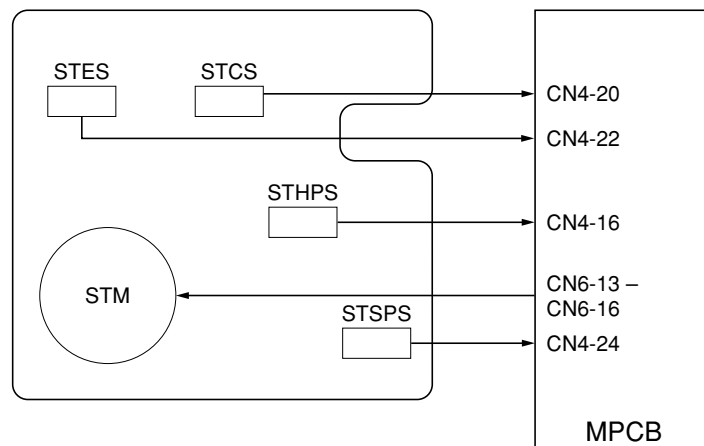


Figure 2-1-8 Stapler section block diagram

2-2-1 Electrical parts layout

(1) Paper conveying section

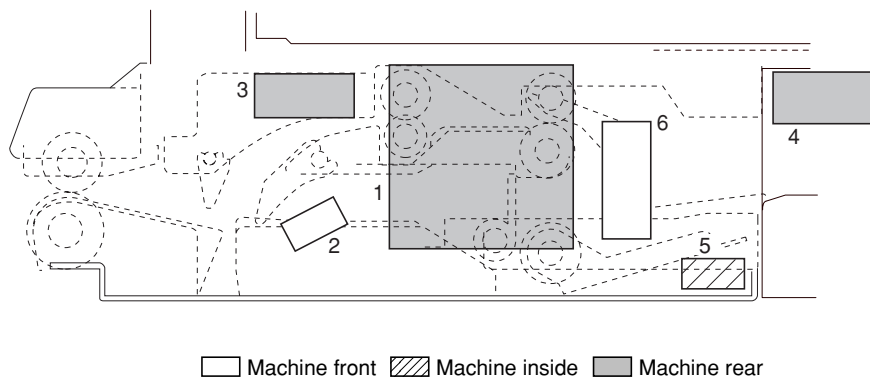
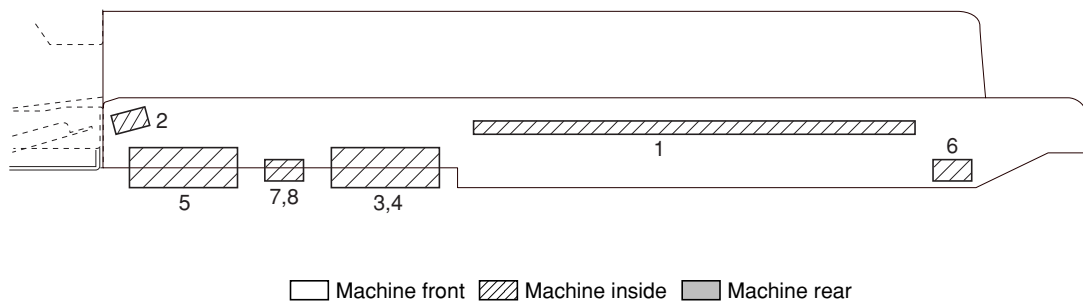
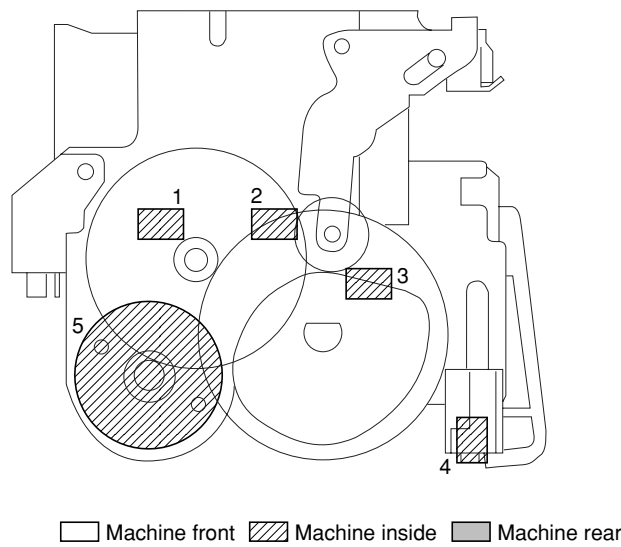


Figure 2-2-1 Paper conveying section

- | | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------|---|
| 1. Paper conveying motor (PCM) | | Drives the paper conveying section. |
| 2. Paper conveying switch (PCSW) | | Detects a paper jam in the finisher. |
| 3. Feedshift solenoid (FSSOL) | | Operates the feedshift guide of the copier. |
| 4. Pickup solenoid (PUSOL) | | Operates the press roller. |
| 5. Tray open/close switch (TOCSW) | | Detects if the intermediate tray is opened or closed. |
| 6. Cooling fan motor (CFM) | | Cools the stapler section. |

(2) Intermediate tray section**Figure 2-2-2 Intermediate tray section**

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Main PCB (MPCB) | Controls electrical components. |
| 2. Intermediate tray sensor (ITS) | Detects the presence of paper on the intermediate tray. |
| 3. Trailing edge registration motor (TERM) | Drives the trailing edge registration cursor. |
| 4. Front side registration motor (FSRM) | Drives the front side registration cursor. |
| 5. Rear side registration motor (RSRM) | Drives the rear side registration cursor. |
| 6. Trailing edge registration home position sensor (TERHPS) | Detects the trailing edge registration cursor in the home position. |
| 7. Side registration front home position sensor (SRFHPS) | Detects the front side registration cursor in the home position. |
| 8. Side registration rear home position sensor (SRRHPS) | Detects the rear side registration cursor in the home position. |

(3) Stapler section**Figure 2-2-3 Stapler section**

1. Stapler empty sensor (STES) Detects the presence of staples.
2. Staple cartridge sensor (STCS) Detects the presence of the staple cartridge.
3. Stapler home position sensor (STHPS) Detects the stapler in the home position.
4. Stapler self-priming sensor (STSPS) Detects the pre-stapling state of the stapler.
5. Stapler motor (STM) Drives the stapler.

2-3-1 Main PCB

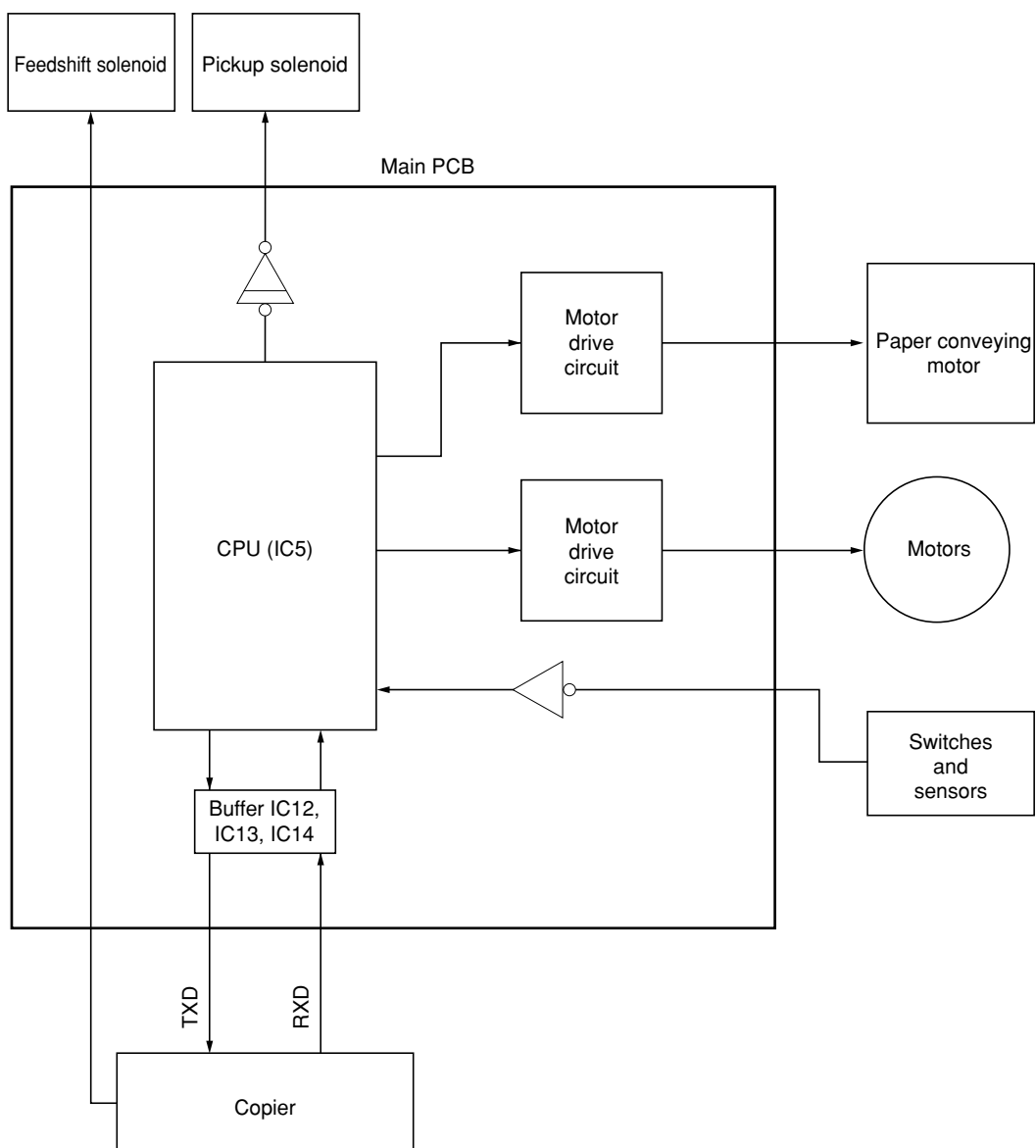


Figure 2-3-1 Main PCB block diagram

The main PCB (MPCB) consists mainly of the CPU IC5 and motor drive circuit. The CPU IC5 detects the condition of the switches and sensors and controls the motors and solenoids by serially communicating with the copier. The feedshift solenoid (FSSOL) operates with the control signals from the copier.

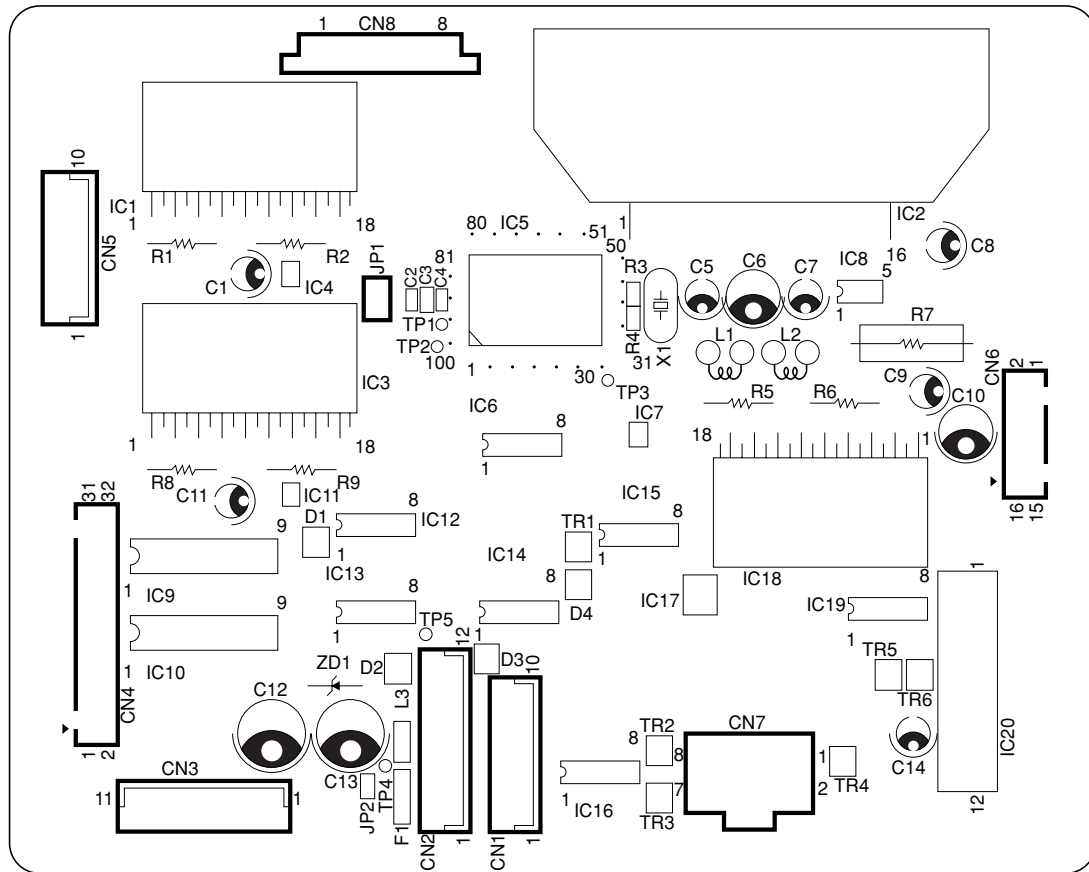


Figure 2-3-2 Main PCB silk-screen diagram

Terminals (CN)		Voltage	Remarks
2-1	2-3	0/5 V DC	RESET signal, input
2-2	2-3	0/5 V DC	Finisher SET signal, input
2-4	2-5	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Serial signal TXD, input
2-6	2-7	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Serial signal RXD, output
2-8	2-7	5 V DC	5 V DC supply, input
2-11	2-9	24 V DC	24 V DC supply, input
2-12	2-10	24 V DC	24 V DC supply, input
3-7	3-4	0/24 V DC	FSSOL release signal, input
3-8	3-4	0/24 V DC	FSSOL latch-on signal, input
3-9	3-4	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for FSSOL, input
4-1	4-29	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for FSSOL, output
4-2	4-29	0/24 V DC	FSSOL latch-on signal, output
4-3	4-29	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for CFM, output
4-4	4-29	0/24 V DC	FSSOL release signal, output
4-5	4-29	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for PUSOL, output
4-6	4-29	0/24 V DC	CFM on/off signal, output
4-7	4-29	0/24 V DC	PUSOL on/off, output
4-9	4-29	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for PCSW, output
4-10	4-29	0/5 V DC	PCSW on/off, input
4-11	4-23	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for SRFHPS, output
4-12	4-23	0/5 V DC	SRFHPS on/off, input
4-13	4-25	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for SRRHPS, output
4-14	4-25	0/5 V DC	SRRHPS on/off, input
4-15	4-27	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for stapler, output
4-16	4-27	0/5 V DC	STHPS on/off, input
4-17	4-21	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for ITS, output
4-18	4-21	0/5 V DC	ITS on/off, input
4-19	4-28	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for TERHPS, output
4-20	4-27	0/5 V DC	STCS on/off, input
4-22	4-27	0/5 V DC	STES on/off, input
4-24	4-27	0/5 V DC	STSPS on/off, input
4-26	4-28	0/5 V DC	TERHPS on/off, input
5-1	2-9	0/24 V DC (pulse)	FSRM motor coil energization pulse, output (A)
5-2	2-9	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for FSRM, output
5-3	2-9	0/24 V DC (pulse)	FSRM motor coil energization pulse, output (\bar{B})
5-4	2-9	0/24 V DC (pulse)	FSRM motor coil energization pulse, output (B)
5-5	2-9	0/24 V DC (pulse)	FSRM motor coil energization pulse, output (\bar{A})
5-6	2-9	0/24 V DC (pulse)	RSRM motor coil energization pulse, output (A)
5-7	2-9	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for RSRM, output
5-8	2-9	0/24 V DC (pulse)	RSRM motor coil energization pulse, output (\bar{B})
5-9	2-9	0/24 V DC (pulse)	RSRM motor coil energization pulse, output (B)
5-10	2-9	0/24 V DC (pulse)	RSRM motor coil energization pulse, output (\bar{A})
6-1	2-9	0/24 V DC (pulse)	TERM motor coil energization pulse, output (A)
6-2	2-9	0/24 V DC (pulse)	TERM motor coil energization pulse, output (\bar{B})
6-3	2-9	0/24 V DC (pulse)	TERM motor coil energization pulse, output (B)
6-4	2-9	0/24 V DC (pulse)	TERM motor coil energization pulse, output (\bar{A})
6-5	2-9	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for TERM, output
6-7	2-9	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for PCM, output
6-8	2-9	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for PCM, output
6-9	2-9	0/24 V DC (pulse)	PCM motor coil energization pulse, output (A)
6-10	2-9	0/24 V DC (pulse)	PCM motor coil energization pulse, output (\bar{A})
6-11	2-9	0/24 V DC (pulse)	PCM motor coil energization pulse, output (B)
6-12	2-9	0/24 V DC (pulse)	PCM motor coil energization pulse, output (\bar{B})
6-13	2-9	0/24 V DC	STM forward rotation drive signal (F), output
6-14	2-9	0/24 V DC	STM forward rotation drive signal (F), output
6-15	2-9	0/24 V DC	STM reverse rotation drive signal (R), output
6-16	2-9	0/24 V DC	STM reverse rotation drive signal (R), output

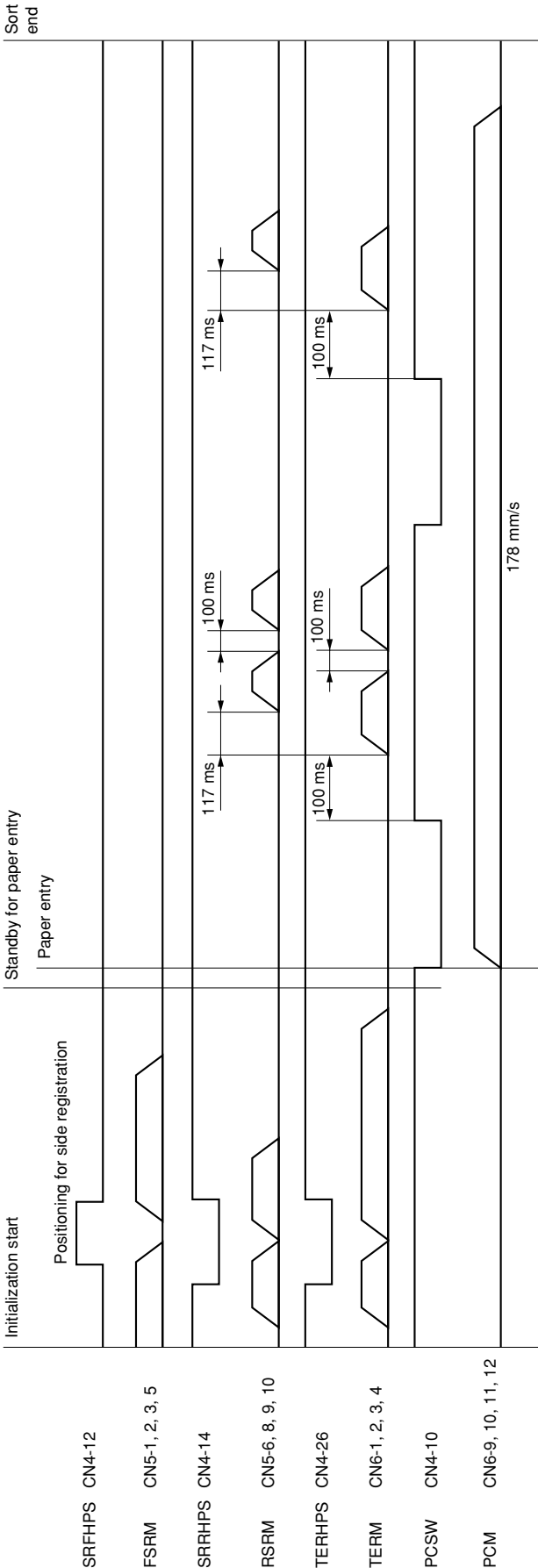
3B5

Terminals (CN)		Voltage	Remarks
7-3	2-9	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for LCSW, output
7-6	2-9	24/0 V DC	LCSW on/off, input

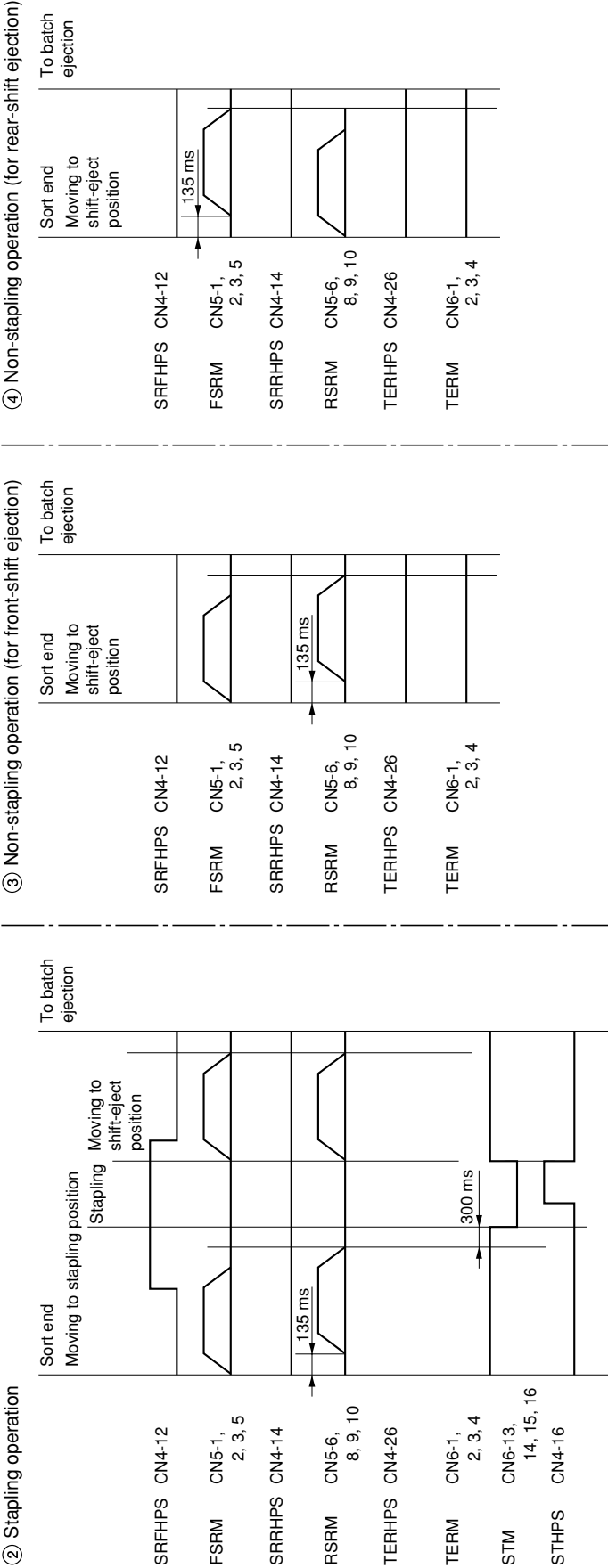
2-3-4

Timing chart No. 1

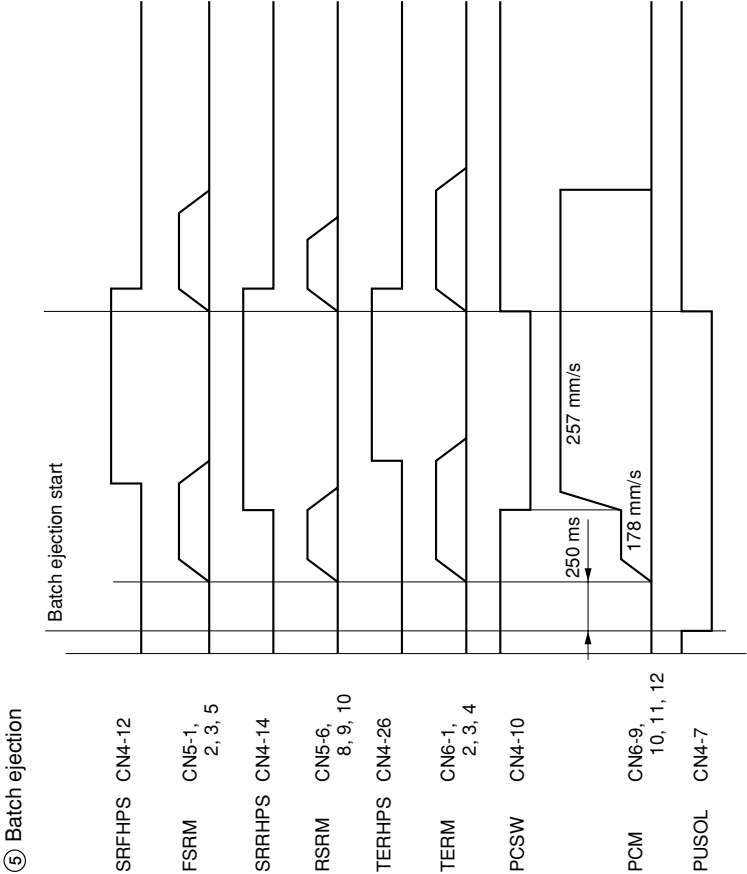
① Operation start



Timing chart No. 2



Timing chart No. 3



Periodic maintenance procedures

• Finisher

Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Stapler section	Magnet	Clean	Every service	Remove the staples attracted to the magnet inside the stapler cover.	1-4-3

J-1402

CONTENTS

1-1 Specifications	
1-1-1 Specifications	1-1-1
1-1-2 Part names	1-1-2
1-1-3 Machine cross section	1-1-3
1-1-4 Drive system	1-1-4
1-2 Installation	
1-2-1 Unpacking	1-2-1
1-3 Troubleshooting	
1-3-1 Paper misfeed detection	1-3-1
(1) Paper misfeed indication	1-3-1
(2) Paper misfeed detection condition	1-3-2
(3) Paper misfeeds	1-3-3
1-3-2 Electrical problems	1-3-4
(1) The feedshift solenoid does not operate.	1-3-4
1-3-3 Mechanical problems	1-3-5
(1) Paper jams.	1-3-5
(2) Abnormal noise is heard.	1-3-5
2-1 Mechanical construction	
2-1-1 Construction of each section	2-1-1
(1) Switching the paper path	2-1-2
2-2 Electrical Parts Layout	
2-2-1 Electrical parts layout	2-2-1
2-3 Appendixes	
Periodic maintenance procedures	2-3-1

1-1-1 Specifications

Type	Enclosed
Tray capacity	100 sheets of 45 – 160 g/m ² paper
Paper	Plain paper: 75 – 80 g/m ² Special paper: colored paper
Paper sizes	A3 – A5R, folio/11" × 17" – 5 ¹ / ₂ " × 8 ¹ / ₂ "
Power source	Electrically connected to the copier
Weight	Approximately 1.0 kg/2.21 lbs

1-1-2 Part names

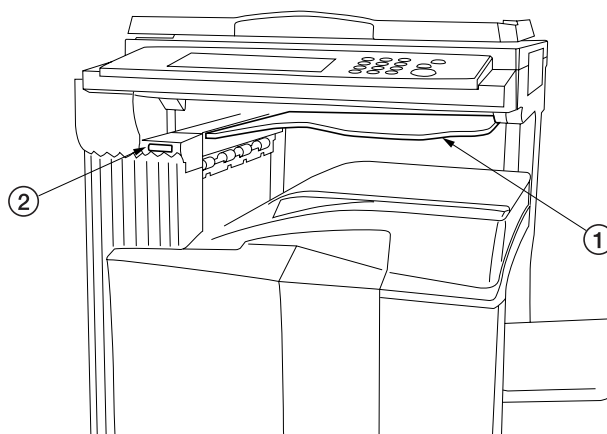
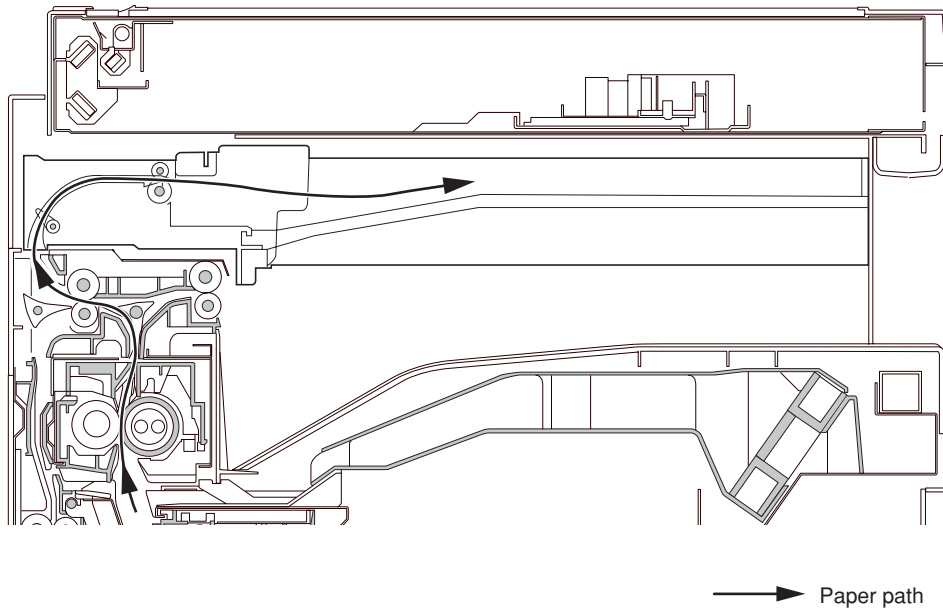


Figure 1-1-1

- ① Job separator tray
- ② LED

1-1-3 Machine cross section**Figure 1-1-2**

1-1-4 Drive system

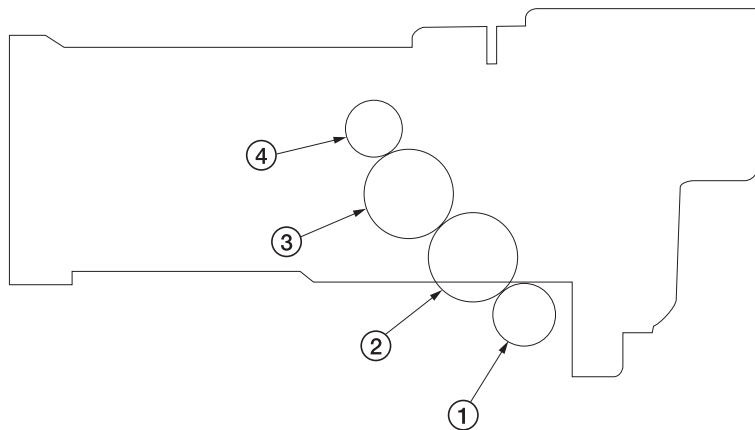


Figure 1-1-3

- ① Gear 20
- ② Gear 28
- ③ Gear 28
- ④ Eject roller gear

1-2-1 Unpacking

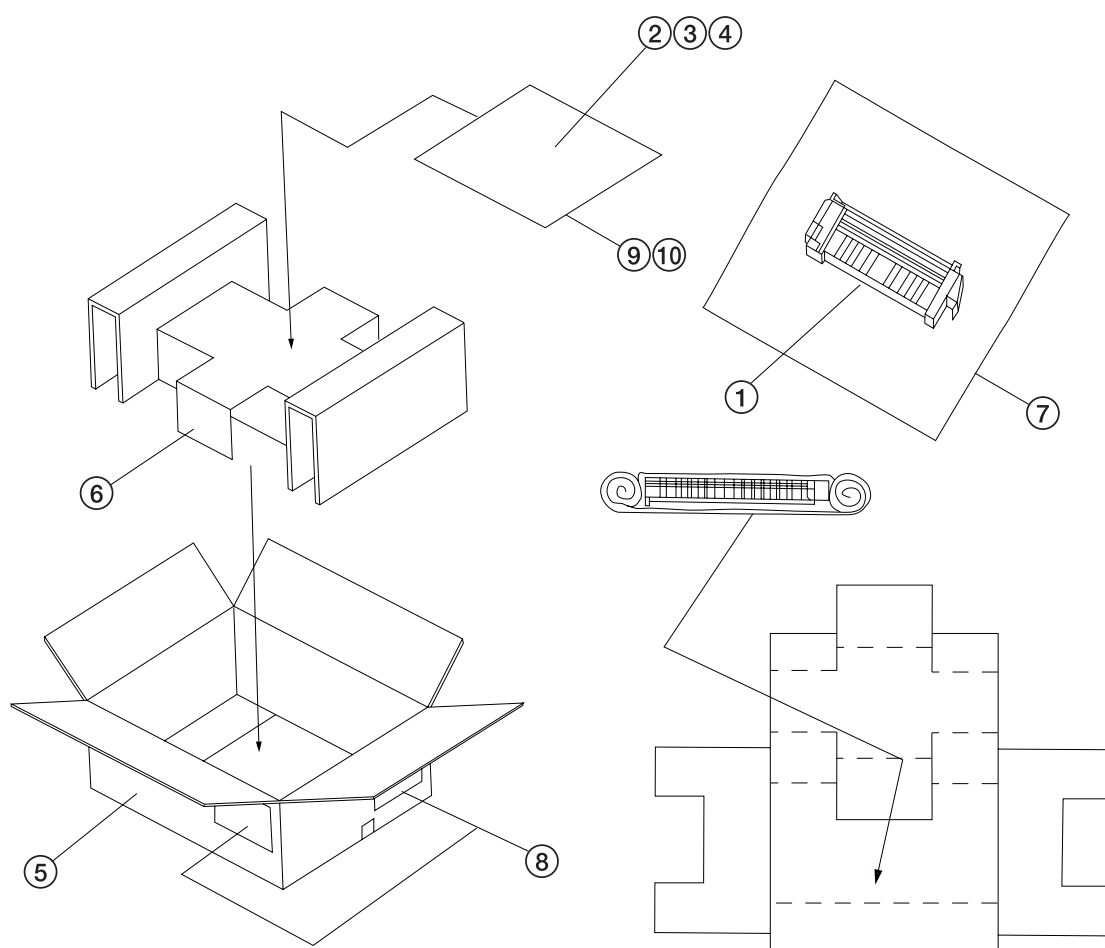


Figure 1-2-1 Unpacking

- ① Job separator
- ② Job separator tray
- ③ Pin
- ④ Cross-head bronze binding screws
BMV3 × 05
- ⑤ Outer case
- ⑥ Spacer
- ⑦ Air-padded bag
- ⑧ Bar-code labels
- ⑨ Plastic bag
- ⑩ Plastic bag

1-3-1 Paper misfeed detection

(1) Paper misfeed indication

When paper jams, the machine immediately stops operation and the occurrence of a paper jam is indicated on the copier operation panel.

To remove the jammed paper, open the copier conveying cover.

To reset the paper misfeed detection, open and close the copier conveying cover to turn safety switch 2 off and on.

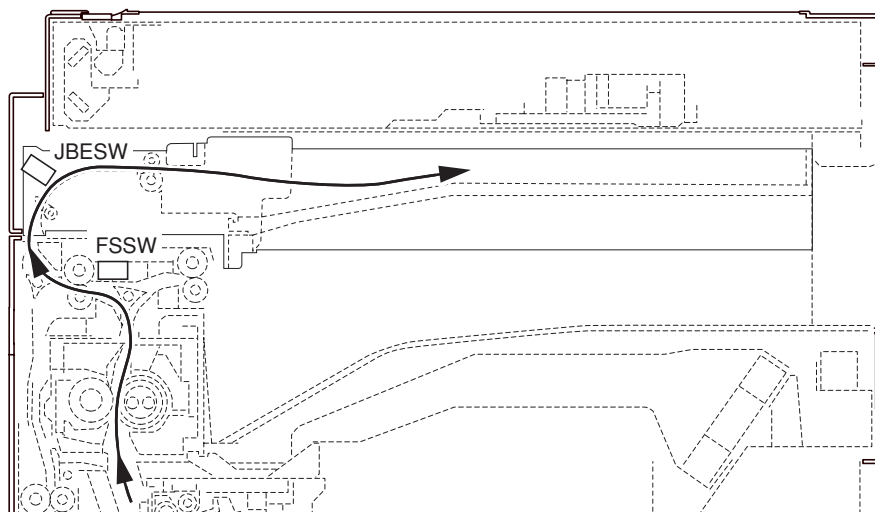
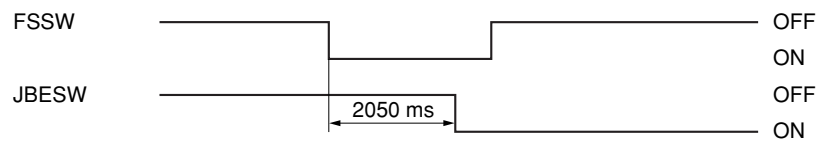


Figure 1-3-1 Paper misfeed detection

(2) Paper misfeed detection condition

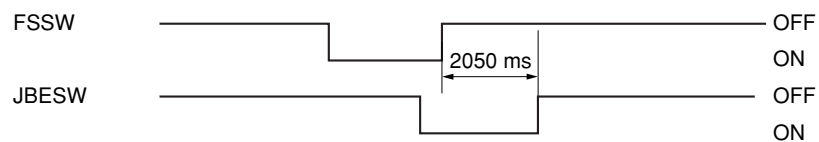
- Misfeed in job separator eject section (jam code 51)

The job separator eject switch (JBESW) does not turn on within 2050 ms of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning on.



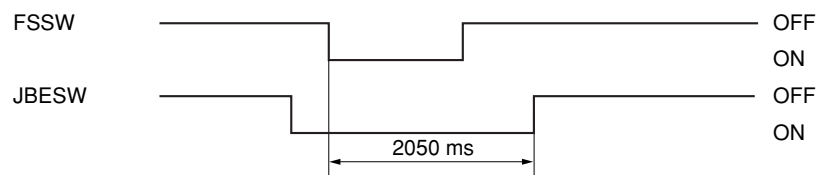
Timing chart 1-5-1

The job separator eject switch (JBESW) does not turn off within 2050 ms of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning off.



Timing chart 1-5-2

The job separator eject switch (JBESW) does not turn off within 2050 ms of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning on.



Timing chart 1-5-3

(3) Paper misfeeds

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(1) Paper jams when the main switch is turned on.	A piece of paper torn from copy paper is caught around the job separator eject switch.	Remove any found.
	Defective job separator eject switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the job separator eject switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
(2) Paper jams in the job separator during copying (jam in job separator eject section).	Defective job separator eject switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the job separator eject switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if the job eject pulley or job eject roller is deformed.	Check visually and replace the pulley if deformed.

1-3-2 Electrical problems

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(1) The feedshift solenoid does not operate.	Broken feedshift solenoid coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the feedshift solenoid.
	Poor contact of the feedshift solenoid connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	Defective main PCB.	Run maintenance item U033 and check if CN35-11 and CN35-12 on the copier main PCB go low. If not, replace the main PCB.

1-3-3 Mechanical problems

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(1) Paper jams.	Check if the contact between the job eject pulley and job eject roller is correct.	Check and remedy.
(2) Abnormal noise is heard.	Check if the job eject pulley, job eject roller and gears operate smoothly.	Grease the bushings and gears.

2-1-1 Construction of each section

The job separator consists of the components shown in Figure 2-1-1. It switches the paper path to eject copied paper to the job separator tray.

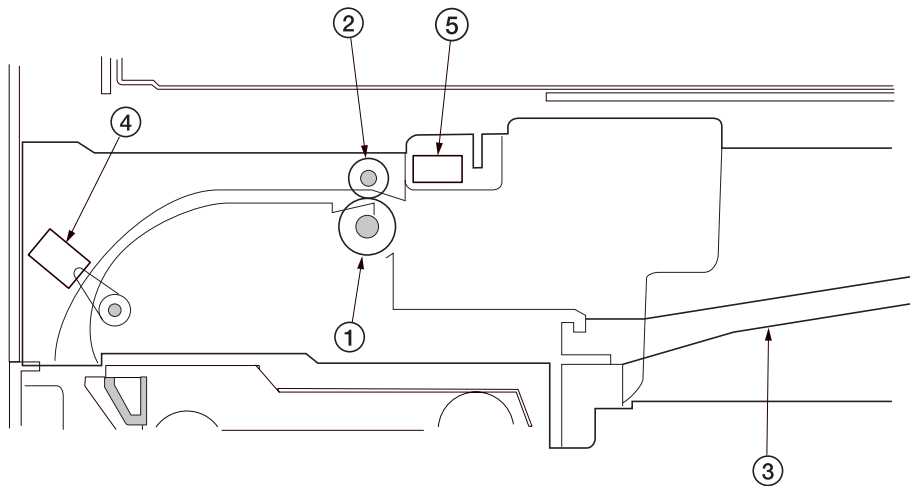


Figure 2-1-1 Job separator

- ① Job eject roller
- ② Job eject pulley
- ③ Job separator tray
- ④ Job separator eject switch (JBESW)
- ⑤ Ejected paper detection switch (EPDSW)

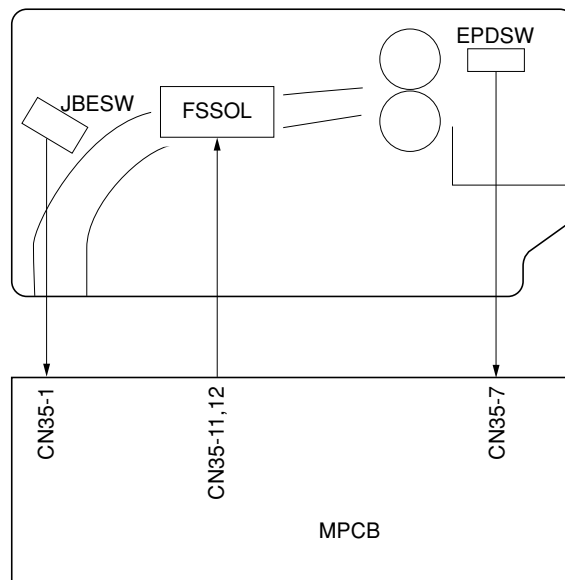
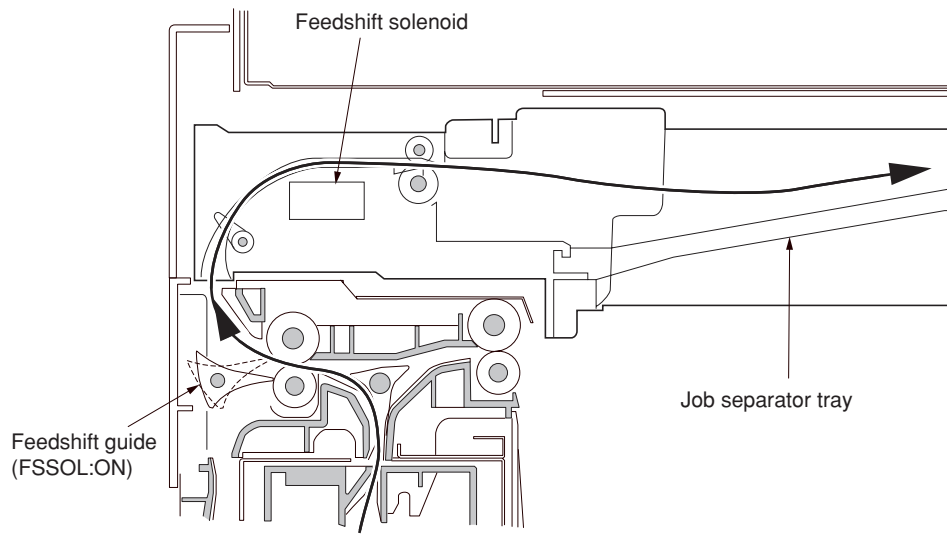


Figure 2-1-2 Job separator block diagram

(1) Switching the paper path

If the job separator is selected for the copy eject location, when a copy is made, the feedshift solenoid (FSSOL) turns on and the feedshift guide of the copier operates to switch the paper path to the job separator. The copied paper is conveyed to the job separator and then ejected to the job separator tray.

**Figure 2-1-3**

2-2-1 Electrical parts layout

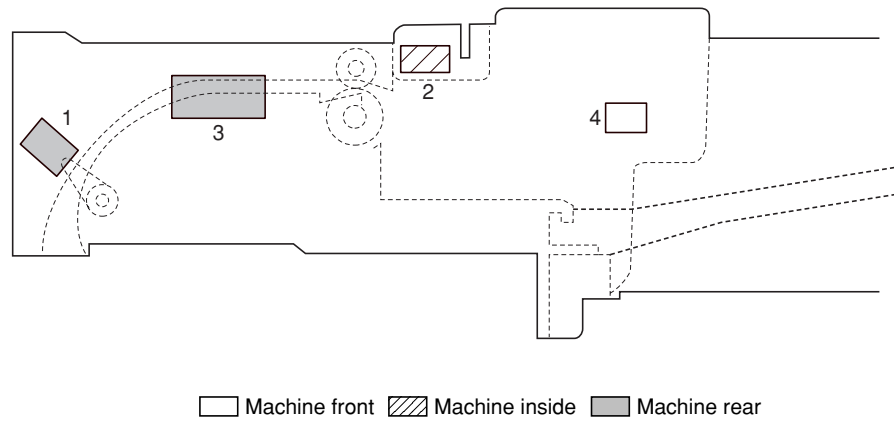


Figure 2-2-1

1. Job separator eject switch (JBESW) Detects a paper jam in the job separator.
2. Ejected paper detection switch (EPDSW) ... Detects the presence of paper on the job separator tray.
3. Feedshift solenoid (FSSOL) Operates the feedshift guide of the copier.
4. LED Indicates the presence of paper on the job separator tray.

Periodic maintenance procedures

Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Paper conveying section	Job eject roller	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	

PF-70

CONTENTS

1-1 Specifications

1-1-1 Specifications	1-1-1
1-1-2 Parts names	1-1-2
1-1-3 Machine cross section	1-1-3
1-1-4 Drive system	1-1-4

1-2 Installation

1-2-1 Unpacking	1-2-1
1-2-2 Installing the desk dehumidifier (service part)	1-2-2

1-3 Troubleshooting

1-3-1 Paper misfeed detection	1-3-1
(1) Paper misfeed indication	1-3-1
(2) Paper misfeed detection conditions	1-3-1
(3) Paper misfeeds	1-3-3
1-3-2 Self-diagnosis	1-3-5
(1) Self-diagnostic function	1-3-5
(2) Self-diagnostic codes	1-3-5
1-3-3 Electrical problems	1-3-7
(1) The paper feed desk does not operate when the copier print key is pressed.	1-3-7
(2) The desk drive motor does not operate.	1-3-7
(3) The desk upper paper feed clutch does not operate.	1-3-7
(4) The desk lower paper feed clutch does not operate.	1-3-7
(5) The desk feed clutch does not operate.	1-3-7
(6) The desk upper lift motor does not operate.	1-3-8
(7) The desk lower lift motor does not operate.	1-3-8
(8) The bypass paper feed clutch does not operate.	1-3-8
(9) The size of paper in the lower drawer is not displayed correctly.	1-3-8
(10) The message requesting covers to be closed is displayed when the desk left cover is closed.	1-3-9
(11) Others.	1-3-9
1-3-4 Mechanical problems	1-3-10
(1) No paper feed.	1-3-10
(2) Skewed paper feed.	1-3-10
(3) Multiple sheets of paper are fed at one time.	1-3-10
(4) Paper jams.	1-3-10
(5) Abnormal noise is heard.	1-3-10

1-4 Assembly and Disassembly

1-4-1 Precautions for assembly and disassembly	1-4-1
(1) Precautions	1-4-1
1-4-2 Paper feed section	1-4-2
(1) Detaching and refitting the forwarding, paper feed and separation pulleys	1-4-2
(2) Replacing the desk upper or lower paper width switches	1-4-4
(3) Replacing the desk feed, upper and lower paper feed clutches	1-4-5
(4) Adjusting the position of the rack adjuster	1-4-7
(5) Adjusting the amount of slack.	1-4-8

2-1 Mechanical construction

2-1-1 Mechanical construction	2-1-1
-------------------------------------	-------

2-2 Electrical Parts Layout

2-2-1 Electrical parts layout	2-2-1
-------------------------------------	-------

2-3 Operation of the PCBs

2-3-1 Desk main PCB	2-3-1
---------------------------	-------

2-4 Appendixes

Timing chart No. 1	2-4-1
Timing chart No. 2	2-4-2
Wiring diagram	2-4-3

1-1-1 Specifications

Paper	Plain paper (75 – 80 g/m ²)
Paper size	A3 – A5R, folio, 11" × 17" – 5 ¹ / ₂ " × 8 ¹ / ₂ "
Capacity	550 x 2 sheets
Power source	Electrically connected to the copier.
Dimensions	585 (W) × 590 (D) × 315 (H) mm 23 ¹ / ₁₆ " (W) × 23 ¹ / ₄ " (D) × 12 ³ / ₈ " (H)
Weight	25 kg/55 lbs

1-1-2 Parts names

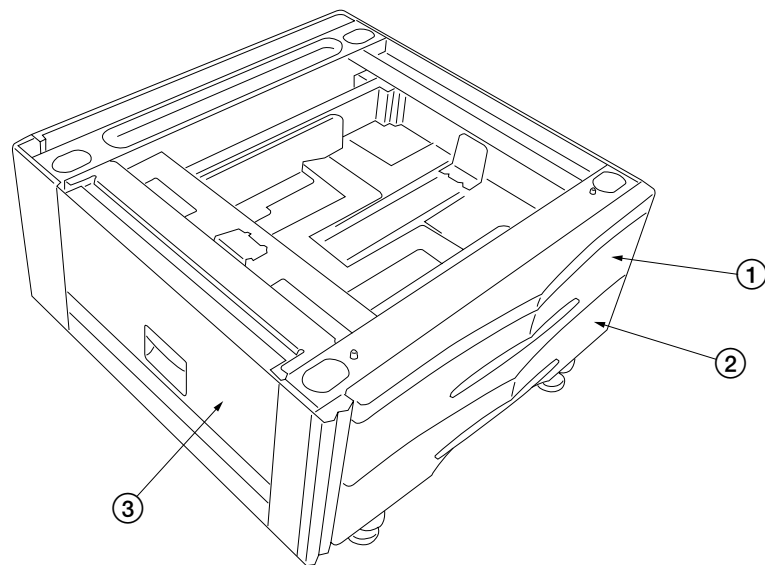
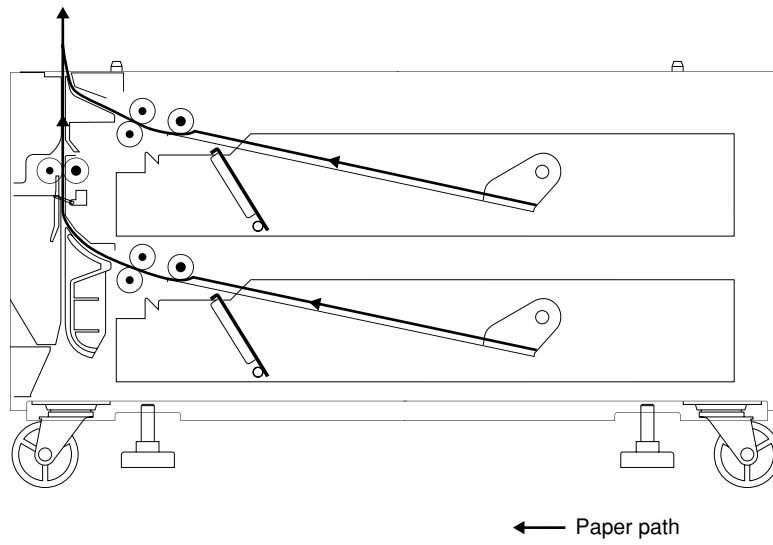


Figure 1-1-1

- ① Upper drawer
- ② Lower drawer
- ③ Desk left cover

1-1-3 Machine cross section**Figure 1-1-2 Machine cross section**

1-1-4 Drive system

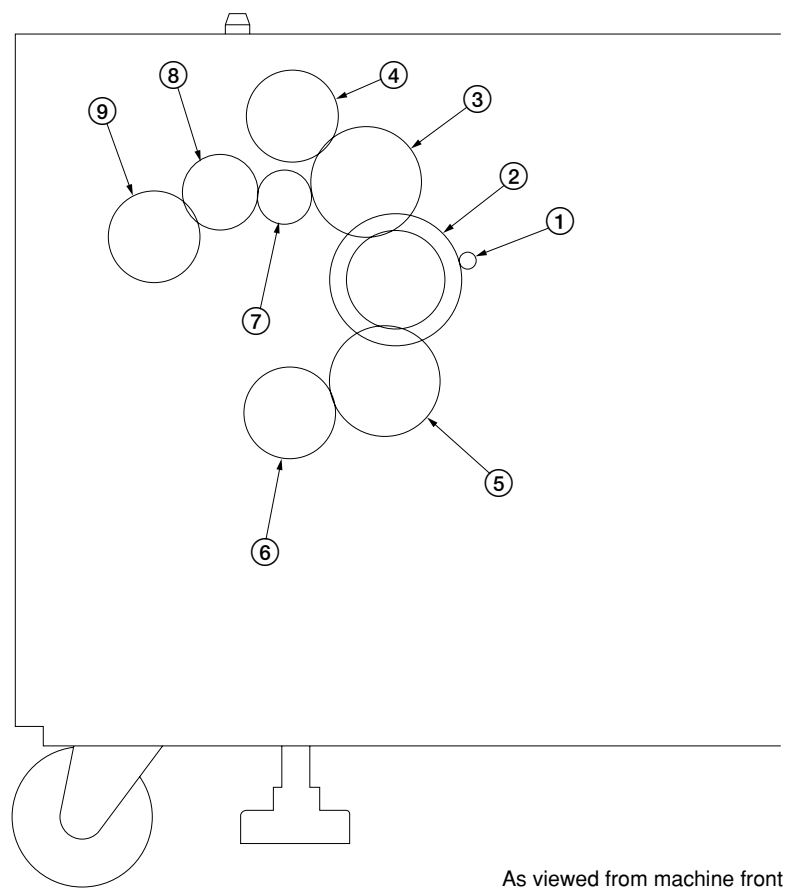


Figure 1-1-3 Drive system

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| ① Desk drive motor gear | ⑥ Desk lower paper feed clutch gear |
| ② Idle gear 67/34 | ⑦ Gear 20 |
| ③ Gear 41 | ⑧ Gear 26 |
| ④ Desk upper paper feed clutch gear | ⑨ Desk feed clutch gear |
| ⑤ Gear 41 | |

1-2-1 Unpacking

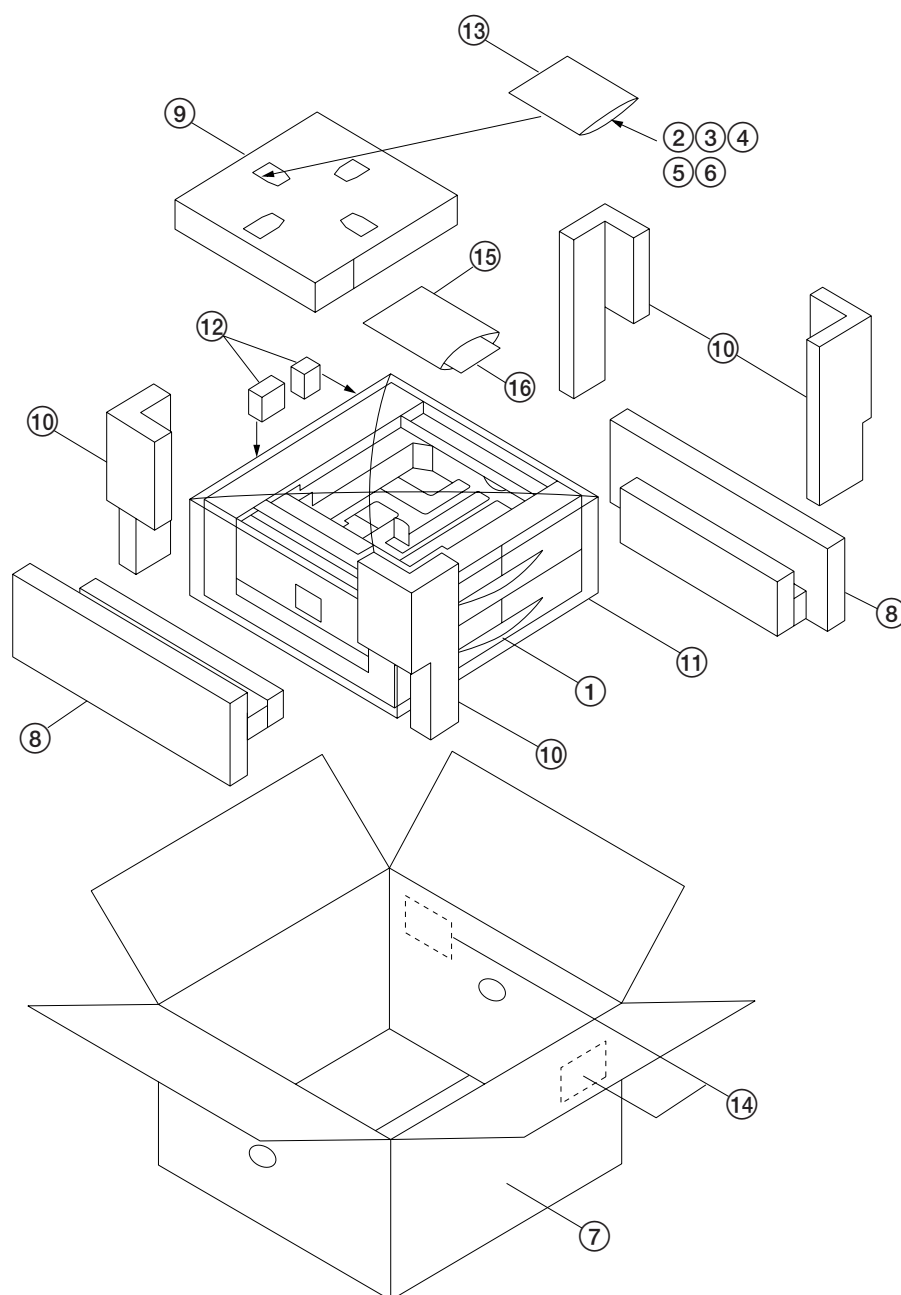


Figure 1-2-1

- | | |
|--|----------------------|
| ① Paper feed desk | ⑨ Upper pad |
| ② Retainer | ⑩ Stays |
| ③ Cross-head chromate binding screws,
CVM4 × 06 | ⑪ Machine cover |
| ④ Pins | ⑫ Rear spacer |
| ⑤ Stays | ⑬ Plastic bag |
| ⑥ Chrome TP screws, M4 × 10 | ⑭ Bar code label |
| ⑦ Outer case | ⑮ Plastic bag |
| ⑧ Bottom pads | ⑯ Installation guide |

1-2-2 Installing the desk dehumidifier (service part)

Desk dehumidifier installation requires the following parts:
Desk dehumidifier (P/N 33960020): for 220 – 240 V specifications only
Desk dehumidifier (P/N 34860030): for 120 V specifications only
Two (2) M4 × 8 S tight screws (P/N B3324080)

Procedure

1. Remove the upper and lower drawers.
2. Remove the three screws holding the desk rear cover and then the cover.
3. Pass the desk dehumidifier cable to the machine rear through the cable hole in the machine right.
4. Attach the desk dehumidifier using the two M4 × 8 S tight screws.

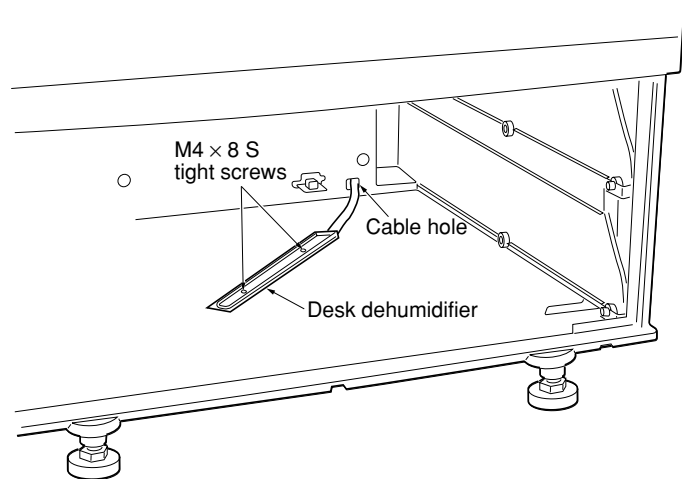


Figure 1-2-2

5. Insert the desk dehumidifier connector into the connector of the main harness.
6. Tidy up the desk dehumidifier cable using the wire saddle and route the cable while clipping the wire saddles into the holes in the rear frame.
7. Refit all removed parts.

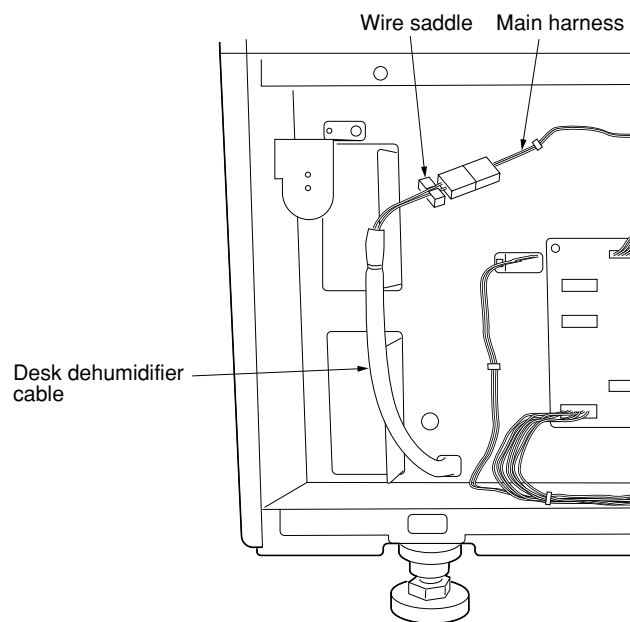


Figure 1-2-3

1-3-1 Paper misfeed detection

(1) Paper misfeed indication

When a paper jam occurs, the machine immediately stops operation. The operation unit of the copier shows a jam message and the jam location.

To reset the paper misfeed detection, open and close the desk left cover to turn the desk safety switch off and on.

(2) Paper misfeed detection conditions

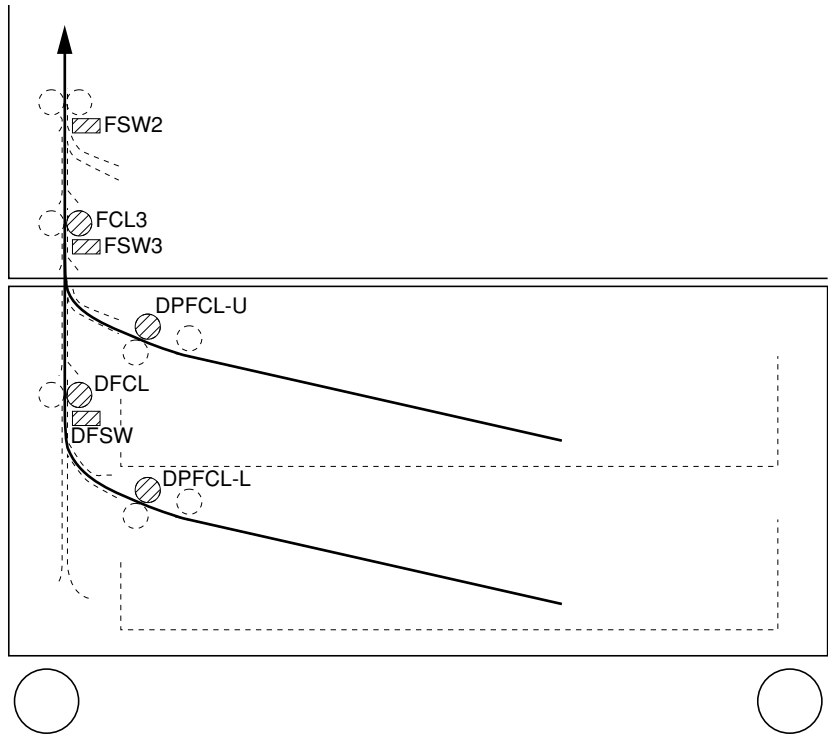
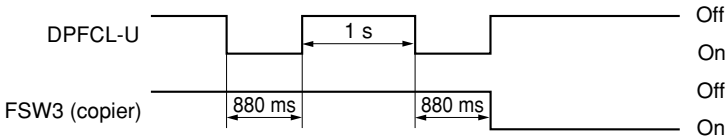


Figure 1-3-1 Paper feed desk

- No paper feed from desk upper drawer (jam code 12)

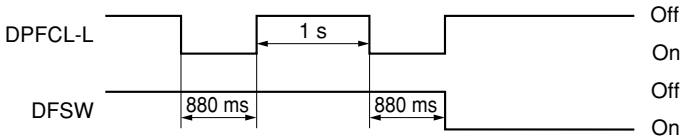
Feed switch 3 (FSW3) of the copier does not turn on within 880 ms of the desk upper paper feed clutch (DPFCL-U) turning on; the clutch is then held off for 1 s and turned back on, but the switch again fails to turn on within 880 ms of the retry.



Timing chart 1-3-1

- No paper feed from desk lower drawer (jam code 13)

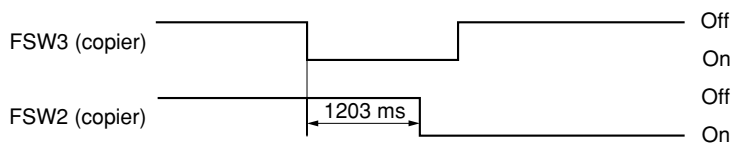
The desk feed switch (DFSW) does not turn on within 880 ms of the desk lower paper feed clutch (DPFCL-L) turning on; the clutch is then held off for 1 s and turned back on, but the switch again fails to turn on within 880 ms of the retry.



Timing chart 1-3-2

- Jam in copier vertical paper conveying section (jam code 18)

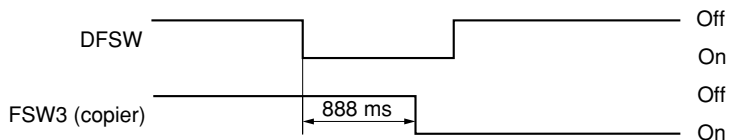
Feed switch 2 (FSW2) of the copier does not turn on within 1203 ms of feed switch 3 (FSW3) of the copier turning on.



Timing chart 1-3-3

- Jam in paper feed desk vertical paper conveying section (jam code 19)

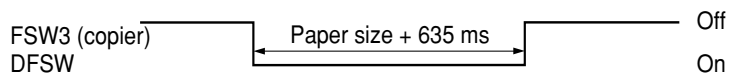
Feed switch 3 (FSW3) of the copier does not turn on within 888 ms of the desk feed switch (DFSW) turning on.



Timing chart 1-3-4

- Multiple sheets in paper feed section (jam code 21)

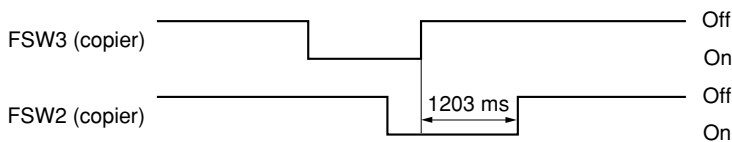
Feed switch 3 (FSW3) of the copier and the desk feed switch (DFSW) do not turn off within the time required to convey the length of the used paper size plus 635 ms of turning on.



Timing chart 1-3-5

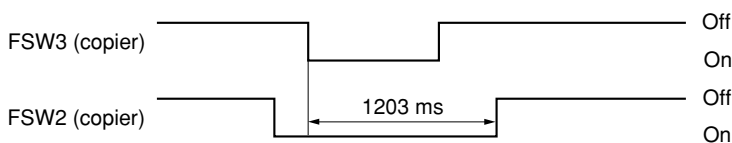
- Multiple sheets in vertical paper conveying section (jam code 22)

Feed switch 2 (FSW2) of the copier does not turn off within 1203 ms of feed switch 3 (FSW3) of the copier turning off.



Timing chart 1-3-6

Feed switch 2 (FSW2) of the copier does not turn off within 1203 ms of feed switch 3 (FSW3) of the copier turning on.



Timing chart 1-3-7

(3) Paper misfeeds

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(1) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (no paper feed from desk upper drawer). Jam code 12	Paper in the desk upper drawer is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the paper feed pulley, separation pulley or forwarding pulley of the desk upper drawer is deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulleys.
	Broken copier feed switch 3 actuator.	Check visually and replace feed switch 3 if the actuator is broken.
	Defective copier feed switch 3.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 3 on and off manually. Replace feed switch 3 if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if the desk upper paper feed clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select the desk upper paper feed clutch on the operation panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the desk upper paper feed clutch.	Check (see page 1-3-7).
(2) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (no paper feed from desk lower drawer). Jam code 13	Paper in the desk lower drawer is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the paper feed pulley, separation pulley or forwarding pulley of the desk lower drawer is deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulleys.
	Broken desk feed switch actuator.	Check visually and replace the desk feed switch if the actuator is broken.
	Defective desk feed switch.	With 5 V DC present at CN2-8 on the desk main PCB, check if CN2-7 on the desk main PCB goes low when the desk feed switch is turned on. If not, replace the desk feed switch.
	Check if the desk lower paper feed clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select the desk lower paper feed clutch on the operation panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the desk lower paper feed clutch.	Check (see page 1-3-7).
(3) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (jam in copier vertical paper conveying section). Jam code 18	Broken copier feed switch 2 actuator.	Check visually and replace feed switch 2 if the actuator is broken.
	Defective copier feed switch 2.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 2 on and off manually. Replace feed switch 2 if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(4) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (jam in paper desk vertical paper conveying section). Jam code 19	Broken copier feed switch 3 actuator.	Check visually and replace feed switch 3 if the actuator is broken.
	Defective copier feed switch 3.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 3 on and off manually. Replace feed switch 3 if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if the desk lower paper feed clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select the desk lower paper feed clutch on the operation panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the desk lower paper feed clutch.	Check (see page 1-3-7).
	Check if the desk feed clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select the desk feed clutch on the operation panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the desk feed clutch.	Check (see page 1-3-7).
	Check if the desk feed rollers or pulleys are soiled with paper powder.	Check and clean with isopropyl alcohol if soiled.
(5) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (multiple sheets in paper feed section). Jam code 21	Check if the desk feed rollers or pulleys are soiled with paper powder.	Check and clean with isopropyl alcohol if soiled.
(6) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (multiple sheets in copier vertical conveying section). Jam code 22	Check if the copier feed rollers or pulleys are soiled with paper powder.	Check and clean with isopropyl alcohol if soiled.

1-3-2 Self-diagnosis

(1) Self-diagnostic function

When a problem is detected in the paper feed desk, copying is disabled and the problem displayed on the operation unit of the copier as a code consisting of "C" followed by a number between 0420 and 2600, indicating the nature of the problem. After removing the problem, the self-diagnostic function can be reset by turning the desk safety switch off and back on.

(2) Self diagnostic codes

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C0420	Communication problem An error code from the paper feed desk is detected eight times in succession. No communication: there is no reply after 3 retries. Abnormal communication: a communication error (parity or checksum error) is detected five times in succession.	Poor contact of the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connectors CN3 on the copier main PCB and CN5 on the desk main PCB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Remedy or replace if necessary.
		Defective copier main PCB.	Replace the copier main PCB and check for correct operation.
		Defective desk main PCB.	Replace the desk main PCB and check for correct operation.
C1030	Desk upper lift motor problem When the upper drawer of the paper feed desk is inserted, the desk upper lift limit switch does not turn on within 6 s of the desk upper lift motor turning on and the desk upper lift limit switch does not turn on by turning off the desk upper lift motor for 200 ms and retrying twice. During copying, the desk upper lift limit switch does not turn on within 200 ms of the desk upper lift motor turning on.	Broken gears or couplings of the desk upper lift motor.	Replace the desk upper lift motor.
		Defective desk upper lift motor.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the desk upper lift motor.
		Poor contact of the desk upper lift motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.
		Defective desk upper lift limit switch.	Check if CN1-5 on the desk main PCB goes low when the desk upper lift limit switch is turned off. If not, replace the desk upper lift limit switch.
		Poor contact of the desk upper lift limit switch connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C1040	Desk lower lift motor problem When the lower drawer of the paper feed desk is inserted, the desk lower lift limit switch does not turn on within 6 s of the desk lower lift motor turning on and the desk lower lift limit switch does not turn on by turning off the desk lower lift motor for 200 ms and retrying twice. During copying, the desk lower lift limit switch does not turn on within 200 ms of the desk lower lift motor turning on.	Broken gears of couplings of the desk lower lift motor.	Replace the desk lower lift motor.
		Defective desk lower lift motor.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the desk lower lift motor.
		Poor contact of the desk lower lift motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.
		Defective desk lower lift limit switch.	Check if CN1-7 on the desk main PCB goes low when the desk lower lift limit switch is turned off. If not, replace the desk lower lift limit switch.
		Poor contact of the desk lower lift limit switch connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.
C1170	Paper feed desk incorrect type problem	Desk for the printer is installed.	Replace the desk for the copier.
C2600	Desk drive motor problem No pulse is input within 500 ms of the start-up. No pulse is input within 100 ms of the previous pulse input.	Defective desk drive motor PCB.	Replace the desk drive motor PCB and check for correct operation.
		Desk drive motor does not rotate correctly (the motor is over-loaded).	Check the gears and remedy if necessary.
		Poor contact in the desk drive motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.

1-3-3 Electrical problems

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(1) The paper feed desk does not operate when the copier print key is pressed.	Poor contact of the signal cable connector terminals between the paper feed desk and the copier.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.
	Defective desk safety switch.	Check for continuity across the contacts. If none, replace the desk safety switch.
(2) The desk drive motor does not operate.	Poor contact of the desk drive motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.
	Broken desk drive motor gear.	Check visually and replace the desk drive motor if necessary.
	Defective desk drive motor.	Check if the desk drive motor operates when CN4-6 on the desk main PCB goes low. If not, replace the desk drive motor.
	Defective desk main PCB.	Check if CN4-6 on the desk main PCB goes low when the desk drive motor is operated in maintenance item U247. If not, replace the desk main PCB.
(3) The desk upper paper feed clutch does not operate.	Broken desk upper paper feed clutch coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the desk upper paper feed clutch.
	Poor contact of the desk upper paper feed clutch connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.
	Defective desk main PCB.	Check if CN1-14 on the desk main PCB goes low when the desk upper paper feed clutch is operated in maintenance item U247. If not, replace the desk main PCB.
(4) The desk lower paper feed clutch does not operate.	Broken desk lower paper feed clutch coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the desk lower paper feed clutch.
	Poor contact of the desk lower paper feed clutch connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.
	Defective desk main PCB.	Check if CN1-13 on the desk main PCB goes low when the desk lower paper feed clutch is operated in maintenance item U247. If not, replace the desk main PCB.
(5) The desk feed clutch does not operate.	Broken desk feed clutch coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the desk feed clutch.
	Poor contact of the desk feed clutch connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.
	Defective desk main PCB.	Check if CN2-1 on the desk main PCB goes low when the desk feed clutch is operated in maintenance item U247. If not, replace the desk main PCB.

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(6) The desk upper lift motor does not operate.	Broken desk upper lift motor coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the desk upper lift motor.
	Poor contact of the desk upper lift motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.
	Defective desk main PCB.	Check if 24 V DC is output across CN2-5 (–) and CN2-6 (+) on the desk main PCB right after the desk upper drawer is installed. If not, replace the desk main PCB.
(7) The desk lower lift motor does not operate.	Broken desk lower lift motor coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the desk lower lift motor.
	Poor contact of the desk lower lift motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.
	Defective desk main PCB.	Check if 24 V DC is output across CN2-3 (–) and CN2-4 (+) on the desk main PCB right after the desk lower drawer is installed. If not, replace the desk main PCB.
(8) The size of paper in the upper drawer is not displayed correctly.	Poor contact of the desk upper paper length switch connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.
	Poor contact of the desk upper paper width switch connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.
	Defective desk upper paper length switch.	Check if CN3-7 on the desk main PCB goes low when the desk upper paper length switch is turned on. If not, replace the desk upper paper length switch.
	Defective desk upper paper width switch.	Check for continuity between CN3-9 and CN3-1, CN3-2, and CN3-3 on the desk main PCB. If the continuity is unaffected by movement of the width guides in the upper drawer (i.e. either remains present or remains absent), then replace the desk upper paper width switch.
(9) The size of paper in the lower drawer is not displayed correctly.	Poor contact of the desk lower paper length switch connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.
	Poor contact of the desk lower paper width switch connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.
	Defective desk lower paper length switch.	Check if CN3-8 on the desk main PCB goes low when the desk lower paper length switch is turned on. If not, replace the desk lower paper length switch.
	Defective desk lower paper width switch.	Check for continuity between CN3-10 and CN3-4, CN3-5, and CN3-6 on the desk main PCB. If the continuity is unaffected by movement of the width guides in the lower drawer (i.e. either remains present or remains absent), then replace the desk lower paper width switch.

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(10) The message requesting covers to be closed is displayed when the desk left cover is closed.	Poor contact of the desk safety switch connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.
	Defective desk safety switch.	Check for continuity across the contacts. If there is no continuity when the desk safety switch is on, replace it.
(11) Others.	Wiring is broken, shorted or makes poor contact.	Check for continuity. If none, repair.
	Noise.	Locate the source of noise and remove.

1-3-4 Mechanical problems

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(1) No paper feed.	Check if the surfaces of the following rollers and pulleys are soiled with paper powder: forwarding pulley, paper feed pulley, separation pulley, desk feed roller and desk feed pulley.	Clean with isopropyl alcohol.
	Check if the paper feed pulley or separation pulley is deformed.	Replace (see page 1-4-2).
	Check if the forwarding pulley is deformed.	Replace (see page 1-4-2).
	Electrical problem with the following electromagnetic clutches: desk upper/lower paper feed clutches and desk feed clutch.	See pages 1-3-7.
(2) Skewed paper feed.	Width guide in the drawer installed incorrectly.	Check the width guide visually and remedy or replace if necessary.
	Deformed width guide in the drawer.	Check the width guide visually and remedy or replace if it is deformed.
(3) Multiple sheets of paper are fed at one time.	Check if the separation pulley is deformed.	Replace the separation pulley if it is worn (see page 1-4-2).
	Check if the paper is curled.	Change the paper.
(4) Paper jams.	Check if the paper is excessively curled.	Change the paper.
	Deformed guides along the paper conveying path.	Check visually and remedy or replace any deformed guides.
(5) Abnormal noise is heard.	Check if the pulleys, rollers and gears operate smoothly.	Grease the bearings and gears.
	Check if the desk upper and lower paper feed clutches and the desk feed clutch are installed correctly.	Remedy.

1-4-1 Precautions for assembly and disassembly

(1) Precautions

- Be sure to turn the main switch off and disconnect the power plug before starting disassembly.
- When handling PCBs, do not touch connectors with bare hands or damage the board.
- Do not touch PCBs containing ICs with bare hands or any object prone to static charge.
- Use the following testers when measuring voltages:
 - Hioki 3200
 - Sanwa MD-180C
 - Sanwa YX-360TR
 - Beckman TECH300
 - Beckman DM45
 - Beckman 330 (capable of measuring RMS values)
 - Beckman 3030 (capable of measuring RMS values)
 - Beckman DM850 (capable of measuring RMS values)
 - Fluke 8060A (capable of measuring RMS values)
 - Arlec DMM1050
 - Arlec YF1030C

1-4-2 Paper feed section

(1) Detaching and refitting the forwarding, paper feed and separation pulleys

Replace the forwarding, paper feed and separation pulleys as follows.

Procedure

• Removing the primary paper feed units

1. Remove the upper and lower drawers.
2. Remove the two screws holding the lower front cover and then the cover.
3. Remove the one screw from each of the primary paper feed units and then the units.

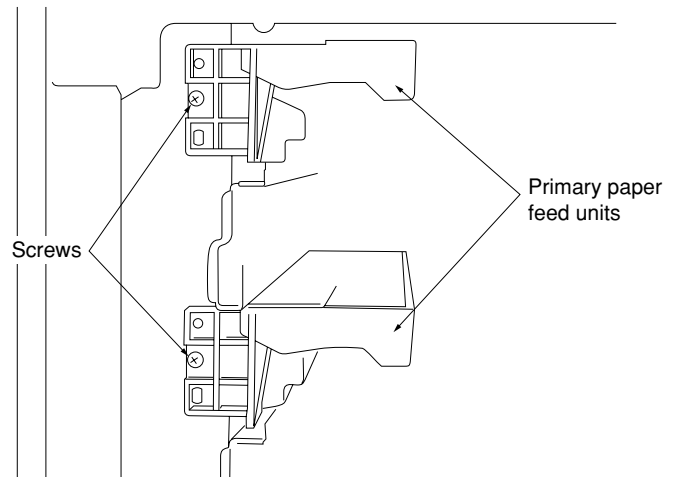


Figure 1-4-1 Detaching the primary paper feed units

• Removing the forwarding pulley

4. Remove the stopper.
5. Raise the forwarding pulley retainer in the direction of the arrow, and remove from the primary paper feed unit.

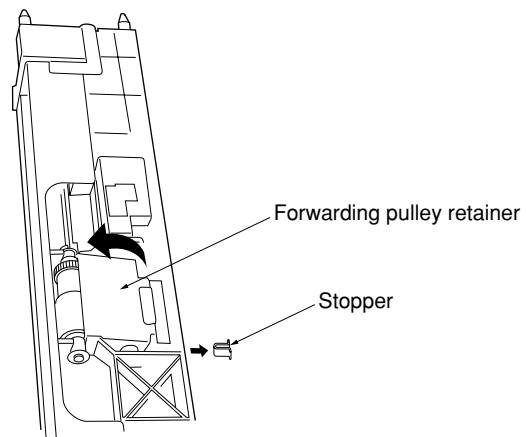


Figure 1-4-2 Detaching the forwarding pulley retainer

6. Remove the stop ring, pull the forwarding pulley shaft in the direction of the arrow, and remove the forwarding pulley.

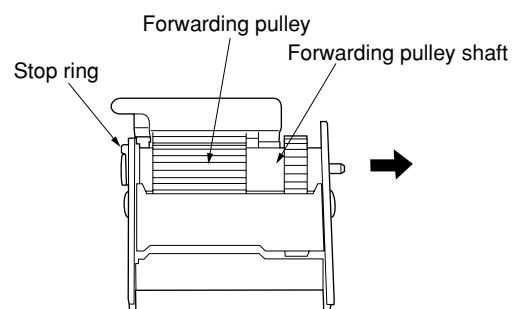


Figure 1-4-3 Detaching the forwarding pulley

- **Removing the paper feed pulley**

7. Remove the two stop rings.
8. Pull the paper feed shaft toward the rear of the primary paper feed unit (in the direction of the arrow) and remove the paper feed pulley and gear.

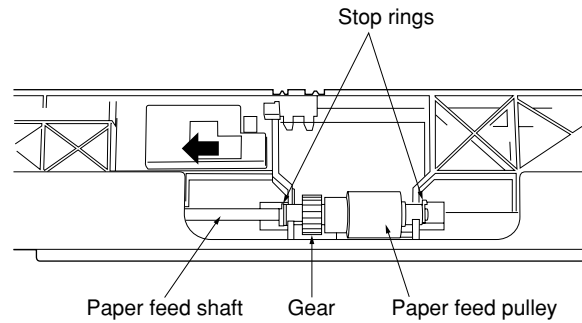


Figure 1-4-4 Detaching the paper feed pulley

- **Removing the separation pulley**

9. Remove the stop ring from the rear of the primary paper feed unit.
10. Pull the separation shaft toward the rear of the machine (in the direction of the arrow) and remove the separation pulley.
11. Replace the forwarding, paper feed and separation pulleys.
12. Refit all removed parts.

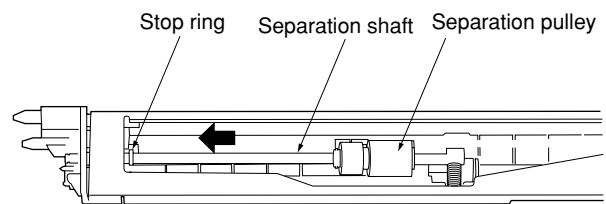


Figure 1-4-5 Detaching the separation pulley

Cautions:

- When fitting the forwarding pulley, orient it correctly as shown in Figure 1-4-6.
- When fitting the paper feed pulley and gear, keep the blue end of the paper feed pulley and the black end of the gear toward the machine rear.

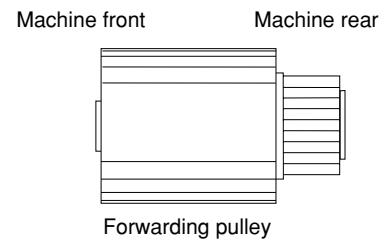


Figure 1-4-6

(2) Replacing the desk upper or lower paper width switches

Replace the desk upper or lower paper width switches as follows.

Caution:

After replacing a desk paper width switch, be sure to perform (4) Adjusting the position of the rack adjuster.

Procedure

1. Remove the drawer.
2. Remove the two screws and 8-pin socket from the rear of the drawer.
3. Detach the 8-pin desk paper width switch connector from the 8-pin socket.
4. Remove the three screws holding the rack adjuster.
5. While raising the drawer lift in the direction of the arrow, remove the rack adjuster.

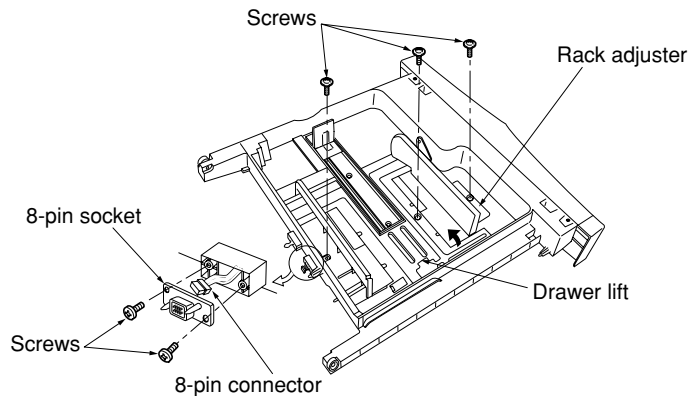


Figure 1-4-7 Detaching the rack adjuster

6. Remove the two screws from the back of the rack adjuster and then the desk paper width switch.

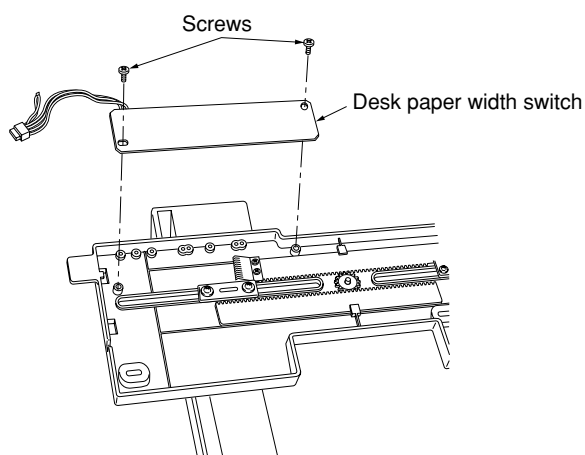


Figure 1-4-8 Detaching the desk paper width switch

7. Apply the specified grease to the printed surface of the new desk paper width switch (shaded area in the diagram) and fit the switch to the rack adjuster.
8. Refit all removed parts.

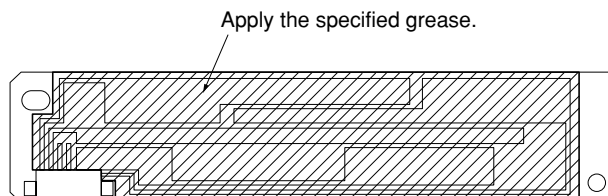


Figure 1-4-9 Desk paper width switch

(3) Replacing the desk feed, upper and lower paper feed clutches

Replace the desk feed, upper and lower paper feed clutches as follows.

Procedure

1. Remove the three screws holding the desk rear cover and then the cover.
2. Remove the cable from the retainer clamp.
3. Remove the three screws holding the retainer and then the retainer.
4. Remove the two screws holding the rear cover left retainer and then the retainer.

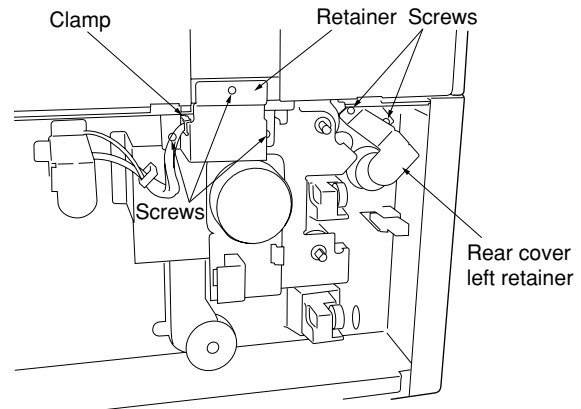


Figure 1-4-10

5. Remove the upper and lower stop rings and bearings from the desk upper and lower paper feed clutches.
6. Remove the stop ring from the desk feed clutch.

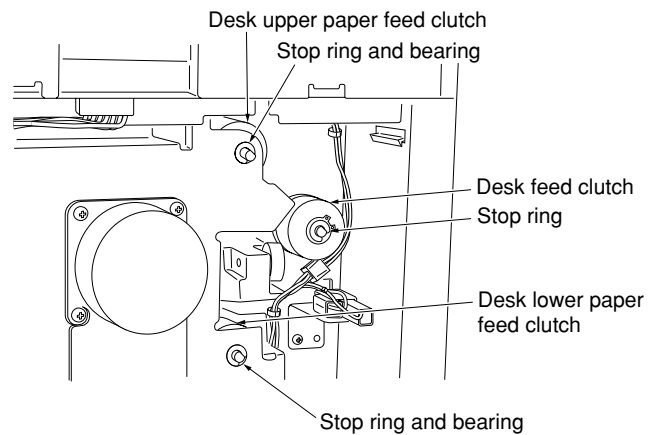


Figure 1-4-11

7. Remove the three screws holding the desk drive motor retainer and then the retainer.

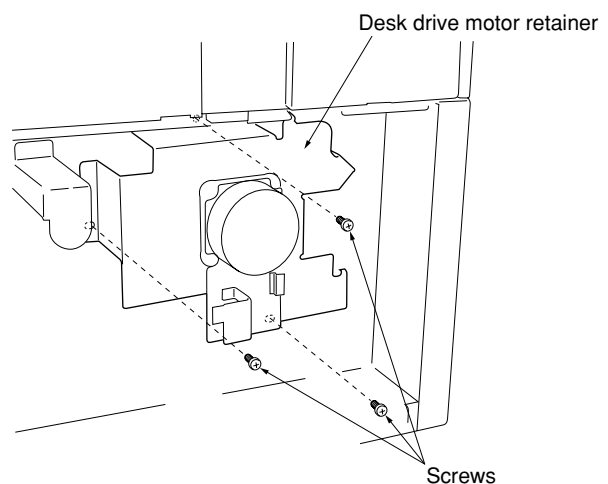


Figure 1-4-12 Detaching the desk drive motor retainer

3CC

8. Remove the connectors of the desk feed, upper and lower paper feed clutches and then the clutches.

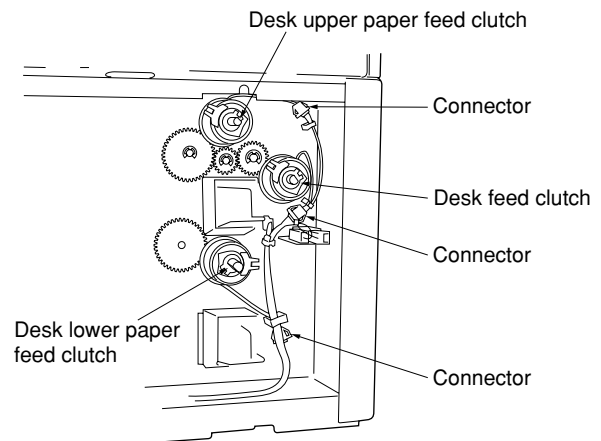


Figure 1-4-13 Detaching the desk feed, upper and lower paper feed clutches

9. Replace the clutches.
10. Refit all removed parts.

Caution:

When fitting the clutches, be sure to refit the whirl-stops.

(4) Adjusting the position of the rack adjuster

Perform the following adjustment if there is a regular error between the center lines of the copy image and the original on the paper fed from the drawer.

Procedure

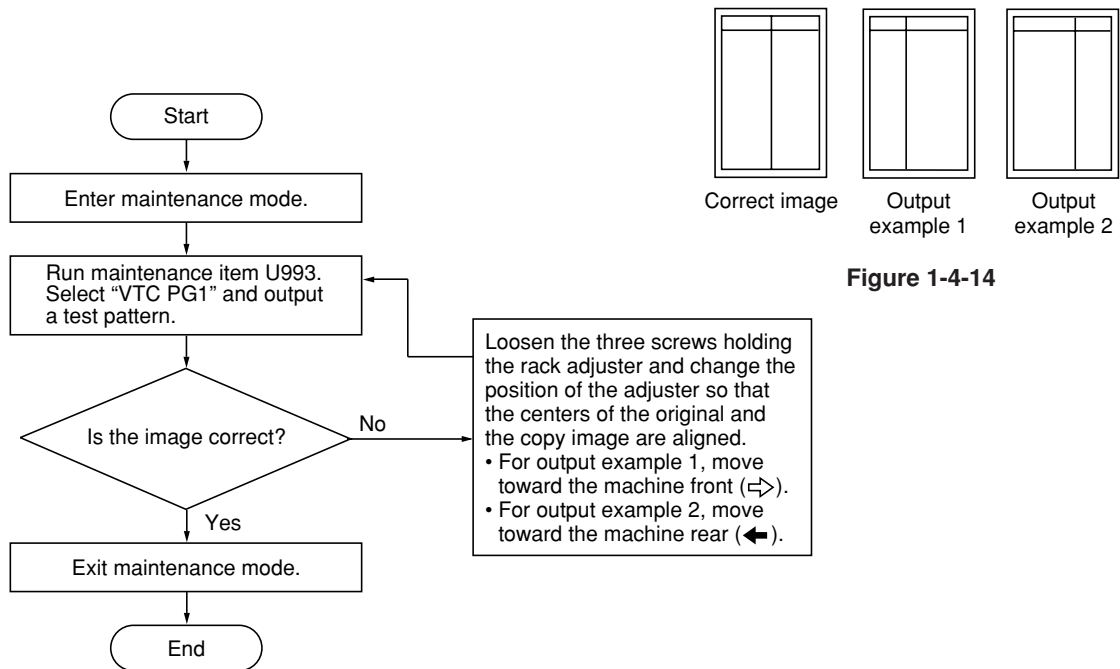


Figure 1-4-14

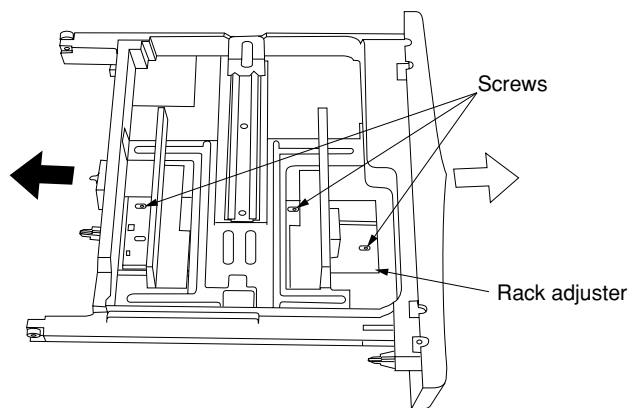
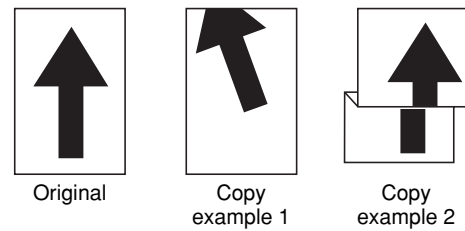
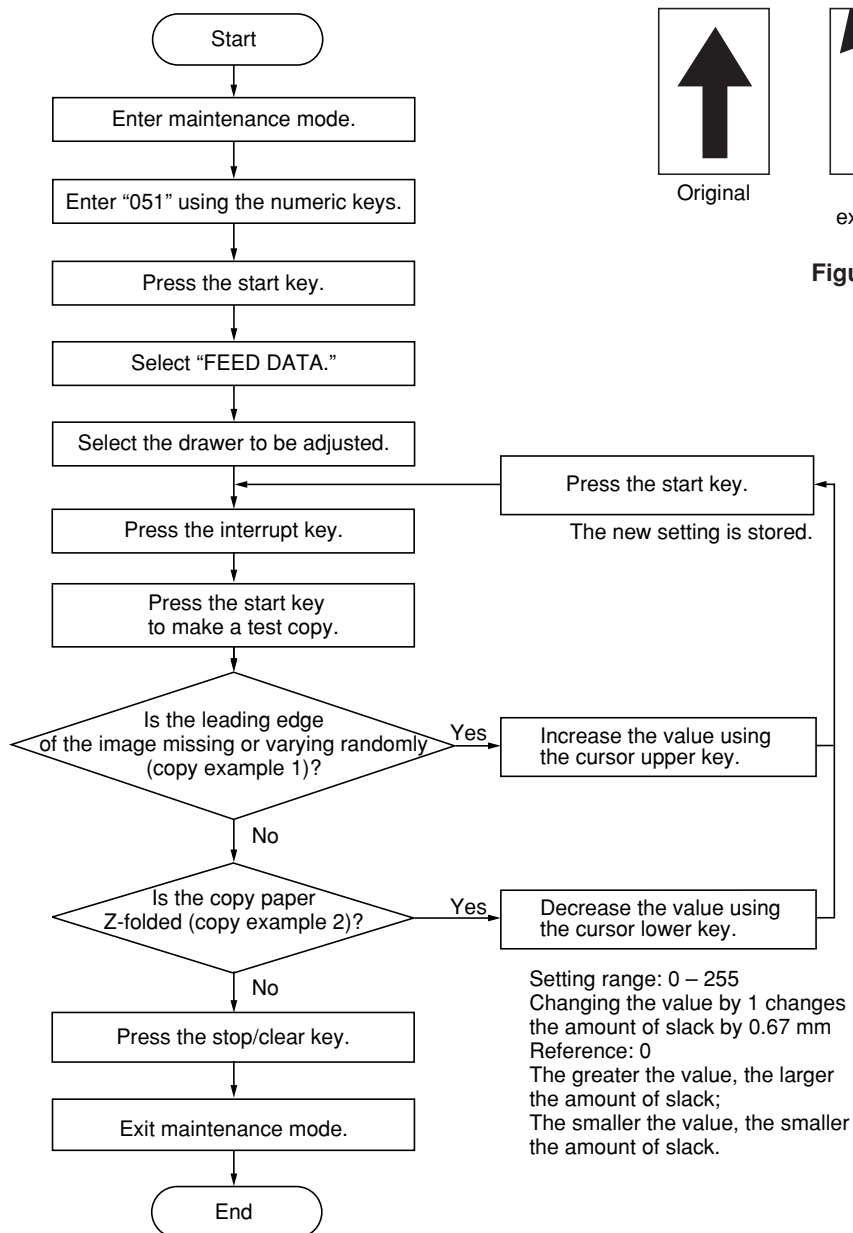


Figure 1-4-15 Adjusting the position of the rack adjuster

(5) Adjusting the amount of slack

Perform the following adjustment if the leading edge of the copy image is missing or varies randomly, or if the copy paper is Z-folded.

Procedure**Figure 1-4-16**

2-1-1 Mechanical construction

The paper feed desk feeds paper from either of its two drawers to the copier main body. When paper is fed from the lower drawer of the paper feed desk, the desk feed clutch (DFCL) is operated to rotate the desk feed roller and pulley to carry the paper into the copier main body.

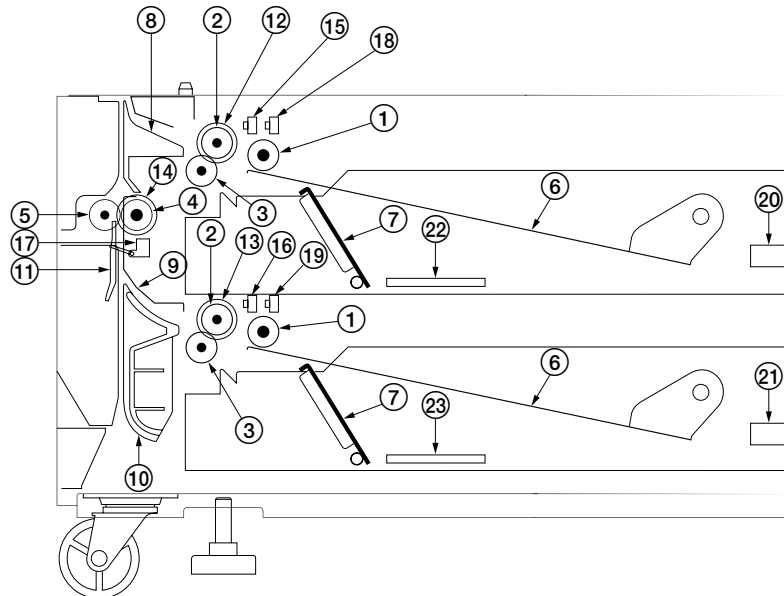


Figure 2-1-1 Paper feed desk

- | | |
|--|--|
| ① Forwarding pulley | ⑬ Desk lower paper feed clutch (DPFCL-L) |
| ② Paper feed pulley | ⑭ Desk feed clutch (DFCL) |
| ③ Separation pulley | ⑮ Desk upper paper switch (DPSW-U) |
| ④ Desk feed roller | ⑯ Desk lower paper switch (DPSW-L) |
| ⑤ Desk feed pulley | ⑰ Desk feed switch (DFSW) |
| ⑥ Drawer lift | ⑱ Desk upper lift limit switch (DLICSW-U) |
| ⑦ Lift operating plate | ⑲ Desk lower lift limit switch (DLICSW-L) |
| ⑧ Desk upper feed guide | ⑳ Desk upper paper length switch (DPLSW-U) |
| ⑨ Desk middle feed guide | ㉑ Desk lower paper length switch (DPLSW-L) |
| ⑩ Desk lower feed guide | ㉒ Desk upper paper width switch (DPWSW-U) |
| ⑪ Desk feed guide | ㉓ Desk lower paper width switch (DPWSW-L) |
| ⑫ Desk upper paper feed clutch (DPFCL-U) | |

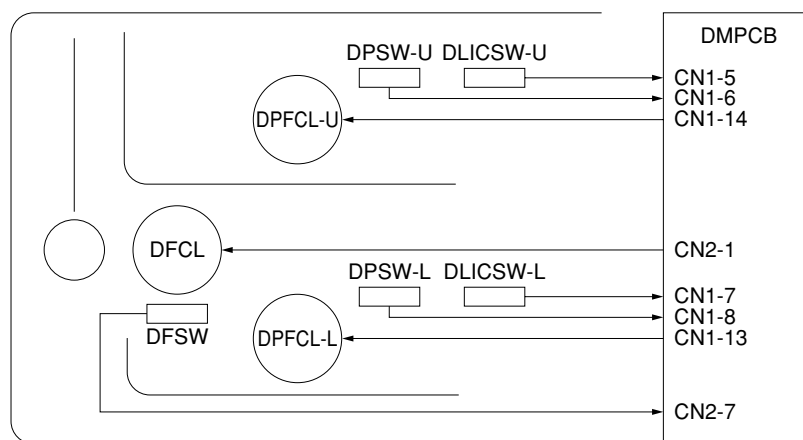
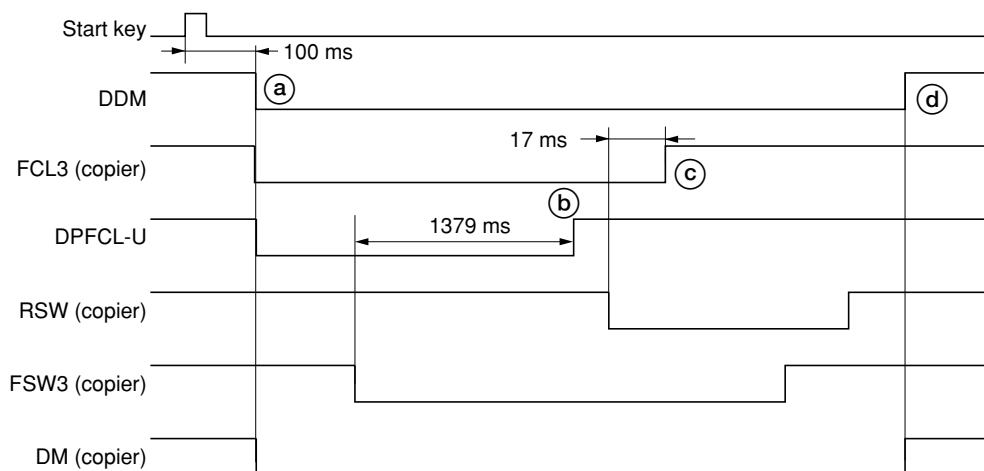


Figure 2-1-2 Paper feed desk block diagram

• Paper feed from the desk upper drawer

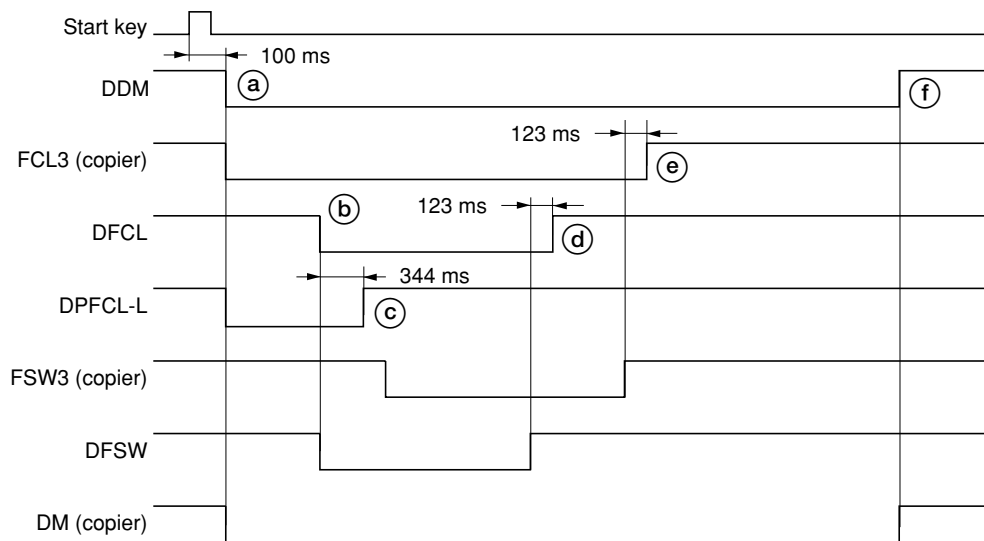


Automatic copy density control;
A3/11" × 17" paper; magnification of 100%

Timing chart 2-1-1 Paper feed from the desk upper drawer

- Ⓐ 100 ms after the start key is pressed, the desk drive motor (DDM) turns on at the same time as the drive motor (DM) turns on, starting the drive for the paper feed desk. The desk upper paper feed clutch (DPFCL-U) turns on to start rotating the forwarding pulley and paper feed pulley to start paper feed from the upper drawer.
- Ⓑ 1379 ms after the leading edge of the paper turns the feed switch 3 (FSW3) on, the desk upper paper feed clutch (DPFCL-U) turns off.
- Ⓒ 17 ms after the leading edge of the paper turns the registration switch (RSW) on, feed clutch 3 (FCL3) turns off.
- Ⓓ The desk drive motor (DDM) turns off at the same time as the drive motor (DM) turns off to stop the drive for the paper feed desk.

• Paper feed from the desk lower drawer



Manual copy density control;
A4/11" × 8¹/₂" paper; magnification of 100%

Timing chart 2-1-2 Paper feed from the desk lower drawer

- Ⓐ 100 ms after the start key is pressed, the desk drive motor (DDM) turns on at the same time as the drive motor (DM) turns on, starting the drive for the paper feed desk. The desk lower paper feed clutch (DPFCL-L) turns on to start rotating the forwarding pulley and paper feed pulley to start paper feed from the lower drawer.
- Ⓑ At the same time as the leading edge of the paper turns the desk feed switch (DFSW) on, the desk feed clutch (DFCL) turns on to rotate the desk feed roller to convey the paper to the copier.
- Ⓒ 344 ms after the desk feed switch (DFSW) turns on, the desk lower paper feed clutch (DPFCL-L) turns off.
- Ⓓ 123 ms after the trailing edge of the paper turns the desk feed switch (DFSW) off, the desk feed clutch (DFCL) turns off.
- Ⓔ 123 ms after the trailing edge of the paper turns feed switch 3 (FSW3) off, feed clutch 3 (FCL3) turns off.
- Ⓕ The desk drive motor (DDM) turns off at the same time as the drive motor (DM) turns off to stop the drive for the paper feed desk.

2-2-1 Electrical parts layout

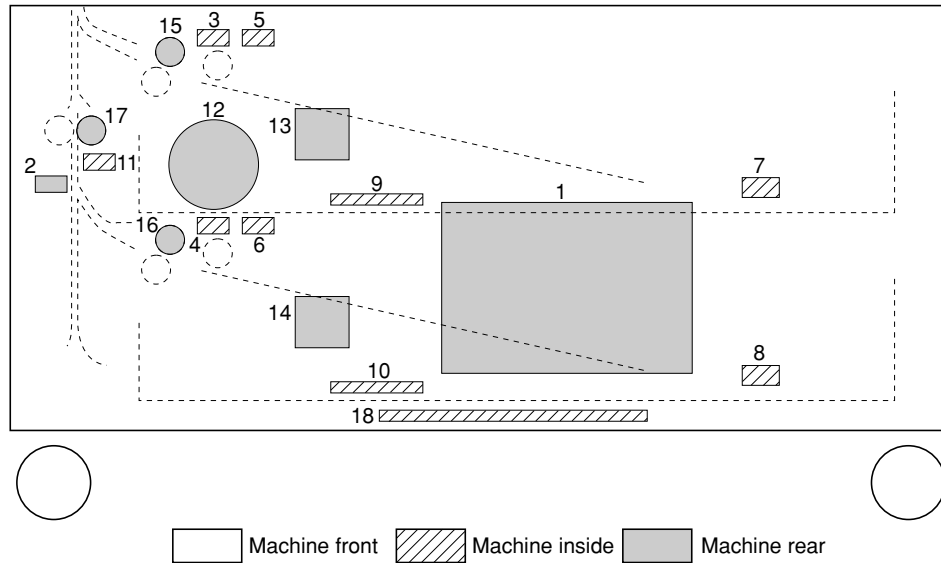


Figure 2-2-1 Layout of electrical parts

1. Desk main PCB (DMPCB) Controls electrical parts.
2. Desk safety switch (DSSW) Breaks the safety circuit when the desk left cover is opened, and resets paper jam detection.
3. Desk upper paper switch (DPSW-U) Detects the presence of paper in the desk upper drawer.
4. Desk lower paper switch (DPSW-L) Detects the presence of paper in the desk lower drawer.
5. Desk upper lift limit switch (DLICSW-U) Detects the desk upper drawer lift reaching the upper limit.
6. Desk lower lift limit switch (DLICSW-L) Detects the desk lower drawer lift reaching the upper limit.
7. Desk upper paper length switch (DPLSW-U) Detects the length of paper in the desk upper drawer.
8. Desk lower paper length switch (DPLSW-L) Detects the length of paper in the desk lower drawer.
9. Desk upper paper width switch (DPWSW-U) Detects the width of paper in the desk upper drawer.
10. Desk lower paper width switch (DPWSW-L) Detects the width of paper in the desk lower drawer.
11. Desk feed switch (DFSW) Controls the desk lower paper feed clutch.
12. Desk drive motor (DDM) Drives the paper feed desk.
13. Desk upper lift motor (DCLM-U) Drives the desk upper drawer lift.
14. Desk lower lift motor (DCLM-L) Drives the desk lower drawer lift.
15. Desk upper paper feed clutch (DPFCL-U) ... Primary paper feed from the desk upper drawer.
16. Desk lower paper feed clutch (DPFCL-L) Primary paper feed from the desk lower drawer.
17. Desk feed clutch (DFCL) Conveys paper to the copier.
18. Desk dehumidifier* (DDH) Dehumidifies paper.

* Service part.

2-3-1 Desk main PCB

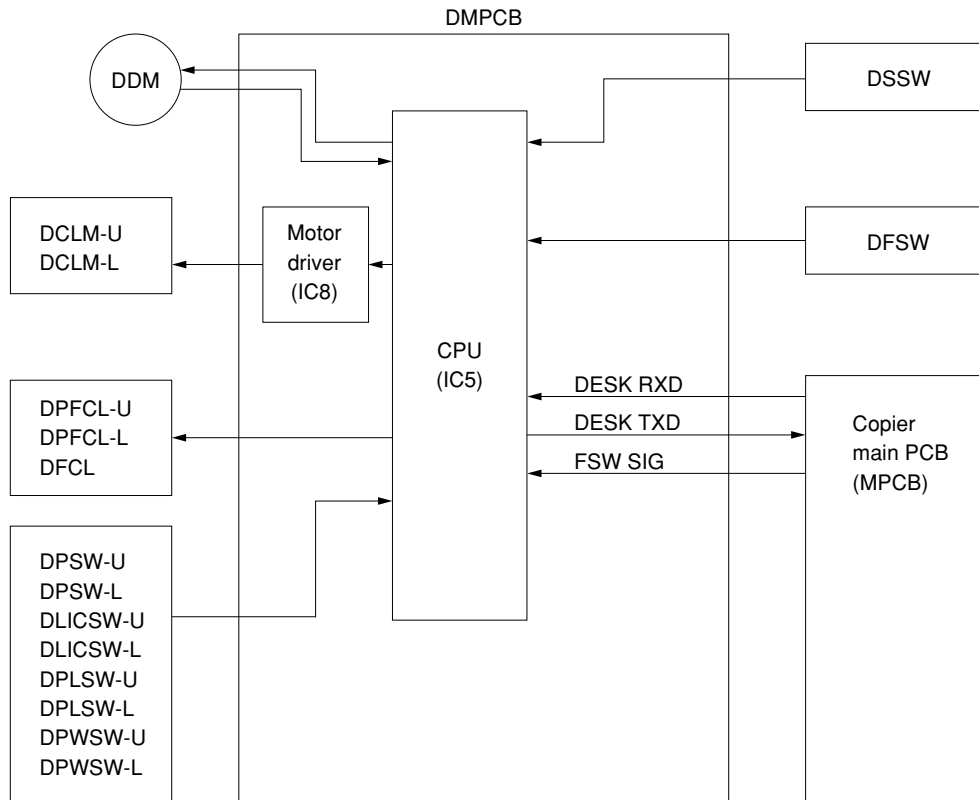


Figure 2-3-1 Desk main PCB block diagram

The desk main PCB (DMPCB) is controlled from the copier main PCB (MPCB) which controls the inputs from and outputs to the motors, clutches and switches on the paper feed desk through the CPU IC5 serially via two-way serial/parallel 8-bit data conversion.

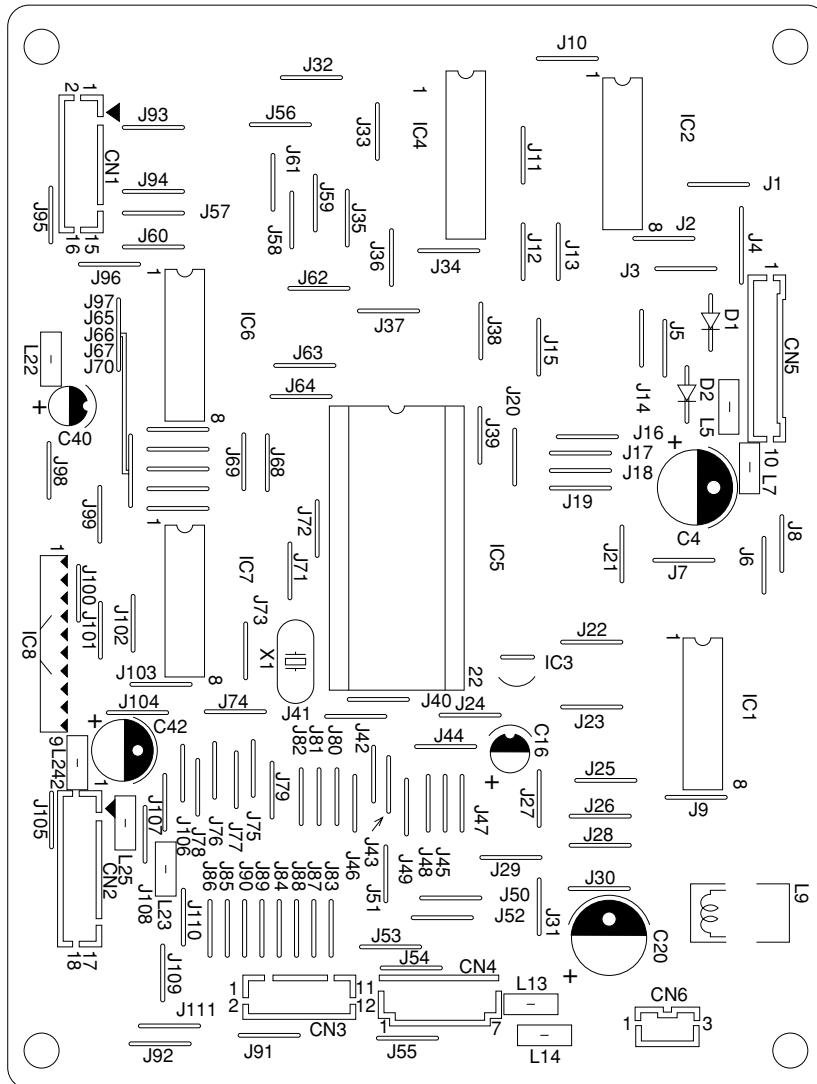
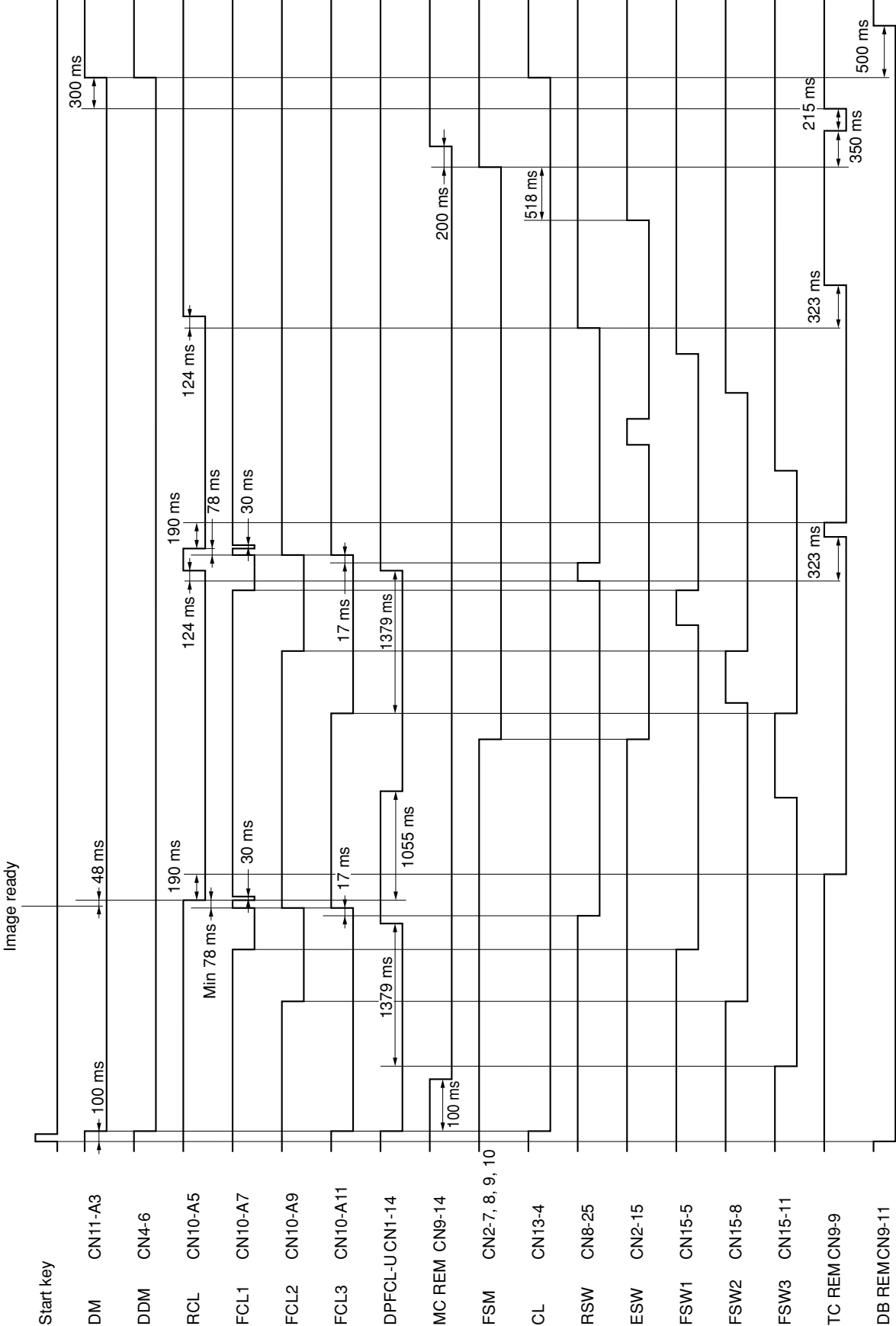


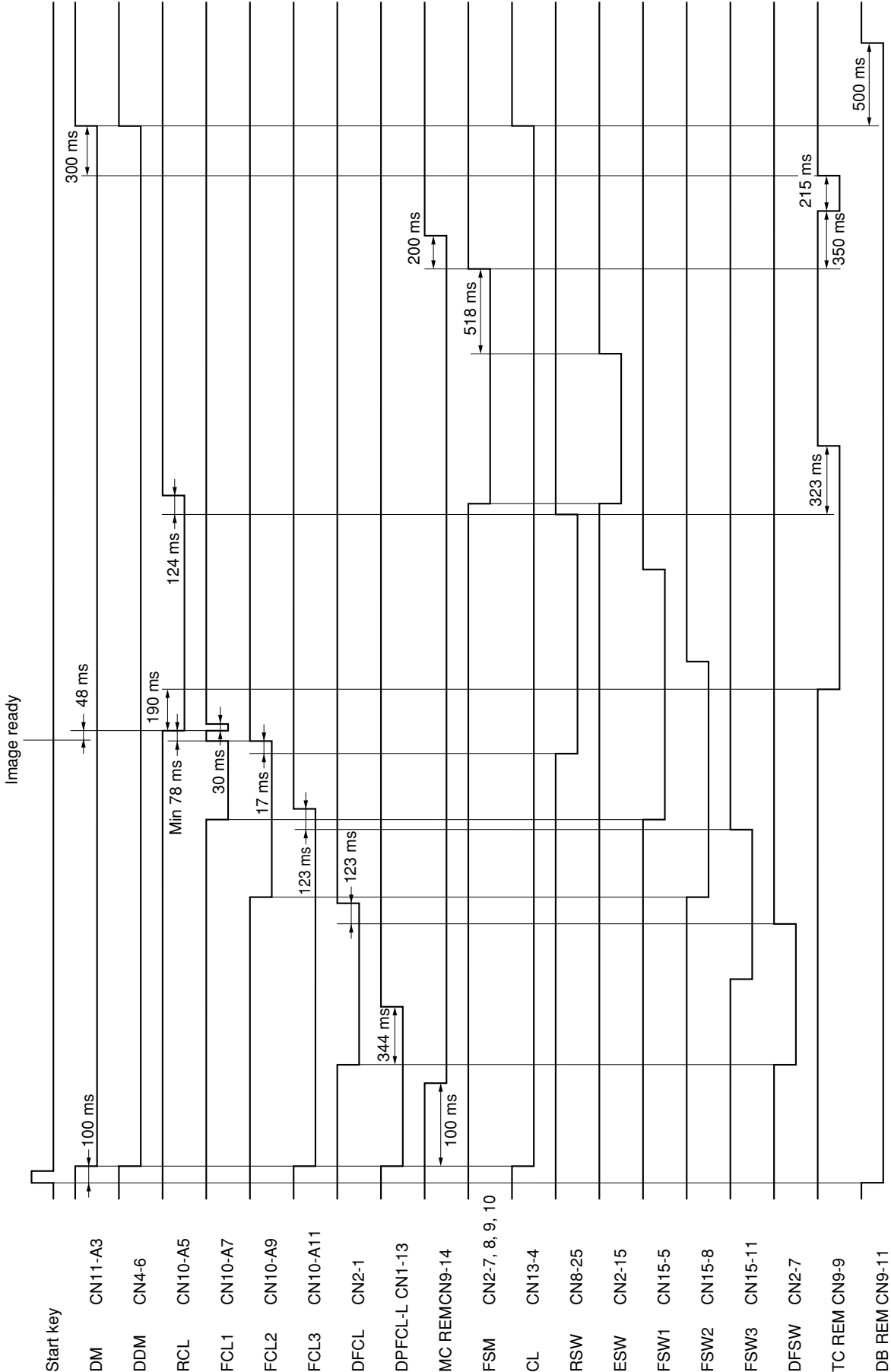
Figure 2-3-2

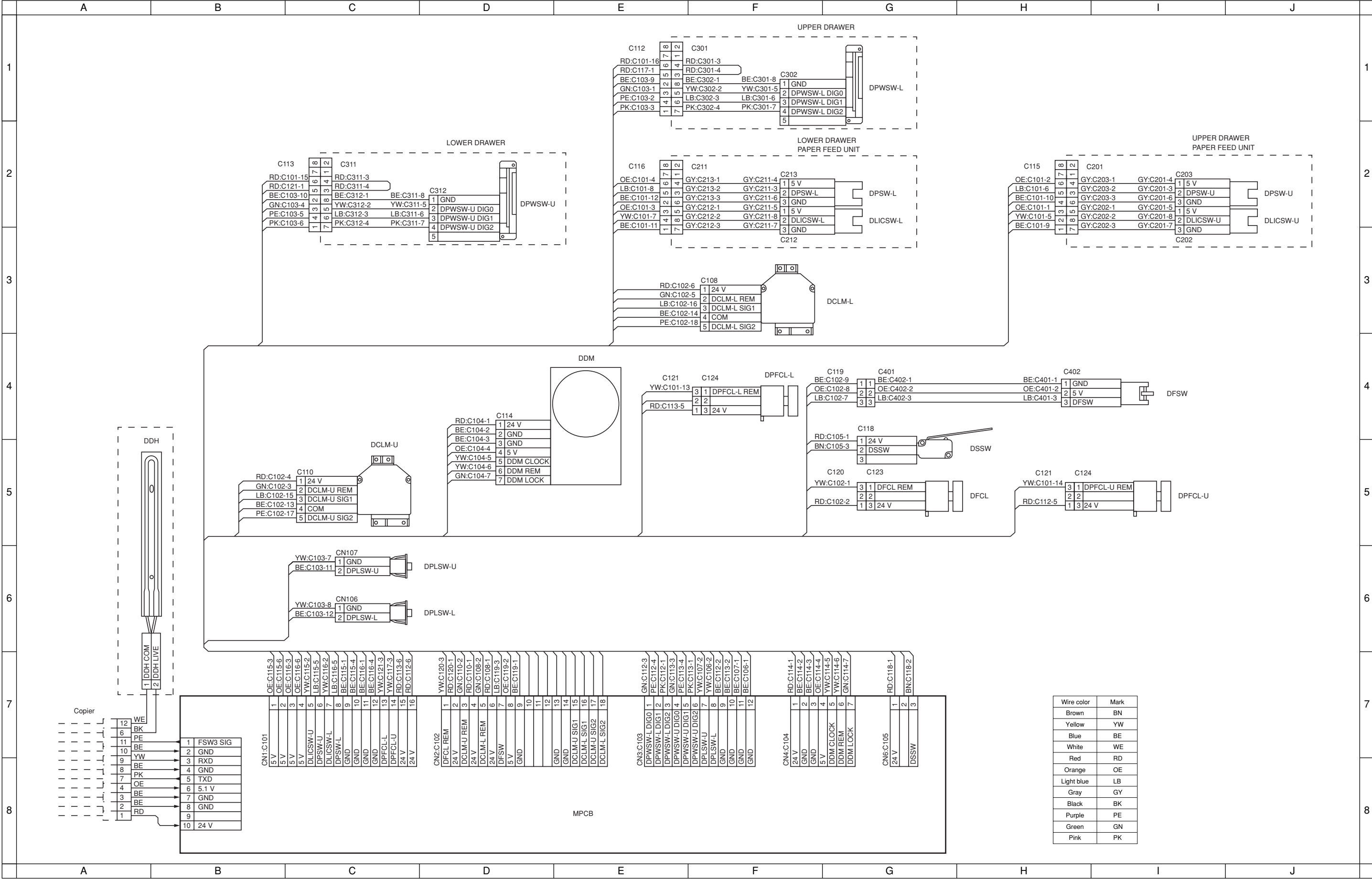
Terminals (CN)		Voltage	Remarks
1-1	1-9	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for DLICSW-U, output
1-2	1-10	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for DPSW-U, output
1-3	1-11	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for DLICSW-L, output
1-4	1-12	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for DPSW-L, output
1-5	1-9	5/0 V DC	DLICSW-U on/off, input
1-6	1-10	0/5 V DC	DPSW-U on/off, input
1-7	1-11	5/0 V DC	DLICSW-L on/off, input
1-8	1-12	0/5 V DC	DPSW-L on/off, input
1-13	5-8	0/24 V DC	DPFCL-L on/off, input
1-14	5-8	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for DPFCL-L, output
1-15	5-8	0/24 V DC	DPFCL-U on/off, input
1-16	5-8	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for DPFCL-U, output
2-1	5-8	0/24 V DC	DFCL on/off, input
2-2	5-8	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for DFCL, output
2-3	5-8	0/24 V DC	DCLM-L on/off, input
2-4	5-8	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for DCLM-L, output
2-5	5-8	0/24 V DC	DCLM-U on/off, input
2-6	5-8	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for DCLM-U, output
2-7	2-9	0/5 V DC	DFSW on/off, output
2-8	2-9	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for DFSW, output
2-15	2-13	0/5 V DC	Paper level detection switch on/off, input
2-16	2-14	0/5 V DC	Paper level detection switch on/off, input
2-17	2-13	0/5 V DC	Paper level detection switch on/off, input
2-18	2-14	0/5 V DC	Paper level detection switch on/off, input
3-1	3-9	0/5 V DC	DPWSW-U (DIG0) on/off, input
3-2	3-9	0/5 V DC	DPWSW-U (DIG1) on/off, input
3-3	3-9	0/5 V DC	DPWSW-U (DIG2) on/off, input
3-4	3-10	0/5 V DC	DPWSW-L (DIG0) on/off, input
3-5	3-10	0/5 V DC	DPWSW-L (DIG1) on/off, input
3-6	3-10	0/5 V DC	DPWSW-L (DIG2) on/off, input
3-7	3-11	0/5 V DC	DPLSW-U on/off, input
3-8	3-12	0/5 V DC	DPLSW-L on/off, input
4-1	4-2	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for DDM, output
4-4	4-3	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for DDM, output
4-5	4-2	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Clock signal to DDM, output
4-6	4-2	0/5 V DC	DDM on/off, output
4-7	4-2	0/5 V DC	LOCK signal to DDM, input
5-1	5-2	0/5 V DC	FSW3 on/off from the copier, input
5-3	5-2	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication signal to the copier, output
5-5	5-4	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication signal to the copier, input
5-6	5-7	5 V DC	5 V DC supply, input
5-10	5-8	24 V DC	24 V DC supply, input
6-1	5-8	24/0 V DC	DSSW on/off, input
6-3	5-8	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for DSSW, output

Timing chart No. 1 Continuous copying an A3/11" x 17" original onto two sheets of A3/11" x 17" copy paper from the paper feed desk upper drawer, magnification ratio 100%, auto copy density control



Timing chart No. 2 Copying an A4/11" × 8¹/₂" original onto an A4/11" × 8¹/₂" copy paper from the paper feed desk lower drawer, magnification ratio 100%, manual copy density control

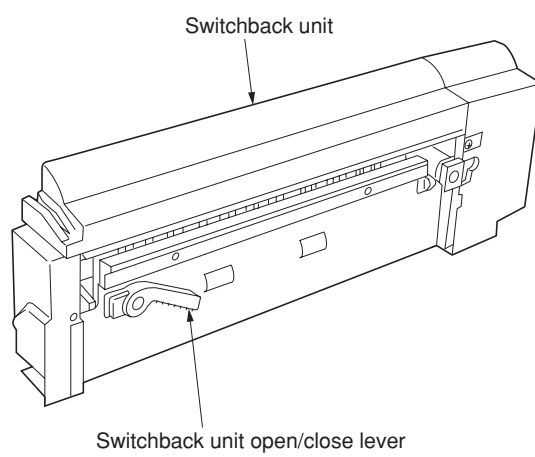




RA-1

CONTENTS

1-1 Specifications	
1-1-1 Part names	1-1-1
1-1-2 Machine cross section	1-1-2
1-1-3 Drive system	1-1-3
1-2 Installation	
1-2-1 Unpacking	1-2-1
1-3 Troubleshooting	
1-3-1 Paper misfeed detection	1-3-1
(1) Paper misfeed indication	1-3-1
(2) Paper misfeed detection conditions	1-3-2
(3) Paper misfeeds	1-3-3
1-3-2 Electrical problems	1-3-4
(1) The switchback conveying motor does not operate.	1-3-4
(2) The switchback eject motor does not operate.	1-3-4
(3) The feedshift solenoid does not operate.	1-3-4
(4) The press solenoid does not operate.	1-3-4
1-3-3 Mechanical problems	1-3-5
(1) Paper jams.	1-3-5
(2) Abnormal noise is heard.	1-3-5
2-1 Mechanical construction	
2-1-1 Construction of each section	2-1-1
(1) Paper switchback operation	2-1-2
2-2 Electrical Parts Layout	
2-2-1 Electrical parts layout	2-2-1
(1) PCBs	2-2-1
(2) Switches and solenoids	2-2-2
(3) Motors	2-2-3
2-3 Operation of the PCBs	
2-3-1 Main PCB	2-3-1
2-4 Appendixes	
Timing chart No. 1	2-4-1
Wiring diagram	2-4-2

1-1-1 Part names**Figure 1-1-1**

1-1-2 Machine cross section

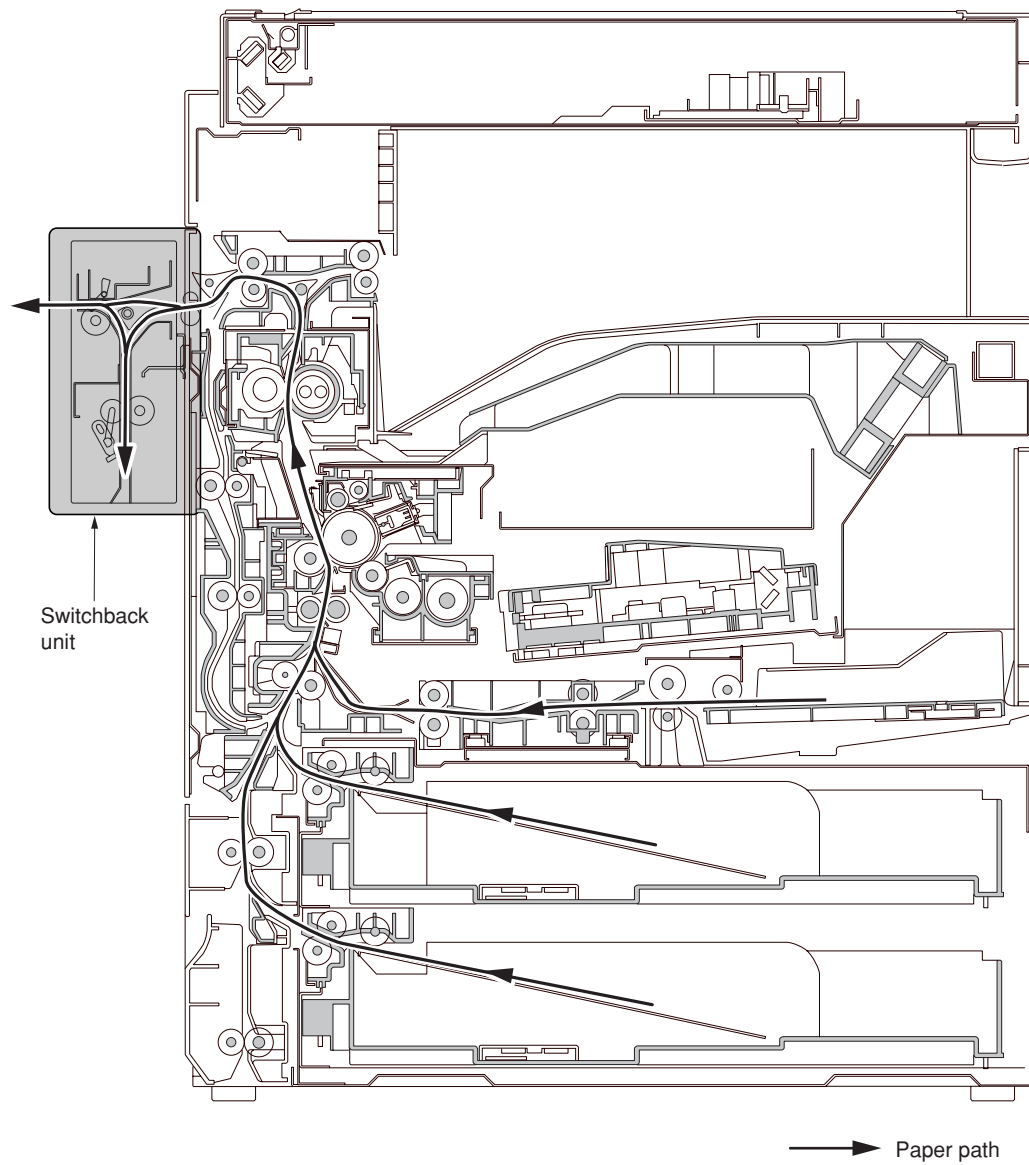


Figure 1-1-2

1-1-3 Drive system

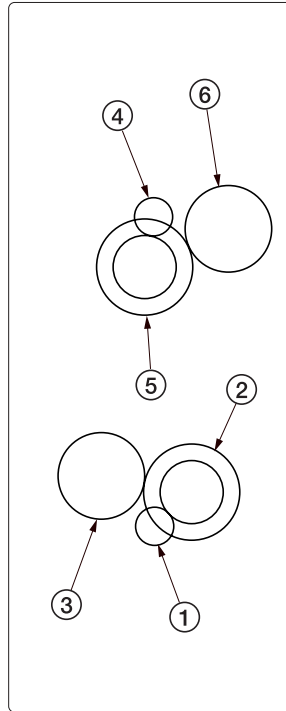


Figure 1-1-3

- ① Switchback motor gear
- ② Eject motor gear
- ③ Gear 23/31
- ④ Gear 21

1-2-1 Unpacking

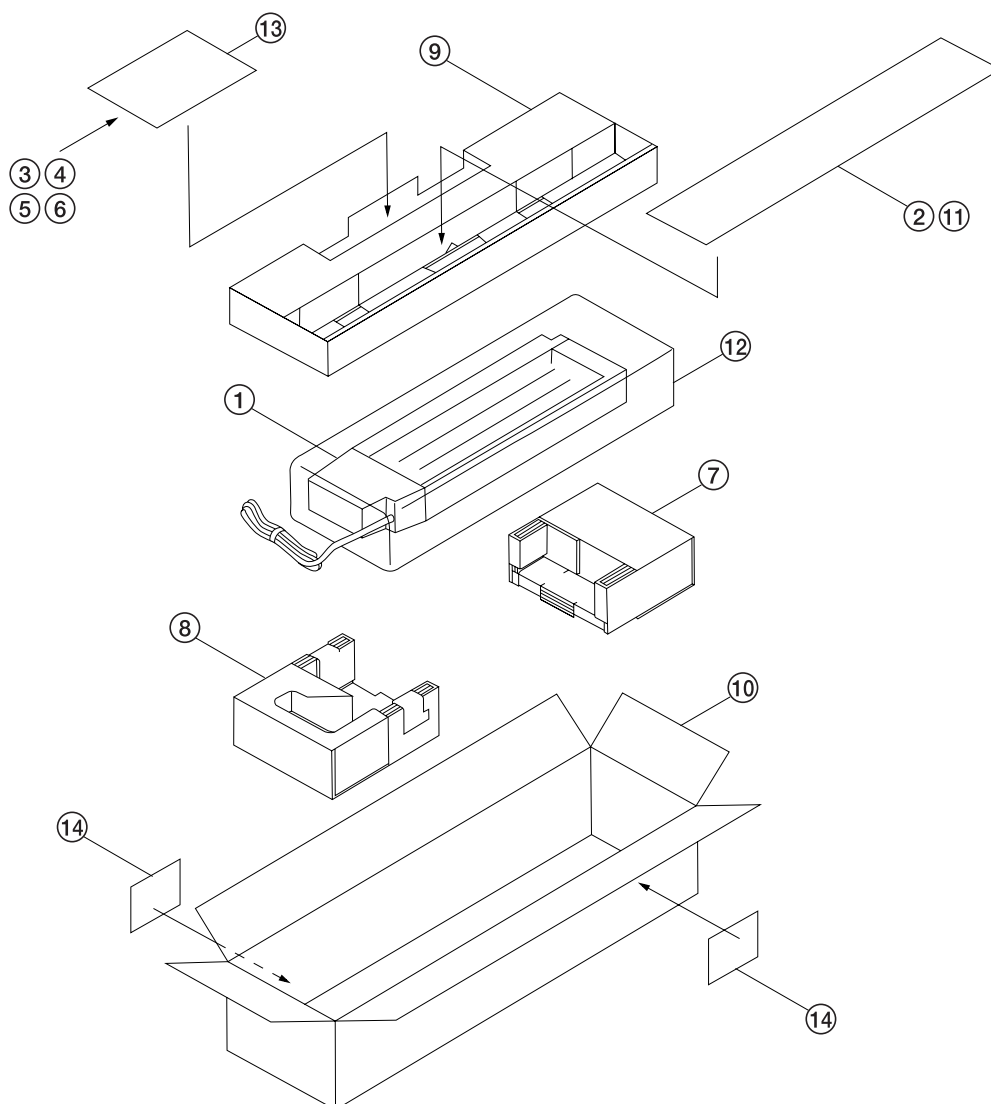


Figure 1-2-1 Unpacking

- | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------|
| ① Switchback unit | ⑧ Front bottom pad |
| ② Front cover | ⑨ Rear bottom pad |
| ③ Spacer | ⑩ Upper pad |
| ④ Binding screws M3 × 08 | ⑪ Outer case |
| ⑤ Binding screws M4 × 06 | ⑫ Plastic bag |
| ⑥ TP screws M4 × 12 | ⑬ Plastic bag |
| ⑦ TP screws M4 × 16 | ⑭ Bar-code labels |

1-3-1 Paper misfeed detection

(1) Paper misfeed indication

When paper jams, the machine immediately stops operation and the occurrence of a paper jam is indicated on the copier operation panel.

To remove the jammed paper, raise the switchback unit open/close lever and open the switchback unit.

To reset the paper misfeed detection, open and close the switchback unit to turn the switchback unit safety switch off and on.

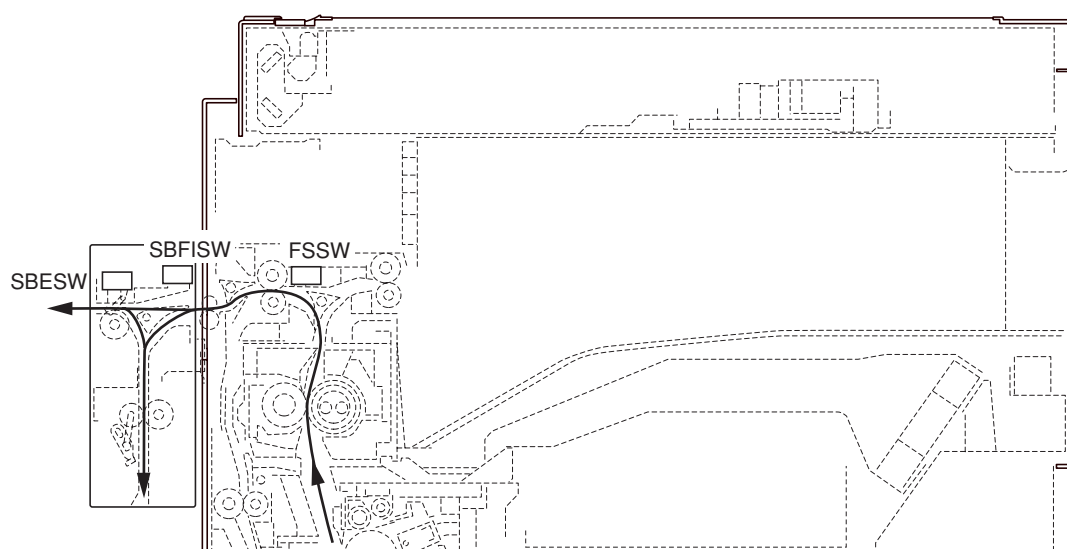
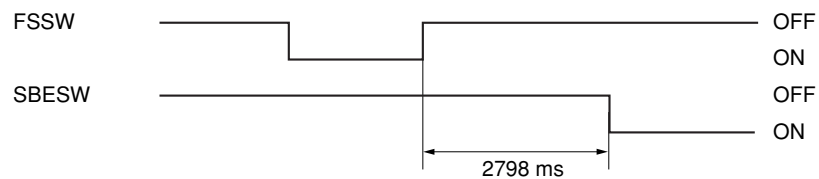


Figure 1-3-1 Paper misfeed detection

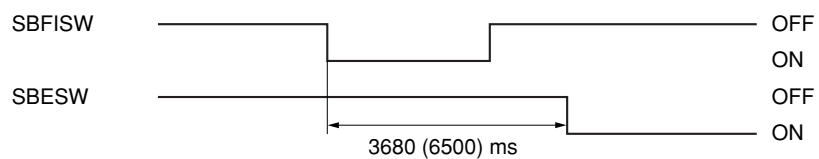
(2) Paper misfeed detection condition

- Misfeed in switchback section (jam code 53)

The switchback eject switch (SBESW) does not turn off within 2797 ms of the copier feedshift switch (FSSW) turning on.

**Timing chart 1-3-1**

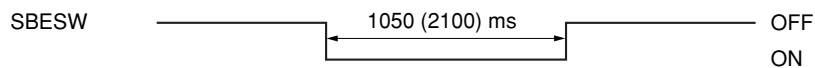
The switchback eject switch (SBESW) does not turn on within 3680 ms (6500 ms) of the switchback feed in switch (SBFISW) turning on.



Paper size: A4R/81/2"×11"
The value in the parentheses indicates
A3/11"×17"

Timing chart 1-3-2

The switchback eject switch (SBESW) does not turn off within 1050 ms (2100 ms) of turning on.



Paper size: A4R/81/2"×11"
The value in the parentheses indicates
A3/11"×17"

Timing chart 1-3-3

(3) Paper misfeeds

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(1) Paper jams in the switchback unit when the main switch is turned on.	A piece of paper torn from copy paper is caught around the switchback eject switch and switchback feed in switch.	Remove any found.
	Defective switchback feed in switch.	With 5 V DC present at CN5-1 on the main PCB, check if CN5-3 on the main PCB remains high or low when the switchback feed in switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the switchback feed in switch.
	Defective switchback eject switch.	With 5 V DC present at CN5-2 on the main PCB, check if CN5-4 on the main PCB remains high or low when the switchback eject switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the switchback eject switch.
(2) Paper jams in the switchback section is indicated during copying (jam in switchback unit). Jam code 53	Broken switchback eject switch actuator.	Check visually and replace the switchback eject switch if its actuator is broken.
	Defective switchback feed in switch.	With 5 V DC present at CN5-1 on the main PCB, check if CN5-3 on the main PCB remains high or low when the switchback feed in switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the switchback feed in switch.
	Defective switchback eject switch.	With 5 V DC present at CN5-2 on the main PCB, check if CN5-4 on the main PCB remains high or low when the switchback eject switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the switchback eject switch.

1-3-2 Electrical problems

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(1) The switchback conveying motor does not operate.	Broken switchback conveying motor coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the switchback conveying motor.
	Poor contact of the switchback conveying motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
(2) The switchback eject motor does not operate.	Broken switchback eject motor coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the switchback eject motor.
	Poor contact of the switchback eject motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
(3) The feedshift solenoid does not operate.	Broken feedshift solenoid coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the feedshift solenoid.
	Poor contact of the feedshift solenoid connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
(4) The press solenoid does not operate.	Broken press solenoid coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the press solenoid.
	Poor contact of the press solenoid connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.

1-3-3 Mechanical problems

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(1) Paper jams.	Check if the contact between the switchback press pulley and switchback press roller is correct.	Check and remedy.
	Check if the contact between the switchback eject pulley and switchback eject roller is correct.	Check and remedy.
(2) Abnormal noise is heard.	Check if the switchback press pulley, switchback press roller and gears operate smoothly.	Grease the bushings and gears.
	Check if the switchback eject pulley, switchback eject roller and gears operate smoothly.	Grease the bushings and gears.

2-1-1 Construction of each section

The switchback unit consists of the parts shown in Figure 2-1-1 and performs switchback operation for switching the ejection side of paper when ejecting paper to the saddle finisher.

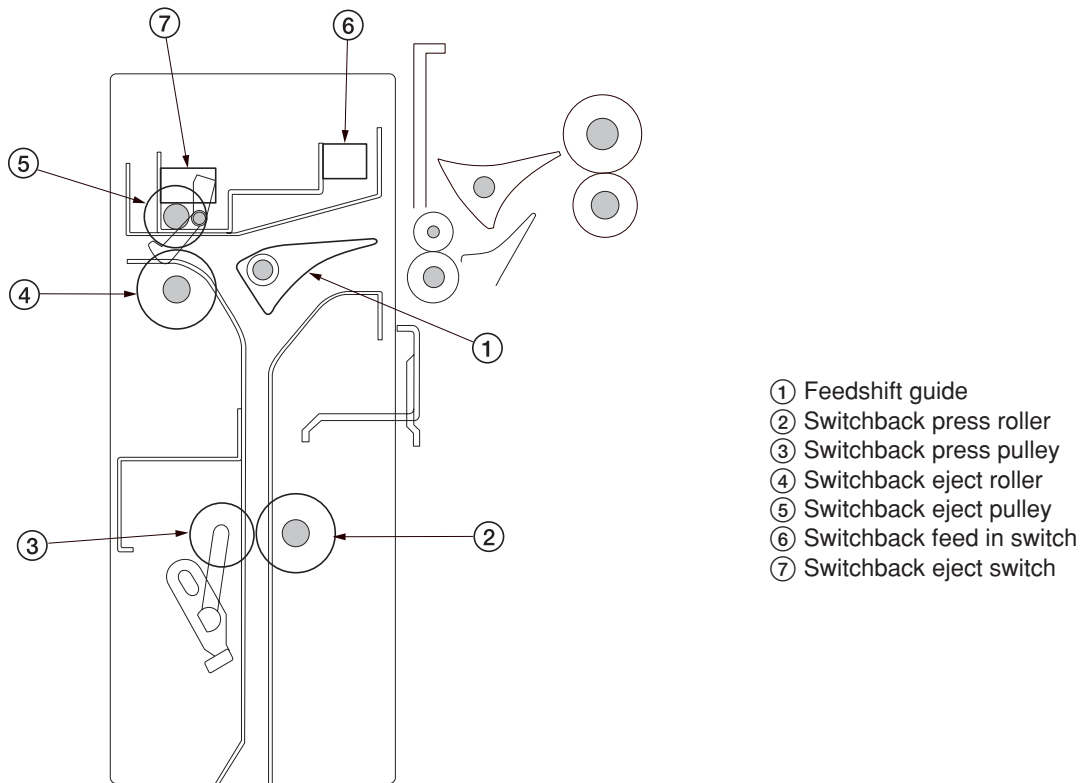


Figure 2-1-1 Switchback unit

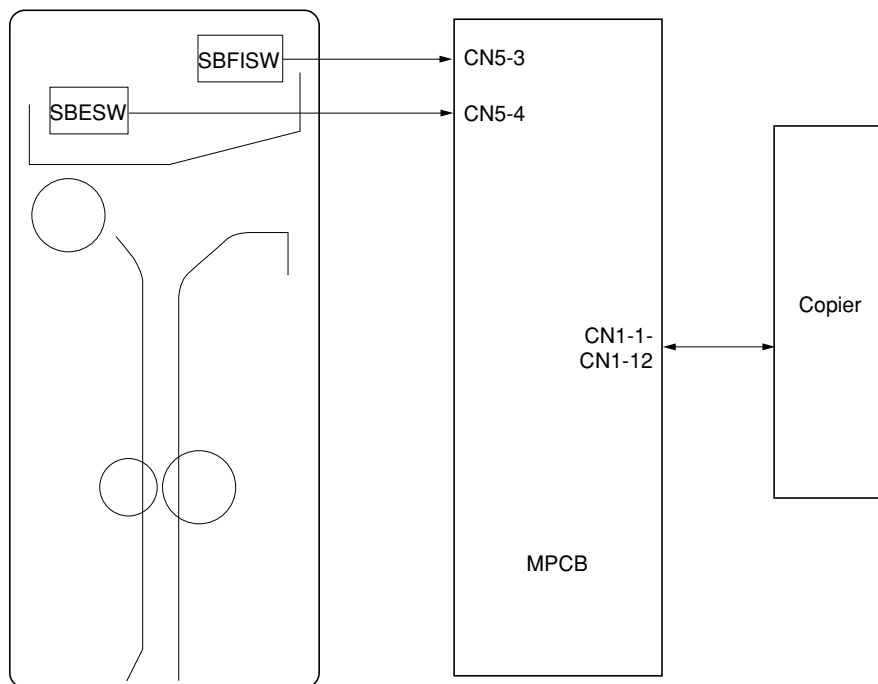


Figure 2-1-2 Switchback unit block diagram

(1) Paper switchback operation

Paper of which copying is complete is conveyed to the switchback unit and sent to the switchback section by the feedshift guide. In the switchback section, paper is conveyed by touching of the switchback press roller rotated by normal rotation of the switchback feed motor (SBFM), with the switchback press pulley activated by turning on the press solenoid (PRSOL). When a certain time (depending on the paper size) elapses, the switchback feed motor (SBFM) reverses the direction of rotation to reverse the rotation of the switchback press roller to switch the direction of paper conveyance.

Paper that has been switched back is conveyed to the saddle finisher by the switchback eject roller rotated by turning on the switchback eject motor (SBEM) and the switchback eject pulley. At this time, the second paper is conveyed to the switchback unit, the press solenoid (PRSOL) is turned off, the switchback press pulley separates from the switchback press roller, and the first paper and the second paper are interchanged in the switchback section.

(Depending on the copier model and the paper size, the press solenoid may not turn off and the switch press pulley may always touch the switchback press roller.)

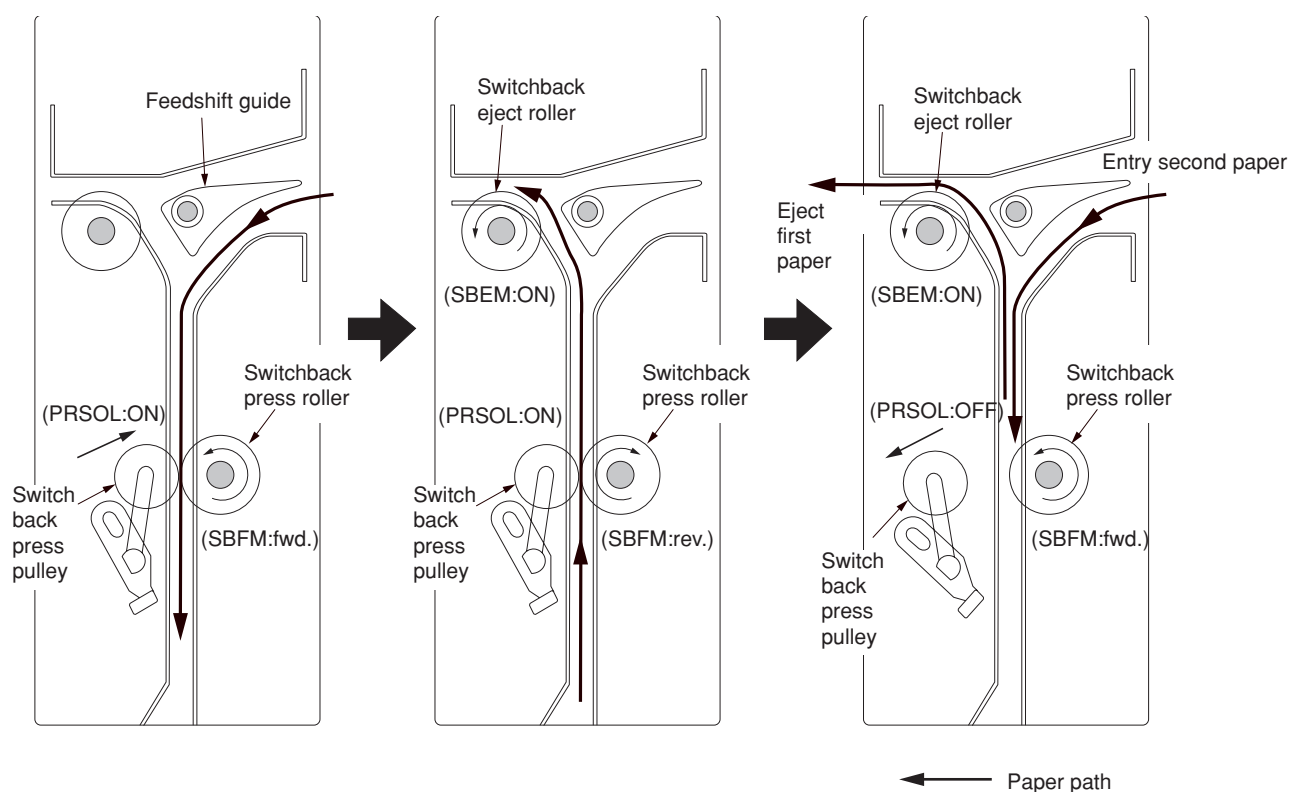


Figure 2-1-3

2-2-1 Electrical parts layout

(1) PCBs

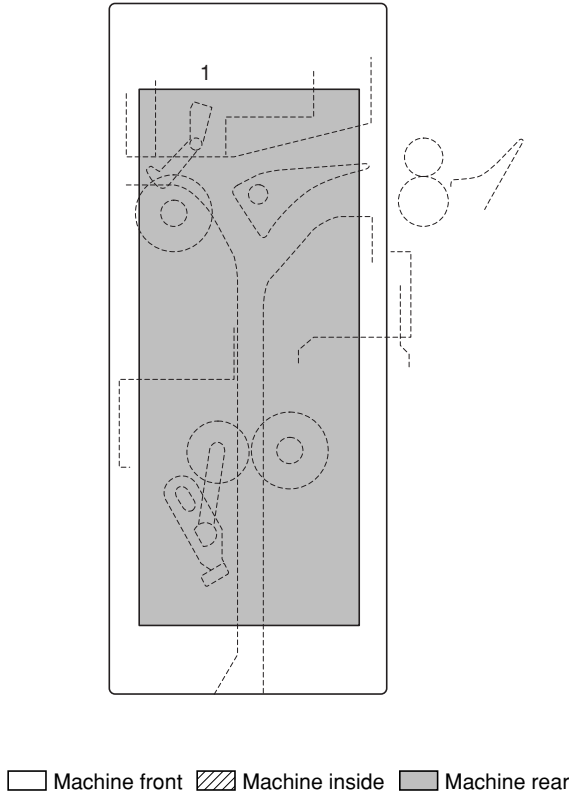
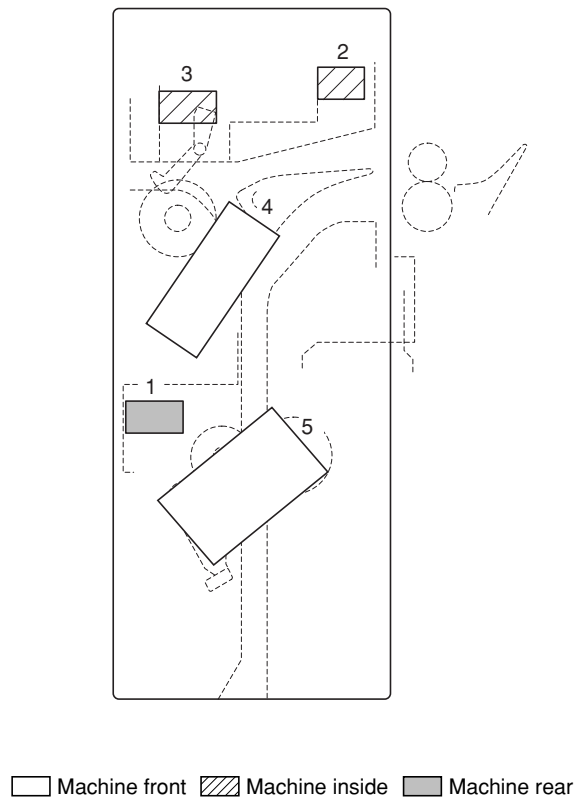
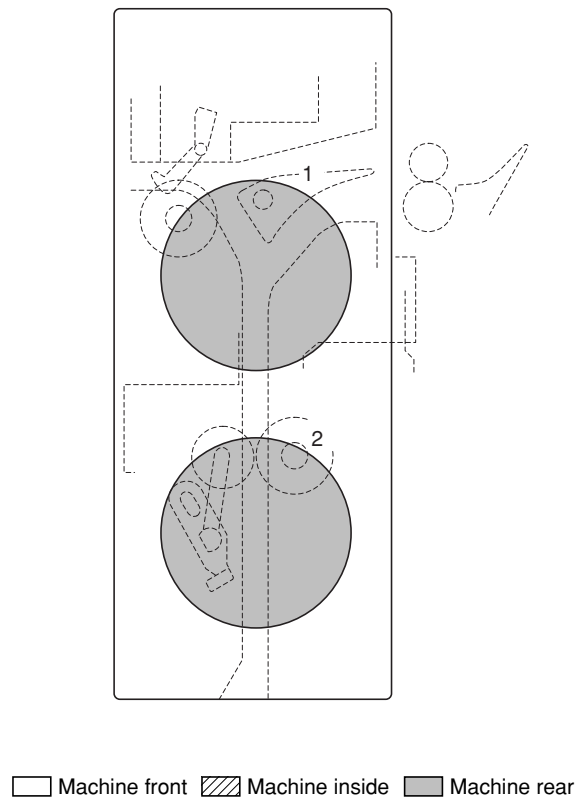


Figure 2-2-1 PCBs

- 1. Main PCB (MPCB) Controls the electrical components.

(2) Switches and solenoids**Figure 2-2-2 Switches and solenoids**

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Safty switch (SSW) | Breaks the safty circuit when the switchback unit is opened. |
| 2. Switchback feed in switch (SBFISW) | Detects the presence of paper in the switchback unit. |
| 3. Switchback eject switch (SBESW) | Detects a paper misfeed in the switchback unit. |
| 4. Feedshift solenoid (FSSOL) | Operates the feedshift guide. |
| 5. Press solenoid (PRSOL) | Operates the switchback press solenoid. |

(3) Motors**Figure 2-2-3 Motors**

1. Switchback eject motor (SBEM) Drives the switchback eject roller.
 2. Switchback feed motor (SBFM) Drives the switchback press roller.

2-3-1 Main PCB

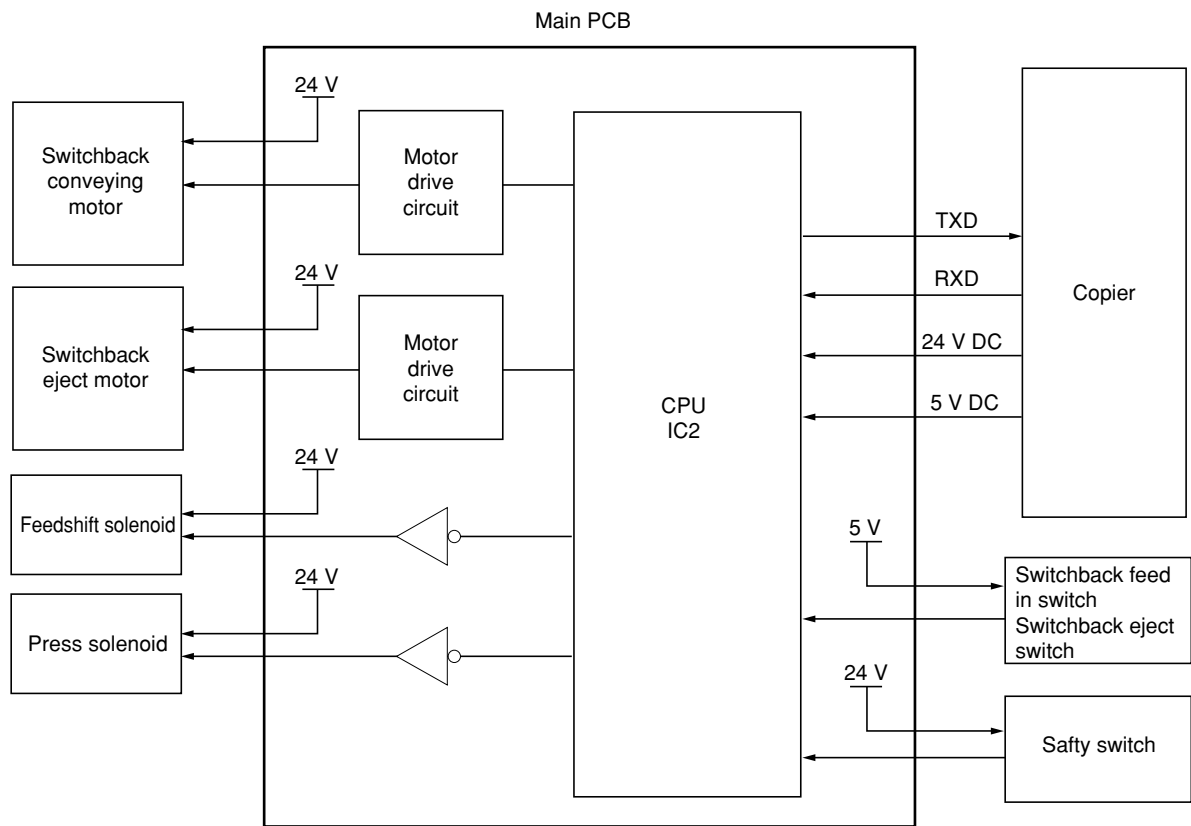


Figure 2-3-1 Main PCB block diagram

The main PCB (MPCB) consists mainly of the CPU IC2 and motor drive circuit. The CPU IC2 detects the condition of the switches and controls the motors and solenoids by serially communicating with the copier.

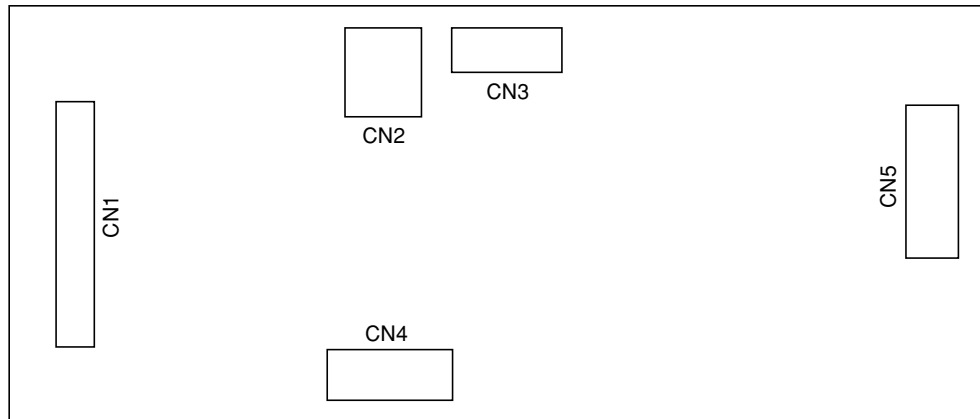
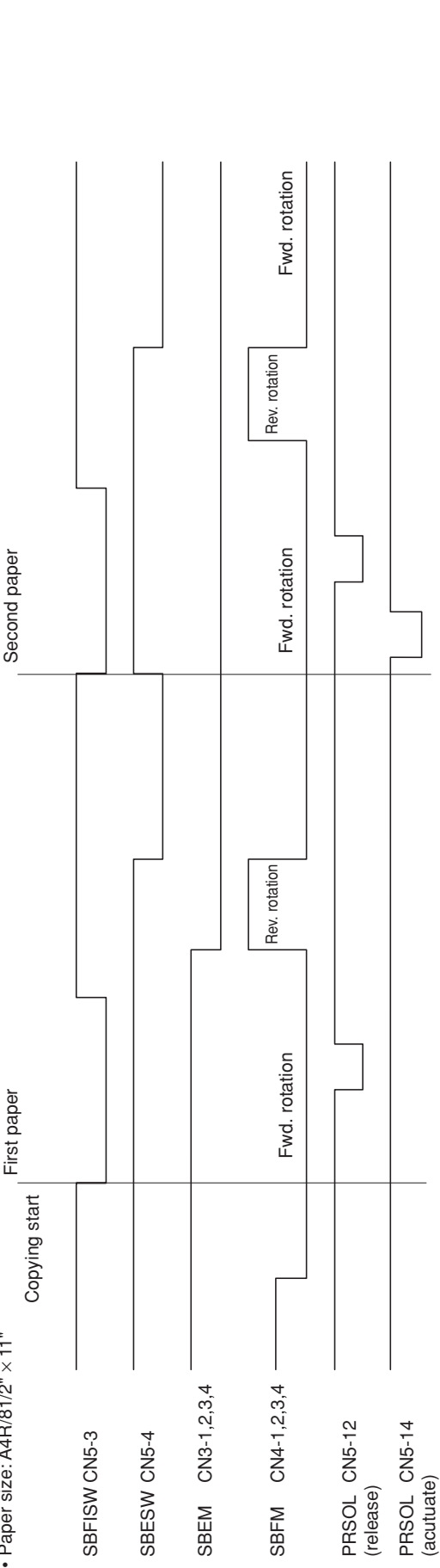


Figure 2-3-2 Main PCB silk-screen diagram

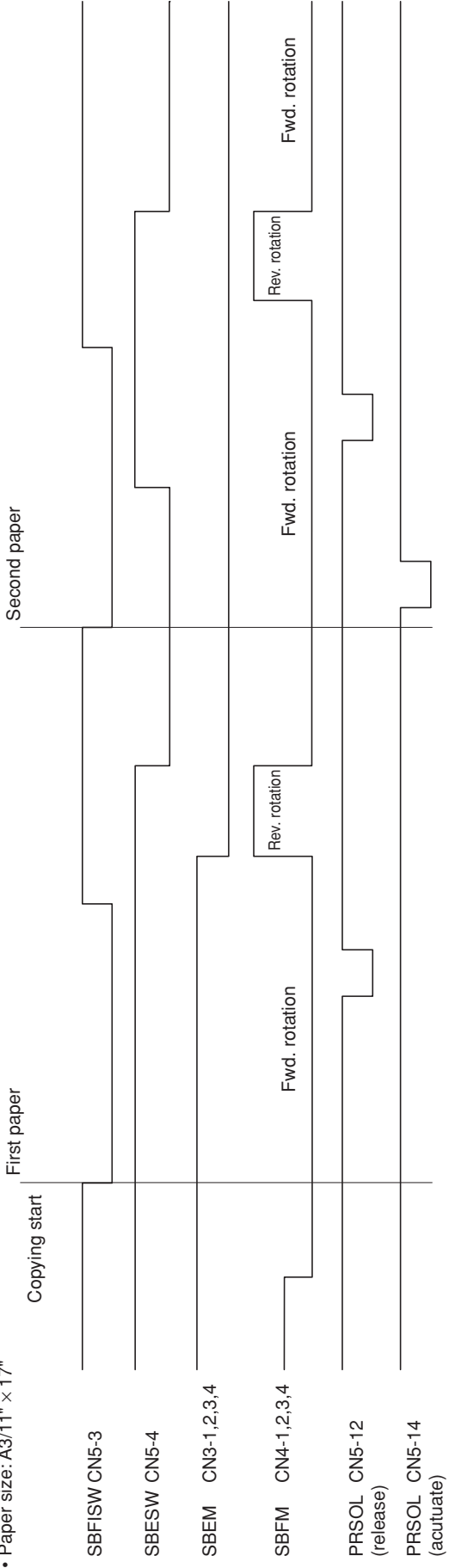
Terminals (CN)		Voltage	Remarks
1-1	1-3	24 V DC	24 V DC supply, input
1-2	1-4	24 V DC	24 V DC supply, input
1-6	1-5	5 V DC	5 V DC supply, input
1-7	1-8	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Serial signal TXD, output
1-9	1-10	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Serial signal RXD, input
1-11	1-5	0/5 V DC	RESET signal, input
1-12	1-5	0/5 V DC	Switchback unit SET signal, output
2-1	1-3	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for SSW, output
2-3	1-3	0/24 V DC	SSW on/off, input
3-1	1-3	0/24 V DC (pulse)	SBEM coil energization pulse, output (A)
3-2	1-3	0/24 V DC (pulse)	SBEM coil energization pulse, output (\bar{A})
3-3	1-3	0/24 V DC (pulse)	SBEM coil energization pulse, output (B)
3-4	1-3	0/24 V DC (pulse)	SBEM coil energization pulse, output (\bar{B})
3-5	1-3	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for SBEM, output
4-1	1-3	0/24 V DC (pulse)	SBFM coil energization pulse, output (A)
4-2	1-3	0/24 V DC (pulse)	SBFM coil energization pulse, output (\bar{A})
4-3	1-3	0/24 V DC (pulse)	SBFM coil energization pulse, output (B)
4-4	1-3	0/24 V DC (pulse)	SBFM coil energization pulse, output (\bar{B})
4-5	1-3	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for SBFM, output
5-1	5-5	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for SBFISW, output
5-2	5-6	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for SBESW, output
5-3	5-5	0/5 V DC	SBFISW on/off, input
5-4	5-6	0/5 V DC	SBESW on/off, input
5-9	1-3	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for FSSOL, output
5-10	1-3	0/24 V DC	FSSOL on/off signal, output
5-11	1-3	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for PRSOL, output
5-12	1-3	0/24 V DC	PRSOL acutuate signal, output
5-14	1-3	0/24 V DC	PRSOL release signal, output

Timing chart No. 1

• Paper size: A4R/81/2" × 11"

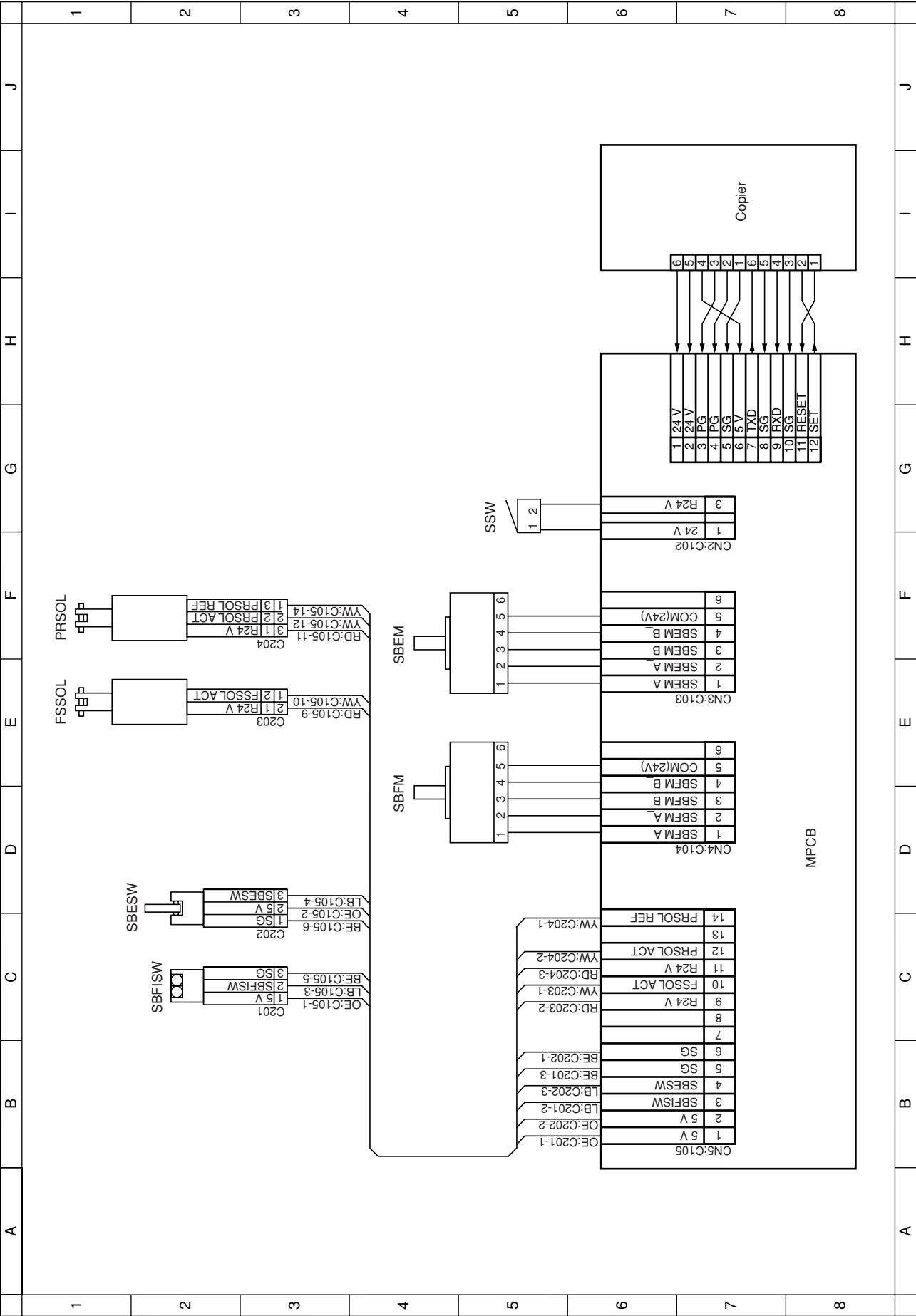


• Paper size: A3/11" × 17"



The timing of all the motors and the solenoids is controlled based on the ON edge of the switchback feed in switch (SBFISW) as the starting point.

Wiring diagram



PF-75

CONTENTS

1-1 Specifications

1-1-1 Specifications	1-1-1
1-1-2 Parts names	1-1-2
1-1-3 Machine cross section	1-1-3
1-1-4 Drive system	1-1-4

1-2 Installation

1-2-1 Unpacking	1-2-1
1-2-2 Installing the dehumidifier heaters (service part)	1-2-2

1-3 Troubleshooting

1-3-1 Paper misfeed detection	1-3-1
(1) Paper misfeed indication	1-3-1
(2) Paper misfeed detection conditions	1-3-1
(3) Paper misfeeds	1-3-3
1-3-2 Self-diagnosis	1-3-5
(1) Self-diagnostic function	1-3-5
(2) Self-diagnostic codes	1-3-6
1-3-3 Electrical problems	1-3-8
(1) The large paper deck does not operate when the copier main switch is turned on.	1-3-8
(2) The deck paper conveying motor does not operate.	1-3-8
(3) Paper deck motor 1 does not operate.	1-3-8
(4) Paper deck motor 2 does not operate.	1-3-8
(5) Paper feed clutch 1 does not operate.	1-3-8
(6) Paper feed clutch 2 does not operate.	1-3-9
(7) The paper conveying clutch does not operate.	1-3-9
1-3-4 Mechanical problems	1-3-10
(1) No primary paper feed.	1-3-10
(2) Paper is fed askew.	1-3-10
(3) Multiple sheets of paper are fed at one time.	1-3-10
(4) Paper jams.	1-3-10
(5) Abnormal noise is heard.	1-3-10

1-4 Assembly and Disassembly

1-4-1 Precautions for assembly and disassembly	1-4-1
(1) Precautions	1-4-1
1-4-2 Paper feed section	1-4-2
(1) Detaching and refitting the upper and lower deck separation rollers	1-4-2
(2) Detaching and refitting the deck paper conveying unit assembly	1-4-3
(3) Detaching and refitting deck paper feed rollers 1 and 2	1-4-3
(4) Adjusting the position of the center adjuster (center line alignment)	1-4-4
(5) Adjusting the amount of slack.	1-4-5

2-1 Mechanical construction

2-1-1 Mechanical construction	2-1-1
-------------------------------------	-------

2-2 Electrical Parts Layout

2-2-1 Electrical parts layout	2-2-1
-------------------------------------	-------

2-3 Operation of the PCBs

2-3-1 Deck main PCB	2-3-1
(1) Paper deck motor drive circuits	1-4-2
(2) Operating principle of reflective photosensors PPSENS1, PPSENS2, PPSENS3 and PESENS	1-4-3

2-4 Appendixes

Timing chart No. 1	2-4-1
Timing chart No. 2	2-4-2
Wiring diagram	2-4-3

1-1-1 Specifications

Paper	Plain paper (75 – 80 g/m ²)
Paper size	A4, B5, 11" × 8 ¹ / ₂ "
Capacity	3000 sheets (1500 sheets × 2)
Power source	Electrically connected to the copier
Dimensions	585 (W) × 590 (D) × 315 (H) mm
	23 ¹ / ₁₆ " (W) × 23 ¹ / ₄ " (D) × 12 ³ / ₈ " (H)
Weight	35 kg/77.2 lbs

1-1-2 Parts names

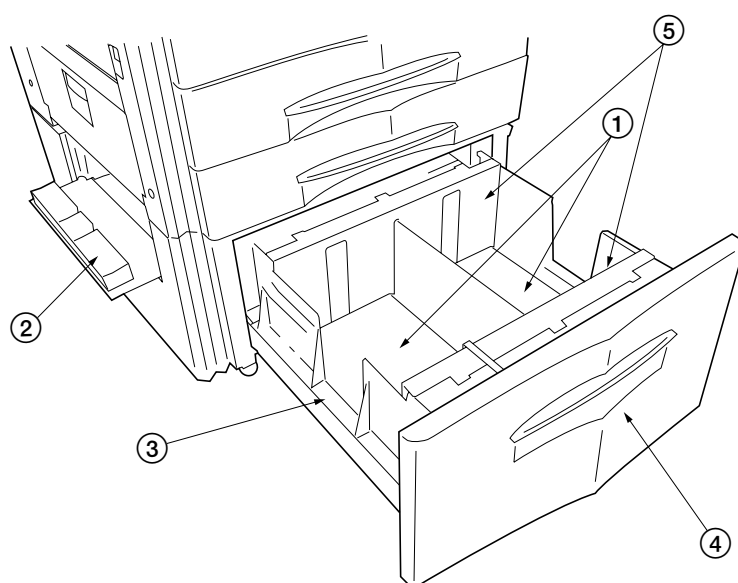
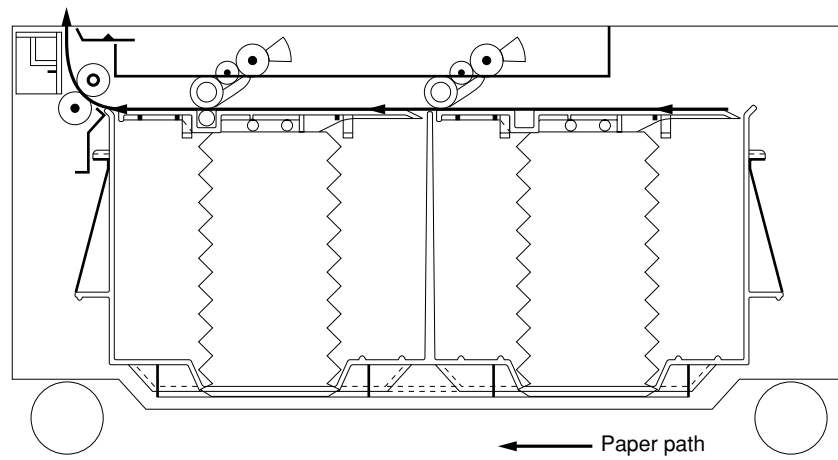
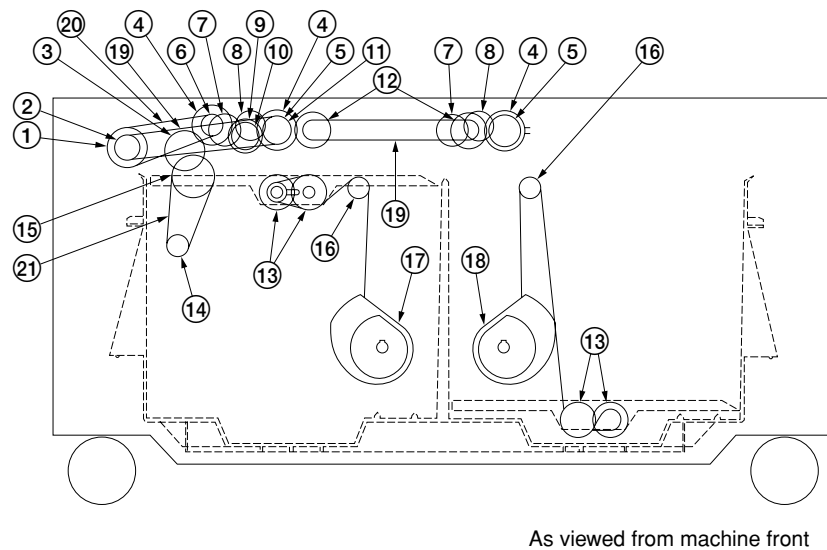


Figure 1-1-2 Parts names

- ① Lifts
- ② Deck side cover
- ③ Drawer
- ④ Deck front cover
- ⑤ Paper side guides

1-1-3 Machine cross section**Figure 1-1-3 Machine cross section**

1-1-4 Drive system



As viewed from machine front

Figure 1-1-4

- | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| ① Pulley 2M-40 | ⑫ Pulley 14, gear 0.8-32 |
| ② Pulley S3M-16 | ⑬ Gear 1.0-24 |
| ③ Gear 0.8-35/1-20 | ⑭ Pulley S2M-18 |
| ④ Gear 2.6 | ⑮ Pulley 43, gear 20 |
| ⑤ Gear 0.8-23 | ⑯ Lift pulley |
| ⑥ Pulley 2M-18 | ⑰ Left lift belt assembly |
| ⑦ Pickup roller gear 0.8-23 | ⑱ Right lift belt assembly |
| ⑧ Gear 0.9-26 | ⑲ Belt S3M276 |
| ⑨ Gear 30 | ⑳ Belt 2M0950 |
| ⑩ Gear 0.8-24 | ㉑ Belt 2M0840 |
| ⑪ Pulley 3M-18 | |

1-2-1 Unpacking

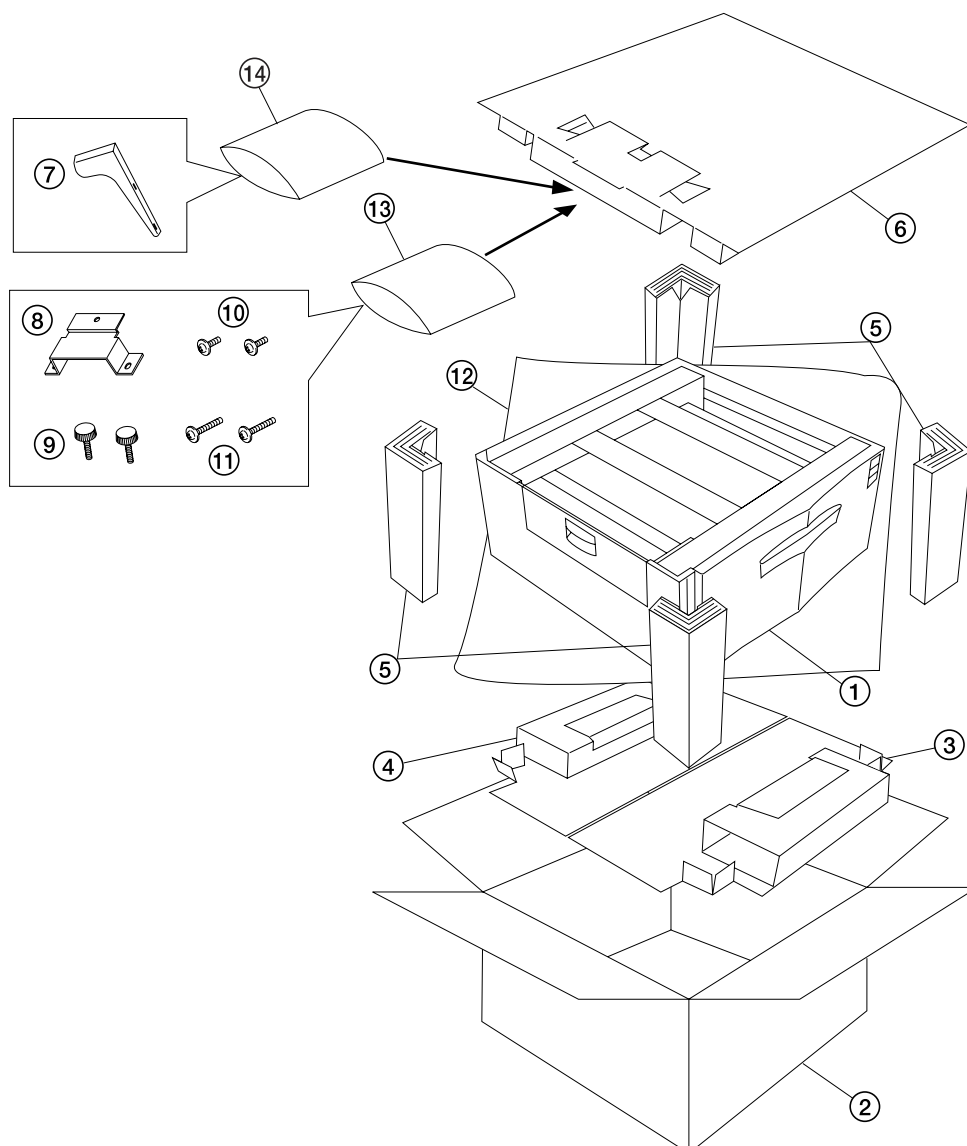


Figure 1-2-1

- | | |
|--------------------|--|
| ① Large paper deck | ⑧ Retainer |
| ② Outer case | ⑨ Pins |
| ③ Lower front pad | ⑩ Cross-head chromate binding screws,
CVM4 × 06 |
| ④ Lower rear pad | ⑪ Chrome TP screws, M4 × 16 |
| ⑤ Support | ⑫ Machine cover |
| ⑥ Upper pad | ⑬ Plastic bag |
| ⑦ Stay | ⑭ Plastic bag |

1-2-2 Installing the dehumidifier heaters (service part)

Dehumidifier heater installation requires the following parts:

Two (2) dehumidifier heaters (P/N 33960020): for 220 – 240 V specifications only

Two (2) dehumidifier heaters (P/N 34860030): for 120 V specifications only

Two (2) dehumidifier heater retainers (P/N 5A707690)

Six (6) M4 × 6 IT tap-tight (S-tight) screws (P/N 37611570)

Relay wire (P/N 5A707890)

Ten (10) wire saddles (P/N M2109000)

Procedure

1. Remove the two screws from each of the deck right cover and deck left cover and then the covers.
2. Remove the three screws holding the deck rear cover and then the cover.
3. Open the large paper deck.
4. Remove the two screws holding the deck paper conveying unit assembly and then the assembly.

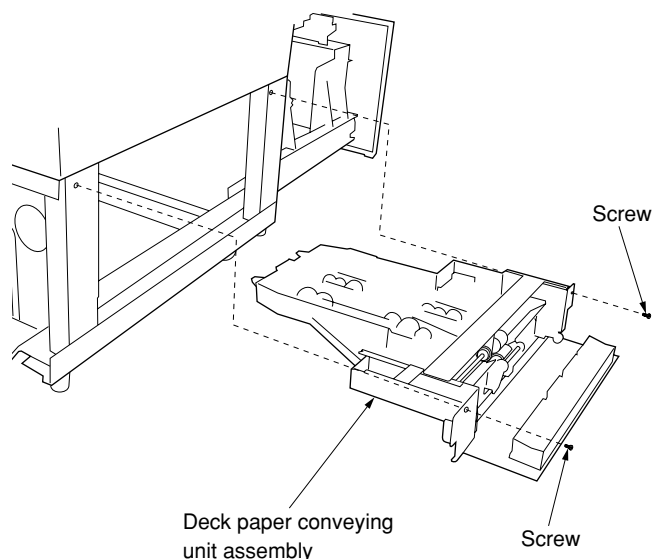


Figure 1-2-2

5. Fit the dehumidifier heaters to the dehumidifier heater retainers using the two screws and wire saddle for each.
6. Fit the dehumidifier heater retainers to the left and right of the large paper deck using one screw for each.

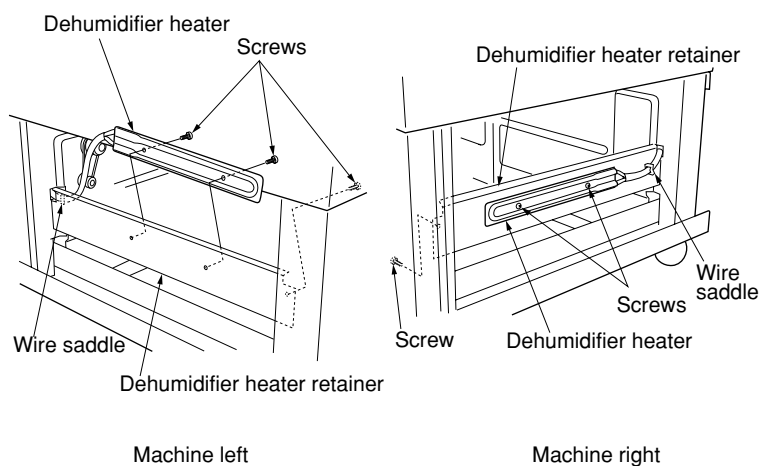


Figure 1-2-3

7. Pull the dehumidifier heater cable out to the machine rear through the cable hole.

8. Detach the open connector from the connector of the main harness on the machine rear.

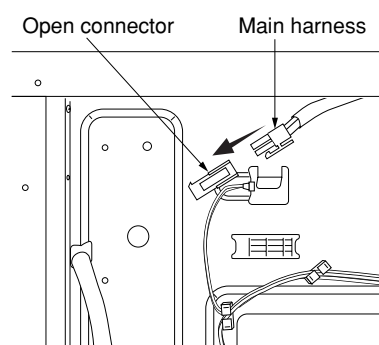


Figure 1-2-4

9. Insert the dehumidifier heater connectors into the relay wire connectors.
10. Insert the main harness connector into the relay wire connector.
11. Tidy up the dehumidifier heater cable and relay wire using the eight wire saddles and route the cable and wire while clipping the wire saddles into the holes in the rear frame.
12. Refit all removed parts.

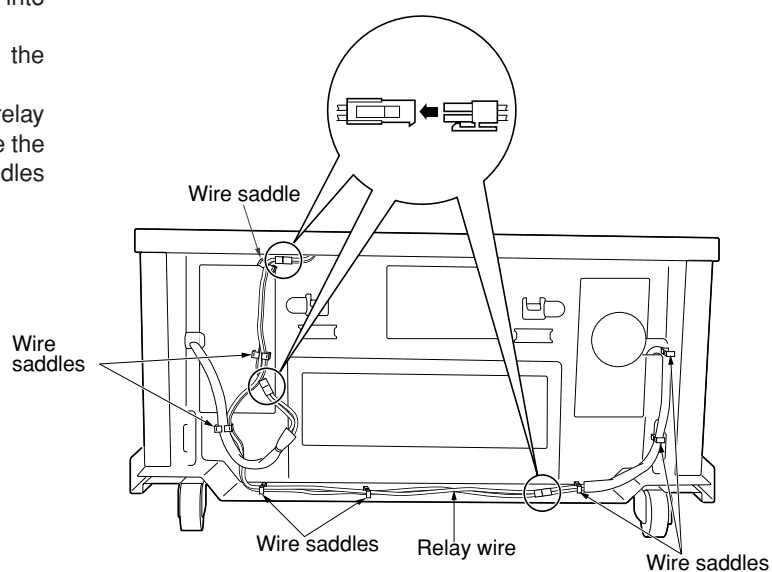


Figure 1-2-5

1-3-1 Paper misfeed detection

(1) Paper misfeed indication

When a paper jam occurs, the machine immediately stops operation. The operation unit of the copier shows a jam message and the jam location.

To reset the paper misfeed detection, open and close the deck side cover or the large paper deck to turn the side cover switch or the deck open/closed safety switch off and on.

(2) Paper misfeed detection conditions

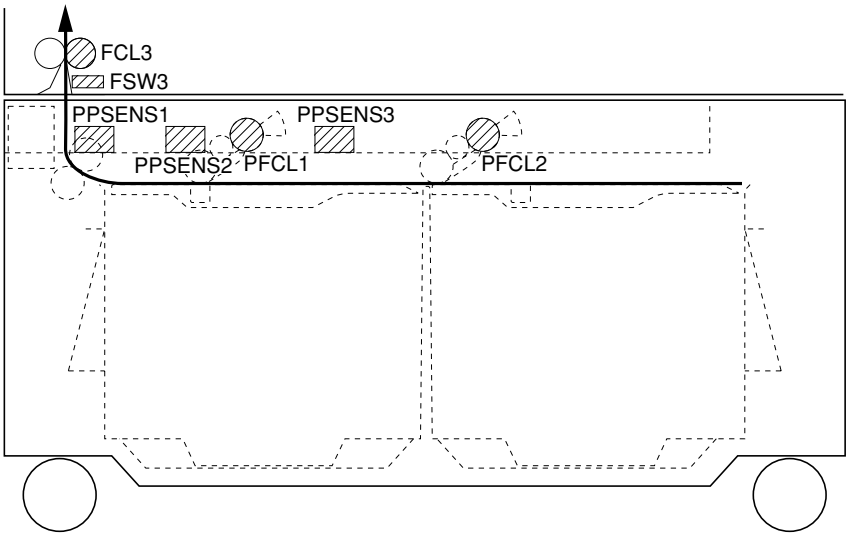
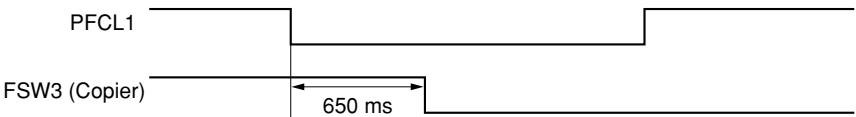


Figure 1-3-1 Large paper deck

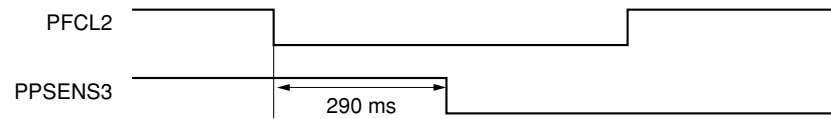
- No paper feed from large paper deck (jam code 12)
Feed switch 3 (FSW3) of the copier does not turn on within 650 ms of paper feed clutch 1 (PFCL1) turning on.



Timing chart 1-3-1

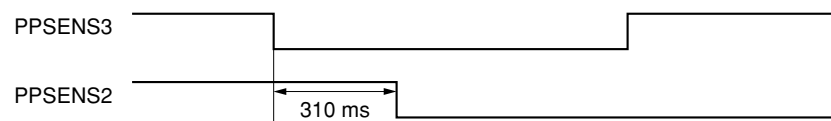
5FF

- Jam in large paper deck horizontal paper conveying section (jam code 15)
Paper path sensor 3 (PPSENS3) does not turn on within 290 ms of paper feed clutch 2 (PFCL2) turning on.



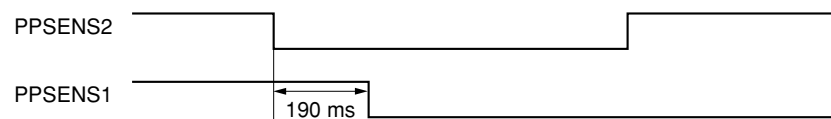
Timing chart 1-3-2

- Jam in large paper deck horizontal paper conveying section (jam code 16)
Paper path sensor 2 (PPSENS2) does not turn on within 310 ms of paper path sensor 3 (PPSENS3) turning on.



Timing chart 1-3-3

- Jam in large paper deck horizontal paper conveying section (jam code 17)
Paper path sensor 1 (PPSENS1) does not turn on within 190 ms of paper path sensor 2 (PPSENS2) turning on.



Timing chart 1-3-4

(3) Paper misfeeds

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(1) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (no paper feed from large paper deck). Jam code 12	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the upper or lower deck separation roller, paper feed roller 1 or 2 is deformed.	Check visually and replace any damaged rollers (see pages 1-4-2, 3).
	Broken copier feed switch 3 actuator.	Check visually and replace feed switch 3 if the actuator is broken.
	Defective feed switch 3.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 3 on and off manually. Replace feed switch 3 if indication of the corresponding switch on the operation panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if paper feed clutch 1 and 2 malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select paper feed clutch 1 or 2 on the operation panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with paper feed clutch 1 and 2.	Check. (see page 1-3-8, 9).
	Check if the deck feed clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select the deck feed clutch on the operation panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the deck feed clutch.	Check (see page 1-3-9).
(2) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (multiple sheets in paper feed section).	Check if the upper or lower deck separation roller is soiled with paper powder.	Check and clean with isopropyl alcohol if soiled.
(3) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (jam in large paper deck horizontal paper conveying section). Jam code 15	Paper in the large paper deck is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the paper side guides are deformed.	Check visually and replace.
	Defective paper path sensor 3.	With 5 V DC present at CN6-12 on the deck main PCB, check if CN6-11 on the deck main PCB remains low when paper path sensor 3 is turned on and off. If it does, replace paper path sensor 3.
	Check if paper feed clutch 2 malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select paper feed clutch 2 on the operation panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with paper feed clutch 2.	Check (see page 1-3-9).

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(4) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (jam in large paper deck horizontal paper conveying section). Jam code 16	Paper in the large paper deck is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the paper side guides are deformed.	Check visually and replace.
	Defective paper path sensor 2.	With 5 V DC present at CN6-9 on the deck main PCB, check if CN6-8 on the deck main PCB remains low when paper path sensor 2 is turned on and off. If it does, replace paper path sensor 2.
	Check if paper feed clutch 1 malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select paper feed clutch 1 on the operation panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with paper feed clutch 1.	Check (see page 1-3-8).
(5) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (jam in large paper deck horizontal paper conveying section). Jam code 17	Paper in the large paper deck is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the paper side guides are deformed.	Check visually and replace.
	Defective paper path sensor 1.	With 5 V DC present at CN6-6 on the deck main PCB, check if CN6-5 on the deck main PCB remains low when paper path sensor 1 is turned on and off. If it does, replace paper path sensor 1.
	Check if the deck feed clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select the deck feed clutch on the operation panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the deck feed clutch.	Check (see page 1-3-9).

1-3-2 Self-diagnosis

(1) Self-diagnostic function

When a problem is detected in the large paper deck, copying is disabled and the problem displayed on the operation unit of the copier as a code consisting of "C" followed by a number between 0420 and 2600, indicating the nature of the problem.

After removing the problem, the self-diagnostic function can be reset by turning the deck open/closed safety switch off and back on.

(2) Self diagnostic codes

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C0420	Communication problem Communication errors from the communication microcomputer on the copier main PCB: No communication: there is no reply after 3 retries. Abnormal communication: a communication error (parity or checksum error) is detected five times in succession.	Poor contact of the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connectors CN3 on the copier main PCB and CN1 on the deck main PCB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Remedy or replace if necessary.
		Defective copier main PCB.	Replace the copier main PCB and check for correct operation.
		Defective deck main PCB.	Replace the deck main PCB and check for correct operation.
C1100	Paper deck motor 1 problem A motor over-current signal is detected continuously for 1 s or longer.	Paper deck motor 1 does not rotate correctly (the motor is overloaded).	Check the gears and remedy if necessary.
		Paper deck motor 1 connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.
C1110	Paper deck motor 2 problem A motor over-current signal is detected continuously for 1 s or longer.	Paper deck motor 2 does not rotate correctly (the motor is overloaded).	Check the gears and remedy if necessary.
		Paper deck motor 2 connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.
C1120	Deck right lift position problem Deck level switch 2 does not turn on within 30 s of paper deck motor 2 turning on.	Defective deck level switch 2.	Check if CN5-4 on the desk main PCB goes low when desk level switch 2 is turned off. If not, replace desk level switch 2.
		Poor contact of deck level switch 2 connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.
		Defective paper deck motor 2.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace paper desk motor 2.
		Poor contact of paper deck motor 2 connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.
		The deck right lift does not rise properly.	Check the gears and belts, and remedy if necessary.
C1130	Deck left lift position problem Deck level switch 2 does not turn on within 30 s of paper deck motor 2 turning on.	Defective deck level switch 1.	Check if CN5-7 on the desk main PCB goes low when desk level switch 1 is turned off. If not, replace desk level switch 1.
		Poor contact of deck level switch 1 connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C1130	Deck left lift position problem Deck level switch 2 does not turn on within 30 s of paper deck motor 2 turning on.	Defective paper deck motor 1.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace paper desk motor 1.
		Poor contact of paper deck motor 1 connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, repair or replace the cable.
		The deck left lift does not rise properly.	Check the gears and belts, and remedy if necessary.
C1160	Sequence problem	Operation start request is sent from the copier to the large paper deck while paper feed is disabled.	Turn the power off and back on (reset request is sent from the copier to the large paper deck to cancel operation start request).
		Paper feed request is sent from the copier to the large paper deck before operation start request.	Turn the power off and back on (reset request is sent from the copier to the large paper deck to cancel operation start request).
C1170	Large paper deck incorrect type problem	Deck for the printer is installed.	Replace the deck for the copier.
C2600	Deck paper conveying motor problem No pulse is input within 500 ms of the start-up. No pulse is input within 100 ms of the previous pulse input.	Defective deck conveying motor PCB.	Replace the deck conveying motor PCB and check for correct operation.
		Deck conveying motor does not rotate correctly (the motor is overloaded).	Check the gears and remedy if necessary.
		Poor contact in the deck conveying motor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.

1-3-3 Electrical problems

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(1) The large paper deck does not operate when the copier main switch is turned on.	Incorrect connection with the copier.	Check the connector.
(2) The deck paper conveying motor does not operate.	Poor contact of the deck paper conveying motor connector terminals.	Check for continuity across the connector terminals. If none, replace them.
	The deck paper conveying motor drive system overloaded.	Check the drive system.
	Defective deck paper conveying motor.	Check if the deck paper conveying motor is operated in maintenance item U247 while the motor drive clock signal is present at CN2-2 on the deck main PCB. If not, replace the deck paper conveying motor.
	Defective deck main PCB.	Check if the motor drive clock signal is present at CN2-2 on the deck main PCB when the deck paper conveying motor is operated in maintenance item U247. If not, replace the deck main PCB.
(3) Paper deck motor 1 does not operate.	Poor contact of the paper deck motor 1 connector terminals.	Check for continuity across the connector terminals. If none, replace them.
	Broken paper deck motor 1 coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace paper deck motor 1.
	Defective deck main PCB.	Check if CN7-13 on the deck main PCB goes low right after the drawer is installed. If not, replace the deck main PCB.
(4) Paper deck motor 2 does not operate.	Poor contact of the paper deck motor 2 connector terminals.	Check for continuity across the connector terminals. If none, replace them.
	Broken paper deck motor 2 coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace paper deck motor 2.
	Defective deck main PCB.	Check if CN7-6 on the deck main PCB goes low right after the drawer is installed. If not, replace the deck main PCB.
(5) Paper feed clutch 1 does not operate.	Poor contact of the paper feed clutch 1 connector terminals.	Check for continuity across the connector terminals. If none, replace them.
	Broken paper feed clutch 1 coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace paper feed clutch 1.
	Defective deck main PCB.	Check if CN4-3 on the deck main PCB goes low when paper feed clutch 1 is operated in maintenance item U247. If not, replace the deck main PCB.

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(6) Paper feed clutch 2 does not operate.	Poor contact of the paper feed clutch 2 connector terminals.	Check for continuity across the connector terminals. If none, replace them.
	Broken paper feed clutch 2 coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace paper feed clutch 2.
	Defective deck main PCB.	Check if CN4-1 on the deck main PCB goes low when paper feed clutch 2 is operated in maintenance item U247. If not, replace the deck main PCB.
(7) The paper conveying clutch does not operate.	Poor contact of the paper conveying clutch connector terminals.	Check for continuity across the connector terminals. If none, replace them.
	Broken paper conveying clutch coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the paper conveying clutch.
	Defective deck main PCB.	Check if CN4-5 on the deck main PCB goes low when the paper conveying clutch is operated in maintenance item U247. If not, replace the deck main PCB.

1-3-4 Mechanical problems

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(1) No primary paper feed.	Check if the upper or lower deck separation roller is soiled with paper powder.	Clean with isopropyl alcohol.
	Check if deck paper feed roller 1 or 2 is soiled with paper powder.	Clean with isopropyl alcohol.
	Check if the upper or lower deck separation roller is worn or deformed.	Replace (see page 1-4-2).
	Check if deck paper feed roller 1 or 2 is worn or deformed.	Replace (see page 1-4-3).
	Check if paper feed clutch 1, 2 or the paper conveying clutch malfunctions.	Remedy or replace.
(2) Paper is fed askew.	Check if the upper or lower deck separation roller is worn or deformed.	Replace (see page 1-4-2).
	Check if deck paper feed roller 1 or 2 is worn or deformed.	Replace (see page 1-4-3).
	Check if the paper side guides are deformed.	Remedy or replace.
(3) Multiple sheets of paper are fed at one time.	Check if the paper is excessively curled.	Change the paper.
	Paper is not loaded correctly.	Correct.
	Check if the upper or lower deck separation roller is worn or deformed.	Replace (see page 1-4-2).
(4) Paper jams.	Check if the paper is excessively curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the paper side guides are deformed.	Remedy or replace.
(5) Abnormal noise is heard.	Check if rollers and gears operate smoothly.	Grease the bushings and gears.
	Check for any abnormality with motors and clutches.	Replace.
	Check for any drive belt out of place.	Remedy if necessary.

1-4-1 Precautions for assembly and disassembly

(1) Precautions

- Be sure to turn the main switch off and disconnect the power plug before starting disassembly.
- When handling PCBs, do not touch connectors with bare hands or damage the board.
- Do not touch PCBs containing ICs with bare hands or any object prone to static charge.
- Use the following testers when measuring voltages:
 - Hioki 3200
 - Sanwa MD-180C
 - Sanwa YX-360TR
 - Beckman TECH300
 - Beckman DM45
 - Beckman 330 (capable of measuring RMS values)
 - Beckman 3030 (capable of measuring RMS values)
 - Beckman DM850 (capable of measuring RMS values)
 - Fluke 8060A (capable of measuring RMS values)
 - Arlec DMM1050
 - Arlec YF1030C

1-4-2 Paper feed section

(1) Detaching and refitting the upper and lower deck separation rollers

Clean or replace the upper and lower deck separation rollers as follows.

Procedure

1. Open the deck side cover.
2. Remove stop ring 1.
3. Remove the shaft.
4. Remove the lower deck separation roller assembly.
5. Remove stop ring 2 securing the lower deck separation roller and then the roller.
6. Remove stop ring 3 securing the upper deck separation roller and then the roller.
7. Clean or replace the upper and lower deck separation rollers.
8. Refit all removed parts.

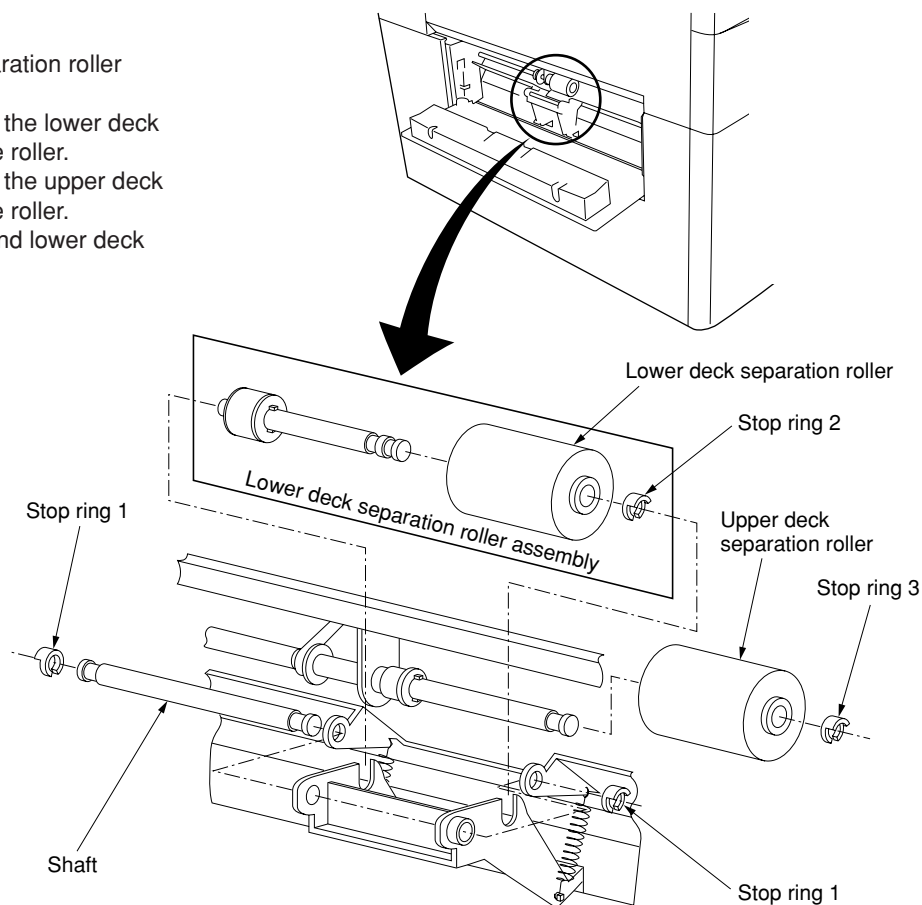


Figure 1-4-1 Detaching and refitting the upper and lower deck separation rollers

(2) Detaching and refitting the deck paper conveying unit assembly

Replace the desk upper or lower paper width switches as follows.

Procedure

1. Open the drawer.
2. Remove the left cover.
3. Remove the two screws holding the deck paper conveying unit assembly and then the assembly.

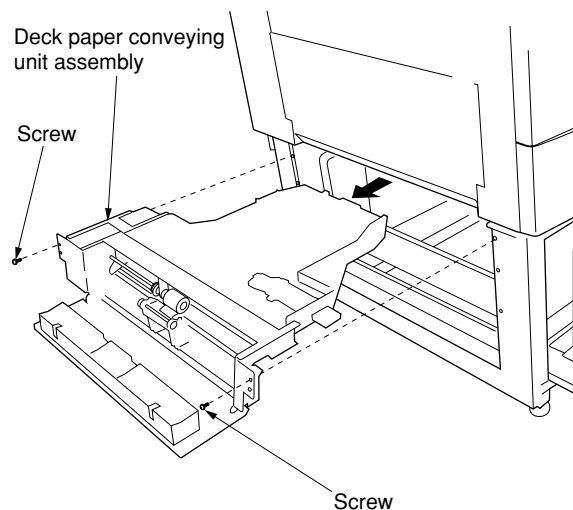


Figure 1-4-2 Detaching and refitting the deck paper conveying unit assembly

(3) Detaching and refitting deck paper feed rollers 1 and 2

Clean or replace paper feed rollers 1 and 2 as follows.

Procedure

1. Turn the deck paper conveying unit over.
2. Remove the stop ring while lifting the deck paper feed roller section.
3. Pull out the shifting shaft and then deck paper feed rollers 1 and 2.
4. Clean or replace deck paper feed rollers 1 and 2.
5. Refit all removed parts.

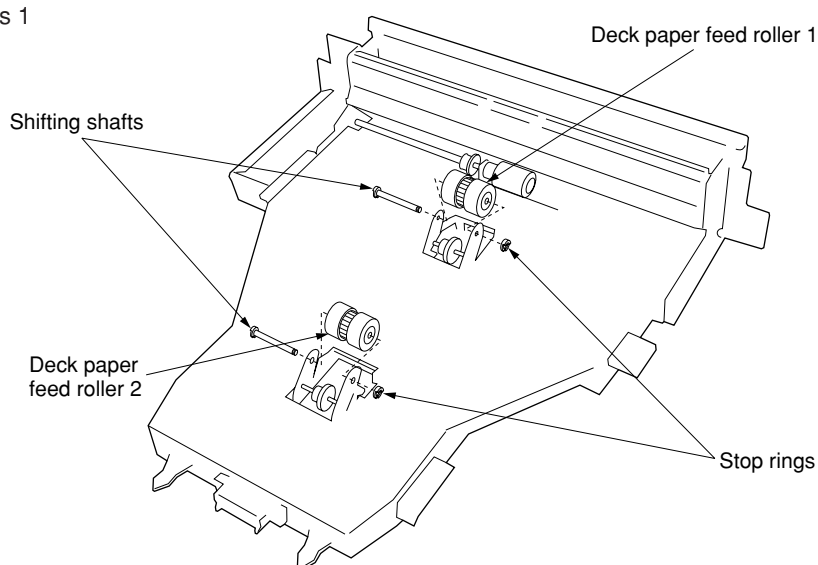


Figure 1-4-3 Detaching and refitting deck paper feed rollers 1 and 2

(4) Adjusting the position of the center adjuster (center line alignment)

Perform the following adjustment if the center lines of the copy image and the copy paper are misaligned.

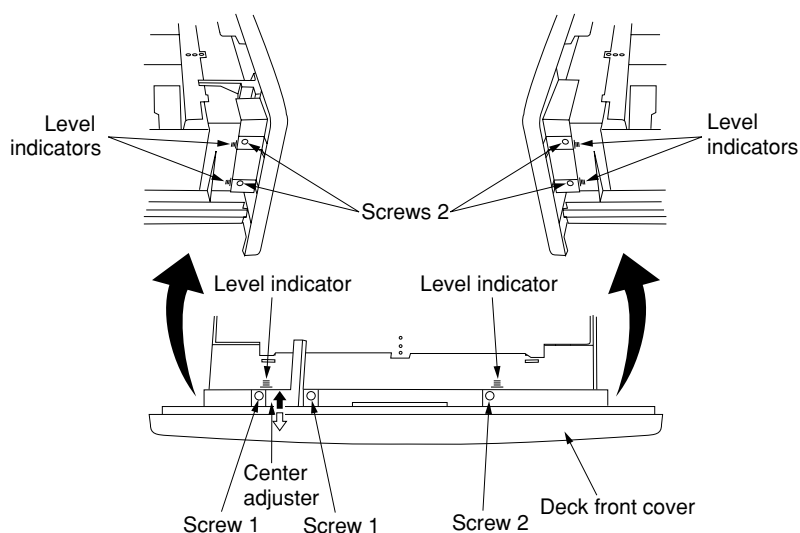
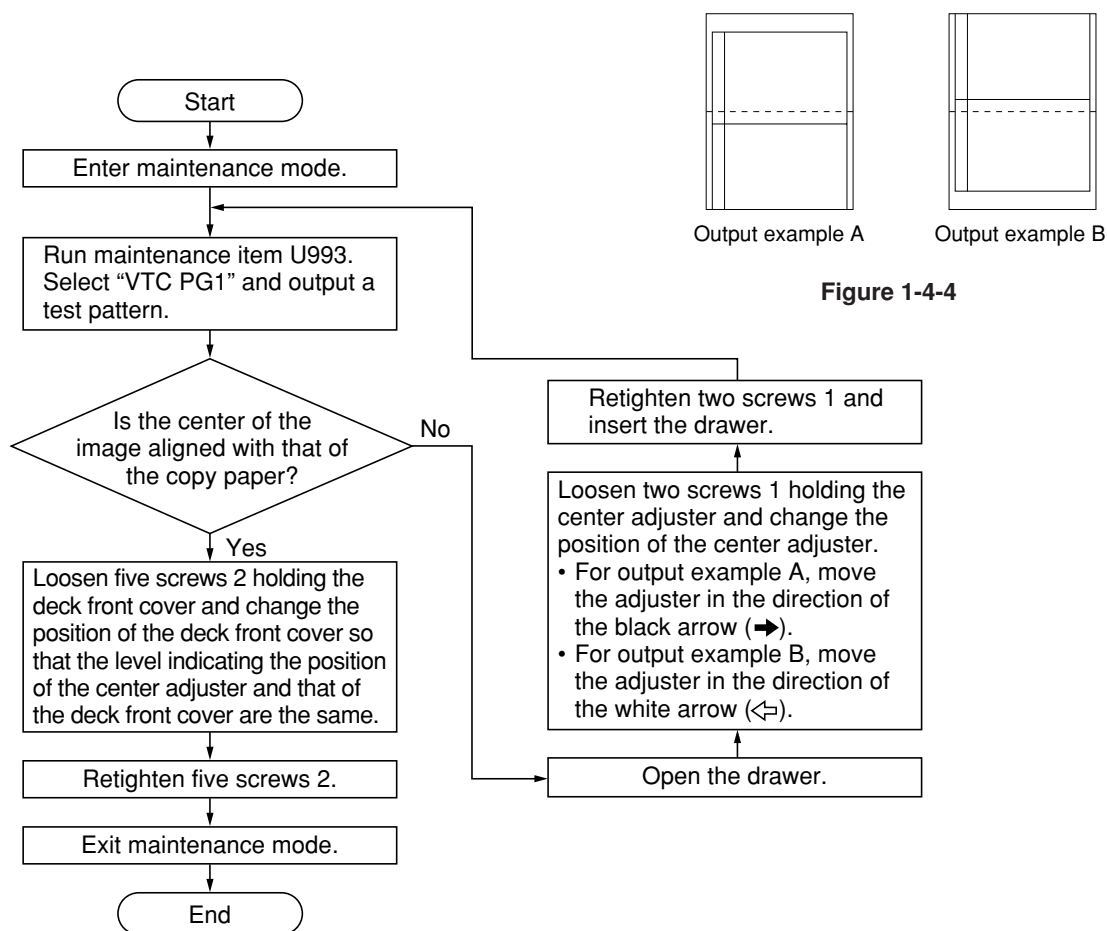
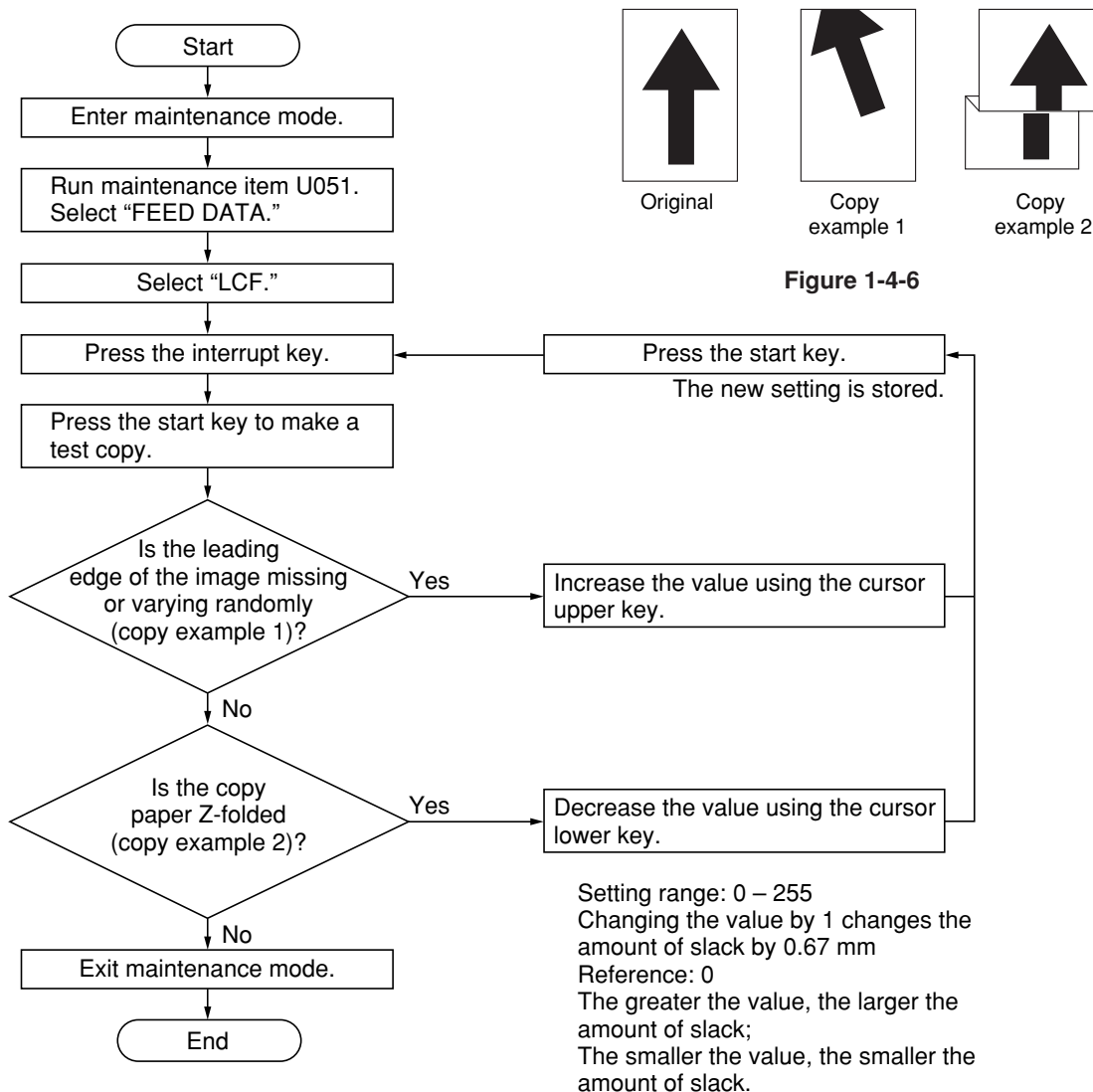
Procedure

Figure 1-4-5 Adjusting the position of the center adjuster

(5) Adjusting the amount of slack

Perform the following adjustment if the leading edge of the copy image is missing or varies randomly, or if the copy paper is Z-folded.

Procedure



2-1-1 Mechanical construction

The large paper deck consists mainly of the left and right cassettes and separation section. The left cassette paper feed section sends paper from the lift to the upper and lower deck separation rollers. When the left cassette becomes empty, the right cassette paper feed section conveys paper onto the lift of the left cassette. The upper and lower deck separation rollers in the separation section convey paper received from the left cassette paper feed section into the copier, preventing multiple sheets from being fed at one time.

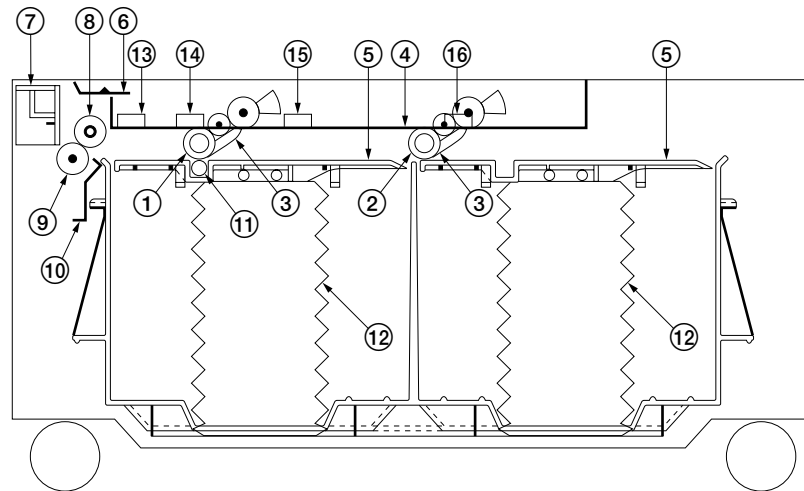


Figure 2-1-1 Mechanical construction

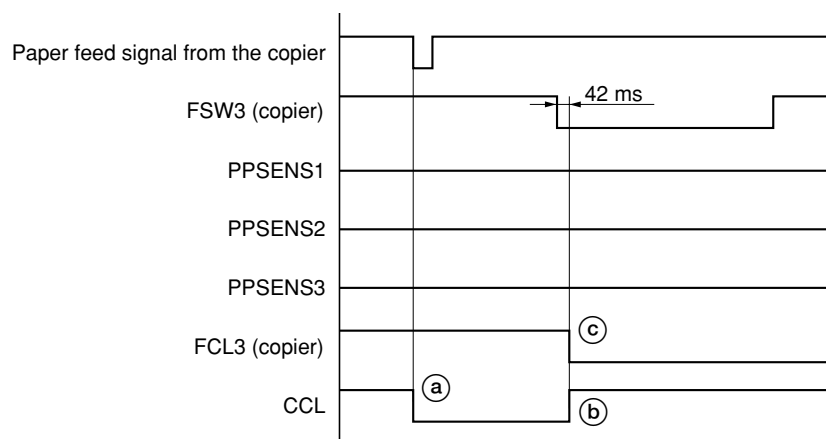
- | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| ① Deck paper feed roller 1 | ⑨ Lower deck separation roller |
| ② Deck paper feed roller 2 | ⑩ Paper guide D |
| ③ Pickup arm | ⑪ Guide pulley |
| ④ Paper conveying base | ⑫ Air damper |
| ⑤ Lift | ⑬ Paper path sensor 1 (PPSENS1) |
| ⑥ Paper guide U | ⑭ Paper path sensor 2 (PPSENS2) |
| ⑦ Deck side cover | ⑮ Paper path sensor 3 (PPSENS3) |
| ⑧ Upper deck separation roller | ⑯ Paper empty sensor (PESENS) |

• Left cassette paper feed

As the paper conveying clutch (CCL) turns on, the drive is transmitted to the upper and lower deck separation rollers, starting paper feed from the left cassette. The upper and lower deck separation rollers ensure that the paper is fed one sheet at a time and that it is fed into the copier correctly.

To prevent multiple sheets from being fed, there is a torque limiter on the lower deck separation roller.

- When the left cassette is empty, its lift serves as a guide for the paper being conveyed from the right cassette lift.



Timing chart 2-1-1 Left cassette paper feed

- Ⓐ At the same time as the paper feed signal from the copier turns on, the paper conveying clutch (CCL) turns on to start paper feed.
- Ⓑ 42 ms after the leading edge of the paper turns copier feed switch 3 (FSW3) on, the paper conveying clutch (CCL) turns off.
- Ⓒ 42 ms after copier feed switch 3 (FSW3) has turned on, copier feed clutch 3 (FCL3) turns on to feed the paper to complete paper feed from the left cassette.

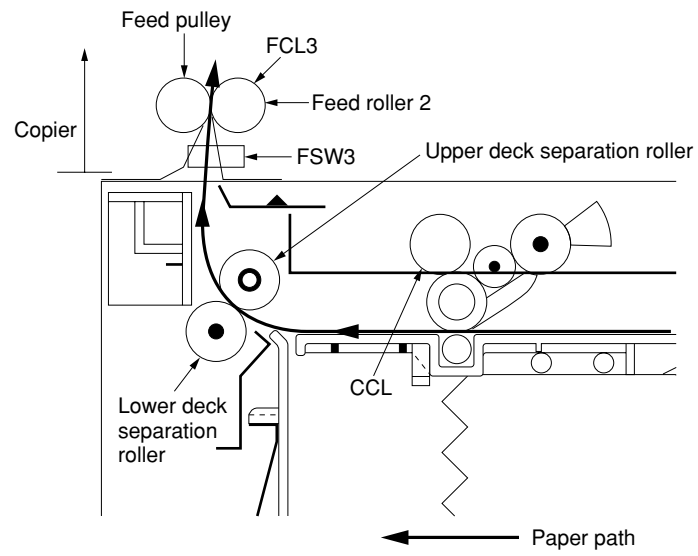


Figure 2-1-2 Left cassette paper feed section

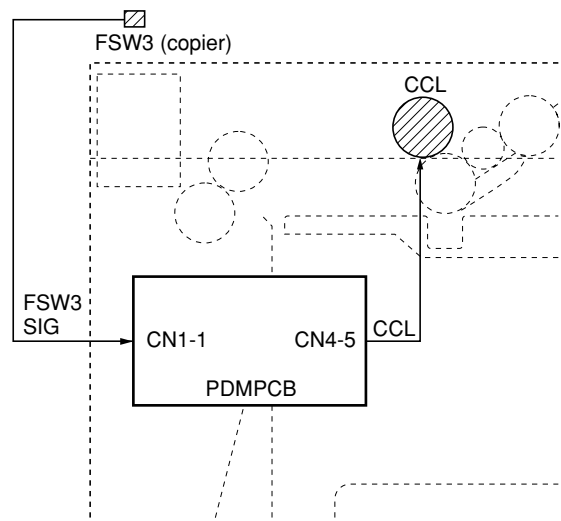
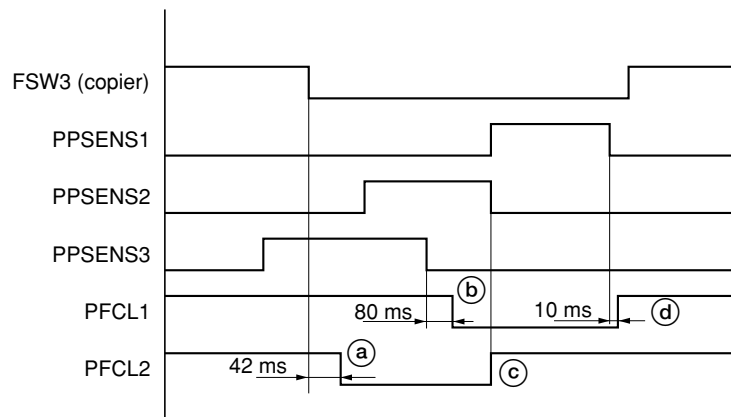


Figure 2-1-3 Left cassette paper feed section block diagram

• Right cassette paper feed

As the last sheet in the left cassette is fed, paper feed clutch 2 (PFCL2) and paper feed clutch 1 (PFCL1) turn on for paper feed from the right cassette. Deck paper feed rollers 1 and 2 start to rotate to convey paper from the right cassette onto the left cassette lift.



Timing chart 2-1-2 Right cassette paper feed

- Ⓐ 42 ms after the last paper from the left cassette has turned copier feed switch 3 (FSW3) on, paper feed clutch 2 (PFCL2) turns on to start paper feed.
- Ⓑ 80 ms after the leading edge of the paper from the right cassette has turned paper path sensor 3 (PPSENS3) on, paper feed clutch 1 (PFCL1) turns on.
- Ⓒ At the same time as the leading edge of the paper from the right cassette turns paper path sensor 2 (PPSENS2) on, paper feed clutch 2 (PFCL2) turns off.
- Ⓓ 10 ms after the leading edge of the paper from the right cassette turns paper path sensor 1 (PPSENS1) on, paper feed clutch 1 (PFCL1) turns off and paper stops in the left cassette to complete paper feed from the right cassette.

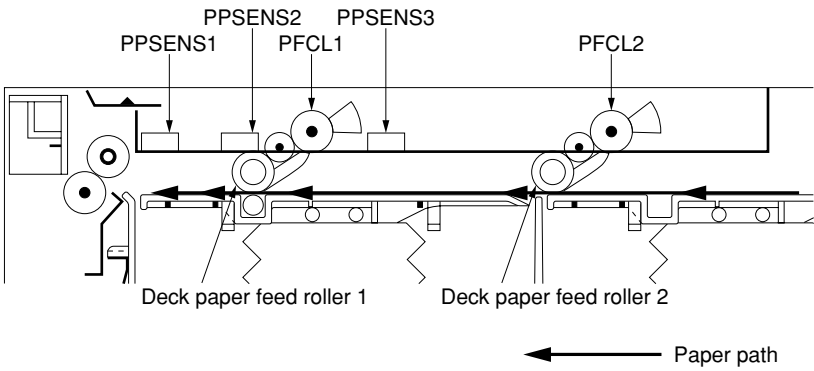


Figure 2-1-4 Right cassette paper feed section

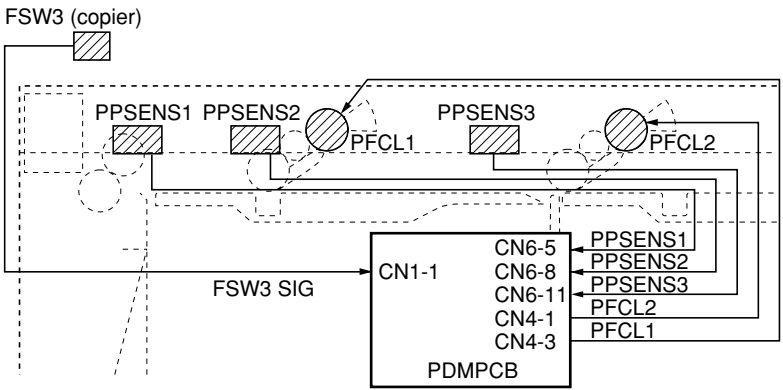


Figure 2-1-5 Right cassette paper feed section block diagram

• Raising and lowering the lifts

The following is a description of the right cassette lift operating mechanism. The left cassette lift operates in the same manner.

Paper deck motor 2 (PDM2) drives the right lift belt assembly that winches the belt up and hence raises the lift until it is stopped by deck level switch 2 (DLSW2).

When paper is loaded on the lift and the deck is closed, the lift is raised until deck level switch 2 (DLSW2) turns on.

When deck level switch 2 (DLSW2) is turned off as the paper on the lift is used, paper deck motor 2 (PDM2) starts to raise the lift until the switch turns on.

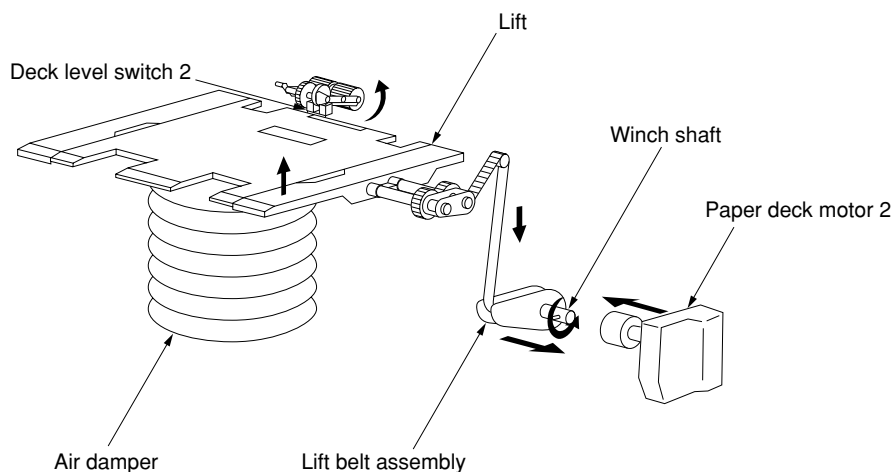


Figure 2-1-6 Raising and lowering the lift

When the deck is opened for removing a jammed paper or other purposes, the winch shaft is released from its holder on paper deck motor 2 (PDM2), allowing the lift to descend under its own weight. The air damper buffers the impact of the descending lift.

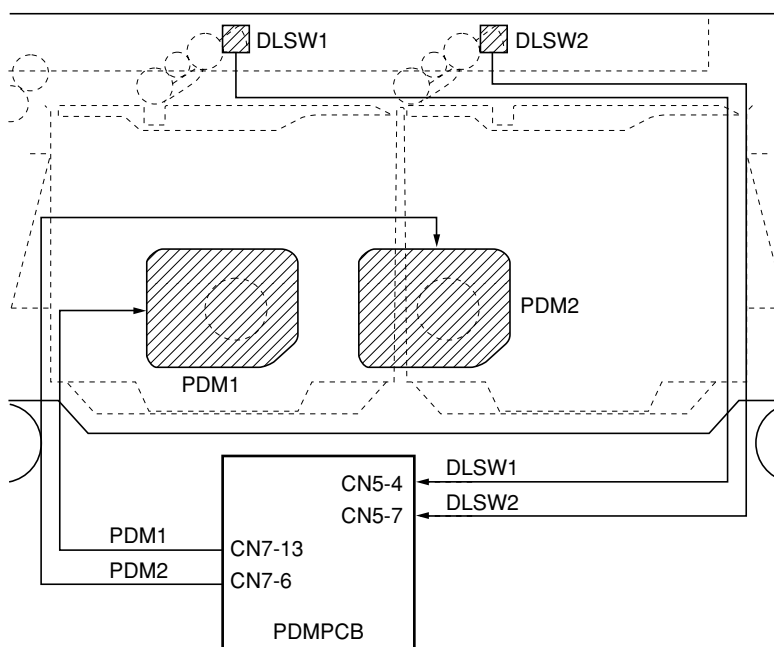


Figure 2-1-7 Lift block diagram

• Detecting the paper level

The lift rises as paper in the deck is used. When the remaining number of sheets in either right or left cassette reduces to around 100 to 250 sheets, the projection on the lift belt assembly pushes against the sensor lever which turns the relevant paper level detection sensor 1 or 2 (PLDSENS1/2) on.

When both paper level detection sensors 1 and 2 (PLDSENS1, 2) have turned on, the message "Low on paper." is shown on the copier message display. This message is not shown when only one of them is on.

As more copies are made with the message on, paper path sensors 1, 2 and 3 (PPSENS1, 2, 3) or the paper empty sensor (PESENS) start to detect absence of paper, and the message "Place paper in deck." is shown.

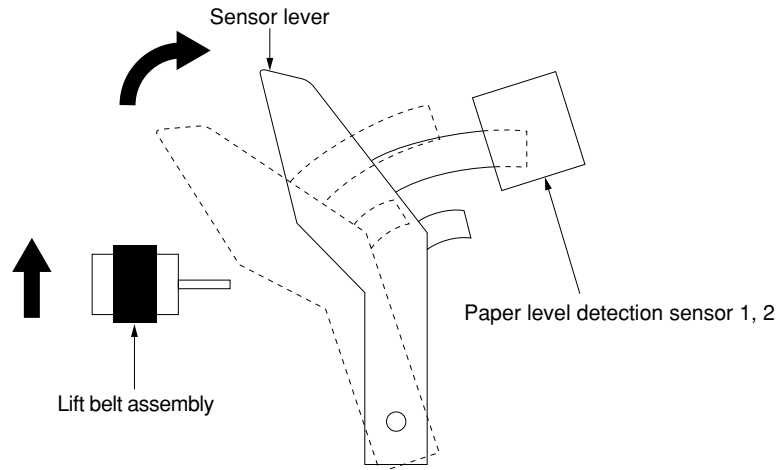


Figure 2-1-7 Detecting the paper level

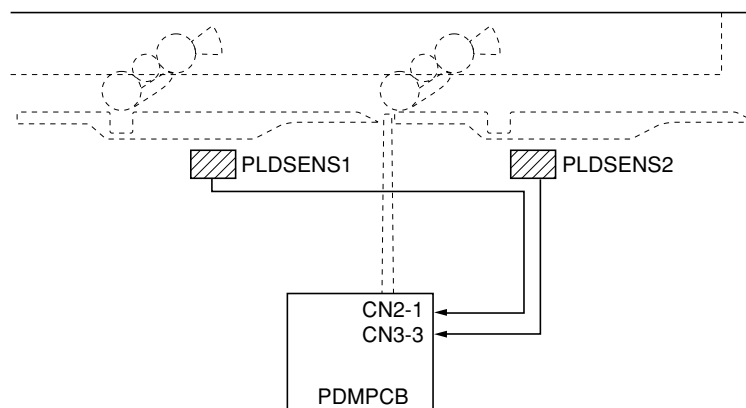


Figure 2-1-8 Paper level detection system block diagram

2-2-1 Electrical parts layout

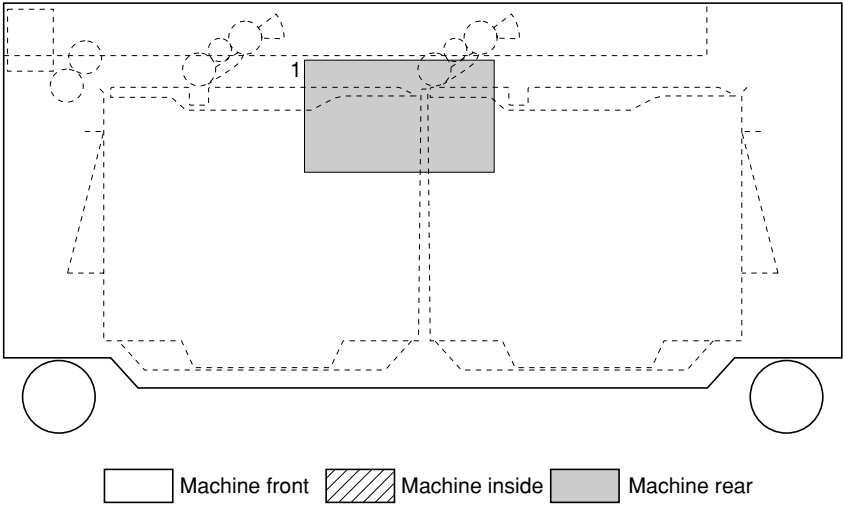


Figure 2-2-1 PCBs

- 1. Deck main PCB (PDMPCB) Controls electrical components and communications with the copier.

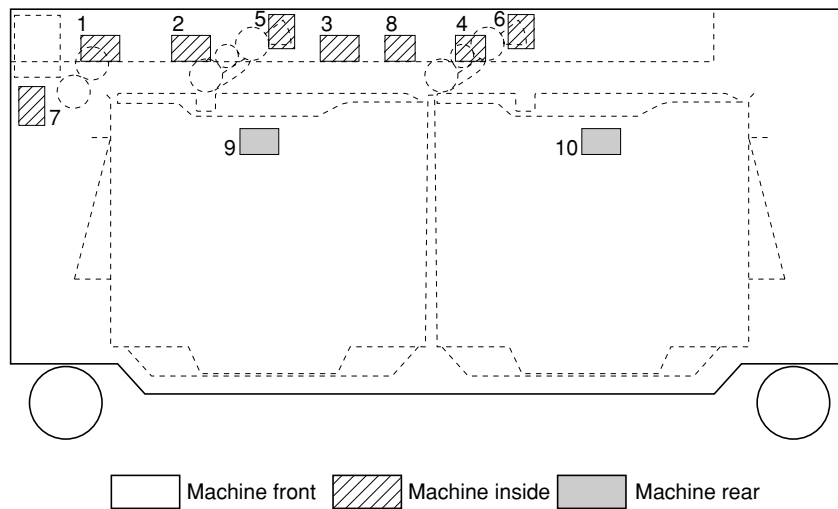


Figure 2-2-2 Switches and sensors

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Paper path sensor 1 (PPSENS1) | Detect paper jams and the absence of paper on the lifts. |
| 2. Paper path sensor 2 (PPSENS2) | Detect paper jams and the absence of paper on the lifts. |
| 3. Paper path sensor 3 (PPSENS3) | Detect paper jams and the absence of paper on the lifts. |
| 4. Paper empty sensor (PESENS) | Detects the absence of paper in the right cassette. |
| 5. Deck level switch 1 (DLSW1) | Detects the left cassette lift in the home position. |
| 6. Deck level switch 2 (DLSW2) | Detects the right cassette lift in the home position. |
| 7. Side cover switch (SCSW) | Detects if the deck side cover is open or closed. |
| 8. Deck open/closed safety switch (DOSSW) | Detects if the deck is open or closed. |
| 9. Paper level detection sensor 1 (PLDSENS1) | Detects the paper level in the left cassette. |
| 10. Paper level detection sensor 2 (PLDSENS2) | Detects the paper level in the right cassette. |

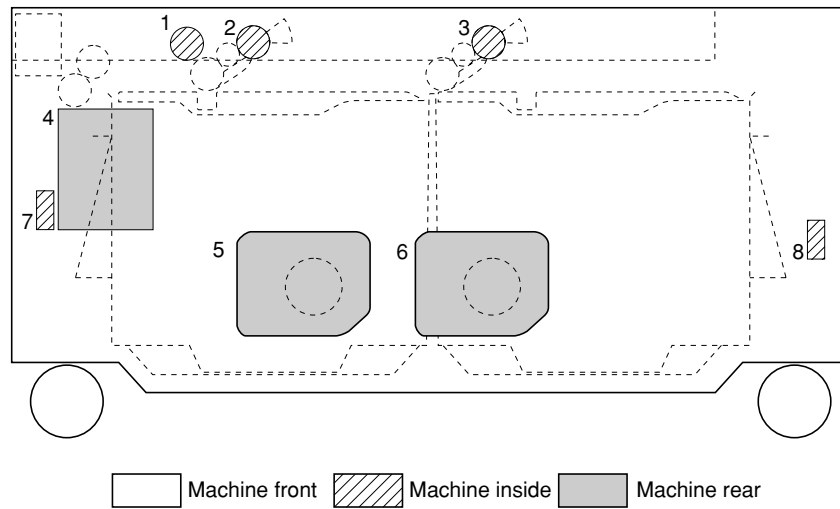


Figure 2-2-3 Other electrical components

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Paper conveying clutch (CCL) | Regulates drive transmission to the upper and lower deck separation rollers. |
| 2. Paper feed clutch 1 (PFCL1) | Regulates drive transmission to deck paper feed roller 1. |
| 3. Paper feed clutch 2 (PFCL2) | Regulates drive transmission to deck paper feed roller 2. |
| 4. Deck paper conveying motor (CM) | Drives the large paper deck. |
| 5. Paper deck motor 1 (PDM1) | Raises the left cassette lift. |
| 6. Paper deck motor 2 (PDM2) | Raises the right cassette lift. |
| 7. Dehumidifier heater 1* (DH1) | Dehumidifies paper in the left cassette. |
| 8. Dehumidifier heater 2* (DH2) | Dehumidifies paper in the right cassette. |

* Service part.

2-3-1 Deck main PCB

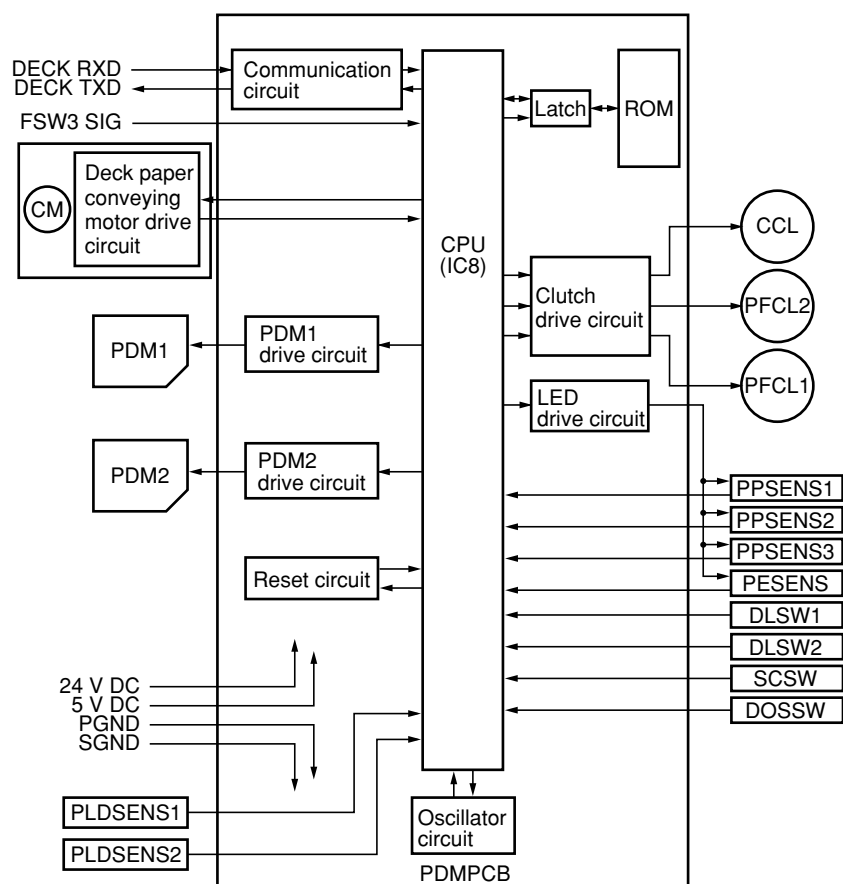


Figure 2-3-1 Deck main PCB block diagram

The deck main PCB (PDMPCB) consists of the CPU IC8, which serially communicates with the copier main PCB (MPCB); the deck paper conveying motor drive circuit; the paper deck motor drive circuits; the clutch drive circuit; the reset circuit; and the LED drive circuit. It controls the entire large paper deck.

(1) Paper deck motor drive circuits

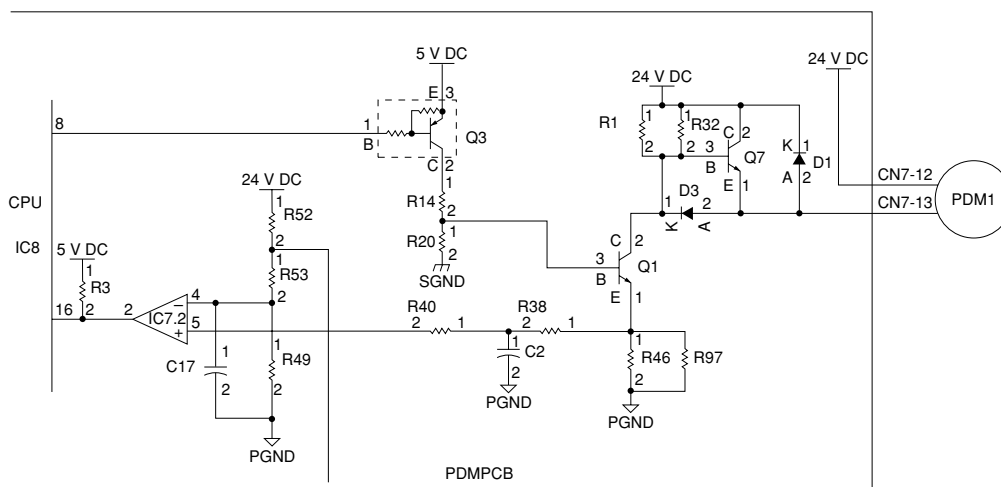


Figure 2-3-2 Paper deck motor 1 drive circuit

The following is a description of the paper deck motor 1 drive circuit. Paper deck motors 1 and 2 are identical.

When pin 8 of the CPU IC8 goes low, transistor Q1 is turned on causing paper deck motor 1 (PDM1) to rotate. When transistor Q1 is turned off, paper deck motor 1 (PDM1) stops. A brake circuit ensures the prompt stopping of the motor as follows.

When transistor Q1 turns off, transistor Q7 turns on, supplying 24 V DC to CN7-13 thereby preventing paper deck motor 1 (PDM1) from rotating further under momentum.

To prevent the cassette lift from being raised past its limit, an overcurrent lock detection circuit checks for the overcurrent that would occur when paper deck motor 1 (PDM1) locks. The current from paper deck motor 1 (PDM1) into transistor Q1 is converted to a voltage by resistor R46. This voltage is input to pin 5 of comparator IC7.2. If this voltage is higher than the reference at pin 4, 5 V DC is input to pin 16 of CPU IC8. If it is lower, 0 V is input to pin 16. Overcurrent of paper deck motor 1 (PDM1) causes the voltage at pin 5 of IC7.2 to become higher than that at pin 4. This generates 5 V DC at pin 16 of CPU IC8, which detects overcurrent. If overcurrent lasts more than 1 s, paper deck motor 1 (PDM1) failure is determined, and pin 8 of CPU IC8 outputs 5 V DC, turning paper deck motor 1 (PDM1) off.

(2) Operating principle of reflective photosensors PPSENS1, PPSENS2, PPSENS3 and PESENS

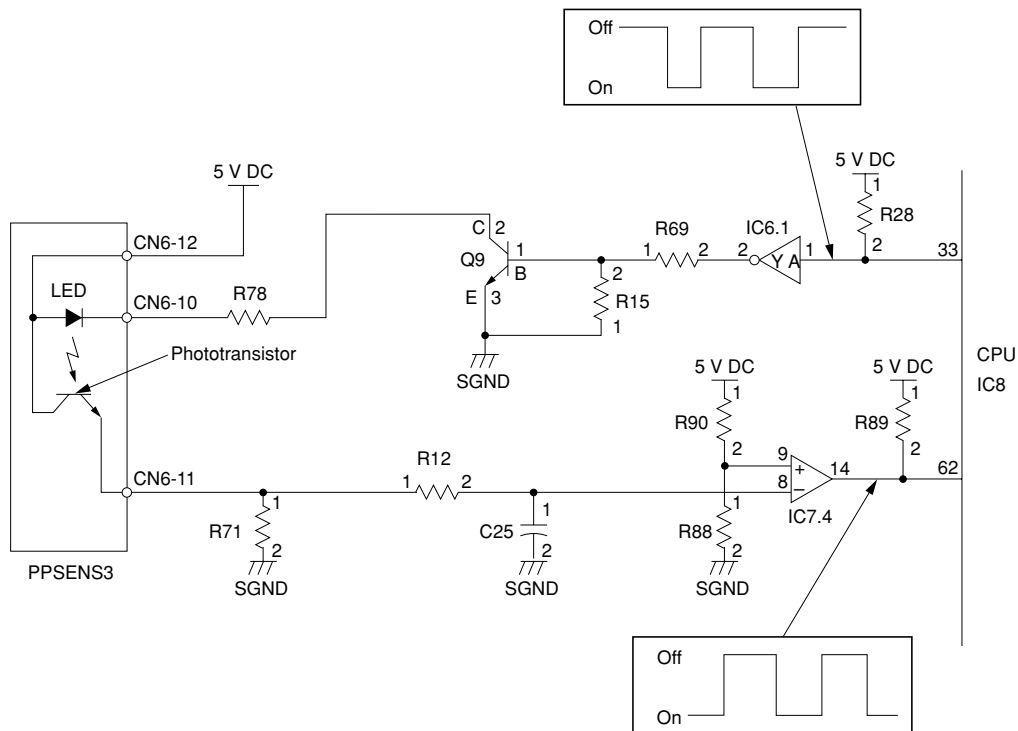


Figure 2-3-3 Reflective photosensor (PPSENS3) circuit

The following is the operating principle of paper path sensor 3 (PPSENS3). Paper path sensors 1 and 2 (PPSENS1, PPSENS2) and the paper empty sensor (PESENS) operate in the same manner.

A pulsating signal from pin 33 of the CPU IC8 turns Q9 on and off, causing the LED on the sensor PCB to flash. When the flashing LED light reflects on the paper, the phototransistor turns on and off. The on/off signal is then inverted by IC7.4 and the paper presence signal (pulse) is input at pin 62 of the CPU IC8.

If there is no paper, the phototransistor remains off and 5 V DC is input at pin 62 of the CPU IC8.

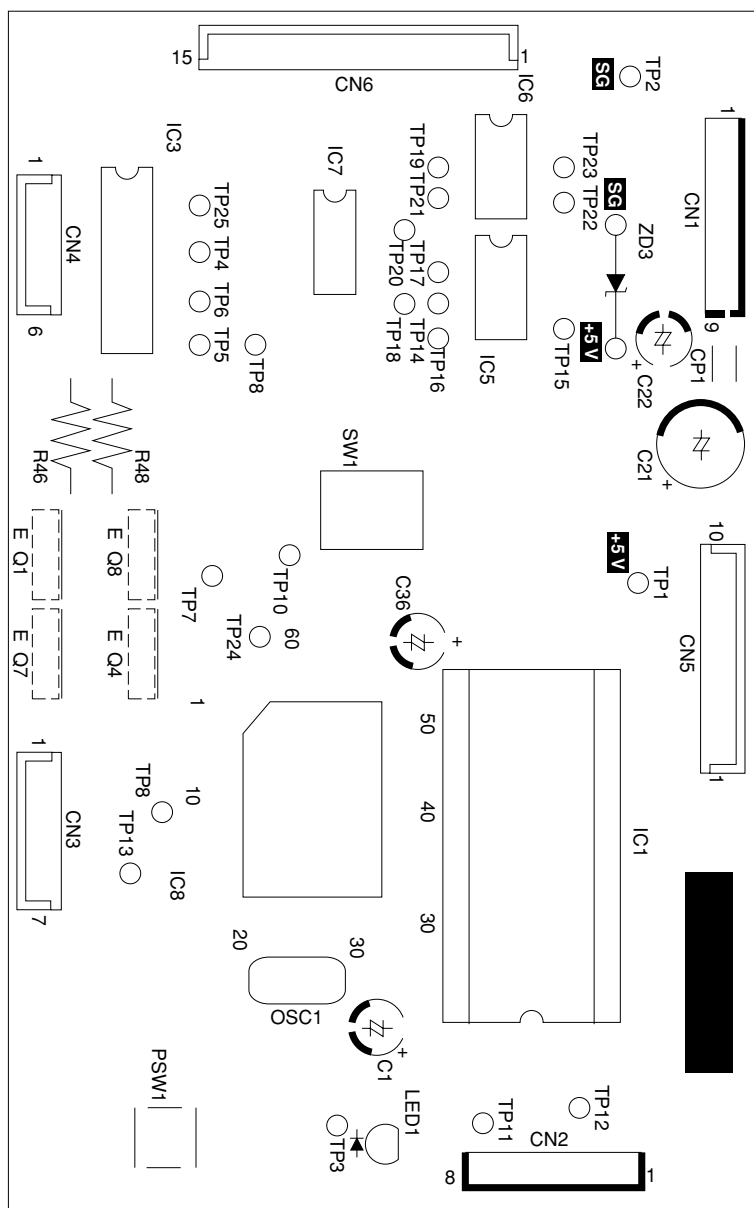
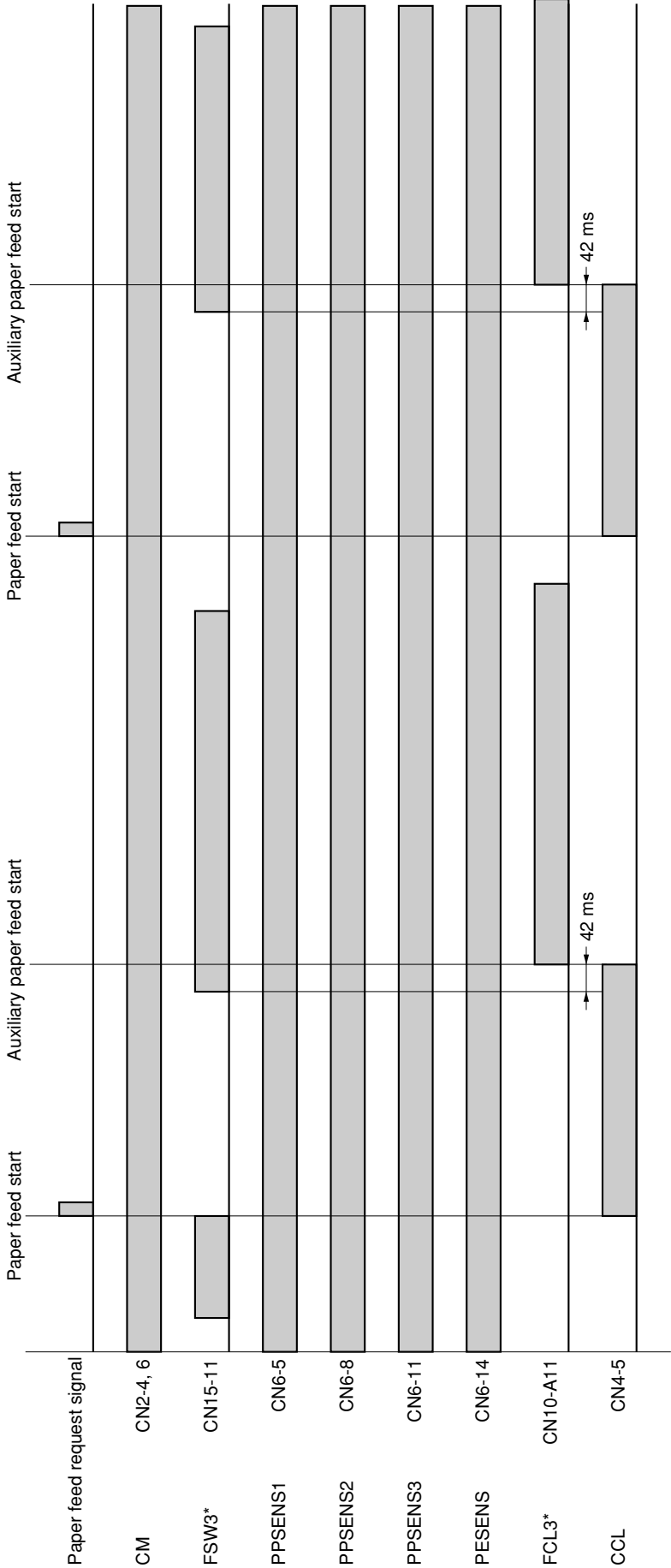


Figure 2-3-4

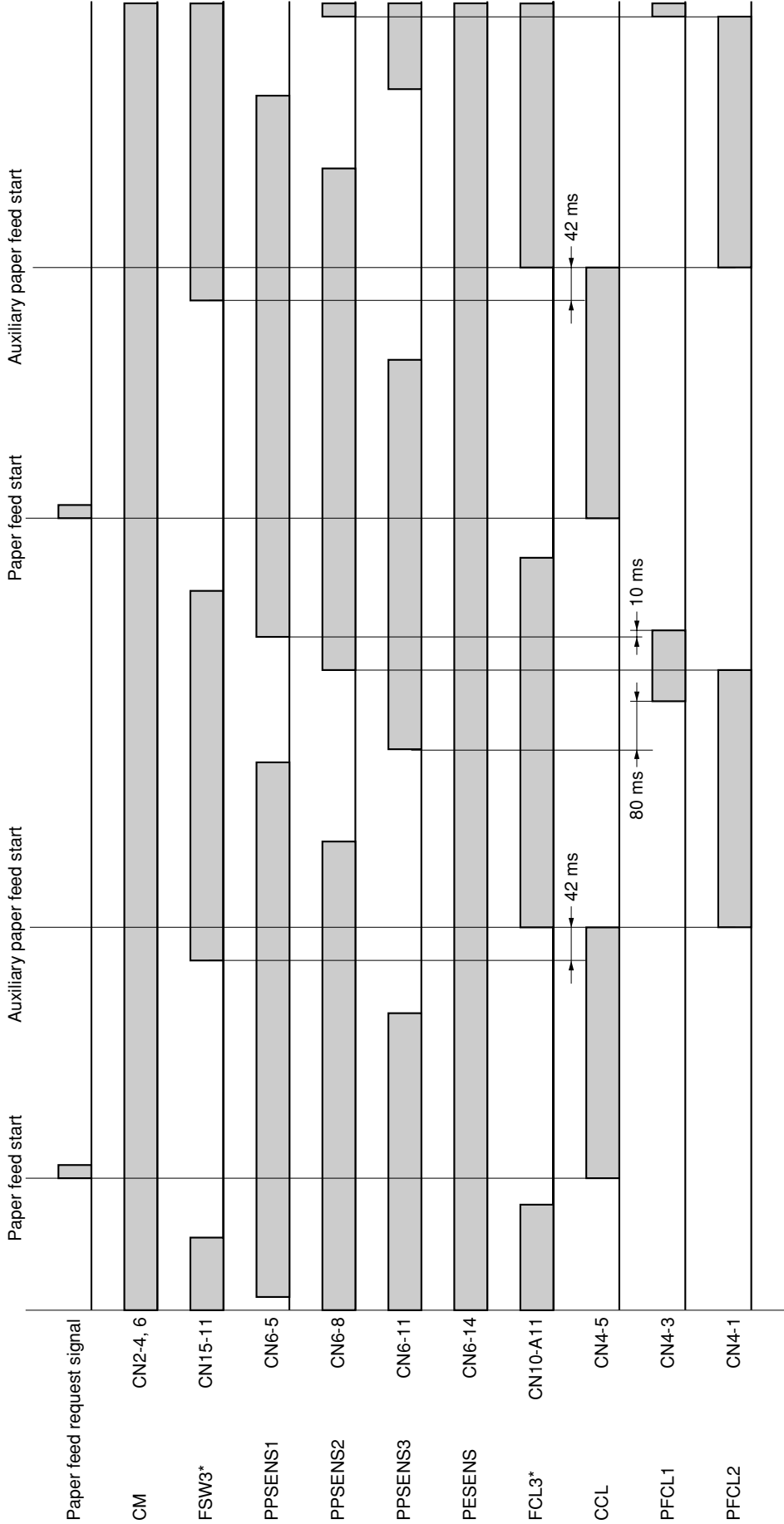
Terminals (CN)		Voltage	Remarks
1-1	1-2	0/5 V DC	FSW3 on/off from the copier, input
1-3	1-2	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication signal to the copier, input
1-5	1-4	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication signal to the copier, output
1-6	1-4	0/5 V DC	Reset signal from the copier, input
1-7	1-8	5 V DC	5 V DC supply, input
1-10	1-9	24 V DC	24 V DC supply, input
2-1	2-2	0/5 V DC	PLDSENS1 on/off, input
2-3	2-2	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for PLDSENS1, output
2-5	2-4	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for CM, output
2-6	2-4	0/24 V DC	CM on/off, output
2-7	2-4	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Lock signal to CM, output
3-1	3-2	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for PLDSENS1, output
3-3	3-2	0/5 V DC	PLDSENS2 on/off, input
4-1	2-4	0/24 V DC	PFCL2 on/off, output
4-2	2-4	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for PFCL2, output
4-3	2-4	0/24 V DC	PFCL1 on/off, output
4-4	2-4	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for PFCL1, output
4-5	2-4	0/24 V DC	CCL on/off, output
4-6	2-4	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for CCL, output
5-1	5-2	5/0 V DC	DOSW on/off, input
5-3	5-2	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for DOSW, output
5-4	5-5	0/5 V DC	DLSW1 on/off, input
5-6	5-5	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for DLSW1, output
5-7	5-8	0/5 V DC	DLSW2 on/off, input
5-9	5-8	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for DLSW2, output
6-1	6-2	5/0 V DC	SCSW on/off, input
6-3	6-2	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for SCSW, output
6-4	6-2	5/4 V DC (pulse)	Clock signal to PPSSENS1, output
6-5	6-2	5/0 V DC (pulse)/0 V	PPSENS1 on/off, input
6-6	6-2	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for PPSSENS1, output
6-7	6-2	5/4 V DC (pulse)	Clock signal to PPSSENS2, output
6-8	6-2	5/0 V DC (pulse)/0 V	PPSENS2 on/off, input
6-9	6-2	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for PPSSENS2, output
6-10	6-2	5/4 V DC (pulse)	Clock signal to PPSSENS3, output
6-11	6-2	5/0 V DC (pulse)/0 V	PPSENS3 on/off, input
6-12	6-2	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for PPSSENS3, output
6-13	6-2	5/4 V DC (pulse)/	Clock signal to PESENS, output
6-14	6-2	5/0 V DC (pulse)/0 V	PESENS on/off, input
6-15	6-2	5 V DC	5 V DC supply for PESENS, output
7-1	7-2	0/5 V DC	Paper level detection switch on/off, input
7-3	7-2	0/5 V DC	Paper level detection switch on/off, input
7-5	2-4	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for PDM2, output
7-6	2-4	0/24 V DC	PDM2 on/off, output
7-8	7-9	0/5 V DC	Paper level detection switch on/off, input
7-10	7-9	0/5 V DC	Paper level detection switch on/off, input
7-12	2-4	24 V DC	24 V DC supply for PDM1, output
7-13	2-4	0/24 V DC	PDM1 on/off, output

Timing chart No. 1 Paper feed from large paper deck left cassette

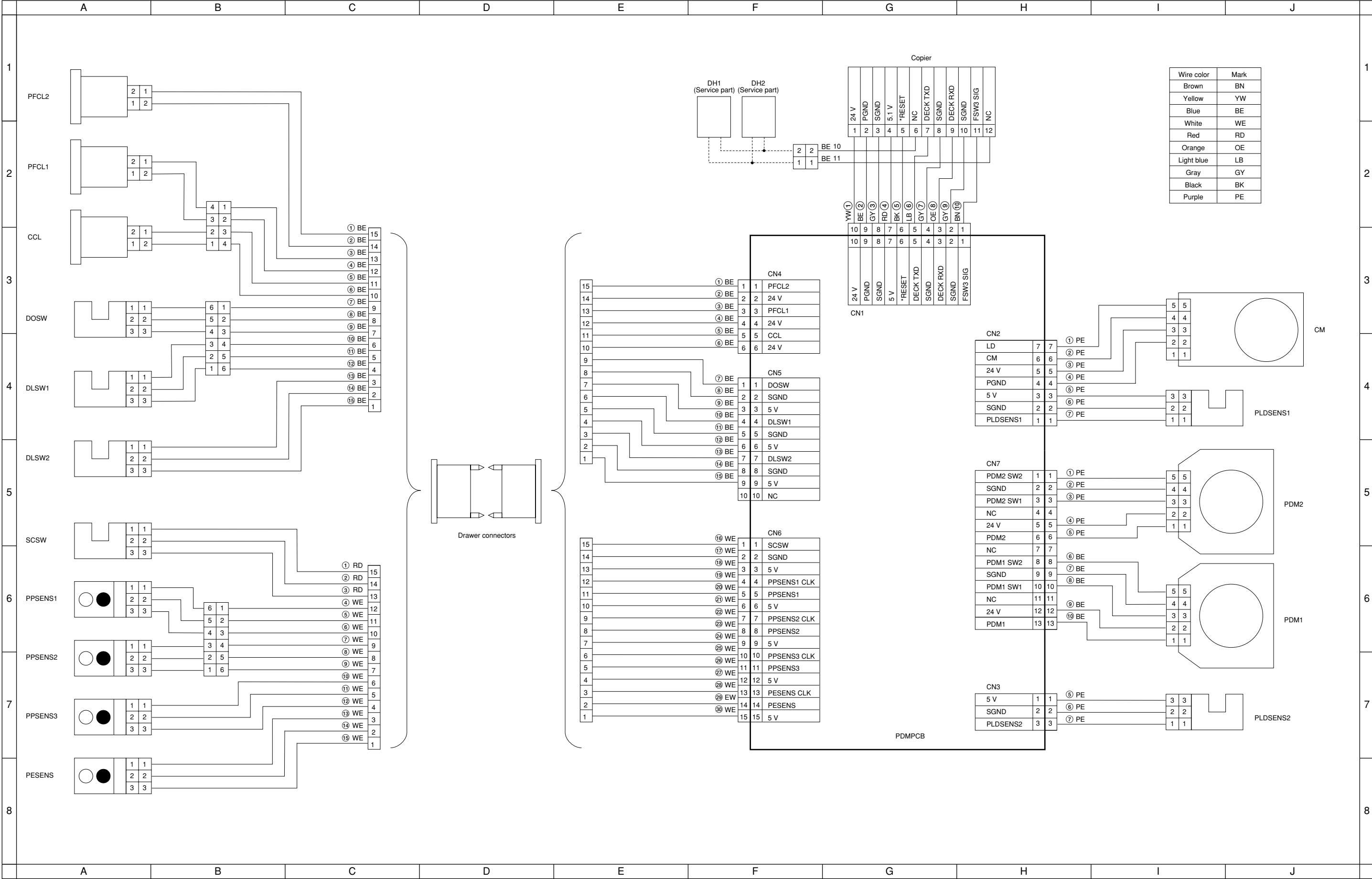


* Copier

Timing chart No. 2 Paper feed from large paper deck right cassette



* Copier



KYOCERA MITA AMERICA, INC.

Headquarters:

225 Sand Road,
Fairfield, New Jersey 07004-0008
TEL : (973) 808-8444
FAX : (973) 882-6000

New York Branch:

1410 Broadway 23rd floor
New York, NY 10018
TEL : (917) 286-5400
FAX : (917) 286-5402

Northeastern Region:

225 Sand Road,
Fairfield, New Jersey 07004-0008
TEL : (973) 808-8444
FAX : (973) 882-4401

Midwestern Region:

201 Hansen Court Suite 119
Wood Dale, Illinois 60191
TEL : (630) 238-9982
FAX : (630) 238-9487

Western Region:

14101 Alton Parkway,
Irvine, California 92618-7006
TEL : (949) 457-9000
FAX : (949) 457-9119

Southeastern Region:

1500 Oakbrook Drive,
Norcross, Georgia 30093
TEL : (770) 729-9786
FAX : (770) 729-9873

Southwestern Region:

2825 West Story Road,
Irving, Texas 75038-5299
TEL : (972) 550-8987
FAX : (972) 252-9786

National Operation Center & National Training Center:

2825 West Story Road,
Irving, Texas 75038-5299
TEL : (972) 659-0055
FAX : (972) 570-5816

Latin America Division:

8240 N.W. 52nd. Terrace Dawson Building,
Suite 108 Miami, Florida 33166
TEL : (305) 421-6640
FAX : (305) 421-6666

KYOCERA MITA CANADA, LTD.

6120 Kestrel Road, Mississauga,
Ontario L5T 1S8, Canada
TEL : (905) 670-4425
FAX : (905) 670-8116

KYOCERA MITA MEXICO, S.A. DE C.V.

Av. 16 de Septiembre #407
Col. Santa Inés,
Azcapotzalco México,
D.F. 02130, México
TEL : (55) 5383-2741
FAX : (55) 5383-7804